

The Negative Existential Cycle

Edited by

Ljuba Veselinova

Arja Hamari

Research on Comparative Grammar 1



Research on Comparative Grammar

ISSN (print):

ISSN (electronic):

The Negative Existential Cycle

Edited by

Ljuba Veselinova

Arja Hamari



Ljuba Veselinova & Arja Hamari (eds.). 2021. *The Negative Existential Cycle* (Research on Comparative Grammar 1). Berlin: Language Science Press.

This title can be downloaded at:

<http://langsci-press.org/catalog/book/000>

© 2021, the authors

Published under the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 Licence (CC BY 4.0):

<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/> 

ISBN: no digital ISBN

no print ISBNs!

ISSN (print):

ISSN (electronic):

no DOI

ID not assigned!

Cover and concept of design: Ulrike Harbort

Fonts: Libertinus, Arimo, DejaVu Sans Mono, Source Han Serif ZH

Typesetting software: X_ELa_TE_X

Language Science Press

xHain

Grünberger Str. 16

10243 Berlin, Germany

langsci-press.org

Storage and cataloguing done by FU Berlin



Contents

I Africa and Middle East

| | | |
|----------|---|------------|
| 1 | The negative existential cycle in Bantu Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson | 3 |
| 2 | The negative existential cycle in Chadic Marielle Butters | 57 |
| 3 | Extensions and commonalities in negative existential cycles in Arabic David Wilmsen | 81 |
| 4 | The negative existential cycle in Ancient Hebrew Jacobus A. Naudé, Cynthia L. Miller-Naudé & Daniel J. Wilson | 113 |
| 5 | The negative existential cycle in Ancient Egyptian Elsa Oréal | 137 |

II Eurasia

| | | |
|----------|---|------------|
| 6 | Negative existentials in Indo-European: a typological and diachronic overview Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz | 173 |
| 7 | The negative existential cycle in Moksha Mordvin: From a negative existential into a negative auxiliary Arja Hamari | 265 |
| 8 | Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese throughout history and across varieties Cherry Chit-Yu Lam | 297 |

Contents

| | |
|--|------------|
| 9 Non-verbal negation markers and the Negative Existential Cycle in Bashkir and Kalmyk with some typological parallels Vlada V. Baranova & Daria F. Mishchenko | 343 |
| 10 Integration of the negative existential into the standard negation system: The case of Nanaic languages Sofia Oskolskaya & Natalia Stoynova | 381 |
| III Other Parts of the World | |
| 11 Privation & Negation: Semantic change in the negative domains of three Australian (Pama-Nyungan) languages Joshua Phillips | 419 |
| 12 Negation in Tacana (Amazonian Bolivia): synchronic description and diachronic reconstruction Antoine Guillaume | 459 |
| 13 Existential negation in O'dam Michael Everdell & Gabriela García Salido | 493 |
| IV Theoretical approaches to cyclical processes | |
| 14 The Negative Existential and Other Cycles: Jespersen, Givón, and the Copula Cycle Elly van Gelderen | 531 |
| 15 Intertwining the negative cycles Johan van der Auwera, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen | 555 |
| Index | 595 |

Part I

Africa and Middle East

Chapter 1

The negative existential cycle in Bantu

Rasmus Bernander^a, Maud Devos^b & Hannah Gibson^c

^aUniversity of Helsinki ^bRoyal Museum for Central Africa & Ghent University

^cUniversity of Essex

Renewal of negation has received ample study in Bantu languages. Still, the relevant literature does not mention a cross-linguistically recurrent source of standard negation, i.e., the existential negator. The present paper aims to find out whether this gap in the literature is indicative of the absence of the Negative Existential Cycle (NEC) in Bantu languages. It presents a first account of the expression of negative existence in a geographically diverse sample of 93 Bantu languages. Bantu negative existential constructions are shown to display a high degree of formal variation both within dedicated and non-dedicated constructions. Although such variation is indicative of change, existential negators do not tend to induce changes at the same level as standard negation. The only clear cases of the spread of an existential negator to the domain of standard negation in this study appear to be prompted by sustained language contact.

Keywords: Bantu languages, negation, language change, morphology

1 Introduction

The Bantu language family comprises some 350–500 languages spoken across much of Central, Eastern and Southern Africa. According to Grollemund et al. (2015), these languages originate from a proto-variety of Bantu, estimated to have been spoken roughly 5000 years ago in the eastern parts of present-day northwest Cameroon. Many Bantu languages exhibit a dominant SVO word order. They are primarily head-marking, have a highly agglutinative morphology and a rich verbal complex in which inflectional and derivational affixes join to an obligatory verb stem. The Bantu languages are also characterised by a system



Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

of noun classes – a form of grammatical gender. By convention, these classes are numbered with odd and even pairings commonly representing singular and plural forms. Many Bantu languages also have locative classes containing only locative nouns. The most widespread locative classes are referred to as 16, 17 and 18 and are marked by **pa-*, **kv-* and **mvs-* respectively. These prefixes have been reconstructed for Proto-Bantu and refer to specific, general and internal location.¹ The locative noun classes will be central to the discussion in this paper, as they are ubiquitous in the formation of both affirmative and negative existentials in Bantu, as will become clear further below. TEST TEST

The Bantu languages exhibit a high degree of variation in the encoding of negation within the clause. However, some recurrent patterns can be observed. Negation most commonly involves verbal affixes, typically either a pre-initial marker (appearing before the subject prefix) or a post-initial marker (following the subject prefix). The former tends to be reserved for negation in declarative main clauses (i.e. standard negation), whereas the latter is commonly used for negation in non-standard clause types such as infinitive, subjunctive, imperative, relative and dependent clauses. Examples of pre-initial and post-initial negative strategies are given in (1a) and (1b), respectively.² As can be seen in (1c), Swahili uses the standard negative marker *ha-* in negative existential clauses.

(1) Swahili (G42)

- a. *ha-tu-ta-som-a ki-tabu hiki*
NEG-SM1pl-FUT-read-FV 7-book 7.DEM
'We will not read this book.'
- b. *u-si-end-e*
SM2sg-NEG-go-SBJV
'Do not go!'
- c. *ha-ku-na ma-tata*
NEG-SM17-COM 6-problem
'There are no problems.'

¹Other less prevalent strategies for locative noun formation include the use of the class 23/25 locative prefix **i-* (cf. Grégoire 1975; Maho 1999) and the locative suffix *-(i)ni* (Samson & Schadeberg 1994).

²The classification of the Bantu languages in this paper is based on Maho (2009), which is an updated version of Guthrie's (1971) classification, in which languages are divided into geographic zones which are assigned letters. These groupings are in turn divided into smaller groups indicated by the decimal digits. The final digit represents a specific language within such a group. Letters and additional digits after this digit refer to varieties of the same language. The ISO-codes of the languages of the sample are given in Table 1.1 the Appendix. Languages which are discussed but are not part of the sample have their ISO-code in the running text.

1 *The negative existential cycle in Bantu*

Other recurrent negation strategies involve pre-verbal and post-verbal enclitics/particles, and periphrastic constructions employing an inherently negative auxiliary and an infinitive. Negative stacking – the combination of different negation strategies for the expression of negation – is also attested. Such variation is indicative of change. Although renewal of negation in Bantu has received ample attention in previous studies (e.g. Kamba Muzenga 1981; Güldemann 1996; 1999; Devos & van der Auwera 2013; Devos & Van Olmen 2013), there has been no systematic study of the form and variation of negative existential constructions, nor of changes indicative of a negative existential cycle (Croft 1991; Veselinova 2016). This paper seeks to address this gap in the literature through an examination of negative existentials across a sample of 93 Bantu languages, as listed (along with their ISO-codes) in Table 1.1 in the Appendix. The aim is to provide the first exploration of negative existentials in Bantu languages, as well as to examine the extent to which the stages of the negative existential cycle, as set out by Croft (1991) and Veselinova (2016), can be identified in the language family.³

The paper is structured as follows: In §2, we examine the renewal of negative strategies across the Bantu languages. In §3, we present an overview of affirmative existential constructions in Bantu, looking at both dedicated and non-dedicated strategies for forming existentials. In §4, we look at the distribution of the stages of the negative existential cycle across the Bantu sample. In §5, we chart the development from non-dedicated negative existentials to dedicated negative existentials. In §6, we explore additional processes of change. We first look at usage extensions beyond verbal negation (§6.1) and towards non-standard negation types (§6.2). We then discuss the possible involvement of existential negators in instantiations of the Jespersen Cycle (§6.3) and a specific development attested in varieties of the East African Bantu language Swahili (§6.4). §7 consists of a summary and draws a number of conclusions.

2 **The renewal of negation in Bantu**

In this section we discuss three recurrent pathways of change in the expression of negation in Bantu languages. The first two concern the genesis and renewal of the two main Bantu negation strategies, i.e., the pre-initial and the post-initial negation strategy. Güldemann (1996; 1999) identifies the origin of the former in the merger between an illocutionary particle (mostly commonly a negative copula) and a (dependent) finite verb form. He finds evidence for this pathway, *inter*

³It should be noted that the depth of our analysis naturally depends on the descriptive status of the languages under examination.

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

alia, in the recurrent formal similarity between negative copulas and pre-initial negative markers, as is the case in Nyanja.

- (2) Nyanja (N31a, Stevick & Hollander 1965: 174, cited from Güldemann 1999: 568)
- a. *si-ti-dza-pit-a*
NEG-SM1pl-FUT-go-FV
'We won't go.'
 - b. *lelo si laciwili*
today NEG.COP Tuesday
'Today is not Tuesday.'

Still following Güldemann (1996; 1999), the post-initial strategy is assumed to have its origin in a periphrastic construction consisting of an inherently negative auxiliary followed by an infinitive. Evidence for this second pathway comes from the functional overlap between these constructions in different present-day languages. Both post-initial negation and periphrastic negation involving a negative auxiliary are typically used for the negation of marked clauses, i.e., to negate infinitives, subjunctives, imperatives, relatives and dependent clauses. Compare the use of the post-initial strategy in example (1b) from Swahili with the use of the periphrastic strategy for prohibition in Manda shown in (3).

- (3) Manda (N11, Bernander 2018: 664)
- Ø-kótúk-áyi ku-túmbúl-a ku-lóv-a sómba*
Ø-NEG-IPFV.SBJV 15-begin-INF 15-fish-INF 10.fish
'Don't begin to fish.'

Bernander (2017; 2018) offers a language-internal instantiation of this pathway. In Manda, the cessative auxiliary *-kotok-* 'leave (off), stop'⁴ has spread from indicating prohibition to indicating the other marked negation types identified by Güldemann (1996; 1999), with the exception of negative relatives. The Manda data also further add weight to Nurse's (2008: 191) claim that prohibitives are "a major conduit through which innovation occurs". At first, the prohibitive marker spreads to other more marked negation types, as seen in Manda. However, if Nurse's (2008: 193, fn 25) suggestion that several post-initial negative markers in northwestern Bantu languages of zones A and C are derived from the cessative auxiliary **dék* 'let, let go, cease, allow' (Bastin et al. 2002) holds true, further

⁴Note that *-kotok-* becomes *-kotuk-* before the imperfective suffix, cf. (3).

1 The negative existential cycle in Bantu

spread to standard negation may also be attested. In Nugunu, for example, the post-initial negative marker *-de-* is used for all negation types, i.e., for negation of both marked clauses and standard clauses (Nurse 2007). Examples (4a) and (4b) show the use of *-de-* for prohibition and standard negation.⁵

- (4) Nugunu (A62, Nurse 2007)

- a. *ɔ-dɔ-góba*
SM2sg-NEG-beat
'do not beat'
- b. *a-de-mbá-fâ*
SM1-NEG-PFV-give
's/he hasn't given'

The third pathway of change concerns recurrent instances of double negation in Bantu languages, i.e., the combination of the (inherited) pre-initial or post-initial negative marker and a post-verbal negative marker in a single negative strategy, as illustrated in (5) from Ruwund.

- (5) Ruwund (L53, Nash 1992: 696)

- kè-z-in-à-p*
NEG.SM1-come-PRS.CONT-FV-NEG
'S/he is not coming.'

Double negative marking is suggestive of a Jespersen Cycle, a process whereby an additional negator is first used to reinforce negation, then becomes an obligatory part of negation and eventually ends up as the only exponent of negation. This final stage, with only a single negator, is illustrated with the Manda example in (6).

- (6) Manda (N11, Bernander 2017: 308)

- ni-ŋ'-gán-a lépa ófísa wa usaláma*
SM1sg-OM1-like-FV NEG security officer
'I do not like the security officer.'

Devos & van der Auwera (2013) show that the Jespersen Cycles can indeed be observed in Bantu languages. This observation follows the lead of several Bantu grammarians, as well as Güldemann (1996: 256–258), Güldemann & Hagemeijer (2006: 7), Güldemann (2008: 165), Nurse (2008: 57), and Güldemann (2011: 117),

⁵Note that *-de-* becomes *-dɔ-* after [ɔ] in Nugunu.

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

who link double negation in Bantu to its most famous example in French *ne ... pas*. Devos & van der Auwera (2013) identify several sources of post-verbal negative markers and show that the post-verbal negative marker may become the only exponent of negation but that a Jespersen Cycle might also set in at this doubling stage, resulting in triple or even quadruple negation (for an example of the latter see Devos et al. 2010). Triple negation in Salampasu [slx] is shown in (7).

- (7) Salampasu (L51, Ngalamulume 1977, cited from Devos & van der Auwera 2013: 210)
- | | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------|-----|
| <i>káá-dédeki-kú</i> | <i>ny-tóndú ba</i> | |
| NEG.SP1-cut.PFV-NEG | 3-tree | NEG |
| 'He has not cut a tree.' | | |

3 Existential constructions in Bantu

As will become apparent in §4 and §5, a significant number of Bantu languages express negative existence merely through (standard) negation of the affirmative existential construction. This fact merits a brief presentation of the versatile tactics for forming affirmative existentials found across Bantu, before embarking on the main topic, i.e., their negative counterparts. The results presented in this section are based on Bernander et al. (in press), an investigation into the expression of affirmative existentials across Bantu, departing from a definition of such expressions in relation to plain locational clauses. In line with Creissels (2014; 2015), existentials are conceptualized as providing an alternative way of encoding the prototypical figure-ground relationship of a plain locational. That is, in existentials, the ground rather than the figure is the perspectival center. Several different tactics for expressing existence have been found in different languages, but also within a single language variety. Of these, an initial division can be made between those expressions of existential predication which, except for word order changes, are not different from locational clauses (§3.1) and those constructions that are dedicated to the expression of existential predication (§3.2).

3.1 Non-dedicated existentials

In roughly 20% of the cross-Bantu sample, existential predication was found to be formally identical to locational existential predication (Bernander et al. in press). However, although there are no morphosyntactic differences between a plain locational construction and existential predication in these cases, it should be

1 The negative existential cycle in Bantu

noted that the existentials are recurrently pragmatically marked. Typically, there is a shift to presentational word order, where the (logical) subject ends up in post-verbal position. This tendency is also pervasive in both dedicated existential constructions and negative existentials and it adheres to a wider cross-linguistic tendency (see e.g. Freeze 1992; Bentley et al. 2013).⁶ Example (8a) is an instance of an existential marker in Makhuwa which is formally under-specified in relation to the plain locational in (8b).

- (8) Makhuwa (P31, van der Wal 2009: 109)

- a. *aa-ri nlopwana m-motsá*
SM1.PST-be 1.man 1-one
'There was a man.'
- b. *eliívúrú e-ri wa-meétsa*
9.book SM9-be 16-table
'The book is on the table.'

Both instances of predication contain the same copula indexed with the relevant regular subject agreement. The only difference between the two expressions is the word order permutation of the existential proposition in (8a), relative to the canonical SVO order of the language, as found in (8b). Another example comes from (Standard) Swahili, where it is once again only the word order which distinguishes the existential predication of (9a) from the plain locational predication in (9b).

- (9) Swahili (G42, Marten 2013: 46)

- a. *zi-po n-chi amba-zo hu-tegeme-a ki-limo*
SM10-LOC.COP16 10-country REL-REFCD10 HAB-depend-FV 7-farming
'There are countries which depend on agriculture.'
- b. *ki-tabu ki-po meza=ni*
7-book SM7-LOC.COP16 6.table=LOC
'The book is on the table.'

⁶In fact, the only examples of languages which do not exhibit such a permutation are spoken in the very north-western part of the Bantu speaking region. These languages are therefore in close or direct contact with the “Macro-Sudan belt” (Güldemann 2008). The Macro-Sudan belt is a linguistic area characterized as being “devoid of dedicated existential predicative constructions, and with rigid constituent order in locational clauses” (Creissels 2014: 22).

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

It should be noted that the existential predication exemplified in (9a) represents only one of two possible tactics for the formation of existentials in (Standard) Swahili, the other tactic being the comitative-existential type which was exemplified in (1c) in §1 and which is further discussed in §3.2 below. This situation in Swahili reflects a wider tendency of non-dedicated existential predictions to alternate with a dedicated existential construction in a single language.

3.2 Dedicated existentials

80% of the languages in our current dataset use dedicated existentials. Two of Creissels' (2014; 2015) seven types of existential predication are frequently and widely attested, namely the “locative-existential” type and the “comitative-existential” type (Bernander et al. in press).

The locative-existential type is characterized by the presence of a locative element which is absent from the plain locational clause. Locative-existential constructions exhibit differing degrees of specialization and semantic bleaching of this locative element, but its locative origin is commonly transparent. Typically, the locative element stems from what was originally a locative-referential enclitic which attached to a copula verb and in certain contexts became reinterpreted as marking existential predication. Another common locative-existential type comprises constructions where the subject marker of the predicate has shifted from referring to the (logical) subject to taking agreement from a locative noun class. Both of these subcategories of locative-existentials can be illustrated by Cuwabo, which makes equal use of the two categories. Thus, in example (10a), the existential is formed with the copula verb *-kala* and an enclitic from the locative class 17, the subject marker of the verb agreeing with the post-verbal (logical) subject. In example (10b), however, there is no enclitic (although the copula verb is the same). Instead, the existential construction is formed with the locative class 17 as a subject marker.

- (10) Cuwabo (P34, Guérois 2015: 465, 466)

- a. *nsáká ni-modhá o-á-kálá=wo* *mwáná-mwíyaná*
5.time 5-one SM1-PST.IPFV.CJ-be-LOC17 1.child-1.woman
'One day, there was a girl.'
- b. *o-ttóló=ni ókúlé o-hi-ikálá fúlóóri*
17-well=LOC DEM SM17-PFV.DJ-be 9a.flower
'There at the well there is a flower ...'

1 The negative existential cycle in Bantu

In a small set of Bantu languages, the existential construction consists of the combination of these two subtypes, as in the example from Lusoga in (11) where the copula verb is inflected with both a subject marker and an enclitic from the locative noun class 18.

- (11) Lusoga (JE16, Nabirye p.c. 2016)
- | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| <i>mu i-díilo</i> | <i>mu-lí-mu</i> | <i>ebí-sampá</i> |
| 18 | 5-living.room | SM18-be=LOC18 8-mat |
- ‘In the living room there are mats.’

In some languages, univerbation of a locative element and a copula or light verb has given rise to two types of ‘locative/existential predicates’. A first type involves univerbation of a copula or light verb and a locative enclitic. The Makhuwa predicate *-háavo* in (12) can reasonably be thought to derive from the light verb *-hala* ‘stay, remain’ to which the class 16 locative enclitic *=vo* is added. Locative post-finals are not (or no longer) productively used in Makhuwa and *-háavo* never occurs without the locative enclitic.

- (12) Makhuwa (P31, van der Wal 2009: 109)
- | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|----------------|
| <i>y-aá-háavo</i> | <i>e-námá</i> | <i>e-motsá</i> |
| SM9-PST-be.present | 9-animal | 9-one |
- ‘There was an animal ...’

A second type involves univerbation of an erstwhile locative object prefix and a copula. As suggested in Bernander et al. (in press), the Mawiha predicate *-pawa* in (13) has its origin in merger of the class 16 locative object prefix *-pa-* with the copula *-wa* ‘be’. The (near-) absence of locative object prefixes as obligatory locative elements in Bantu existential constructions of the locative-existential type is probably due to the limited distribution of locative object prefixes in Bantu languages more generally (Marlo 2015; Zeller n.d.).

- (13) Mawiha (P25, Harries 1940: 105)
- | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>mu-pande mwake</i> | <i>mu-ndi-pawa</i> | <i>ŵa-nu</i> |
| 18-9.house | 18.POSS1 | SM18-PFV-be.present 2-people |
- ‘There are people in his house.’

The second of the two major types of dedicated existential constructions found across the language family is the comitative-existential type. In such a construction, the figure is encoded in a way that is similar to the phrase representing the companion in comitative predication. As illustrated with the example from Digo

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

in (14), Bantu comitative-existential constructions are typically marked with a reflex of the Proto-Bantu reconstructed conjunction/preposition **na* ‘and/with’ (Bastin et al. 2002).

- (14) Digo (E73, Nicolle 2013: 320)
hipho kare ku-a-kala na mu-tu m-mwenga
 long ago SM17-PST-be with 1.person 1-man
 ‘Long ago, there was a man.’

As pointed out by Creissels (2014), this type of existential construction is characteristic for the Bantu language family, the extension of a comitative marker to an existential being rare from a cross-linguistic perspective. Note that a locative element is present in the construction in (14) as well, in the form of a subject marker of the locative class 17. This is representative of almost all comitative-existential constructions across Bantu. It should also be stressed that, although the ‘basic’ meaning of *na* is comitative ‘with’, it is a polysemic element and in those languages where it has developed an existential reading, it typically also functions as a “possessive copula” (Marten 2013; Gibson et al. 2018), thus resembling the much more wide-spread cross-linguistic strategy of forming existentials from possessive predicates (Creissels 2013).

4 Negative existentials and the NEC in the language sample

After a brief description of the expression of negation and affirmative existence in Bantu languages, we now turn to the main topic of the paper – the expression of negative existentials. Our account of the Bantu findings is framed on the basis of the model of the Negative Existential Cycle (NEC), following Croft (1991) and Veselinova (2013b; 2014; 2016). According to this model, standard negation markers can develop out of negative existential markers through three stable stages, referred to as A, B and C. Three additional transitory stages, referred to as A~B, B~C and C~A, are also involved. Each of these variationist stages simultaneously represent synchronic types. Consequently, every language of our sample has been examined and classified according to whether it belongs to one of the three ‘stable’ types/stages of the NEC or whether it represents a ‘transitory’ type/stage. The observation made by Veselinova (2014; 2016) that several overlapping types/stages may co-occur in a single language, has also been taken

1 The negative existential cycle in Bantu

into account. In the following discussion we further attempt to make diachronic inferences based on the relation between synchronic language internal and external variation and the pathway(s) of change posited in this model.

The variation regarding the expression of negative existentials across Bantu is summarized in Figure 1.1. The Figure is based on [Veselinova \(2016: 146\)](#), in turn adapted from [Croft \(1991: 6\)](#), where the boxes with solid lines represent stable types/stages and the boxes indicated by dashed lines represent the transitional types/stages. (A more fine-grained and language-specific account of the formation of negative existential predication can be found in Table 1.1 in the Appendix). Note that the total number in Figure 1.1 is 98, and thus exceeds the total sample of 93 languages in this study. This reflects the fact that 5 languages can be classified to several types/stages, the overlapping types/stages being A & B (2 times), A & B(?) (2 times), B & B(?) (1 time), A B & B C (2 times).⁷ A detailed account of the various figures shown in Figure 1.1 is provided in the discussion below.

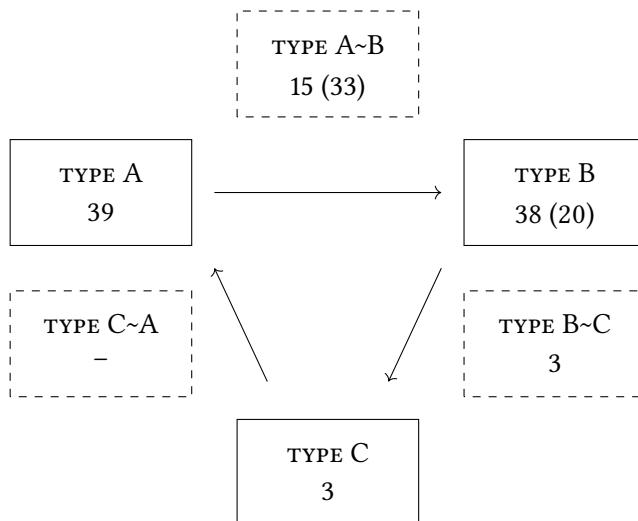


Figure 1.1: Stages of the NEC across the Bantu sample

As can be seen in Figure 1.1, the majority of existential negators across Bantu pertain to the ‘earlier’ stages of the cycle, thus adhering to cross-linguistically

⁷It should also be noted that the numbers in Figure 1.1 do not take into account variation within a single type: several languages in our sample have more than one dedicated existential strategy. When they belong to the same type/stage, typically type B, this is only counted once.

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

induced generalizations regarding rate of frequency (Croft 1991; Veselinova 2016). This tendency is arguably even stronger if it is taken into account that the three C types and one of the B~C types of this figure are plausibly the result of contact induced change involving one and the same source language, i.e., Swahili. A word of caution is warranted here however, regarding the presentation of the data more generally but specifically regarding the relationship between negative existentials of the stable Type B and those of Type A~B. In many cases, our sources have only provided examples with negative existential constructions in the present tense. This has made it difficult to determine with certainty whether a language really makes use of a negative existential of Type B or A~B.⁸ We therefore decided to use two numbers. The first number (without parentheses)⁹ represents the liberal count which takes the absence of a description of other means of negative existential predication as an indication of a special Type B status of the negative existential marker in question. The second number (in parentheses)¹⁰ represents the alternative, more conservative count where the absence of examples of usage outside of the present temporal domain is taken to indicate that the negative existential is of Type A~B.

The following two sections each discuss one half of the cycle. In §5, we focus on Type A and B and the transition processes between these types. In §6, we address the rarer, additional types and hence further developed stages within the cycle found in Bantu, including those induced by contact with Swahili. In §6, we also raise the question of meaning extensions of negative existentials in Bantu which are not necessarily connected to the NEC.

5 From non-dedicated to dedicated negative existentials in Bantu

In this section, we discuss instantiations of the first half of the NEC, that is, A, B and A~B. As seen in Figure 1.1 above, these three types/stages constitute the vast majority of instantiations of the NEC in Bantu, in accordance with the observed general cross-linguistic tendency (Veselinova 2016; Croft 1991). §5.1 discusses constructions which apply standard negation to affirmative existential constructions, i.e. negative existentials of Type A. §5.2 continues with an account of dedicated negative existentials, either as part of a Type A~B or a Type B situation, and their evolution.

⁸Of course, such a problem could also hold for other contextual restrictions which are not revealed in the data.

⁹Counting both languages classified as B and B(?) in our table.

¹⁰Counting only languages classified as B in our table.

1 The negative existential cycle in Bantu

5.1 Negative existentials using standard negation

As can be seen in Figure 1.1, a majority of negative existentials across Bantu are formed in a compositional fashion by applying standard negation strategies to the affirmative existential construction. That is, Type A negative existentials in Croft's (1991) typology. Interestingly, although a majority of Bantu languages stick to the compositional formation of negative existentials, there is still a lot of variation in the expression of Type A negative existentials. This reflects the formal variation within the expression of both standard negation (§2), and affirmative existence (§3) in Bantu.

All instantiations of the negative existential of Type A across Bantu involve standard negation strategies. However, languages vary (both internally and externally) as to whether standard negation is applied to a non-dedicated or, as in the great majority (roughly three quarters) of the cases, dedicated affirmative existential. In the latter case, languages vary in terms of which specific type of dedicated affirmative existential is involved, thus prompting more fine-grained distinctions within the single category of Type A negative existentials.

An example of a Bantu language where standard negation is applied to a non-dedicated existential construction is Swahili. In (15), the standard pre-initial negative marker is attached to a type of existential predication which is described as under-specified in relation to plain locational predication in §3.1 (cf. the Swahili examples in (9)).

- (15) Swahili (G42, Kanijo p.c. 2018)
- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>ha-yu-po</i> | <i>nguluwe mw-enye ma-bawa</i> |
| NEG-SM1-LOC.COP16 | 9.pig 1-having 6-wings |
| 'There is no pig with wings.' | |

There are also languages in which standard negation applies to the dedicated existential constructions discussed in §3.2. Thus, Ikizu and Kisi are examples of standard negation combined with dedicated locative-existential constructions. In the Ikizu case, the affirmative existential involves an obligatory locative enclitic (16), whereas the existential in Kisi is characterized by a locative subject marker, as in (17). Note that the strategy used in standard negation in Kisi is a post-verbal negative particle.

- (16) Ikizu (JE402, Luke 1:61, Gray 2013: 54)
- | | |
|--|---|
| <i>Ndora mu-bahiiri</i> | <i>banyu ta-ree-ho wi riina riyo!</i> |
| look 18-2.blood.relative | 2.POSS2PL NEG-be-LOC16 1.of 5.name 5.DEM2 |
| 'Look, among your blood relatives there is no-one of that name!' | |

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

- (17) Kisi (G67, Ngonyani 2011: 157)

n-dofi a-bh̥slile ku-yele he bhu-sipa ma-gono agho
 1-fisherman SM1-say.PFV 17-be.PFV NEG 14-sardine 6-day 6.DEM2
 ‘The fisherman said there were no sardines in those days.’

Similarly, standard negation may apply to affirmative existential constructions of the comitative type. Swahili is a case in point. In addition to the non-dedicated existential construction illustrated in (15), Swahili makes use of a dedicated comitative-existential. The corresponding negative construction simply adds the standard pre-initial negative marker *ha-*. Recall, that these constructions typically also involve locative marking, in this case the class 16 locative subject marker *pa-*.

- (18) Swahili (G42, King’ei & Ndalu 1989: 25)

ha-pa-na m-tu a-si-ye-fanya ma-kosa
 NEG-SM16-COM 1-person 1-NEG-REL1-make 6-mistake
 ‘There is no person who does not make mistakes.’

Some languages that are categorized as belonging to Stage A because they employ standard negation strategies in negative existential constructions, display minor irregularities. Since the irregularities are typically attested in present tense contexts they could be suggestive of the emergence of a dedicated negative existential. Makwe is a case in point. One of the negative existential strategies found in Makwe involves standard negation in combination with a locative/existential predicate (*-pali*) derived from the univerbation of a class 16 object prefix *-pa-* and the copula *-li* ‘be’, as seen in (19a). The corresponding affirmative construction also makes use of a locative/existential predicate (*-pwawa*) which, however, is most probably the result of the merger of a class 16 object prefix *-pa-* with the verb *-wa* ‘be’ (rather than *-li*), as seen in (19b). The locative/existential predicate *-pali* is a negative polarity item as it cannot be used in affirmative contexts. It only occurs in negative present tense contexts. Other temporal contexts make use of *-pwawa* in combination with standard negation (19c).

- (19) Makwe (P231, *fieldnotes*, Devos 2008: 375)

a. *a-ya-paáli ma-tatiízo*

NEG-SM6-exist 6-problem

‘There are no problems.’

b. *u-ni-pwáawa mw-iimbo*

SM3-PFV-exist 3-song

‘There is a song.’

1 The negative existential cycle in Bantu

- c. *a-ku-na-pwaw-iije na sukáali*
 NEG-SM17-PST-exist-PFV with 9.sugar
 ‘There was no sugar available.’

Another example comes from Shangaji. Shangaji has a dedicated locative-existential strategy marked by an obligatory locative enclitic, as seen in (20a). This can be negated through standard negation which involves the pre-initial negative marker *kha-*, as in (20b). However, the copula verb *-wa*, present in the affirmative construction, is reduced to zero in the negative construction, thus turning the locative enclitic into a locative copula.¹¹

- (20) Shangaji (P312, Devos, *fieldnotes*)
- a. *leélo zi-waá-pho pwilímwíithi*
 today SP10-be-LOC16 10.mosquito
 ‘Today there are (a lot of) mosquitos.’
 - b. *leélo kha-zí-wó ttphonddóowa o-túulu*
 today NEG-SP10-LOC17 10.star 17-above
 ‘Today there are no stars in the sky.’

5.2 The rise of dedicated negative existential strategies

53 of the languages – more than half of our sample – can be considered to belong to Type B or Type A~B of the NEC, thus having a dedicated negative existential strategy which does not merely involve the application of standard negation to an affirmative existential construction. In this section, we first explore the etymology of dedicated negative existential markers across the Bantu family. We then go on to address the transition between stage A and B, i.e., the emergence of dedicated negative existentials in Bantu.

5.2.1 Dedicated negative existential constructions

Dedicated negative existential constructions in Bantu are often marked by inherently negative lexemes in combination with locative marking. There are two main lexical sources involved in such dedicated negative existential constructions: verbs and adjectives/adverbs. Both categories can be etymologically linked

¹¹Note that the affirmative existential construction makes use of a series of locative demonstrative enclitics (*-pho*, *-kho* and *-mo*) whereas the negative existential construction uses a series of locative relative enclitics (*-vo*, *-wo* and *-mo*).

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

to a negative source meaning, which adheres to a common cross-linguistic pattern (Veselinova 2013b). Two geographically more restricted patterns have also been identified. The first concerns non-verbal predication whereby the noun referring to the figure is followed by a negative particle dedicated to the expression of negative existence (and other non-verbal predication types). The second involves locative subject marking in combination with a verbal enclitic with an as yet unclear etymology. This section takes a closer look at all four more or less recurrent sources, starting with the least unexpected one.

Bantu languages commonly recruit inherently negative verbs as negators (see Givón 1973; 2001: 382–383). This is typically the case in prohibitive propositions and, by extension, other types of more marked verbal negation (see e.g. Bernander 2018, Devos & Van Olmen 2013, Güldemann 1999, Nurse 2008: 191–193, and also the brief discussion in §2 of this paper). Our investigation shows that lexical verbs of similar denotations are often also recruited as negative existential markers in Bantu, always in combination with locative marking. This can be seen in the examples below from Ruwund and Kagulu.

- (21) Ruwund (L53, Nash 1992: 839)

p-iikil côm
SM16-not.be 7.thing
'There is nothing there.'

- (22) Kagulu (G12, Petzell 2008: 167)

kw-ichak-a wa-nhu
SM17-be.without-FV 2-people
'There are no people.'

Arguably, similar processes of semantic bleaching apply to those verbs recruited as negative existentials as to those becoming negative auxiliaries in marked negation types. An important difference is the construction as a whole, since negative verbs which become negative existentials are always inflected with locative subject markers. Thus, locative marking is a persistent feature in both affirmative and negative existential constructions across Bantu. This adheres to the close contiguity in meaning between location and existence given the basic conceptualization that an entity occupying a space also exists (Lakoff 1987: 407; see also Gaeta 2013, Koch 2012) and by analogy does not exist if it is not occupying a space.

The most typical original meaning of a negative existential verb is ‘be without, lack’, as in the example from Kagulu in (22) above. Other examples include *-vsla*

1 The negative existential cycle in Bantu

and *-bhwlá* in Kinga (G65) and Bende (F12) respectively (from Proto-Bantu *-bvd- ‘lack; be lacking; be lost’ (Bastin et al. 2002)), *-gaya* ‘lack’ in Bena (G63) and Hehe (G62), and *-hela* ‘lack’ in Pogolo (G51) and Ndamba (G52). It is worth noting that the meanings ‘be without, lack’ express the polar denotation of the affirmative comitative-existential strategy, discussed in §3. This suggests that this conceptualization of existentials, typical for Bantu languages, applies to the formation of negative existentials even beyond those of Type A.¹² Arguably, it also supports the suggestion of Veselinova (2013b) that negative existentials represent a separate functional domain from affirmative existentials, making statements about the absense of something rather than negating an existence, and thus does not have to be secondary formations to affirmative existentials. More generally, this fact can be seen to reflect the conceptual interaction and semantic contiguity not only between location and existence, but also between possession and existence both synchronically and diachronically (see e.g. Koch 1999; 2012; Heine 1997; see also Veselinova 2013b).

This being said, however, there are also lexical sources which do not denote negative possession, but which still arguably have an inherently negative meaning. In several cases the source is a lexical verb simply meaning ‘not be’, in accordance with a more general cross-linguistic tendency (see Veselinova 2013a; 2016). One such example is the negative existential *titi* in Duala (A24), which according to Ittmann (1939; 1976) stems from an archaic verb *títá* ‘not be, not exist’ inflected for the perfect. Another example is *-iikil* in Ruwund, as seen in (21) above. Lusoga (JE16), Bena (G63) and Vwanji (G66) appear to make use of a reflex of the reconstructed verb *-gìd- ‘abstain from, avoid, refuse’. A final example of a negative existential derived from a negative verbal source in Bantu is *-fwa* ‘die’ which is used in both Kisanga (L35) and Kaonde, as illustrated in (23).

- (23) Kaonde (L41, Foster 1960: 30)

késha tu-kékala na ma-tába lélo ka-fwá-ko
 tomorrow SM1PL-be COM NCP6-corn today NEG-die-LOC17
 ‘Tomorrow we shall have corn, today there is none.’

In total, 22 languages – almost a quarter of our sample – resort to inherently negative verbs in the formation of negative existential constructions, whether this is as the sole marker or together with other strategies.

¹²Interesting in this regard is Gogo (G11) which appears to form negative existentials by applying standard negation to a comitative-existential construction, whereas it employs affirmative constructions of the locative-existential type.

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

Another frequent and widespread source of negative existentials in our sample of Bantu languages is not a verb but rather an adjectival or adverbial form meaning ‘empty’ (and/or with similar meanings). Of the 15 attestants, the most typical case involves reflexes of the Proto-Bantu stem *-tópó ‘only, empty, vain’ (Bastin et al. 2002; Angenot-Bastin 1977) in combination with a locative class marker. Examples (24) and (25) from Kwangali and Ndengeleko exemplify this pattern. Note that there is a mismatch in class agreement between the -tópó form and the locative nominal argument in (25). This lack of automatic agreement suggests that the referential locative reading has been lost, which points to a further decategorialization of the construction as a whole.

- (24) Kwangali (K33, Dammann 1957: 108)

mo-ru-pasa m(u)-tupu mema
18-11-bowl 18-empty 6.water
'In the bowl there is no water.'

- (25) Ndengeleko (P11, Ström 2013: 284)

n-tópó oomba ku-lw-íi
18-empty 9/10.fish 17-11-river
'There is no fish in the river.'

Nine languages of our sample have a negative existential involving *-tópó with a locative prefix. The other seven languages not discussed above are summarized in (26).

- (26) Languages with a negative existential derived from *-tópó

| | | |
|------|----------|-----------------------------------|
| F.12 | Bende | <i>hátuhú ~ kútuhú</i> |
| F.22 | Nyamwezi | <i>hadvhv ~ ndvhv</i> |
| G.35 | Luguru | <i>muduhu</i> |
| L.33 | Luba | <i>patupu ~ kutupu ~ mutupu</i> |
| L.35 | Kisanga | <i>patupu ~ kutupu ~ mutu(pu)</i> |
| P.13 | Matumbi | <i>patvspv ~ kutvspv ~ ntvspv</i> |
| P.14 | Ngindo | <i>haduhu</i> |

Some other words with roughly the same meaning have also been recruited into negative existential constructions. This can be seen in the form *-bule* which is found in Swahili (G42) and which is thought to derive from the Arabic word *bure* [بَرْعَ] ‘bestow of free will’, and, by extension ‘vain’ (Johnson 1939: 42; TUKI 2014: 48). A similar form, presumably borrowed into the language from Swahili, can also be seen in Kami, a highly endangered language spoken in Tanzania which has been in sustained contact with Swahili.

1 *The negative existential cycle in Bantu*

- (27) Kami (G36, Petzell & Aunio 2016)

Sweden ha-bule tangawizi
Sweden 16-NEG.EX 9/10.ginger
'There is no ginger in Sweden.'

Another example is the form *-waka* 'only, vain, naked' recruited as a negative existential marker in Ngoni (N.12) and also in Manda, as exemplified in (28).

- (28) Manda (N11, Bernander 2017: 335)

sénde pa-wáka?
9/10.money 16-empty
'Is there no money (left)?'

In 10 languages, spoken in parts of Gabon, Congo and the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), negative existence is expressed by non-verbal predication, i.e., the figure is simply followed by a negative particle. Duma is a case in point. The copula *li* which is present in the affirmative existential construction in (29a) is not attested in the negative existential construction in (29b) and, whereas standard negation involves both pre-initial *ka-* and clause-final *ve* (29c), only the latter is used for the expression of negative existence.

- (29) Duma (B51)

- a. affirmative existential (Adam 1954: 148)

mungubili mu li i tswa ngundu
1.pig SM1 COP LOC garden
'There is a pig in the garden.'

- b. negative existential (Adam 1954: 148)

baāti bo ve
2.porter PERS.2 NEG
'There are no porters.'

- c. standard negation (Mickala-Manfoumbi 1988: 144)

besú ka-li-bóma mútu ve
PERS.1PL NEG-SM1PL-kill 1.person NEG
'We do not kill the man.'

Languages in this area typically have a discontinuous or double standard negation strategy which combines a pre-verbal, pre-initial or post-initial negative marker with a second post-verbal (either immediately following the verb or in clause-final position) negative marker (Devos & van der Auwera 2013). In some

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

languages, the negative marker used for the expression of negative existence is identical to the standard post-verbal negative marker, as seen in the Duma example (29) and also in (30) from Nduumo (cf. also §5.2.2).

- (30) Nduumo (B63, Adam 1954: 141, 148)

a. standard negation

bisi ka li dji buyu ng'i
PERS.1PL NEG SM1pl eat honey NEG
'We have not eaten the honey.'

b. negative existential

abiti ng'i
porter NEG
'There are no porters.'

However, in a few languages the existential negator formally differs from the post-verbal standard negator, as shown by the examples in (31) from the closely related language Mbete.

- (31) Mbete (B61, Adam 1954: 141, 148)

a. standard negation

bisi le ha dja bvugi ng'i
PERS.1PL SM1PL NEG eat honey NEG
'We have not eaten the honey.'

b. negative existential

abiti kali
porter NEG
'There are no porters.'

It should be noted that the Nduumo standard post-verbal negative marker in (30) can be replaced by the negative marker *onyang'a*, i.e., *abiti onyang'a* 'there are no porters'. The semantics and the usage range of Mbete form *kali* and the Nduumo form *onyang'a* are not entirely clear. Biton & Adam (1969: 114, 171) give the translation equivalents 'no' and 'none, nil', respectively, suggesting an origin in a negative answer particle in Mbete and a negative indefinite pronoun in Nduumo. However, meanings reminiscent of *-*tópú* are attested as well. As can be seen in (32), both elements can be used to express 'empty'.

- (32) a. Mbete (B61, Biton & Adam 1969: 649)

djyala kali
'empty handed'

1 *The negative existential cycle in Bantu*

- b. Nduumo (B63, Biton & Adam 1969: 649)

bvyala onyang'a

'empty handed'

Whether the existential negator is identical or not to the post-verbal standard negator, we consider this particular type of negative existential construction as specialized, i.e., of type A~B (if only used in the present tense) or of type B (and plausibly even type B~C or C if the existential negator indeed spreads to standard negation). In §6.3 we discuss the possible enrolment of these existential negators in the expression of standard negation through a Jespersen Cycle. §6.1 addresses the possible usage extension of these existential negators to other types of non-verbal predication and vice versa.

Finally, there is a small set of only 4 languages spoken in a contiguous area in Malawi and Zambia where negative existence is expressed by adding an enclitic to affirmative existential predication of the locative existential type. The enclitics are *-je* in Tumbuka (N21), *-be* in Chewa/Nyanja (N31), *-ye/-ve* in Nsenga (N41) and *-be* in Nyungwe (N43). The etymology of these arguably cognate forms is as yet unclear to us. In at least the Chewa/Nyanja case, the enclitic displays a curious polysemy between expressing negative existence/possession when combined with the copula *-li/-ri*, and the phasal meaning 'still' when combined with a verb or even a noun (Hetherwick 1916: 116; Watkins 1937: 97, 99; Price 1953: 209; Stevick & Hollander 1965: 116, 205, 279; Paas 2004: 20–21; Mchombo 2004: 60, 68; Kiso 2012: 150, 153, 161).

- (33) Chewa/Nyanja (N31, Stevick & Hollander 1965: 117, 205, 279)

- a. negative possession

ndi-li-be *ma-lalanje*

SM1SG-be-NEG/POSS 6-orange

'I don't have any oranges.'

- b. negative existential

kuno ku-li-be *ma-lalanje ambili*

17.DEM1 17-COP-NEG/EX 6-oranges 6.many

'There aren't many oranges around here.'

- c. persistive

a-ku-gon-a-be

SM1-PRS-sleep-PER

'He's still sleeping.'

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

Stevick & Hollander (1965: 279) express some doubts about the tonal identity between negative existential *-be* and persistive *-be*. This, together with the fact that ‘still’ does not appear to be a common source of negative existence or vice versa (Heine et al. 1993 and Heine & Kuteva 2002, for example, do not mention a conceptual shift in either direction), might suggest that homonymy rather than polysemy is at play here. However, the semantic connection between ‘still’ and ‘empty’ which, as has been shown above, is a common source of negative existentials in Bantu, is confirmed by data from Tumbuka (N21). Tumbuka has an element *waka*, cognate with Manda and Ngoni *-waka*, which is used adverbially to express ‘empty(ly), vain’ and in combination with the copula *-ri* to express ‘still’, as illustrated in (34).

(34) Tumbuka (N21, Young 1932: 120–121)

a. ‘empty, vain’

i. *w-iz-a* *waka*
SM1-come-PFV empty

‘S/he has come empty-handed / for no particular purpose.’

ii. *w-a-gon-a* *waka*
SM1-PST-sleep-FI empty

‘S/he slept without food / without the evening meal.’

b. persistive

zuwa li-ri *waka*
5.sun SM5-COP still

‘The sun is still shining / There is still daylight.’

This might suggest that the lexical source of *-be* is similarly an element expressing ‘empty’ and that this element has developed multiple grammatical functions.

As a final note, it should be mentioned that we are even less sure about the etymology of other instances of Bantu negative existentials in our sample. This might, of course, have had an effect on the outcome presented in this section.

5.2.2 Variation between standardly negated and dedicated negative existentials

In accordance with cross-linguistic tendencies (Veselinova 2016), there are several examples of Bantu languages in the transition stage A~B where a negative existential may be expressed both through applying standard negation strategies (to either a non-dedicated or a dedicated affirmative existential) or, alternatively, a dedicated negative existential marker. As is typical in these cases, the usage

1 *The negative existential cycle in Bantu*

of the specialized existential is confined to the present, standard negation being employed in other temporal contexts (Veselinova 2013b; 2016). Luba is a case in point. In the present tense, Luba can make use of a dedicated negative existential strategy involving *-tupu*, a reflex of **-tópó*, discussed in the previous section. In all other temporal contexts, standard negation is applied to the affirmative existential of the locative-existential type, as can be seen in (35).

- (35) Luba (L33, Beckett 1951: 126)
- a. *le ku-di lu-pete? ku-tupu-lo*
INTER 17-COP 11-knife? 17-empty-11
'Is there a knife? There is not.'
 - b. *ke-kwa-di-po mwepo nansha mu-tyetye*
NEG-17.PST-COP-NEG 3.salt even 3-little
'There was not even a little salt.'

Ombo constitutes a similar case. In the present tense, the dedicated inherently negative verb *-áfa* 'not be' is recruited for the expression of negative existence (36a), whereas other temporal contexts resort to standard negation applied to an affirmative existential of the comitative-existential type, as seen in (36b).

- (36) Ombo (C76, Meeussen 1952: 30)
- a. *k-áfa lv-kula*
SM17-not.be 11-knife
'There is no knife.'
 - b. *ku-tá-íká la-nsímba*
SM17-NEG-be.PST COM-10.lion
'There were no lions.'

For 15 of our languages, the sources claim that such a situation holds. However, given the fact that not many sources provide an extensive account of the expression of negative existence, let alone the variation within, it is likely that this number is actually higher. Furthermore, dedicated negative existentials might have emerged after the publication of the sources, seeing that negative existentials typically are subject to renewal (Veselinova 2016) and the verbal systems of Bantu languages in particular are characterized by rapid innovation and change (Nurse 2008: 25). An indication of such a situation, with what appears to be an emerging dedicated negative existential, comes from Kinga, a language which can be described as belonging to variationist Type/Stage A~B. In Kinga, a negative existential proposition may be produced by employing standard negation

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

strategies, as in (37a). Alternatively, a dedicated negative existential marker may be used, derived from the inherently negative verb *-vula* 'lack' and inflected with a locative subject marker, as in (37b).

- (37) Kinga (G67, Eaton p.c. 2017)

- a. *ni-pa-li i-soda* (~*nipali tsoda*)
NEG-SM16-COP 9-soda
'There's no soda.'
- b. *kɔ-vɔl-a soda*
SM17-lack-FV 9.soda
'There is no soda.'

However, there is no account at all of the negative existential use of *-vula* in the grammar on Kinga by Wolff (1905). What is more, according to Helen Eaton (p.c.), *-vula* with a negative existential only turns up five times in the New Testament, whereas the version with standard negation is far more frequent. Similarly, the neighboring and closely related language Bena is claimed to employ standard negation with the affirmative existential construction (Morrison 2011: 378). However, going through an annotated collection of Bena narratives (Eaton 2015a), we found not only one, but two negative existential markers transparently derived from inherently negative verbs plus locative marking. In fact, there is a set of languages spread across the Bantu speaking area which appears to make use of several dedicated negative existentials. Other examples of languages with several dedicated negative existentials are the Mozambican variety of Ngoni, Bende in Tanzania, Luba in DRC and Lusoga in Uganda (cf. Table 1.1 in the Appendix). Unfortunately, there is seldom any elaboration on the functional differences between these various markers. In the case of Bena, however, there might be dialectal or other lectal differences at play, Bena being characterized by relatively extensive language-internal variation (cf. Morrison 2011: 30–35; Morrison 2015; Mitterhofer 2013).

6 Further processes of change

The focus of this section is the later language types and stages of the NEC as reflected in the Bantu sample. Specifically, we look at types/stages where the negative existential marker has expanded into the domain of standard (verbal) negation. As can be deduced from Figure 1.1 in §4, this does not seem to be very common in the Bantu languages. There is a possibility that some of the illocutionary particles hypothesized by Güldemann (1999) to have developed into standard

1 The negative existential cycle in Bantu

negation markers, as described in §2, ultimately stem from negative existential markers. However, we have failed to find any indications of such a scenario in our data. In fact, it seems that in those cases where the negative existential marker has acquired an extended function as a standard (verbal) negator in Bantu, there are typically specific socio-linguistic factors such as language contact at play. Such a case is addressed in §6.4. First, however, we discuss usage extensions of the negative existential marker outside of verbal negation (§6.1). Then we turn to usage extensions involving marked negation types (§6.2) and finally a possible case of intertwinement between the negative existential cycle and the Jespersen Cycle is discussed (§6.3).

6.1 Extensions of negative existentials outside of verbal negation

A first usage extension concerns the cross-linguistically well-attested development of negative answer particles ('no') and negative indefinites ('nothing'/'nobody') out of negative existential forms (see Schwegler 1988; Croft 1991; Veselinova 2013b; 2014; 2016). Instantiations of such a change from internal negator into external negator are found at least in Ombo (C76), Nyamwezi (F22), Ngoni (N12), Matumbi (P13) and Yao (P21).

In Yao, *ngapagwa* 'nothing, no one, never' is derived from a negative existential form involving standard negation applied to an existential predicate *-pagwa* which is itself derived from a merger between the locative object prefix *-pa-* and the light verb *-gwa* 'fall, occur' (Sanderson 1922: 72, Whiteley 1966: 174). Compare the examples in (38).

- (38) Yao (P21, Sanderson 1922: 72)

- a. *m-ku-saka chichi? ngapagwa*
SM2PL-PRS-want what? nothing
'What do you want? Nothing.'
- b. *nyama nga-ni-si-pagwa*
9.game NEG-PST-SM9-exist
'There was no game.'

Another example of this usage extension can be seen in Matumbi where the negative answer particle *kutupo* 'no', exemplified in (39a), is clearly related to the negative existential form, which can be seen in (39b).

- (39) Matumbi (P13, Krumm 1912: 46, Odden 1996: 304)

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

- a. *kutupo, ba-bi Kibata*
no SM2-be Kibata
'No, they are in Kibata.'
- b. *uláa ndspó*
9.rain 18.vain
'There is no rain.'

Similarly, in Ombo, the negative existential form *káfa* 'there is not', consisting of a class 17 subject prefix *ku-* and the inherently negative verb *-áfa* 'not be', can be used as a negative answer particle expressing 'no' (Meeussen 1952: 30).

Another type of usage extension relates to the fact that negative existentials, negative plain locational clauses and negative possessives are often marked in similar ways in Bantu languages. As touched upon earlier in §5.2.1, there is a conceptual closeness, and consequently a semantic contiguity, between such expressions which can be observed more generally across languages. In Bantu, this conceptual closeness is reflected in both affirmative and negative existential constructions. Dedicated affirmative constructions are typically of the locative or the comitative/possessive type. Moreover, locative marking is a salient feature in both types of existential construction. This is also true for dedicated negative existential constructions which furthermore often involve lexical items with the meaning 'lack, be without'. Heine (1997) and Heine & Kuteva (2002: 241–242) postulate a unidirectional pathway going from possessive predicates to existential constructions. However, it is interesting to note that there are also examples of the reverse pathway in our data, i.e., from negative existential to negative possessive. That this is indeed the case can be deduced from the transparent locative marking and lexical meanings involved in the possessive constructions in question. Tanzanian Ngoni can be used to illustrate this. Just like its neighbour and closest relative Manda (discussed in §5.2.1, example (28)) Ngoni expresses negative existentials through a construction consisting of a locative prefix attached to a lexeme *waka* originally meaning 'empty, naked, only'. However, as can be seen in (40), in Ngoni it is also possible to express negative possessive propositions with the negative existential, merely by the addition of a subject possessor.

- (40) Ngoni (N12, Ebner 1939: 32)
- | | |
|------------|-------------------------|
| <i>ne'</i> | <i>kwawaka chi-pula</i> |
| PERS.1sg | NEG.EX 7-knife |
- 'I don't have a knife.'

Koch (2012) discusses similar affirmative constructions in Mandarin, a topic-prominent language (as are the Bantu languages). He suggests that the possessive

1 The negative existential cycle in Bantu

reading stems from the introduction of a second, thematic participant, introduced as a topic. Thus, to paraphrase example (40) above, resulting in a construction which roughly reads as ‘as for me, there is no knife’. The introduced topic has then been reinterpreted (and conventionalized) as a possessor, the existential pivot as the possessee and consequently the whole existential construction as a construction expressing possession. Although further and more thorough investigation is needed, this explanation seems to hold for negative existentials becoming negative possessives in Bantu languages.

This being said, when a language uses one and the same (dedicated) strategy for the negation of possessive, plain locational and existential clauses and the etymology of the particular strategy is unclear, it is hard to decide from where the strategy started out. Tetela presents such a case. As can be seen in (41), the invariable *keéma* (different from standard negation which involves a pre-initial or a post-initial negative marker) is used for the negation of plain locational (41a), possessive (41b) and existential clauses (41c).

- (41) Tetela (C71, Labaere 1970: 100, 102)

- a. *owánji keéma-kó*
1.chief NEG-LOC17
‘The chief is not there.’
- b. *dimí keéma langéló léngó*
PERS.1SG NEG with_village there
‘I do not have a dwelling there.’
- c. *keéma olemp el̄*
NEG work today
‘There is no work today.’

The etymology of *keéma* is unclear. It is described as an invariable, expressing ‘no, not, nothing, there is nothing (to say, to ask)’ (Hagendorens 1957: 155) but as explained above, such meanings could also have derived from its use as a negative existential marker. Languages like Ndummo, Mbete and Duma similarly use one and the same (dedicated) strategy for the negation of locational, possessive and existential clauses. This is illustrated in (42) for Mbete. Again, the etymology of the dedicated negator *kali* cannot be ascertained (cf. also the discussion in §5.2.1).

- (42) Mbete (B61, Adam 1954: 141, 148)

- a. *bisi ho tca cwaha kali*
PERS.1PL LOC16 bush NEG
‘We are not in the bush.’

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

- b. *me bila kali*
PERS.1SG food NEG
'I do not have food.'
- c. *ekwo kali*
cassava NEG
'There is no cassava.'

6.2 From negative existential to other marked negation types: the Ruwund case

In Ruwund, negative existence can be expressed by applying standard negation, consisting of the discontinuous negative marker *ka*-...-*p*, to the affirmative existential construction. This is illustrated in (43).

- (43) Ruwund (L53, Nash 1992: 839)
ki-kw-aa-d-àà-p mi-long
 NEG-SM17-PST-be-FV-NEG 4-problem
 'There weren't any problems.'

In present tense contexts, a dedicated construction involving the forms *piìkil* (cf. (21)) and *kwiìkil* built from the negative verb *-iikil* and a locative subject prefix can be used.

- (44) Ruwund (L53, Nash 1992: 839)
kw-iìkil mi-long
 SM17-be.not 4-problem
 'There are no problems.'

These forms have spread to other marked negation types as they are also used to express prohibitives (45a) and other negative deontic meanings (45b), as well as occurring in tag questions (45c) and in a special construction expressing a particular type of metalinguistic negation (conveying strong affirmation) (45d). Recall that the locative subject marking – of class 17 in the two previous examples and of class 16 in the examples in (45a,c) – suggests that the usage expansion indeed started out from the negative existential forms.

- (45) Ruwund (L53, Nash 1992: 842)
- a. *p-iìkil wa-mu-lej*
 SM16-be.not/PROH 2SG.NAR-OM1-tell
 'Don't tell her/him.'

1 The negative existential cycle in Bantu

- b. *kw-iikil ku-làb ku shikòl*
SM17-be.not 15-be.late 17 school
'Better not be late for school.'
- c. *p-iikil wà-ci-landin*
SM16-be.not/TAG SM1.PST-OM7-buy.PFV
'S/he did not buy it, did s/he?'
- d. *a-màn-a mar kw-iikil mu-tàpu*
SM2-saw-PST 6.difficulty SM17-be.not 3-way/META
'They suffered terribly.' (lit.: 'They saw difficulty there isn't a way.)'

6.3 Possible enrolment of existential negators in a Jespersen Cycle

A number of closely related Bantu languages spoken in parts of Gabon, Congo and DRC express negative existence through non-verbal predication whereby the figure for which non-existence is predicated is followed by a negative particle (see also §5.2.1). These languages typically make use of a discontinuous negative marker consisting of an inherited (verbal) negator and a second post-verbal negator for the expression of standard negation. Regarding the relation between the existential negator and the second standard negator, a curious variation is observed. First, there are languages where the existential and the post-verbal standard negator are identical, cf. (30) from Ndumu. Additional examples come from Iyaa (46) and Engungwel (47).

- (46) Iyaa (B73c, Mouandza 2001: 439, 436)

- a. standard negation
ndé a á-yéne pé ku mu-sítí
PERS1 NEG SM1-go.PFV NEG 17 3-forest
'He has not gone to the forest.'
- b. negative existential
bààtà pé
2.person NEG
'There are no people.'

- (47) Engungwel (B72a, Rurangwa 1982: 162; Raharimanantsoa p.c. 2017)

- a. standard negation
me ka ñgyé olá we
PERS.1SG NEG SM1SG.know 15.cook NEG
'I do not know how to cook.'

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

- b. negative existential
*onsá ã-ngyel ngingi we/pye*¹³
 in 6-soup 1.fly NEG
 'There is no fly in the soup.'

Next, there are languages where negative existence and standard negation involve formally different (post-verbal) negative markers, cf. (31) from Mbete. Tiene in (48) and Beembe in (49) also show this pattern.

- (48) Tiene (B81, Ellington 1977: 138, 137)

- a. standard negation
ka-lé-môn-e nuká kɔ
 NEG-SM1PL-see-PFV animal NEG
 'We didn't see the animal.'
- b. negative existential
eyaa-me we
 thing NEG
 'Nothing is the matter / There is nothing.'

- (49) Beembe (H11, Nsayi 1984: 155, 162)

- a. standard negation
mè n-síí-tín-à mù-káándá kò
 PERS.1SG SM1SG-NEG-write.PRF 3-letter NEG
 'I have not written a letter.'
- b. negative existential
mà-béénbè mó pè
 6-pigeon PERS.6 NEG
 'There are no pigeons.'

The form of the (dedicated) existential negators is very similar to the form of the standard/existential negators in (46) and (47) above. Could this be indicative of a spread from existential negation (or more largely negation of non-verbal predication, cf. the discussion in §5.2.2) to standard negation through enrolment into a Jespersen Cycle? The fact that there are also languages, like Dzing in (50) below, which do not display (regular) discontinuous standard negation but still express negative existence through the combination of a figure and a negative particle seems to add weight to such a hypothesis.

¹³We are not sure whether this variation is attested in standard negation too.

1 The negative existential cycle in Bantu

- (50) Dzing (B86, Mertens 1938: 333, 377)

a. standard negation

me bifwanisu kee-jala
PERS1SG 8.picture NEG.SM1SG-sell

'I do not sell pictures.'

b. existential negation

muuy mu bisaa ati
3.salt LOC18 8.food NEG

'There is no salt on the food.'

What is more, Mertens (1938: 378) indicates that double negation involving the post-verbal negative marker *ati* does occur, be it very sparingly, to 'renforcer une négation' [to strengthen negation] in Dzing. This could be interpreted as the beginning of a Jespersen Cycle and the recruitment of an existential negator to strengthen standard negation. Croft (1991) suggests a similar path for the Australian language Mara and the Wintuan language Wintu. van der Auwera et al. 2021 [this volume] explicitly attribute the use of the existential negator in standard negation in these two languages to a Jespersen trajectory. Still, a note of caution is needed. Bantu post-verbal negators are known to be prone to borrowing (Nurse 2008: 180). Formally similar post-verbal standard negative markers, as in the closely related languages in (46) to (47), could thus be ascribed to language contact rather than to a language-internal usage extension of an existential negator. Both scenarios could involve an intermediary step whereby the existential negator developed negative indefinite meanings such as 'no, nothing, none' (cf. §6.1) before being recruited in a Jespersen Cycle with or without borrowing. However, we know too little about the etymology of these post-verbal negative elements to be certain of this.

6.4 *hapana* 'there is not, no' in Swahili and beyond

This section discusses the case of *hapana*, one of few examples from Bantu where an original negative existential has broken into the domain of standard (verbal) negation. However, as already mentioned, such an extension in use has taken place in pidgins and creoles and under specific socio-linguistic circumstances of high levels of sustained language contact. Similar to what has been described for the development of Russian *net* in Sino-Russian pidgin (Veselinova 2013b; 2016), it seems that the extension in use of *hapana* comes from its earlier development in Standard Swahili into a proposition-external negator. That is, the form *hapana*

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

is used in Standard Swahili as a negative existential of the comitative type, i.e., ‘there is not with’ (cf. (18) above), but also as a negative answer word as illustrated in (51).

- (51) Swahili (G42)
- U-na-kwenda Bagamoyo? Hapana.*
SM2sg-PRS-go Bagamoyo? no
'Are you going to Bagamoyo? No.'

The word *hapana* has thus developed from a negative existential to also expressing proposition-external negation, which, in turn, has facilitated its reconceptualization into a proposition-internal, viz. standard, negator. Veselinova (2013b; 2016) suggests that this development is specifically prominent in contact varieties where the language competence is relatively low and the word ‘no’, being frequent (and salient), is easily reinterpreted as a main negator. Our investigation lends further support to this hypothesis.

To begin with, there is the case of Kisetla which is “a pidginized form of Swahili spoken between Europeans and Africans in those parts of Kenya where there were, or still are, large European settlements” (Vitale 1980: 51). In the Kisetla variety, *hapana* has generalized over all negative constructions. As shown already in examples (1a) and (1b) in §1, in Standard Swahili, sentential negation involves the addition of negative prefixes, taking either the form of a pre-initial marker *ha-* or a post-initial marker *-si-* (appearing in non-main clause contexts). However, in contrast to the situation in Standard Swahili, in Kisetla *hapana* can appear in both main clause and non-main clause contexts as the sole marker of negation. This can be seen in (52a) and (52b).

- (52) Kisetla (G40C, Vitale 1980: 57–58)

- a. *yeye hapana oa*
PERS.3sg NEG marry.FV
'He has not married.'
- b. *hapana pig-a mimi*
NEG hit-FV PERS.1sg
'Don't (you) hit me!'

A similar process of change can be seen to have occurred in Bunia Swahili. Bunia Swahili is a Congolese variety of Swahili which has been heavily impacted by Central Sudanic languages (Nico Nassenstein 2017, p.c.). In Bunia Swahili, it is not only the case that *hapana* has been recruited as a standard negator, it has

1 *The negative existential cycle in Bantu*

also been further decategorialized and eroded from a free-standing word to an inflectional prefix *-pa-*. This fact, illustrated in (53) below, indicates that a new form-meaning pair differing from the original negative existential has emerged in Bunia Swahili.

- (53) Bunia Swahili (no Guthrie code, Nassenstein p.c. 2016)
- | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Ba-li-kwa</i> | <i>tembey-aka na</i> | <i>bayonette, ba-kisu ivi,</i> |
| SM3PL-PST1-be | walk-PST2 | COM 9.bayonet 2-knife like.that |
| <i>ba-pa-li-kwa</i> | <i>tembey-aka na</i> | <i>bunduki.</i> |
| SM3PL-NEG-PST1-be | walk-PST2 | COM 9.rifle |
- ‘They were walking around with bayonets, knives of that kind, they were not walking around with firearms.’

Finally, Schicho (1992) discusses the introduction of *hapana* into standard negation in yet another Swahili variety, namely Lubumbashi Swahili. In this case, however, *hapana* has been recruited as the second, ‘emphatic’ post-verbal exponent of discontinuous negation marking à la stage II of the Jespersen Cycle (cf. van der Auwera 2009). This is, in turn, reminiscent of a more general pattern across Bantu where post-verbal negative particles originate from proposition-external negators (see Devos & van der Auwera 2013).

- (54) Lubumbashi Swahili (G40F, Schicho 1992: 84)
- | | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| <i>Ha-ba-wez-i</i> | <i>ku-mu-pig-a</i> | <i>hapana</i> |
| NEG-SM2-can-NEG.PRS | 15-OM1-hit-INF | NEG |
- ‘They won’t beat him.’

It would seem that it is not only in pidginized forms of Swahili that *hapana* has been reanalysed into a (proposition-internal) verbal negator. Thus, Nurse (2007) accounts for an interesting case in Pogolo (G51). According to him, it is likely that *hapana* was borrowed as a consequence of the earlier presence of colonial sugar plantations in the Pogolo speaking area, where Swahili served as a lingua franca. An eroded version of *hapana*, (*ha*)*pa-*, has fused with the verbal word in Pogolo where it functions as a (prefixal) verbal negator, as seen in (55).

- (55) Pogolo (G51, Nurse 2007)
- | |
|------------------------|
| <i>hana-tu-hemer-a</i> |
| NEG-SM1pl-buy-FV |
- ‘we are not buying’

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

The use of *hapana* as a verbal negator has not spread to all contexts in Pogolo, and past and relative clause constructions make use of the original post-verbal negator *ndili*. In relation to the NEC, this would suggest that Pogolo is a language of Type B~C, i.e. a language where a marker originating from a negative existential has expanded into marking standard negation, albeit not in all contexts. However, such a conclusion is problematic, taking into account that *hapana* was introduced in the language as a negative answer word and is not used to mark negative existential predicates in Pogolo. Although the data are slim on this matter, it would seem that negative existentials instead are marked with either the construction *pi-hera* (i.e. similar to in neighbouring Ndamba, for which see §5.2.1), or standard negation (Hendle 1907). Taken together, this means that Pogolo is to be characterized as belonging to both Type A~B and Type B~C.

7 Summary and conclusions

The expression of negation in Bantu languages is known to be prone to renewal. This also applies to negative existentials which display considerable synchronic variation.

As accounted for in this study, there is a high percentage of Bantu languages which apply standard negation strategies to affirmative existential constructions in order to express negative existentials. Within this type, a high degree of formal variation is attested due to variation in both the formation of affirmative existentials and the expression of standard negation in Bantu languages. Within the category of dedicated negative existentials formally different constructions are also attested. Languages sharing a similar source for a dedicated marker are often scattered across the Bantu speaking area. This is especially true for negative existentials recruiting inherently negative verbs, the other sources showing a more regional distribution. On the other hand, there are large areas consisting of more or less a continuum of language varieties which all belong to Type/Stage A. Taken together, this suggests that the functional domain of negative existence has been subject to constant renewal and innovation within the Bantu language family.

Still, the expansion of existential negators into the domain of standard verbal negation does not appear to be a common pathway of change among the Bantu languages. According to Veselinova (2016), the most frequent way a negative existential is recruited into expressing standard negation in her sample is through its use with nominalized verb forms. However, there are hardly any indications of negative existentials being used with nominalized verb forms in Bantu.

1 The negative existential cycle in Bantu

As shown by Güldemann (1996; 1999), negation of nominalized forms of lexical verbs – typically assigned to noun class 15 – is instead recurrently achieved by use of post-initial negation markers (56), or inherently negative auxiliaries (57), negation strategies reserved for more marked propositions in Bantu (cf. §1 & §2).

- (56) Shangaji (P312, Devos *fieldnotes*)

| | | | |
|---|-----------|-------------------------|----------------|
| <i>khaácu</i> | <i>y'</i> | <i>oo-sí-pwéch-ey-a</i> | <i>váháali</i> |
| 9.cashew | 9.CONN | 15-NEG-leave-STAT-INF | 16-place |
| 'a cashew nut which is not broken anywhere' | | | |

- (57) Manda (N11, Bernander 2018: 659)

| | | |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>ku-kótók-a</i> | <i>kú-y-a</i> | <i>wákápi</i> |
| 15-NEG-INF | 15-come-INF | alone |
| 'to not be alone' | | |

This could serve as an explanation as to why negative existentials typically do not expand towards the domain of standard negation in the Bantu language family. Nevertheless, as discussed in §5.2.1, a regionally restricted set of languages do use a non-verbal construction for the expression of negative existence, i.e., the figure is simply followed by a negative particle. Interestingly, the same negative particle is used in these languages for the negation of other types of non-verbal predication too, typically involving possessive or locational clauses but in some languages also prohibitives or infinitives. In Mbete, the existential negator *kali* is said to sometimes replace the standard post-verbal negative marker *ni* in infinitival clauses, as seen in (58).

- (58) Mbete (B61, Adam 1954: 141)

| | | |
|--------------------|--------------|-------------|
| <i>me</i> | <i>hoyia</i> | <i>kali</i> |
| PERS.1SG | 15-know-INF | NEG |
| 'not knowing [it]' | | |

In §6.3, it was suggested that in some of these languages, existential negators like *kali* might have become exponents of standard negation through enrolment in a Jespersen Cycle. Whether the enrolment in a Jespersen Cycle involved the development of negative indefinite meanings, is hard to tell.

However, that is exactly what appears to have happened in Lubumbashi Swahili, where the use of the Standard Swahili existential negator *hapani* 'there is not' as an obligatory exponent of double negation was prompted by its use as a proposition-external negation expressing 'no'.

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

Otherwise, intertwining between the negative existential cycle and the Jespersen Cycle appears to occur only rarely in Bantu languages. Instead, a Jespersen Cycle can side-track a potential Negative Existential Cycle by directly recruiting the same negative lexemes to strengthen standard negation. Kami can serve to illustrate this. As seen in (27), repeated here as (59a), negative existentials make use of the negative lexeme *bule* preceded by a locative prefix. The same lexeme, but without the locative marking, can be used to strengthen (standard) negation, as illustrated in (59b).

- (59) Kami (G36, Petzell & Aunio 2016, Petzell p.c. 2016)

- a. existential negation

Sweden ha-bule tangawizi
Sweden 16-NEG.EX 9/10.ginger
'There is no ginger in Sweden.'

- b. standard negation

si-m-towile bule Faisal
NEG.1SC-OM1-hit.PFV NEG Faisal
'I have NOT hit Faisal.'

In the end, the only clear cases of a negative existential marker becoming the standard negative marker occur in language varieties heavily influenced by contact. At least two Swahili varieties and one language heavily influenced by Swahili use (a reduced form of) the external negator *hapanā* 'no' derived from a comitative existential negator in Standard Swahili for the expression of standard negation.

Other types of usage expansion are attested, though. The first concerns the formal similarity between negation strategies used for negating existential, locational and possessive clauses and, in some languages, all types of non-verbal predication. However, in the absence of a clear etymology for the negative marker in question, the direction of the usage expansion cannot be ascertained. A clear case of usage extension starting from the negative existential marker is attested in Ruwundi. Its dedicated negative existential composed of an inherently negative verb and crucially also a locative subject marker has spread to other marked negation types including prohibitives.

It should be kept in mind, however, that this study presents a first exploration of negative existentials in Bantu languages. Additional descriptive data, as well in-depth studies of language-internal and language external (micro-) variation in the expression of negative existence, might disclose the etymologies of some

1 The negative existential cycle in Bantu

negative existential strategies encountered in our sample and bring to light other dedicated negative existential strategies. Further research into Bantu negative existentials might even come to show that the NEC plays a more important role in negation renewal in Bantu languages than accounted for in this paper.

Acknowledgements

We would like to thank the audience of the workshop on the NEC in Stockholm where an earlier version of this paper was presented, as well as the editors and two anonymous reviewers for their valuable comments and suggestions. Thanks are also due to all our language consultants and fellow Bantu language researchers who have contributed with a wealth of language-specific data on this strikingly under-described topic, thus making this study possible. Hannah Gibson's part of this work was supported by a British Academy Postdoctoral Fellowship and a Japan Society for the Promotion of Science short-term Postdoctoral Fellowship. The generous support of these funders is gratefully acknowledged.

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

Abbreviations

| | | | |
|---------|-------------------------------|--------|---|
| 1, 2, 3 | noun classes 1, 2, 3 and etc. | NAR | narrative |
| CJ | conjunction form | NEC | Negative Existential Cycle |
| CONN | connective | NEG | negation |
| CONT | continuous | OM | object marker |
| COP | copula | PER | persistive |
| DEM | demonstrative | PERS | personal pronoun first |
| DRC | Democratic Republic of Congo | PFV | perfective |
| EX | existential | POSS | possessive |
| FUT | future | PREP | preposition |
| FV | final vowel | PROH | prohibitive |
| HAB | habitual | PRS | present |
| IMP | imperative | PST | past |
| INF | infinitive | REF CD | referential concord |
| INTER | interrogative | REL | relative |
| IPFV | imperfective | SBJV | subjunctive |
| LOC | locative | SM | subject marker |
| META | metalinguistic | STAT | stative |
| | | TAG | tag particle |
| | | TUKI | Taasisi ya Uchunguzi wa Kiswahili (Institute of Kiswahili Research) |

Appendix

Key to the table

- SN = Standard verbal negation, which here refers to both primary and secondary negative marking (as both negate verbs).
- #, - The number sign <#> and the hyphen <-> differentiate free-standing negatives from negative affixes.
- SN_{1/2} marks the various negotors of a discontinuous negation strategy (i.e. a reflex of stage II of Jespersen Cycle).
- EXIST = (Affirmative) existential (whether dedicated or non-dedicated)
- LOC = Locative element
- COP = COPULA
- The Guthrie numbers for referential classification of the Bantu languages are taken from *Maho's* (2009) updated list.

1 The negative existential cycle in Bantu

Table 1.1: The data set for Bantu negative existentials

| Name | ISO-code | Guthrie code | Construction | Lex. etymology | Stage | Other meanings (when noted) | Source(s) |
|-----------|----------|--------------|--|---|---------------|---|--------------------------------|
| Duala | dua | A24 | <i>titi</i> | * <i>titā</i> 'not to be, not to exist' (infl. in prf) | B(?) | neg. locational | Ittmann (1939), Ittmann (1976) |
| Bafia | ksf | A53 | - <i>yim</i> | 'not be' | B(?) | neg. locational | Guarima Pupineau (1992) |
| Eton | eto | A71 | SN-EXIST | — | A | | van de Velde (2008) |
| Ewondo | ewo | A72(a) | sákig | 'not be' + SN ₂ | A | | Essono (1993) |
| Bulu | bum | A74a | 1) -sékk 2) <i>tske</i> 3) sá | 1) 'not be' + SN ₂ 2) <i>te</i> + SN ₂ 3) ? | A-B | 1) -sé neg. copula used for loc., ex., poss., qualification 2) neg. inf., prohibitive, neg. conditional, 'without' 3) neg. identification, subsequentive clause | Alexandre (1966) |
| Orongu | (mye) | B11b | SN-EXIST | — | A | | Ambouroue (2007) |
| Kota | koq | B25 | <i>nídeká</i> | 'not one' | B(?) | | Piron (1990) |
| Tsogo | tsv | B31 | SN-EXIST | — | A | | Marchal-Nasse (1979) |
| Duma | dma | B51 | # v? | — | B(?) | neg. locational; possessives; NEG2 of discont. SN | Adam (1954) |
| Nzebi | nzb | B52 | SN ₁ -EXIST | SN ₂ — | A-B | NEG2 of discont. SN | Marchal-Nasse (1987) |
| Mbete | mdt | B61 | <i>kali</i> | NEG+ 'be' (?) | B(?) | neg. locational; infinitives; possessives; indef. attributives; 'no' | Adam (1954) |
| Nduumø | nmd | B63 | 1) <i>ng'i</i> 2) <i>oñana</i> | 1)? 2)? | 1) B 2) B? | 1) NEG2 of discont. SN; neg. locational; possessives | Adam (1954) |
| Engungwel | ngz | B72(a) | 1) SN ₁ # EXIST SN ₂ 2) <i>p耶~wε</i> | 1) – 2) 'none' | 1) A 2) B | 2) NEG2 of discont. SN? | Raharinanantsoa (p.c.) |

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

| | | | | | | | |
|-----------|-----|------|--|----------------------------------|-----------------|---|---|
| Iyaa | iyx | B73c | <i>pé</i> | 'none'? | B(?) | NEG2 of discont. SN; neg. locational; prohibitive | Mouanda (2001) |
| Teke-Tyee | tyx | B73d | 1) SN ₁ # EXIST SN ₂ 2) <i>wé</i> | 1) -SN ₂ 2) 'none' | 1) A 2) B | | Raharimanantsoa (p.c.) |
| Teke-Eboo | ebo | B74B | 1) SN ₁ # EXIST SN ₂ 2) <i>wé</i> | 1) - 2) 'none' | 1) A 2) B(?) | | Raharimanantsoa (p.c.) |
| Tiene | tti | B81 | 1) SN-EXIST 2) <i>wé</i> | 1) - 2) 'none'? | 1) A 2) B(?) | | Ellington (1977) |
| Dzing | diz | B86 | <i>ati</i> | ? | B-C | neg. possessives; neg. plain locational; attributives; infinitives; reinforce standard negation | Mertens (1938) |
| Mboshi | mdw | C25 | # SN | | A | | Amboulou (1998) |
| Lingala | lin | C30B | EXIST # SN | - | A | | Maniacky (p.c.) |
| Ntomba | nfo | C35a | - <i>mbe</i> | 'not be' | B | | Manet (1966) |
| Tetela | tll | C71 | <i>këma</i> | 'not, none' | A | neg. possessives; neg. plain locational | Jacobs (1964) |
| Ombo | oml | C76 | 1) SN-EXIST 2) LOC- <i>đfa</i> | 1) - 2) 'not be' | A-B | neg. identification; 'no' | Meeussen (1952) |
| Bushong | buf | C83 | <i>kwa</i> | ? | B(?) | | Vansina (1959) |
| Holooho | hoo | D28 | SN-EXIST (?) | - | B(?) | | Coupez (1955) |
| Budu | buu | D332 | SN-EXIST | - | A | | Asangama (1983) |
| Kikuyu | kik | E51 | SN-EXIST | - | A | | Englebretson & Wa-Ngatho (2015), Grégoire (1975) |
| Kamba | kam | E55 | SN-EXIST | - | A | | Whiteley & Muli (1962) |
| Gweno | gwe | E65 | SN-EXIST | - | A | - | Philippson & Nurse (2000) |

1 The negative existential cycle in Bantu

| Digo | dig | E73 | SN-EXIST | - | A | - | Nicolle (2013) |
|-----------------------------|-----|------|---|---|------------------|--------------------------------|--|
| Bende | bdp | F12 | 1) LOC- <i>tuhú</i> 2) LOC-(<i>a</i>) <i>bhulá</i> | 1) 'only, empty, vain' 2) 'lack' | B | ? | Y. Abe (p.c.) |
| Nyanwezi | num | F22 | LOC- <i>džhw</i> | 'only, empty, vain' | B | 'no, nobody, nothing' | Maganga & Schadeberg (1992), P. Kanijo (p.c.) |
| Rangi | lag | F33 | SN-EXIST | - | A | | Gibson (2012); Dunham (2005) |
| Mbugwe | mgz | F34 | SN-EXIST | - | A | | Gibson & Wilhelmsen (2015) |
| Gogo | gog | G11 | LOC- <i>ši-na</i> | 'be without' (neg.comitative) | B | 'no' | Cordell (1941) |
| Kagulu | kki | G12 | LOC- <i>ichaka</i> | 'lack, be without' | B | | Petzell (2008) |
| Luguru | ruf | G35 | LOC- <i>duhu</i> | 'only, empty, vain' | B(?) | | G. Moses (p.c.) |
| Kami | keu | G36 | LOC- <i>bulé</i> | 'nothing at all, not yet'(?)< Sw. <i>bure</i> 'for free, in vain' | B | neg. possessive | Petzell & Aunio (2016), Petzell (p.c.) |
| Kisetta (Swahili pidgin) | sta | G40C | SN-EXIST | - | C | SN | Vitale (1980) |
| Lubumbashi Swahili | swc | G40F | SN-EXIST | - | C | postverbal emphatic negator | Schicho (1992) |
| Bunia Swahili | swc | G40x | SN-EXIST | - | C | SN | Nassenstein (p.c.) |
| (Standard) Swahili | swh | G42 | SN-EXIST | - | A | 'no' | Marten (2013) |
| Pogolo | p9j | G51 | 1) LOC- <i>hera</i> 2) <i>hapana</i> | 1) 'in vain, for nothing' 2) Sw. borrowing(?) | 1) A-B 2) B-C | | Nurse (2007), Hendle (1907) |
| Ndamba | ndj | G52 | LOC <i>hela</i> | 'just, any' | B | neg. possessive | Novotná (2005), Edelsten & Lijongwa (2010) |
| Hehe | heh | G62 | LOC- <i>gaya</i> | 'lack' | B | | Velten (1899), L. Ngwasi (p.c.) |

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

| | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------|-----|-------|---|---|------|--|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Bena | bez | G63 | 1) SN-EXIST 2) LOC- <i>gaya</i> 3) LOC- <i>zila</i> | 1) – 2) 'lack' 3) 'refuse' | A | A-B | 2) neg. possessive | Morrison (2011), Eaton (2015a) |
| Pangwa | pbr | G64 | SN-EXIST | – | A | | | Stirnemann (1983) |
| Kinga | zga | G65 | 1) SN-EXIST 2) LOC- <i>wila</i> | 1) – 2) 'be without, not be in possession of' – | A-B | | | Wolff (1905), Eaton (p.c.) |
| Wwanji | wbi | G66 | 1) SN-EXIST 2) LOC- <i>sili</i> | 1) – 2) (< *- <i>gid</i> : 'refuse?') | A-B | neg possessive; neg relative, 'w/o' (conj.) | Eaton (p.c.) | |
| Kisi | kiz | G67 | EXIST # SN | – | A | | | Ngonyani (2011) |
| Beembe | beq | H11 | # <i>pe</i> | – | B? | neg. locational | Nsayi (1984) | |
| South-East Kongo | kon | H16h | 1) SN ₁ # EXIST # SN ₂ 2) <i>nkatu</i> | 1) – 2) 'emptiness, uselessness, zero, desolation, void, blank, vacancy, nought' | A-B | | | Bentley (1887) |
| Kinyarwanda | kin | JD61 | <i>ntaa</i> | 'be not' (* < COP <i>ni</i> + NEG - <i>ta-</i>) | B(?) | "exclusive marker" | | Kimmenyi (1980) |
| Luganda | lug | JF15 | SN-EXIST | – | A | | | Ashlon et al. (1984) |
| Lusoga | xog | JF16 | 1) LOC- <i>zila</i> 2) <i>mpagho</i> | 1) 'reject as a result of anger'; 'not have' 2)? | B(?) | | | Nabirey (p.c.) |
| Jita | jit | JF25 | SN-EXIST | – | A | | | J. Malima (p.c.) |
| Ikizu | ikz | JF402 | SN-EXIST | – | A | | | Gray (2013) |
| Gusii | guz | JF42 | SN-EXIST | – | A | | | Whitelock (1956) |
| Ikoma-Nata | ntk | JF45 | SN-EXIST | – | A | | | A. Laine (p.c.) |
| Lwena/Luvale | hue | K14 | SN-LOC- <i>exi</i> | 'not be' | B(?) | | | Horton (1949) |

1 The negative existential cycle in Bantu

| | | | | | | | |
|-------------|-----|------|---|--------------------------------|------|-------------------------|--|
| Kwangali | kwn | R33 | 1) SN-EXIST 2) LOC- <i>tupu</i> | 1) – 2) 'empty' | A-B | neg. possessive | Dammann (1957) |
| Holu | hoo | L12b | LOC- <i>eesi</i> | 'not be' | B(?) | neg. locational | Daelman (2003) |
| Luba | hub | L33 | 1) SN-EXIST 2) LOC- <i>tu(pu)</i> 3) fwa-LOC | 1) – 2) 'empty' 3) 'die' | A-B | neg. locational | Beckett (1951), van Avermaet & Mbuya (1954) |
| Sanga | sng | I35 | 1) SN ₁ -EXIST # (SN ₂) 2) LOC- <i>ti(pu)</i> 3) fwa-LOC | 1) – 2) 'empty' 3) 'die' | A-B | neg. locational | Hadelin (1938), Coupéz (1981) |
| Konde | kqn | I41 | fwa-LOC | 'die' | B | | |
| Lunda | lun | I52 | LOC- <i>osi</i> | ? | B | | Broughall Woods (1924), Foster (1960) |
| Ruwund | rnd | I53 | 1) SN 2) LOC- <i>iikil(linga)</i> | 1) – 2) ? | A-B | | Kawasha (2003) |
| Fipa | fip | M13 | SN-EXIST | – | A | | Nash (1992) |
| Malila | mqc | M24 | SN-EXIST | – | A | | |
| Ndali | ndh | M301 | SN-EXIST | – | A | | Eaton (2015b) |
| Nyakyusa | nyy | M31 | SN-EXIST | – | A | | |
| Lamba | lab | M54 | SN-EXIST | – | A | | Botne (2008) |
| Tonga | toi | M64 | LOC- <i>nyina</i> | 'be w.o.' | B | | Persohn (2017) |
| Manda | mgs | N11 | 1) SN 2) LOC/CL7- <i>waka</i> | 1) – 2) empty, just' | A-B | neg. poss. | Doke (1938) |
| Ngoni (Tz.) | ngo | N12 | LOC- <i>waka</i> | 'empty, just' | B | 'no'(); neg. possessive | Collins (1962) |
| | | | | | | | Bernander (2017) |
| | | | | | | | Spiss (1904), Ngonyani (2003), Mapunda (p.c.) |

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

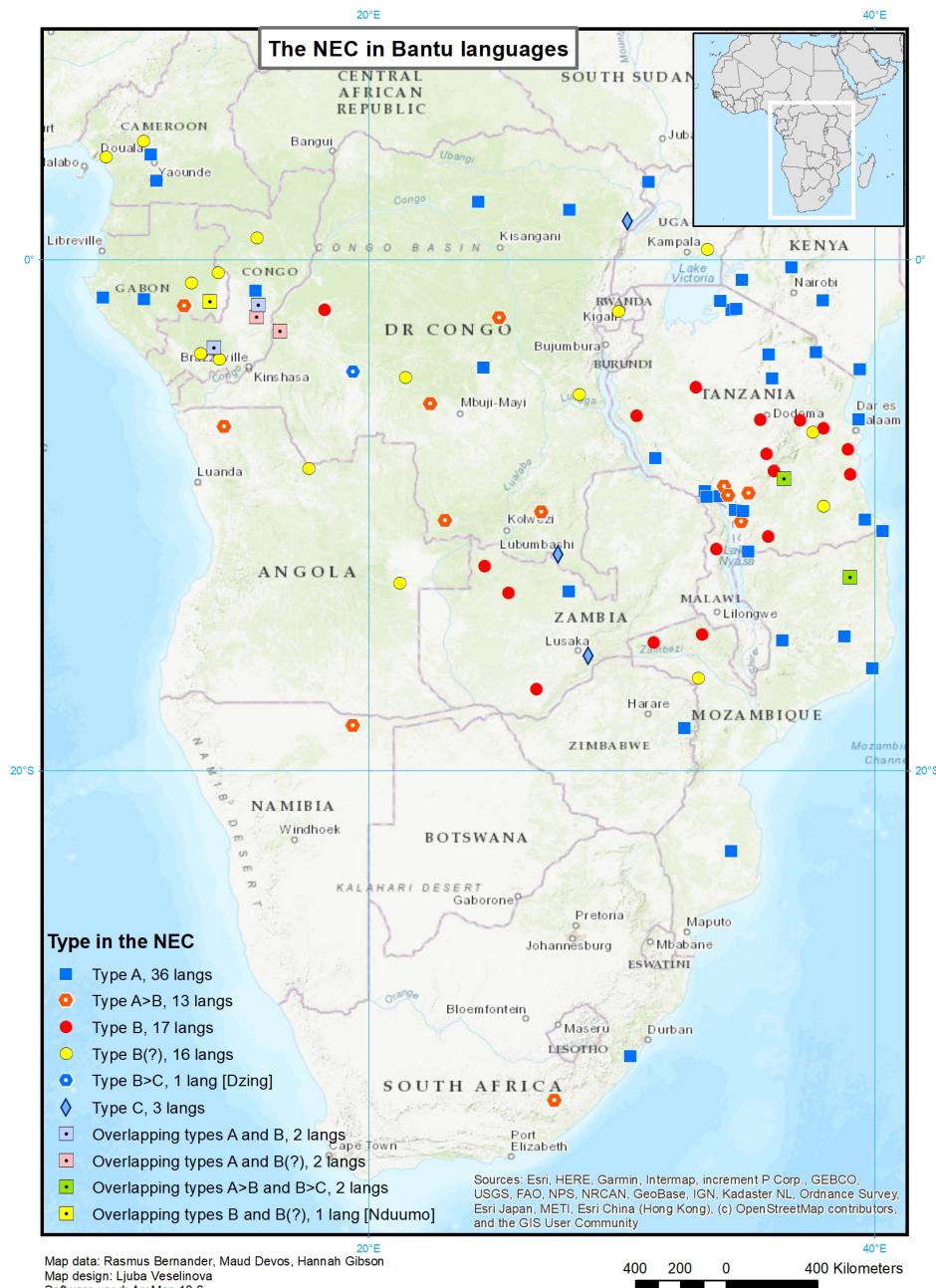
| | | | | | | | |
|--------------|---------|------|--|---------------------------|------------------|---|---|
| Ngoni (Moz.) | no code | N12x | 1) <i>naku(uva)</i> 2) <i>njetā</i> ? | 1) SN-INFR-'be' 2) A~B | 1) B~C 2) A~B | 1) external negation of main predication with fully inflected main verb; contrastive meaning; negative rhetorical question | Kröger (2011; n. d.) |
| Matengo | mgv | N13 | EXIST # SN | - | A | | Yoneda (2000, p.c.) |
| Tumbuka | tum | N21 | LOC-COP- <i>je</i> | 'be'? | B | | Kiso (2012), Vail (1972) |
| Nyanja-Chewa | nya | N31 | LOC-COP- <i>be</i> | 'be still'? | B | | Bentley & Kulemekwa (2001), Kiso (2012), Gregoire (1975) |
| Nsenga | nse | N41 | LOC-COP- <i>je/-ve</i> | 'be without' | B | | Ranger (1928) |
| Nyungwe | nyu | N43 | LOC-COP- <i>be</i> | 'be'? | B(?) | | Grégoire (1975) |
| Ndengeleko | ndg | P11 | LOC- <i>tópó</i> | 'empty' | B | neg. possessive | Ström (2013) |
| Matumbi | mgw | P13 | <i>ntopó-ndipój</i> | LOC18-'empty' | B | 'no' | Krumm (1912), Odden (1996) |
| Ngindo | nnq | P14 | LOC- <i>dhu</i> | 'empty' | B(?) | | Gromova & Úrmáncscheva (2005) |
| Yao | yao | P21 | SN-EXIST | - | A | | Sanderson (1922), Whiteley (1966) |
| Makonde | kde | P23 | SN-EXIST | - | A | | Leach (2010), Kraal (2005) |
| Makwe | ymk | P231 | SN-EXIST | - | A | | Devos (2008) |
| Makhuwa | vmw | P31 | SN-EXIST | - | A | | van der Wal (2009), Kattupha (1991) |
| Shangaji | nte | P312 | SN-EXIST | - | A | | Devos (<i>field notes</i>) |
| Manyika | mxc | S13 | SN-EXIST | | A | | Stevick & Machiwana (1960) |
| Xhosa | xho | S41 | SN-EXIST | | A-B | | Ström (p.c.) |
| Zulu | zul | S42 | SN-EXIST | | A | | Grout (1859) |
| Thsawaa | tsc | S51 | SN-EXIST | | A | | Gadelii (1998) |

1 The negative existential cycle in Bantu

References

- Adam, J. J. 1954. *Grammaire composée mbede, ndumu, duma* (Mémoires de l’Institut d’Etudes Centrafricaines 6). Montpellier & Brazzaville: Imprimerie Charité.
- Alexandre, Pierre. 1966. *Système verbal et prédictif du Bulu*. Paris: Librairie C. Klincksieck.
- Amboulou, Célestin. 1998. *Le mbochi: langue bantu du Congo Brazzaville (zone C, groupe C20)*. INALCO Paris. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Ambouroue, Odette. 2007. *Eléments de description de l’orungu, langue bantu du Gabon (B11b)*. Université Libre de Bruxelles. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Angenot-Bastin, Yvonne. 1977. Les mots pour “tout” et “seul” dans les langues bantoues. *Africana Linguistica* 7. 1–56.
- Asangama, Natisa. 1983. *Le budu: langue bantu du nord-est du Zaïre: esquisse phonologique et grammaticale*. Université de la Sorbonne Nouvelle (Paris 3). (Doctoral dissertation).
- Ashton, E. O., E. M. K. Mulira, E. G. M. Ndawula & A. N. Tucker. 1954. *A Luganda grammar* (Mémoires de l’Institut d’Etudes Centrafricaines). London: Longmans, Green & Co.
- Bastin, Yvonne, André Coupez, Evariste Mumba & Thilo C. Schadeberg (eds.). 2002. *Bantu lexical reconstructions 3 / Reconstructions lexicales bantoues 3* (Mémoires de l’Institut d’Etudes Centrafricaines). Online database. Tervuren: Royal Museum for Central Africa.
- Beckett, H. W. 1951. *Handbook of Kiluba (Luba-Katanga)* (Mémoires de l’Institut d’Etudes Centrafricaines). Mulongo: Garenganze Evangelical Mission.
- Bentley, Delia, Francesco Maria Ciccone & Silvio Cruschina. 2013. Existential constructions in cross-linguistic perspective. *Italian Journal of Linguistics* 25(1). 1–13.
- Bentley, Mayrene E. & Andrew T. C. Kulemeka. 2001. *Chicewa*. München: Lincom Europa.
- Bentley, W. Holman. 1887. *Dictionary and grammar of the Congo language as spoken at San Salvador, the ancient capital of the Old Kongo empire, West Africa*. London: Baptist Missionary Society & Trüber & Co.
- Bernander, Rasmus. 2017. *Grammar and grammaticalization in Manda: An analysis of the wider TAM domain in a Tanzanian Bantu language*. University of Gothenburg. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Bernander, Rasmus. 2018. The grammaticalization of *-kotok-* into a negative marker in Manda (Bantu N.11). *Linguistics* 56(3). 653–679.

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson



Map 1.2: NEC in Bantu

1 *The negative existential cycle in Bantu*

- Bernander, Rasmus, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson. in press. Existential constructions in Bantu languages. In Lutz Marten, Rozenn Guérois, Hannah Gibson & Eva-Marie Bloom-Ström (eds.), *Current approaches to morphosyntactic variation in Bantu*, no pages. Oxford: OUP. In press.
- Biton, Alexandre & Jean-Jérôme Adam. 1969. *Dictionnaire ndumu-mbede-français et français-ndumu-mbede: Avec petite flore de la région de Franceville (Gabon) et grammaire ndumu-mbede*. Libreville: Archevêche.
- Botne, Robert. 2008. *A grammatical sketch of Chindali (Malawian variety)*. Philadelphia: American Philosophical Society.
- Broughall Woods, R. E. 1924. *A short introductory dictionary of the Kaonde language, with English-Kaonde appendix*. London: The Religious Track Society.
- Collins, B. 1962. *Tonga grammar*. London: Longmans.
- Cordell, Oliver T. 1941. *Gogo grammar*. Mpwapwa: self-published.
- Coupez, André. 1955. *Esquisse de la langue holoholo* (Annales du Musée Royal du Congo Belge). Tervuren: La Commission de Linguistique Africaine.
- Coupez, André. 1981. *Éléments de grammaire sanga*. Tervuren: RMCA.
- Creissels, Denis. 2013. Control and the evolution of possessive and existential constructions. In Elly van Gelderen, Jóhanna Barddal & Michela Cennamo (eds.), *Argument structure in flux. The naples-capri papers*, 461–476. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Creissels, Denis. 2014. *Existential predication in typological perspective*. Unpublished manuscript, University of Lyon. <http://www.deniscreissels.fr/public/Creissels-Exist.Pred.pdf>.
- Creissels, Denis. 2015. *Existential predication and trans-possessive constructions*. Unpublished manuscript, University of Lyon.
- Croft, William. 1991. The evolution of negation. *Journal of Linguistics* 27(1). 1–27.
- Daeleman, Jan. 2003. *Notes grammaticales et lexique du Kiholu*. München: Lincom Europa.
- Dammann, Erns. 1957. *Studien zum Kwangali: Grammatik, Texte, Glossar* (Abhandlungen aus dem Gebiet der Auslandskunde: Völkerkunde, Kulturgeschichte und Sprachen 35). Hamburg: De Gruyter.
- Devos, Maud. 2008. *A grammar of Makwe* (Studies in African Linguistics 71). Munich: Lincom Europa.
- Devos, Maud, Michael Kasombo Tshibanda & Johan van der Auwera. 2010. Jespersen cycles in Kanincin: Double, triple and maybe even quadruple negation. *Africana Linguistica* 16. 155–181.
- Devos, Maud & Johan van der Auwera. 2013. Jespersen cycles in Bantu: Double and triple negation. *Journal of African Languages and Linguistics* 34(2). 205–274.

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

- Devos, Maud & Daniël Van Olmen. 2013. Describing and explaining the variation of Bantu imperatives and prohibitives. *Studies in Language* 37(1). 1–57.
- Doke, Clement M. 1938. *Text book of Lamba grammar*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press.
- Dunham, Margaret. 2005. *Éléments de description du langi, langue bantu F.33 de Tanzanie* (SELAF 413). Louvain / Paris: Peeters.
- Eaton, Helen. 2015a. *Bena narrative discourse* (SIL Language and Culture Documentation and Description 25). Dallas: SIL International.
- Eaton, Helen. 2015b. *Malila narrative discourse* (SIL Language and Culture Documentation and Description 27). Dallas: SIL International.
- Ebner, Ezekiel. 1939. *Kisutu Grammatik: Mission Magagura, Tanganyika*. Unpublished manuscript. Peramiho: St. Benedictine Mission.
- Edelsten, Peter & Chiku Lijongwa. 2010. *A grammatical sketch of Chindamba: A Bantu language (G52) of Tanzania*. Köln: Köppe.
- Ellington, J. E. 1977. *Aspects of the Tiene language*. University of Wisconsin-Madison. (doctoral dissertation).
- Englebretson, Robert & Wambūi Müringo Wa-Ngatho. 2015. A basic sketch grammar of Gikuyū. *Rice Working Papers in Linguistics* 7. 1–237.
- Essono, Jean-Jacques. 1993. *Description synchronique de l'ewondo (bantou A72a du Cameroun): phonologie, morphologie, syntaxe*. Université de la Sorbonne Nouvelle (Paris 3). (Doctoral dissertation).
- Foster, C. S. 1960. *Lessons in Kikaonde*. Details wanting. Tervuren: Manuscript consultable in the Linguistics Library of the Royal Museum for Central Africa.
- Freeze, Ray. 1992. Existentials and other locatives. *Language* 68(3). 553–595.
- Gadelii, Karl E. 1998. *A grammatical sketch of Xitswa*. Unpublished manuscript. S.n.: manuscript.
- Gaeta, Livio. 2013. Existential constructions: a semasiological perspective. In E. van Gelderen, M. Cennamo & J. Barddal (eds.), *Argument Structure in Flux: The Naples/Capri Papers*, 477–509. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Gibson, Hannah, Rozenn Guérois & Lutz Marten. 2018. Variation in Bantu copula constructions. In María J. Arche, Antonio Fábregas & R. Marín (eds.), *The Grammar of Copulas Across Languages* (Oxford Studies in Theoretical Linguistics). Oxford University Press.
- Gibson, Hannah & Vera Wilhelmsen. 2015. Cycles of negation in Rangi and Mbugwe. *Africana Linguistica* 21. 233–257.
- Gibson, Hannah Cameron. 2012. *Auxiliary placement in Rangi: A dynamic syntax perspective*. SOAS, University of London. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Givón, Talmy. 1973. The time-axis phenomenon. *Language* 49(4). 890–925.
- Givón, Talmy. 2001. *Syntax: An introduction*. Vol. 1–2. Philadelphia: J. Benjamins.

1 *The negative existential cycle in Bantu*

- Gray, Hazel. 2013. *Locatives in Ikizu*. Universiteit Leiden. (MA thesis).
- Grégoire, Claire. 1975. *Les locatifs en bantu* (Annales Sciences humaines 83). Ter-vuren: Musée royal de l'Afrique centrale.
- Grollemund, Rebecca, Simon Branford, Koen Bostoen, Andrew Meade, Chris Ven-ditti & Mark Pagel. 2015. Bantu expansion shows that habitat alters the route and pace of human dispersals. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 112(43). 13296–13301. <http://www.pnas.org/content/112/43/13296>.
- Gromova, Nelly & Anna Yu Urmanchieva. 2005. Tanzaniyskiye skazki-bilingvy [Tanzanian bilingual tales]. In A. Koval (ed.), *Afrikanskaja skazka [the African folktale]*, 215–354. Moscow: Nauka.
- Grout, Lewis. 1859. *The Isizulu: A grammar of the Zulu languages*. Whitefish, Mon-tana: Kessinger Publishing.
- Guarisma Pupineau, Gladys. 1992. *Le Bafia, langue Bantoue (A52) du Cameroun*. Université de Paris V – René Descartes. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Guérois, Rozenn. 2015. *A grammar of Cuwabo (Mozambique, Bantu P34)*. Univer-sity of Lyon 2. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Güldemann, Tom. 1996. *Verbalmorphologie und Nebenprädikationen im Bantu: Eine Studie zur funktional motivierten Genese eines konjugationalen Subsystems*. Bochum: Brockmeyer.
- Güldemann, Tom. 1999. The genesis of verbal negation in Bantu and its depen-dency on functional features of clause types. In J-M Hombert & L. M. Hyman (eds.), *Bantu historical linguistics*, 545–587. Stanford: CSLI Publications.
- Güldemann, Tom. 2008. The Macro-Sudan belt: Towards identifying a linguistic area in northern Sub-Saharan Africa. In B. Heine & D. Nurse (eds.), *A linguistic geography of Africa*, 151–185. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Güldemann, Tom. 2011. Proto-Bantu & Proto-Niger-Congo: Macro-areal typology and linguistic reconstruction. In O. Hieda, C. König & H. Nakagawa (eds.), *Geographical typology and linguistic areas*, 109–142. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Güldemann, Tom & T. Hagemeijer. 2006. Negation in the Gulf of Guinea creoles: Typological and historical perspectives. Paper presented at ACBLPE annual meeting, Universidade de Coimbra, June 26–28.
- Guthrie, Malcolm. 1971. *Comparative Bantu*. Vol. 2. Farnborough: Gregg Press.
- Hadelin, Roland. 1938. *Vocabulaire français-sanga*. St-André lez Bruges: Missions Bénédictines.
- Hagendorens, J. 1957. *Dictionnaire otetela-français*. Tshumbe: Sainte-Marie.
- Harries, Lyndon. 1940. An outline of Maŵiha grammar. *Bantu studies* 14. 91–174.
- Heine, Bernd. 1997. *Possession: Cognitive sources, forces and grammaticalization*. Cambridge: Cambridge University.

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

- Heine, Bernd, Tom Güldemann, C. Kilian-Hatz, D. A. Lessau, H. Roberg, M. Schladt & T. Stoltz. 1993. *Conceptual shift: A lexicon of grammaticalization processes in African languages* (Afrikanistische Arbeitspapiere 34/35). Köln: Institut für Afrikanistik, Universität zu Köln.
- Heine, Bernd & Tania Kuteva. 2002. *World lexicon of grammaticalization*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Hendle, P. J. 1907. *Die Sprache der Wapogoro (Deutsch-Ostafrika) nebst einem Deutsch-Chipogoro und Chipogoro-Deutschen Wörterbuch* (Archiv für das Studium der deutschen Kolonialsprachen 6). Berlin: Georg Reimer.
- Hetherwick, Alexander. 1916. *A practical manual of the Nyanja language*. Nyasaland & Northern Rhodesia: The African lakes Corporation, Ltd.
- Horton, Alonzo E. 1949. *A grammar of Luvale*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press.
- Ittmann, Johannes. 1939. *Grammatik des Duala (Kamerun): Unter Mitarbeit von Carl Meinhof*. Berlin: D. Reimer.
- Ittmann, Johannes. 1976. *Wörterbuch der Duala-Sprache (Kamerun): Dictionnaire de la langue duala = Dictionary of the Duala language*. Berlin: D. Reimer.
- Jacobs, John. 1964. *Tetela-Grammatica (Kasayi, Congo)*. 2 vols. Gent: Wetenschappelijke Uitgeverij en Boekhandel.
- Johnson, Frederick (ed.). 1939. *A standard Swahili-English dictionary (founded on Madan's Swahili-English dictionary)*. Nairobi: Oxford University Press.
- Kamba Muzenga, J. G. 1981. *Les formes négatives des bantoues*. Tervuren: MRAC.
- Katupha, José. 1991. *The grammar of Emakhuwa verbal extensions: An investigation of the role of extension morphemes in derivational verbal morphology and in grammatical relations*. SOAS, University of London. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Kawasha, Boniface Kaumba. 2003. *Lunda grammar: A morphosyntactic and semantic analysis*. University of Oregon. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Kimenyi, Alexandre. 1980. *A relational grammar of Kinyarwanda*. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- King'ei & Ndalu. 1989. *Kamusi ya methali ya Kiswahili*. Reprinted in 2009. Nairobi: E.A.E.P.
- Kiso, Andrea. 2012. *Tense and aspect in Chichewa, Citumbuka and Cisena: A description and comparison of the tense-aspect systems in three southeastern Bantu languages*. University of Stockholm. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Koch, Peter. 1999. Cognitive aspects of semantic change and polysemy: the semantic space have/be. In A. Blank & Peter Koch (eds.), *Historical Semantics and Cognition* (Cognitive Linguistics Research 13), 279–305. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.

1 The negative existential cycle in Bantu

- Koch, Peter. 2012. Location, existence, and possession: A constructional typological exploration. *Linguistics* 50(3). 533–603.
- Kraal, Peter. 2005. *A grammar of Makonde (Chinnina, Tanzania)*. University of Leiden. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Kröger, Heidrun. 2011. Negation in Mozambican Ngoni. Paper presented at the 4th International Conference on Bantu languages, Berlin, 7–9 April.
- Kröger, Heidrun. n. d. Notes on Ngoni. Unpublished manuscript.
- Krumm, Bernhard. 1912. Grundriß einer Grammatik des Kimatumbi (Deutsch-Ostafrika, Bezirk Kilwa-Rufiji). *Afrikanische Studien* 15. 1–63.
- Labaere, R. 1970. *Grammaire de la langue tetela: Tome II: Syntaxe*. Wezembeek-Oppem: P. Passionistes.
- Lakoff, George. 1987. *Women, fire, and dangerous things: What categories reveal about the mind*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Leach, Michael B. 2010. *Things hold together: Foundations for a systemic treatment of verbal and nominal tone in Plateau Shimakonde*. Leiden University. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Maganga, Clement & Thilo C. Schadeberg. 1992. *Kinyamwezi: Grammar, texts, vocabulary*. Köln: Köppe.
- Maho, Jouni. 1999. *A comparative study of Bantu noun classes*. Gothenburg: Acta Universitatis Gothoburgensis.
- Maho, Jouni Filip. 2009. NUGL Online: The online version of the New Updated Guthrie List: A referential classification of the Bantu languages. https://brill.com/fileasset/downloads_products/35125_Bantu-New-updated-Guthrie-List.pdf (2021-03-01).
- Mamet, M. 1966. *La langue ntomba telle qu'elle est parlée au Lac Tumba et dans la région avoisinante (Afrique Centrale)*. Tervuren: RMCA.
- Marchal-Nasse, Colette. 1979. *Esquisse de la langue tsogo: Phonologie, morphologie*. Bruxelles: Université Libre de Bruxelles.
- Marchal-Nasse, Colette. 1987. *De la phonologie à la morphologie du nzebi, langue bantoue (B52) du Gabon*. Université Libre de Bruxelles. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Marlo, Michael R. 2015. On the number of object markers in Bantu languages. *Journal of African Languages and Linguistics* 36. 1–65.
- Marten, Lutz. 2013. Structure and interpretation in Swahili existential constructions. *Rivista di Linguistica* 25(71). 45–73.
- Mchombo, Sam. 2004. *The syntax of Chichewa*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Meeussen, Achiel Emiel. 1952. *Esquisse de la langue ombo (Maniema-Congo belge)* (Annales du Musée Royal du Congo Belge). Tervuren: La Commission de Linguistique Africaine.

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

- Mertens, Joseph. 1938. *Grammaire de l'idiome de la Kamtsha*. Bruxelles: Institut Royal Colonial Belge.
- Mickala-Manfoumbi, R. 1988. *Eléments de description du duma, langue bantu du Gabon (B51)*. Université Libre de Bruxelles. (mémoire de maîtrise).
- Mitterhofer, Bernadette. 2013. *Lessons from a dialect survey of Bena: Analysing word lists* (SIL Electronic Survey Reports 2013-020). Dallas: SIL International.
- Morrison, Michelle. 2011. *A reference grammar of Bena*. Rice University. (doctoral dissertation).
- Morrison, Michelle. 2015. Dialect variation in a minority language: The case of Bena. In Ruth Kramer, Elizabeth C. Zsiga & One Tlale Boyer (eds.), *Selected Proceedings of the 44th Annual Conference on African Linguistics*, 199–211. Somerville: Cascadilla Proceedings Project.
- Mouandza, J.-D. 2001. *Eléments de description du iyaa (parler bantu du Congo-Brazzaville)*. Université de Nice. (thèse).
- Nash, Jay. 1992. *Aspects of Ruwund grammar*. Urbana-Champaign University of Illinois. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Ngalamulume, Bululu. 1977. *Éléments de grammaire salampasu (L51): Phonologie et morphologie*. Université nationale du Zaïre. (MA thesis).
- Ngonyani, Deo. 2003. *A grammar of Chingoni*. München: Lincom Europa.
- Ngonyani, Deo. 2011. A grammar of Kikisi. Unpublished manuscript.
- Nicolle, Steve. 2013. *A grammar of Digo: A Bantu language of Kenya and Tanzania*. Dallas: SIL International.
- Novotná, Jana. 2005. *A grammar of Ndamba*. Memorial University of Newfoundland. (doctoral dissertation).
- Nsayi, B. 1984. *Approche du kibeembe: Première et deuxième articulations*. Université René Descartes Paris V-Sorbonne. (thèse).
- Nurse, Derek. 2007. *Bantu Tense and Aspect Systems*. <http://www.ucs.mun.ca/~dnurse/tabantu.html>.
- Nurse, Derek. 2008. *Tense and aspect in Bantu*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Odden, David. 1996. *The phonology and morphology of Kimatuumbi*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Paas, Steven. 2004. *Chichewa/Chinanja-English dictionary* (Buku la Mvunguti 13). Blantyre: Christian Literature Association in Malawi.
- Persohn, Bastian. 2017. *The verb in Nyakyusa: A focus on tense, aspect and modality* (Contemporary African Linguistics 2). Berlin: Language Science Press.
- Petzell, Malin. 2008. *The Kagulu language of Tanzania: Grammar, texts and vocabulary*. Köln: Rüdiger Köppe.

1 The negative existential cycle in Bantu

- Petzell, Malin & Lotta Aunio. 2016. Curious bits about Kami (G36). Presentation at the 6th International Conference on Bantu languages, Helsinki 20–23th of June.
- Philipsson, Gérard & Derek Nurse. 2000. Gweno, a little known language of Northern Tanzania. In K. Kahigi, Y. Kihore & M. Mous (eds.), *Lugha za Tanzania/Languages of Tanzania*, 233–284. Leiden: CNWS publications.
- Piron, Pascale. 1990. *Éléments de description du kota, langue bantoue du Gabon*. Université Libre de Bruxelles. (MA thesis).
- Price, Thomas. 1953. *The elements of Nyanja for English-speaking students*. Blantyre: Church of Scotland Mission.
- Ranger, A. Sidney B. 1928. *Chinsenga handbook: A manual of the Nsenga language, spoken in the Protectorate of Northern Rhodesia*. London: Sheldon Pr.
- Rurangwa, I. M. 1982. *Eléments de description du ngungwel: Langue bantue du Congo*. Université Libre de Bruxelles. (mémoire de licence).
- Samson, Ridder & Thilo C. Schadeberg. 1994. Kiinimacho cha mahali, kiambishi tamati cha mahali -ni (The locative suffix in Swahili). In *Afrikanistische Arbeitspapiere*, 127–138.
- Sanderson, Meredith. 1922. *A Yao grammar*. New York: The Macmillan Company.
- Schicho, Walter. 1992. Non-acceptance and negation in the Swahili of Lubumbashi. *African Languages and Cultures* 5(1). 75–89.
- Schwegler, Armin. 1988. Word-order changes in predicate negation strategies in Romance languages. *Diachronica* 5(1–2). 21–58.
- Spiss, Cassian. 1904. Kingoni und Kisutu. *Afrikanische Studien* 7. 270–414.
- Stevick, Earl W. & Linda Hollander. 1965. *Chinyanja basic course*. Washington D. C.: Foreign Service Institute at the Department of State, USA.
- Stevick, Earl W. & Kingston Machiwana. 1960. *Manyika step-by-step*. Cleveland: Central Mission Press.
- Stirnimann, Hans. 1983. *Praktische Grammatik der Pangwa-Sprache (SW-Tansania): Indaki cha luchovo lwa vaPangwa*. Freiburg: Universitätsverlag.
- Ström, Eva-Marie. 2013. *The Ndeneleko language of Tanzania*. University of Gothenburg. (doctoral dissertation).
- Struck, Bernhard. 1911. Die Fipasprache. *Anthropos* 6. 951–994.
- TUKI (University of Dar-es-Salaam, Institute of Kiswahili Research). 2014. *TUKI Swahili-English dictionary: Kamusi ya Kiswahili-Kiingereza*. Dar-es-Salaam: University of Dar-es-Salaam, Institute of Kiswahili research.
- Vail, Hazen Leroy. 1972. *Aspects of the Tumbuka verb*. University of Wisconsin. (Doctoral dissertation).
- van der Auwera, Johan. 2009. The Jespersen cycles. In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change* (Linguistics Today 146), 35–71. Amsterdam: Benjamins.

Rasmus Bernander, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson

- van der Auwera, Johan, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen. 2021. Intertwining the negative cycles. In Ljuba Veselinova & Arja Hamari (eds.), *The Negative Existential Cycle*, 555–594. Berlin: Language Science Press. DOI: ??.
- van der Wal, Jenneke. 2009. *Word order and information structure in Makhuwa-Enahara*. Utrecht: LOT.
- van de Velde, Mark. 2008. *A grammar of Eton* (Mouton Grammar Library 46). Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- van Avermaet, Ernest & Benoît Mbuya. 1954. *Dictionnaire kiluba-français*. Tervuren: Musée royal du Congo belge.
- Vansina, Jan. 1959. *Esquisse de grammaire bushong*. Tervuren: Musée royal du Congo belge.
- Velten, Carl. 1899. Die Sprache der Wahehe. *Afrikanische Studien* 2. 164–241.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2013a. Lexicalization of negative senses: A crosslinguistic study. Paper presented at the 10th Biennal Conference of the Association for Linguistic typology, Leipzig, 15–18 August.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2013b. Negative existentials: A cross-linguistic study. *Italian Journal of Linguistics* 25(1). 107–145.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2014. The negative existential cycle revisited. *Linguistics* 52(6). 1327–1389.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2016. The negative existential cycle viewed through the lens of comparative data. In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change continued* (Linguistics Today 227), 139–187. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Vitale, Anthony J. 1980. Kisetla: Linguistic and sociolinguistic aspects of a pidgin Swahili of Kenya. *Anthropological Linguistics* 22. 47–65.
- Watkins, Mark Hanna. 1937. *A grammar of Chichewa: A Bantu language of British Central Africa*. Pennsylvania: Linguistic Society of America.
- Whiteley, Wilfred Howell. 1956. *A practical introduction to Gusii*. Nairobi: East African Literature Bureau.
- Whiteley, Wilfred Howell. 1966. *A study of Yao sentences*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Whiteley, Wilfred Howell & M. G. Muli. 1962. *Practical introduction to Kamba*. London: Oxford University Press.
- Wolff, R. 1905. *Grammatik der Kinga-Sprache: (Deutsch-Ostafrika, Nyassagebiet); nebst Texten und Wörter-Verzeichnis*. Reprinted in 2015. Berlin: LINCOM.
- Yoneda, Nobuko. 2000. *A descriptive study of Matengo, a Bantu language of Tanzania*. Tokyo University of Foreign Studies. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Young, T. Cullen. 1932. *Notes on the speech of the Tumbuka-Kamanga peoples in the Northern province of Nyasaland*. London: The Religious Tract Society.
- Zeller, Jochen. N.d. Locatives in Bantu.

Chapter 2

The negative existential cycle in Chadic

Marielle Butters^a

^aUniversity of Colorado at Boulder

Chadic languages, like languages of West and Central Africa more generally, are known to make use of typologically rare negation strategies. Not only do many Chadic languages exhibit bi-partite negation, there is also a tendency for the second of these two verbal negators to occur after the verb, in contrast to a cross-linguistic preference for pre-verbal negation. This particular study examines the extent to which Croft's (1991) Negative Existential Cycle (NEC) may be demonstrated across Chadic languages. Furthermore, the study explores the use of the NEC as an explanatory framework in determining sources and pathways of verbal negation in Chadic languages. An important implication of this study is that identification of the B~C stage of the NEC elucidates the relationship between verbal negation and negative existential predication, as well as the relationship between these domains and other domains of the grammar such as aspect.

Keywords: Chadic, negation, existential predication, cyclical change

1 Introduction

In this paper, I consider the applicability of the types and stages of Croft's (1991) Negative Existential Cycle (henceforth NEC) to the Chadic language family – a family which already exhibits a cross-linguistically unusual negation system. In Croft's framework, there are three types of languages, A, B, and C that form a diachronic cycle. The direction of change is A~B, B~C, and C~A, where a special negative existential form arises, subsequently comes to be used as a verbal negative, and is then supplemented by a positive existential so that it is restored to a regular negative + existential construction. In brief, these internally variable stages represent historical changes in process as negative existential predication comes to mark verbal negation. Croft's types and stages are summarized here:



Marielle Butters. 2021. The negative existential cycle in Chadic. In Ljuba Veselinova & Arja Hamari (eds.), *The Negative Existential Cycle*, 57–80. Berlin: Language Science Press. DOI: ??

Marielle Butters

Type A: There is no special negative existential predicate. The affirmative existential predicate is negated by the ordinary verbal negator.

A~B: A special negative existential predicate is found in addition to the regular negative existential form.

Type B: There is a special negative existential marker that is distinct from the ordinary verbal negator.

B~C: The negative existential predicate begins to be used for ordinary verbal negation, but is restricted to specific contexts.

Type C: The negative existential predicate is identical in form and position to the verbal negator.

C~A: The negative-existential- cum-verbal-negator is in the process of being re-analyzed as only a negative marker and a regular positive existential verb begins to be used with it in negative existential constructions.

I find examples of most – though not all – of these types and stages in the Chadic family. However, while some languages fit neatly into given stages, this work follows previous scholarship (e.g. [Veselinova 2016](#)) in suggesting that languages sometimes exhibit overlap between types or stages. Beyond identification of the NEC in Chadic, a goal of this paper is to suggest that an exploration of the NEC is illuminative in identifying sources of verbal negation, taking the Chadic family as an example. In Chadic, there is great variation in the expression of negation in terms of phonological and morphological form as well as the number of markers used in negative constructions. Existential predication appears to be one pathway through which new forms come to serve as verbal negators.

All data included in this paper comes from published grammars. According to Glottolog ([Hammarström et al. 2018](#)), there are roughly 200 Chadic languages. These are spoken across Northern Nigeria, Southern Niger, Southern Chad, the Central African Republic, and parts of Northern Cameroon. Of these, there exist an approximate 60 published grammars or grammatical sketches. Following [Newman \(2000\)](#), these languages can be divided into four subgroups: Western, Central, Eastern, and Masa. There is an unequal distribution of languages across the family with the largest numbers belonging to the Western and Central sub-families and a mere ten languages belonging to Masa. Scholarship has largely favored Western and Central languages and these comprise the majority of languages presented in this paper. The languages included herein were selected primarily through convenience. Upon perusal of the approximate 30 grammars available to me, I was able to determine evidence of the cycle in 12 of these languages, three from the Western branch, eight from Central, one from East, and

2 *The negative existential cycle in Chadic*

none from Masa. Some grammars were published several decades ago, meaning the level of description and inclusion of evidence fell below contemporary standards; namely, some grammars included glossless examples with little to no accompanying contextual information. In cases where there are no glosses, I have reconstructed them myself.

The organization of the paper is as follows. I begin with a brief introduction of interesting issues within the Chadic negation system. This is followed by a presentation of examples of languages within each of the types and stages of the NEC. I then submit some examples of languages that do not fit neatly into any one type or stage. This is followed by a discussion of the implications of the data as a whole. In the final section, I propose common sources for verbal negators in Chadic and discuss the merits of including existential predication as one of these sources.

2 Negation in Chadic languages

Before addressing the NEC, it should be acknowledged that the verbal negation system itself is quite unusual in Chadic. In a study on the distribution of negative word order, Dryer (2009) finds that VO& V_{NEG} languages – those where the negative marker follows the verb – are a typological phenomenon unique to Central Africa (Niger-Congo, Nilo-Saharan, and Chadic) and, to a lesser extent, to New Guinea. Though there are isolated cases of VO& V_{NEG} languages around the world, there is nowhere with such a concentration of examples as is found in these two regions. It has been observed as early as Jespersen (1917) that there is a cross-linguistic preference for negators to occur directly before the verb, yet in Chadic languages, which are primarily SVO, the negative marker occurs not only after the verb, but in the final position of the phrase. In the great majority of cases, the verb may be followed only by time adverbials and interrogatives.

Additionally, many Chadic languages employ bi-partite negation markers, though Proto-Chadic negation appears to have been single-marked in clause-final position (Newman 1977). In his classic study of negation, Dahl (1979) finds that where there is bi-partite negation in his sample, the two negators nearly always surround the verb. He takes this to suggest a general tendency for negatives to occur as close to the finite element of the phrase as possible. Yet this is rarely what happens for Chadic, as the first negator in these languages often occurs before the subject and the second negator often occurs after the object where the dominant word order is SVO. Indeed, Dahl (1979) cites West African languages as typologically unusual among his sample.

Marielle Butters

There is still much to be discovered regarding negation in Chadic, including the sources and pathways behind the various forms that occur.

3 The negative existential cycle across Chadic languages

In Chadic languages, given the sparsity of resources and examples provided in many grammars of individual languages, it is difficult to get a sense of language change over a long period of time. Thus, rather than focusing on the evolution of negation within individual languages, the focus of this study is on evidence of the stages of NEC across the Chadic language family.

The NEC, as an explanatory framework, illuminates the relationship between the domain of negative existentials and of verbal negation. Negative existential predators differ from verbal negators by virtue of the fact that they indicate a state rather than an action or a process; they serve to express the absence of an entity and to pragmatically remove a referent from the scene (Veselinova 2013). Verbal negation, on the other hand, refers to the negation of a declarative phrase with a verbal predicate in the sense of Dahl (2010) and Miestamo (2005). Given the differing functions, these domains are constantly distinguished, though also interact closely. In this section, I present examples of Chadic languages that fit each of the types and stages of the NEC.

3.1 Type A

In Type A languages there is no special negative existential predictor, but the negation of the affirmative existential is performed by the verbal negator. This is common in Chadic languages. In Pa'anci, a West Chadic language, the affirmative existential *ani* occurs with the regular verbal negator *wa* to negate existence as in (1a). The negator *wa* also occurs in final position in utterances with verbs and is post-posed only by a sentence-level emphatic particle *na* as in (1b). Skinner (1979: 102) notes that *ani* is derived from a “locative verb feature bundle” *áñà*, followed by an associative preposition *i*. (1c) is an example of an affirmative existential utterance.

- (1) Pa'anci (Skinner 1979: 102, 150)

- a. *ani* *ambi wa*
one.CONT.ASSOC water NEG
'There is no water.'

¹All Pa'anci glosses were constructed by the author

2 The negative existential cycle in Chadic

- b. *ná munde na dava wa na*
 3SG say 3SG come NEG EMPH
 ‘He said he didn’t come.’
- c. *ani aci afari pangwa*
 one.CONT.ASSOC guinea.corn inside corn.bin
 ‘There is guinea corn in the bin.’

It should be noted that *ani* and *wa* occur at opposite ends of the phrase. The distance of the verbal negator from the existential predicate suggests the separate functional domains of negation and existential predication, making the frequency of Type A understandable.

In Gidar, a Central Chadic language, the affirmative existential verb *tà* (from the copula) must co-occur with the verbal negator *bà* in order to mark negative existence as in (2a). The marker *tà* is purely existential and does not code existence in a location. All negative clauses in Gidar are marked by the clause final particle *bà* as in (2b). (2c) is an example of an affirmative existential utterance.

(2) Gidar (Frajzyngier 2008: 208, 261)

- a. *dóf tà-y án dà-dàw kàyí-t bà*
 man be-3M REL 3M-DEP.PROG want-3F NEG
 ‘There is no man who wants her.’
- b. *mábliy dà-dàw dáw sá bà*
 chief 3M-DEP.PROG walk even NEG
 ‘The chief didn’t even walk.’
- c. *dii tà-N dó-dà(w) kái-tá-nì*
 men be-3PL 3M-D.PROG want-3F-PL
 ‘There are many men who desire her.’

As there is no special negative existential form in Gidar, it is clearly a Type A language.

3.2 A~B

In this synchronically variable stage, there is a special negative existential form in addition to the regular negative existential form. Croft (1991: 7) describes the special negative existential as “usually but not always a contraction or fusion of the verbal negator and the positive existential form”.

Marielle Butters

In Hausa, a West Chadic language, there are two negative existential forms, *bâ* and *bābù*, shown in (3a), which are distinct in quantity and tone from the verbal negators *bā...ba* used in tense, aspects, and moods other than continuous and subjunctive, as in (3b). In negative continuous utterances, the verbal negator is *bā*. Generally, the two negative existentials may be used interchangeably, though the former occurs more frequently when there is a nominal predicate. When there is no overt object, only *bābù* can be used. The word *bābù* is also sometimes used colloquially to mean ‘no’, often as an elliptical response. The affirmative existentials in Hausa, *àkwai* and *dà*, as in (3c) and (3d) bear no resemblance to the negative existentials nor to the verbal negators. However, like the negative existential predictor, both occur in phrase-initial position.²

(3) Hausa (Newman 2000: 178–179, 357)

Hausa (Newman 2000: 178–179, 357)

a. *bābù/bâ sauran àbinci*

NEG.EX other food

‘There is no food remaining.’³

b. *bâ zâ mù biyâ sù ba*

NEG FUT 3PL pay 3PL NEG

‘We will not pay them.’

c. *àkwai wani bâkô à kôfâ*

EX INDF stranger PREP door

‘There is a stranger at the door.’

d. *dà kudi*

EX money

‘There is money.’

In Hausa, then, there is a second negative existential form, but there is no evidence that this is the result of fusion with an affirmative existential. Newman (2000) addresses the dispute regarding the relation between *bābù* and *bâ*. Some, such as Eulenbergs (1971) take *bābù* as the original and *bâ* to be a phonologically reduced form. Newman (1971), however, proposes that the source for this alternate form *bābù* is a fusion *bâ* ‘NEG’ + *ābù* ‘thing’, a change attested in other

² *dâ* shares the same morpheme as the preposition ‘with’. While *dâ* is only followed by an independent pronoun, *àkwai* makes use of weak object pronouns. Furthermore, *dâ*, unlike *àkwai*, can never be stranded unless it is followed by *àkwai*; indeed, in some dialects, *dâkwai* has fused into a single word.

³ All Hausa glosses have been constructed by the author

2 The negative existential cycle in Chadic

Chadic languages as well. As evidence against *bābù* as basic, he cites the fact that it takes independent rather than object pronouns as its complement. Additionally, Newman notes that *bâ* might have been borrowed from Kanuri, as the negative existential therein is of the same shape.

It is possible that *bâ* is losing its distinction as a negative existential, given its resemblance to the clause-initial verbal negator *bà*, lending to the fusion of a new form *bābù* to be preferred in certain areas of the grammar as a solution to ambiguity. Evidence for this lays in the use of *bābù* in emphatic utterances, as in dispute and disagreement. Croft (1991) discusses the “close diachronic association” between negative existentials, negative interjections and verbal negators in connection with this stage. Hausa is of A~B because there is a second negative existential form which has some restricted uses.

In Lele, an East Chadic language, the locative anaphora, *màní*,⁴ used to mark affirmative existence, as in (4a and 4b). This form can be negated by the verbal negator, *dé*, as in (4c), in accordance with Type A. Additionally, there is a form *wiléŋ* ‘lack’ which serves as a negative existential, as in (4d).

- (4) Lele (Frajzyngier 2001: 196)

- a. *kùmnó màní*
God there
'God exists'
- b. *dīglè káŋ kàsà màní*
year DEM corn there
'there is corn this year'
- c. *kùmnó màní dé*
God EX NEG
'God does not exist'
- d. *kùmnó wiléŋ*
God NEG.EX
'God does not exist'

Given that the form *màní...dé* can be substituted for *wiléŋ* in the same utterance, there does not appear to be restriction of these forms.

⁴It should be noted that the primary role of *màní* is locative anaphora, though it is used on occasion to mark affirmative existence as in the examples given.

Marielle Butters

3.3 Type B

In Type B there is a special negative existential marker which is distinct from the verbal negator. Muyang, a Central Chadic language, is exemplary of this type. Here, the negative existential *bī* differs from the affirmative existential, as in (5a), and the existential *bù*, as in (5b) differs from the verbal negator *dò*, as in (5c).

- (5) Muyang (Smith & Gravina 2010: 27, 118)

- a. *ā-bī*
3SG-NEG.EX
'He/she is not there.' or 'there isn't any.'
- b. *ā-bù*
3SG-EX
'He/she is there.' or 'there is some.'
- c. *kā-ǵāx dò*
2SG-roar NEG
'You do not cry out.'

A perhaps less obvious example of a language belonging to Type B is Mina, a Central Chadic language where the negative existential construction appears to be diachronically young. Verbal negation in Mina is marked by a clause final particle *skù* as in (6a). The verbal negator has scope over the entity immediately preceding it. The affirmative existential *dáhà* (often shortened to *dá*) must co-occur with the verbal negator *skù* to create a negative existential predicate as in (6b). Mina differs from other Chadic languages in that the existential predicate and the verbal negator neighbor one another. It may be that this fact contributes to the clipped *dà* existential form in negative existential predicates that is typically in its full form in affirmative existentials as in (6c).

- (6) Mina (Frajzyngier & Johnston 2005: 55, 79, 234, 269)

- a. *á tì-y-á-h à nék skù*
3SG see-GO-2SG 2SG good NEG
'He does not see you as a good person.'
- b. *kó mà láb-yii dá skù*
QUANT REL wet-PL EX NEG
'Not even one [page] was wet.'

2 The negative existential cycle in Chadic

- c. *tèbénj tó ndír dáhà*
 granary GEN sorghum EX
 ‘There is a granary of sorghum.’
- d. *má mbád zá v-yií dá skù*
 REL surpass EE who-PL EX NEG
 ‘Who is superior? Nobody.’

It appears from the available data that *dá skù* is coming to serve as its own lexical unit. Evidence for this is provided by (6d) where *dá skù* can constitute a complete clause. Haspelmath (1997) finds that it is not uncommon for negative existentials to perform the function of indefinite pronouns in many Oceanic languages.

Though the negative existential form here is transparent, it appears to be stable.

3.4 B~C

Croft (1991: 9) calls this synchronic variable stage “the most important step in support of our hypothesis” and it certainly seems to generate the most interesting questions. Here, the negative existential predictor begins to be used for ordinary verbal negation. The negative existential may compete with the verbal negator, sometimes being used instead of it.

Hdi, a Central Chadic language, is probably the best example of this stage. Here, verbal negation is typically marked by *á ... wà/wù* as in (7a). The forms *wà* and *wù* are free variants though some speakers show preference for one or the other. The affirmative existential is *mámú* (sometimes reduced to *máá*) and cannot occur with the verbal negator as in (7b). In order to negate existence, the form *xàdú* ‘lack’ is used with a single negative marker at the end of the clause, as in (7c).

Additionally, there is evidence that *xàdú* is coming to replace the first verbal negator, not just in existential utterances, but in verbal utterances as well. Frajzyngier & Shay (2002) note that *xàd* codes negative subjunctive in imperfective as well as negative imperfective in the indicative mood as in (7d). These authors also state that the *xàd ... wà* frame codes “pragmatically dependent negative clauses” such as negative relative clauses, negative conditional protases, and negative conditional and temporal apodoses (p. 463), as in (7e).

- (7) Hdi (Frajzyngier & Shay 2002: 71, 124, 194, 458, 476)

Marielle Butters

- a. *dvà ‘á xdí-xà tá l'école wù, ká-’á*
like NEG Hdi-PL OBJ school (Fr.) NEG COMP-3SG
'Hdi do not like school,' he said.'
- b. *índà dimanche ná màmú marriage ndánà*
every Sunday (Fr.) COMP EX marriage now
'Every Sunday there is a marriage now.'
- c. *xàdú imí wà*
lack water NEG
'There are no rains.'
- d. *xàd-ká kà ñghá tsá wà*
lack-2SG SEQ look DEF NEG
'You should not look at it.'
- e. *xàd xəŋ tà ksá-f-tà dágálá wà*
lack 3PL IPFV catch-UP-REF many NEG
'They do not catch many.'

There may be something similar beginning to happen in Wandala, though this is underdeveloped. Wandala is a Central Chadic language where verbal negation is marked by *k* (clause-internally) or *kà* (when in phrase final position). The negator is placed after the verb and before the nominal subject or object as in (8a). Only when the verb is not followed by an argument does the negative particle occur clause finally. Negative existential clauses are formed through the use of *bákà* or *báakà* in clause-initial or clause-final position, depending on whether the information presented is old or new, as in (8b).

Generally, the negative existential and the verbal negator do not co-occur, though there are some rare instances in which they do, as in (8c). It is unclear what function is served by combining these elements, but it is possible that the final *kà* here is simply a clipped form of the negative existential, as there are cases where the negative existential is repeated, as in (8d).

(8) Wandala ([Frajzyngier 2012](#): 208, 327, 464, 583)

- a. *tsà-n-á k nábbà*
stop-3SG-GO NEG Nabba
'He did not stop Nabba.'
- b. *á yà-wá ə́lvà-á-rwà bákà*
well 1SG-COM word-GEN-1SG NEG.EX
'Well, I have no words.'

2 The negative existential cycle in Chadic

- c. *ŋán kínì sé à hàyà bà dó nà ŋánnà bákà*
 3SG CNTR.FOC only 3SG like FOC man DEM DEF NEG.EX
pédà-á-r nà kà
 means-GEN-3SG DEM NEG
 ‘She, she likes only the man that does not have any means.’ [or ‘only useless men’]
- d. *bákà ùrà tà tàttàyà à j-ú g-íyà bákà*
 NEG.EX person 3PL search 3SG surpass-VENT TO-1SG NEG.EX
 ‘One does not look for a person to surpass me.’

The important question that emerges from the data from Hdi (and, to a lesser extent, from Wandala) is what purpose is served by the enforcement of the verbal negator by the negative existential.

3.5 Type C

In this type, the negative existential is identical in form and position to the verbal negator, demonstrating “polysemy between negative existential meaning and verbal negation” (Croft 1991: 12). This occurs rarely in Chadic languages, but appears in Gude, a Central Chadic language.

In all TAM in Gude, the verbal negator, *pooshi*, exactly resembles the negative existential, *pooshi*, as exhibited by the negated verbal phrase in (9a) and the negative existential utterance in (9b). The negative existential does not appear related to the affirmative existential *tɔ'i*; rather, Hoskison (1983) suggests that *pooshi* is formed from the *pə* used in phrases of refusal and *uushi* ‘thing’, as also attested in Hausa above. In the completive aspect, there is an alternative verbal negation strategy which uses *ma...mə* surrounding the verb stem as in (9c).

- (9) Gude (Hoskison 1983: 71, 90, 91)

- a. *pooshi Musa kii faara*
 NEG Musa threw stone
 ‘Musa did not throw a stone.’
- b. *pooshi nwanwu də Gyala*
 NEG.EX chief at Gyala
 ‘There is no chief at Gyala.’
- c. *ma-ka-mə Musa faara*
 NEG-throw-NEG Musa stone
 ‘Musa did not throw a stone.’

Marielle Butters

This negative completer strategy is rare and exists alongside the more typical strategy of marking verbal negation through use of the negative existential.

3.6 C~A

I do not have strong evidence for a synchronically variable C~A stage in Chadic where the negative-existential-cum-verbal-operator comes to be reanalyzed as an ordinary verbal negator and begins to occur with the affirmative existential in negative existential clauses. As noted by Croft (1991: 19), this is perhaps unsurprising given that Type C is relatively unstable and typologically uncommon. He reasons that the lack of an existential predicate is anomalous in the minds of speakers, leading to the introduction of a positive existential relatively quickly, thus returning a given language to Type A.

4 Overlap between types and stages

Veselinova (2016) has pointed out that overlap between types occurs to a greater extent than perhaps conceded by Croft (1991). In this section, I consider a few examples of Chadic languages where the data available does not warrant easy placement in any one type or stage.

4.1 Overlap of Type A and Type B

As mentioned early in the paper, in Chadic it is common for there to exist two options to negate existence within the same language. In the first, a negative existential predicate is formed through a positive existential and a verbal negator (Type A). In the second, there is a distinct negative existential predicator (Type B). Often these forms of negation are used interchangeably, though sometimes the negative existential serves additional functions. The presence of additional functions suggests that the negative existential in these languages is newer than the verbal negator. However, it is not the case in all languages that a clear line can be drawn between what functions are performed by each of these types.

In Ngizim, a West Chadic language, the negative existential *góó* as in (10a) differs from the verbal negator *bái* as in (10b). Consistent with Type B, the two may not co-occur. The form *góó* can additionally mean ‘without’, but is not limited to this meaning. However, consistent with Type A, the affirmative existential *naa* may also co-occur with the verbal negator *bai* to form a negative existential

2 The negative existential cycle in Chadic

predicate as in (10c).⁵

- (10) Ngizim ([Schuh 1972](#): 84, 455)

- a. *zaaman Mai Maadi dá-bənci goo ža*
time king Madi STAT-PASS without war
'The time of King Madi passed without war.'⁶
- b. *dee ii Ngwajin bai*
3SG LOC Ngwajin NEG
'He didn't come to Ngwajin.'
- c. *naa mərak bai*
EX oil NEG
'There is no oil.'

In Makary Kotoko, a Central Chadic language, the negative existential *dalá* in (11a) differs from the verbal negator *wa* in (11b) and the two may not co-occur, consistent with Type B. The negative existential occurs in the same position of the phrase as the verbal negator. However, the locative copula *nda* 'be at'⁷ may also co-occur with the verbal negator to produce a negative existential phrase of Type A as in (11c). [Allison \(2012: 347\)](#) writes, "The locative copula construction is primarily used in affirmative contexts, though I have a half-dozen examples in the corpus where it occurs in a negative clause."

- (11) Makary Kotoko ([Allison 2012](#): 21, 357, 363)

- a. *nyi ro m-ú gə re əl dalá*
thing:ABSTR MOD:F IRR-1SG say 2PL:IO NEUT:3SG:F NEG.EX
'I don't have anything to say to you.' (lit. thing that I say to you doesn't exist)
- b. *n-gə-dan dó he wa*
MOD:M-POSS-3PL DET:F LOC NEG
'His father was sick.' (lit. he didn't attend his father's sickness)
- c. *wáāda nda lə wa de halás*
trust be.at:M PRO NEG SR okay
'If you don't trust me then okay (never mind).'

⁵It is quite common for negative existentials to have an additional 'without' meaning ([Veselinova 2013](#)).

⁶All Ngizim glosses constructed by the author

⁷There are examples in [Allison \(2012\)](#) where this marker is purely existential

Marielle Butters

It is unclear whether these languages should belong to the A~B stage. An argument against including them there is that there is no evidence that the special negative existential forms are contextually restricted.

4.2 A~B and B~C

Buwal, a central Chadic language, does not fit neatly into any one variable stage. Viljoen (2013: 293) is the only Chadic author of the works I consulted to directly address the NEC, noting that Buwal is somewhere between Type A and Type C.

In Buwal, the verbal negator is *kʷáw* as in (12a) and the affirmative existential marker is *aká* as in (12b). These two forms have fused to create the negative existential *áskʷāw/ákʷāw* in (12c). The combination *aká skʷāw*⁸ is still found with the same meaning as *áskʷāw/ákʷāw*, but the former occurs with less frequency than the latter. The emergence of this special negative existential form is consistent with the stage A~B.

Buwal also exhibits aspects of stage B~C where the negative existential is gradually substituted for the verbal negator in parts of the grammatical system. In Buwal, the verbal negator represents denial of a corresponding positive assertion and is pragmatically dependent, whereas the negative existential is a simple negative assertion that is not pragmatically dependent – it need not be understood in reference to an affirmative clause as in (12d). Viljoen (2013: 293) notes that Buwal is clearly not a Type C language as she has 22 examples of a 765 example corpus of verbal clauses demonstrating that the combination *aká skʷāw* can also be used for verbal negation, as in (12e).

- (12) Buwal (Viljoen 2013: 167, 293, 454, 477, 490)

- a. *sā-ndā* *āká* *á* *dámāw kʷáw*
1SG.SBJ-go ACCOMP PREP1 bush NEG
'I didn't come back from the bush.'
- b. *béžē* *nxʷā-jé ákā*
enclosure goat-PL EX
'... there is a goat enclosure.'
- c. *fāgʷālākʷ zēnēj ákʷāw*
leprosy again NEG.EX
'There is no more leprosy (lit. Leprosy again didn't exist)'

⁸The form *aká kʷāw* is never found

2 The negative existential cycle in Chadic

- d. *sā-ká-zàm wdā ákʷāw*
 1SG.SBJ-PFV-eat food NEG.EX
 ‘I haven’t eaten food.’ [The speaker does not want food]
- e. *á-kā-ndā. á dámāw ákʷāw*
 3SG.SBJ-IPFV-go to bush NEG.EX
 ‘She is **not** going to the bush.’

5 Discussion

The findings of this paper are summarized in Table 2.1.

Table 2.1: The NEC cycle forms in Chadic

| Language | Affirmative existential | Verbal negator | Negative existential(s) | Type or Stage |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|----------------|-------------------------|---------------|
| Pa’anci [pqa-NGA] | ani | wa | ani...wa | Type A |
| Gidar [gid-CMR] | tà | bà | tà...bà | Type A |
| Hausa [hau-NGA] | àkwai/dà | bà..ba, bā | bâ and bābù | A~B |
| Lele [ln-TCD] | màní | dé | màní...dé/wilénj | A~B |
| Mina [hna-CMR] | dáhà/dá | skù | dá...skù | Type B |
| Muyang [muy-CMR] | bù | bī | dò | Type B |
| Hdi [xed-CMR] | màmú/màá | á...wù; xàdú | xàdú | B~C |
| Wandala [mfí-CMR] | áŋkwè/áŋk | kà/k | bákà | B~C |
| Gude [gde-NGA] | tə’i | pooshi | pooshi | Type C |
| Ngizim [ngi-CMR] | naa | bai | naa...bai and goo | A and B |
| Makary Kotoko [mpi-CMR] | nda | wa | falá | A and B |
| Buwal [bhs-CMR] | akā | kʷāw | áskʷāw/ákʷāw | A~B and B~C |

I have noted in this paper that Type A languages are common in Chadic; indeed, there are a fair number of examples of Type A languages beyond those included herein. Languages of this type are likely to exist for a considerable period of time due to the high level of productivity where the verbal negator applies to the existential predicate in a similar manner as it applies in negating other features of a clause. Because of the period of time that this stage is likely to endure, it is understandable that there are several examples of this type. There are also a number of examples of Type B, some of which (as in Mina) appear to be diachronically young. Due to the continued presence of a positive existential predicate,

Marielle Butters

it is difficult to find languages that are purely Type B, as the Type A strategy endures.

Given constraints on time and resources, I have not addressed every Chadic language, but from the available evidence, Type C certainly appears to be uncommon. Croft (1991: 18) observes that the rarity of this type “is due to the special status of the existential situation as a ‘nonverbal’ predication, and to the association of negation and emphasis.” Where this type does appear, it is unlikely to endure for long before a distinct existential form crops up alongside the negative existential-cum-verbal negator.

Generally, it is more common to find evidence of variable stages in Chadic languages than non-variable stages, which is unsurprising given that languages are not restricted to any one stage of the NEC at a given time; as new methods for negating existential predicates emerge, old forms are not necessarily lost, though often become restricted to certain domains of speech. The B~C stage is perhaps the most interesting in that it sheds the most light on the functions of negation and negative existential predicates, particularly the issue of which domains of the grammar begin to make use of the negative existential to perform verbal functions. Among the languages included in this paper, relevant domains include pragmatic dependence and aspect. For instance, in Hdi, the negative existential is beginning to be used to code negative subjunctive in imperfective as well as negative imperfective in the indicative mood. In Gude, though a Type C language, the negative existential performs negation in all aspects, but complete aspect has an alternative strategy in the negative. Miestamo & van der Auwera (2011) find that the restriction of aspectual categories under negation is especially apparent in African languages, most notably those grouped in Nigeria (Niger-Congo, Nilo-Saharan, and Chadic). Additional cross-linguistic evidence suggests that certain aspects, such as perfective, are less compatible with negation (e.g. Schmid 1980; Matthews 1990, though see and van der Miestamo & van der Auwera 2011 for counter evidence). The question of the relationship between negation and aspect, as well as the role of pragmatic dependence, merits future study in Chadic.

6 Existentials as a source for verbal negation

An exploration of a synchronic and diachronic cycle such as the NEC has additional merit in identifying sources of verbal negators. Newman (1977) reconstructs the Proto-Chadic negative marker as *wa in phrase final position. The verbal negative particles of many Chadic languages differ significantly from this

2 The negative existential cycle in Chadic

proto-form. Some forms are predictable through regular sound change, whereas other forms seem to have come about through different pathways.

In this section, I address some potential sources of Chadic verbal negators.

Cross-linguistically, negation and interrogatives are known to share a close relationship. Interrogatives are far less direct than negation and provide a face-saving strategy with which to express negation. In Daba, a Central Chadic language, for instance, one strategy of coding negation is through the use of the interrogative *vú* as in (13). In Mina too negation may be coded by the aspectually dependent habitual marker *ra* and the interrogative *vù* in clause final position as in (14). Here, not only is negation coded, but also the emotional state of the speaker, such as displeasure or astonishment. Note that no verbal negator is used.

- (13) Daba (Lienhard & Giger 1975: 86)

dàlà dà vú

money 1SG Q

‘Je n’ai pas d’argent’ (Lit: ‘Est-ce qu’il y a d’argent?’)

- (14) Mina (Frajzyngier & Johnston 2005: 242)

ngùl ná zàm skàn ná r vù

husband 1SG eat thing 1SG DEP.HAB Q

‘My husband, he does not eat my food!’

Table 2.2 presents similarities between the form of the verbal negator and the form of the interrogative within the same language.

Table 2.2: Verbal negators and interrogative forms

| Language | Verbal Negator | Interrogative form |
|----------|----------------|--------------------|
| Pévé | tsú...mi | mi and su |
| Goemai | môu | mmoe |
| Buwal | kʷaw / skāw | kwá/skwá |
| Pero | á...m | á |

An additional source for negation, the lexical item ‘thing’, was noted earlier in this paper with Hausa and Gude. This lexical item often combines with a lesser used negative form to create an emphatic negative form. Often, these forms may be used as independent expressions and need not be followed by an object or a complement. These are represented in Table 2.3.

Marielle Butters

Table 2.3: Verbal negators and ‘thing’

| Language | Verbal Negator | Lexical item ‘thing’ |
|----------|----------------|----------------------|
| Daba | dakun/kun | kán |
| Gude | pooshi | ooshi |
| Mina | skù | skèn |
| Kanakuru | woi...u | wói |
| Ngizim | bai | bài |

The fusion of a negator and ‘thing’ can lead to a negative existential or to a verbal negator, though if a verbal negator, it has likely become semantically bleached. An examination of the processes involved in the NEC is informative regarding the relationship of these ‘nothing’ forms to negative existence.

There remain several negative markers unaccounted for by these findings. Some of these appear to come from existential sources. In Wandala, the negative existential *bákà* has come to occur in the same clause final position as the verbal negator which is *kà*. It may well be that *kà* is a clipped form of *bákà*. In Buwal, there is a clear relationship between the affirmative existential *akā*, the verbal negator *kʷáw*, and the negative existential predicator *áskʷáw/ákʷáw*.

Many existential forms – both positive and negative – also contain d(v) particles which occur in mostly bisyllabic form. Table 2.4 lists some examples.

Table 2.4: Verbal negators and negative existentials

| Language | Verbal negator | Negative existential |
|----------|----------------|----------------------|
| Daba | dakun/kun | daha |
| Zodi | di:...ndi | ada |
| Baraïn | dō | dijò |

In Daba, the negative existential is *daha*, which is nearly identical in form to the affirmative existential in the neighboring language, Mina, which is *dáhà*. Lamang, which is to the West of these languages, has the existential form *hà/xà* and Wandala to the Northeast has the affirmative existential *xàdú*. It may be that this h(v) or x(v) form is related to the stative locative/general locative form *á* that is attested in so many languages (Uldeme, Gidar, South Giziga, Makary Kotoko, Zaar, Hona, etc.). This d(v) form, which frequently surfaces in East Chadic and

2 The negative existential cycle in Chadic

some Central Chadic languages as verbal negators, is not entirely clear, but may have been borrowed from outside the family. In any case, verbal negative forms are found in affirmative existentials which supports the notion in NEC that existential forms come to take on and lose negative functions in a cyclical manner.

7 Conclusion

In this paper I have identified most of the types and stages of Croft's (1991) Negative Existential Cycle in Chadic languages. Additionally, I have followed Veselinova (2016) in observing that not all languages fit neatly into a type or a stage and therefore it is also useful to consider overlap of types and stages. I have found that negative existentials may sometimes be sources of verbal negators in Chadic, though interrogatives and the lexical item 'thing' appear more often to provide pathways to verbal negators in this particular family. I suggest that Croft's (1991) framework – especially identification of the B~C stages – sheds light on processes of negation and the relationship between negation and negative existential predication, as well as their relationship to other domains in the grammar. In Chadic, two domains of interest are aspect (especially imperfective and perfective) and pragmatic dependence.

Marielle Butters

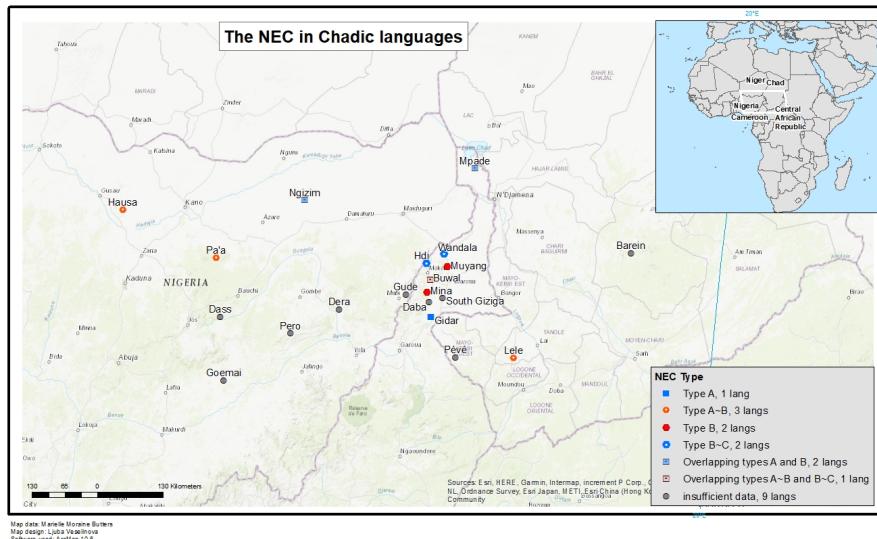
Abbreviations

| | | | |
|--------|-------------------------|--------|-------------------------|
| 1 | first person | M | masculine |
| 2 | second person | MOD | non noun modification |
| 3 | third person | | marker |
| ABSTR | abstract | NEG | negative |
| ACCOMP | accomplishment | NEG.EX | negative existential |
| ASSOC | associative | NEUT | neutral aspect |
| CNTR | contrastive | OBJ | object |
| COMP | complementizer | PASS | passive |
| CONT | continuous | PFV | perfective |
| DEP | dependent (aspect) | PL | plural |
| DEF | definite marker | POSS | possessive |
| DEM | demonstrative | PREP | preposition |
| DET | determiner | PROG | progressive |
| EE | end of event marker | PRO | non-human/locative |
| EMPH | emphatic | | pronoun |
| EX | affirmative existential | Q | question |
| F | feminine | QUANT | quantifier |
| FOC | focus | REF | referential |
| FUT | future | REL | relative marker |
| GEN | marker of modification | SBJ | subject |
| GO | goal orientation | SEQ | sequential |
| HAB | habitual | SG | singular |
| IPFV | imperfective | SR | switch reference marker |
| INDF | indefinite particle | STAT | stative |
| IO | indirect object | VENT | ventive |
| IRR | irrealis | | |
| LOC | locative | | |

*2 The negative existential cycle in Chadic***ISO 693-3 codes for languages included**

| | |
|---------------|---------|
| Mina | hna-CMR |
| Pa'anci | pqa-NGA |
| Gidar | gid-CMR |
| Ngizim | ngi-CMR |
| Makary Kotoko | mpi-CMR |
| Hausa | hau-NGA |
| Lele | lln-TCD |
| Muyang | muy-CMR |
| South Giziga | giz-CMR |
| Buwal | bhs-CMR |
| Hdi | xed-CMR |
| Wandala | mfi-CMR |
| Gude | gde-NGA |
| Pévé | lme-TCD |
| Goemai | ank-NGA |
| Pero | pip-NGA |
| Daba | dbq-CMR |
| Kanakuru | kna-NGA |
| Zodí | dot-NGA |
| Baraïn | bva-TCD |

Marielle Butters



Map 2.1: NEC in Chadic

References

- Allison, Sean D. 2012. *Aspects of a grammar of Makary-Kotoko (Chadic-Cameroon)*. University of Colorado at Boulder. (doctoral dissertation).
- Croft, William. 1991. The evolution of negation. *Journal of Linguistics* 27(1). 1–27.
- Dahl, Östen. 1979. Typology of sentence negation. *Linguistics* 17. 79–106.
- Dahl, Östen. 2010. Typology of negation. In Laurence R. Horn (ed.), *Expression of negation*, 9–38. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Dryer, Matthew S. 2009. Verb-object-negative order in central Africa. In Norbert Cyffer, Erwin Ebermann & Georg Ziegelmeyer (eds.), *Negation patterns in West African languages and beyond*, 307–362. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Eulenberg, John. 1971. A new look at predicating particles in Hausa. *Studies in African Linguistics* 2. 105–115.
- Frajzyngier, Zygmunt. 2001. *A grammar of Lele*. Stanford: CSLI Publications.
- Frajzyngier, Zygmunt. 2008. *A grammar of Gidar*. New York: Peter Lang Incorporated.
- Frajzyngier, Zygmunt. 2012. *A grammar of Wandala*. Berlin: Walter de Gruyter H & Co.
- Frajzyngier, Zygmunt & Eric Johnston. 2005. *A grammar of Mina*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.

2 The negative existential cycle in Chadic

- Frajzyngier, Zygmunt & Erin Shay. 2002. *A grammar of Hdi*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Hammarström, Harald, Sebastian Bank, Robert Forkel & Martin Haspelmath. 2018. *Glottolog 3.2*. Jena: Max Planck Institute for the Science of Human History. <http://glottolog.org> (2018-06-19).
- Haspelmath, Martin. 1997. *Indefinite pronouns*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Hoskison, James T. 1983. *A grammar and dictionary of the Gude language*. Ohio State University. (doctoral dissertation).
- Jespersen, Otto. 1917. *Negation in English and other languages*. København: A. F. Høst.
- Lienhard, Ruth & Martha Giger. 1975. *Daba (parler de Pologozom): Description phonologique*. Yaoundé: Société Internationale de Linguistique.
- Matthews, S. 1990. *A cognitive approach to the typology of verbal aspect*. University of Southern California. (doctoral dissertation).
- Miestamo, Matti. 2005. *Standard negation: The negation of declarative verbal main clauses in a typological perspective*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Miestamo, Matti & Johan van der Auwera. 2011. Negation and perfective vs. Imperfective aspect. *Cahiers Chronos* 22. 65–84.
- Newman, Paul. 1971. The Hausa negative markers. *Studies in African Linguistics* 2. 183–195.
- Newman, Paul. 1977. Chadic classification and reconstructions. *Afroasiatic Linguistics* 5. 1–42.
- Newman, Paul. 2000. *The Hausa language: An encyclopedic reference grammar*. New Haven: Yale University Press.
- Schmid, Maureen. 1980. *Co-occurrence restrictions in negative, interrogative, and conditional clauses: A cross-linguistic study*. SUNY Buffalo. (doctoral dissertation).
- Schuh, Russel G. 1972. *Aspects of Ngizim syntax*. University of California. (doctoral dissertation).
- Skinner, Margaret G. 1979. *Aspects of Pa'anci grammar*. University of Wisconsin. (doctoral dissertation).
- Smith, Tony & Richard Gravina. 2010. *The phonology of two Central Chadic languages* (SIL International Publications in Linguistics 144). Dallas: SIL International & The University of Texas at Arlington.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2013. Negative existentials: A cross-linguistic study. *Italian Journal of Linguistics* 25(1). 107–145.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2016. The negative existential cycle viewed through the lens of comparative data. In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change continued* (Linguistics Today 227), 139–187. Amsterdam: Benjamins.

Marielle Butters

Viljoen, Melanie H. 2013. *A grammatical description of the Buwal language*. La Trobe University. (doctoral dissertation).

Chapter 3

Extensions and commonalities in negative existential cycles in Arabic

David Wilmsen^a

^aAmerican University of Sharjah

The many varieties of Arabic together exhibit numerous existential particles, all of them negated with the usual verbal negator *mā* or occasionally the common Semitic *lā*. A few of those, *?ys*, *šī*, and *bī*, exhibit stages of a negative existential cycle. All three cycles share commonalities. Associated with an incipient stage A>B, each undergoes a univerbation between the negator and the existential particle. With the *šī* cycle, this involves either reflexes of a fusion between the negator *mā* and *šī* as *māšī*, or a further step involving the negator *mā*, a 3rd-person pronoun *hū* or *hī*, and the existential particle *šī*: *mā hū/hī šī* > *mahūš* > *mūš* > *muš/miš*. A univerbation of the existential *bī* proceeds along an analogous pathway: from *mā bī* through *mā hū bī* > *mahub* > *mub*. As for *?ys*, it has fused with the negator *lā* to form *laysa*. In all three cycles, these univerbations extend into the domain of equational sentence negation. Another commonality is that as the cycles progress, the original existential particles themselves disappear, to be replaced by new ones. In the *bī* and *šī* cycles, it is the preposition *fī* ‘in’, which has become grammaticalized as an existential particle. In the *laysa* cycle, existential *?ys* is replaced by demonstratives *hunāka* and *θamma* ‘there’. The univerbations in all three cycles can operate in sub-domains of verbal negation. The stages that the three cycles have reached permit a comparative diachrony. Because the *laysa* cycle is the only one to reach a full-on stage C>A, it must be the longest running, followed by the *šī* cycle, which appears to be entering upon a Stage C in Egyptian Arabic and has done in one southern Yemeni variety. The *bī* cycle, having reached only an incipient stage A>B and beyond would be the most recent.

Keywords: Arabic dialects, Arabic existential particles, Arabic negative existential cycles, Arabic non-verbal negation, Arabic verbal negation



David Wilmsen

1 Introduction

Extant spoken Arabic varieties exhibit amongst themselves reflexes of at least six separate existential particles. Of these, two show developments characteristic of a negative existential cycle (Croft 1991) variously distributed amongst Arabic dialects. For its part, the Arabic of writing, descended from an archaic form, no longer spoken as a native language and different in many ways from the many varieties of spoken Arabic, also shows signs of having passed through a negative existential cycle. We shall summarize the workings of the cycle with each of the three existential particles, observing the commonalities that their cycles share with each other.¹ The stages of completion that these respective cycles have reached will admit proposing a relative chronology.

The first of the cycles to be addressed in §2, is called the *laysa* cycle, after the negator *laysa*, which derives from an existential *?ys*, no longer in use. The earliest Arabic writing of any length, the Quran, dating to the seventh century, exhibits an early stage of the cycle, with later stages to be seen in collections of the prophetic tradition of the ninth century, in some writings from Muslim Spain of the twelfth century, and subsequent writings, up to the present day.

The second, addressed in §3, is called the *šī* cycle, after an existential particle *šay(y)/šē/šī* of the southern Arabian Peninsula attested in spoken Arabic dialects of the lower Arabian Gulf, Oman, and Yemen. Some original data from Emirati Arabic that will be presented as examples of usage are drawn from a series of oral history recordings, in which pre-nineteen-sixties residents of the old town of Sharjah describe life in the emirate before the oil boom. These are housed at the Sharjah Museums Authority (SMA), acknowledged here with thanks.

The third, addressed in §4, is the *bī* cycle, named for an alternate to the better-known existential particle *fī* of which Croft speaks (1991: 7). Some of the data from that discussion are also drawn from the SMA recordings. Statistics pertaining to usage of existential negators involving *bī* come from a corpus of Gulf Arabic (Gumar).²

Finally, §5 addresses some of the salient commonalities that the three Arabic cycles share, placing those into the broader typology of negative existential cycles, there and in the conclusion placing them into a historical perspective.

¹The four other Arabic existential particles (listed in Table 3.1 at the start of section 3) show no sign of entering a negative existential cycle.

²<https://camel.abudhabi.nyu.edu/gumar/>

3 Extensions and commonalities in negative existential cycles in Arabic

2 The *laysa* cycle

An existential particle *?ys* is attested in a few medieval Arabic lexicographical works.³ In the earliest of these, the eighth-century Omani lexicographer al-Farahidi (d. 786 AD) says that, in his day, *?ys* may have fallen out of usage except for a single living idiomatic expression, which he adduces:

- (1) *?at-ni b-h mn ḥyθ ?ys w lys*
 come.PFV PREP-PRO.M.3SG PREP ADV EX CONJ NEG.EX
 ‘He came [to] me with him/it from wherever. (lit. where there and not there)’ (al-Farāhīdī 2003: 105)

al-Farahidi remarks that *?ys* denotes existence, and *lys*, which he derives from *lā ?ys*, denotes nonexistence. Some ninth-century Arabic philosophical writing uses the two with those meanings (Gihami nd: 35). Soon afterwards, the affirmative existential particle *?ys* disappears from living usage, leaving the negative *laysa* abundantly attested in the Arabic of writing from that day to this. Consequently, we may assume that an existential particle *?ys* did once obtain in some varieties of Arabic and it that was negated with the common Semitic negator *lā*:⁴

- (2) *lā ?ys*
 NEG EX
 ‘Not there [is]’⁵ (al-Farāhīdī 2003: 105)

The regular Arabic verbal negator, *lā*, negating an existential particle, makes this a characteristic type A construction, in which, as Croft defines it, “there is no special existential negative form, and the negative existential construction is the positive existential predicate plus the ordinary verbal negator” (1991: 6–7). In the Arabic of writing, verbal negations almost always proceed with a reflex of *lā* (sometimes *mā*):

- (3) *lā a-ṣraf*
 NEG 1SG-know.IPFV
 ‘I [do] not know.’ (Adwan 2000: 144, 158)

³The *laysa* cycle is examined in much greater detail in Wilmsen (2016a).

⁴Other Semitic languages possess similar existential particles, with some, including Arabic, retaining only the negated form. Their origins are much discussed and debated amongst Semiticists. Nevertheless, despite some disagreement around the derivation of *laysa* (Wilmsen 2016a; Al-Jallad 2018), a plurality consensus holds that it does, indeed, derive from *lā ?ys* (see Blau (1972); Gensler (2000), Lipiński (2001: 464–465, 488–489); summarized in Wilmsen (2016a: 329–331) & Wilmsen (2017: 298–299)).

⁵In Arabic, a copula is usually not expressed in present time predictions. The enclosing of the English copula in brackets in the gloss is meant to reflect that.

David Wilmsen

2.1 Stage A>B of the *laysa* cycle

Croft continues, defining a stage A>B as involving “a special existential negative form, usually but not always a contraction or fusion of the verbal negator and the positive existential form” (1991: 7). This is what the surviving negative existential particle *laysa* is. A Stage A>B would have seen a conventional negation of existential *?ys* with *lā*, as that in example (1), coexisting with *laysa*. That may have happened before Arabic became fully attested in writing, but there is no remaining record of it. Nevertheless, *laysa* can stand by itself in denying the existence of something, to the extent that the thing denied need not be mentioned. In modern writing, this holds especially for negating locational sentences of the type, ‘At/for/in/with the X is/are Y’ (4a). Nor is *laysa* the sole negator of existential predications; the regular negator *lā* also negates them without the need for an expressed existential particle (4b):⁶

- (4) a. *laysa fi l-maktab illā anā w anta*
 NEG.EX PREP DET-office CONJ PRO.1SG CONJ PRO.M.2SG
 ‘There [is] not in the office except you and I.’ (Adwan 2000: 273)
- b. *lā ilāha illā llāh*
 NEG god except Allah
 ‘[There is] no god except Allah.’ (Quran 37:35)

As such, *laysa* does function as a special negative existential form in certain types of existential negations, whereas the usual negator *lā* can also negate existential predications, albeit without need for an expressed positive existential. This would be a type of a stage A>B.

2.2 Extension into equational sentence negation

Aside from that, *laysa* also negates non-verbal predications of all sorts, whether existential or otherwise. This has been the case at least since the 7th century AD, when extensive Arabic writing began to appear:

- (5) a. *laysa ka-miθli-hi šay?*
 NEG.EX PREP-likeness-PRO.M.3SG thing
 ‘There [is] not [a] thing like His likeness.’ (Quran 42:11)

⁶The examples of usage with *laysa* are from written sources, meaning that geographical provenance is largely irrelevant. A map charting the spoken Arabic dialects that are passing through negative existential cycles that are addressed below can be found in Figure 3.1

3 Extensions and commonalities in negative existential cycles in Arabic

- b. *laysa ð-ðakaru ka-l-?unθā*
 NEG DET-male PREP-DET-female
 ‘The male [is] not like the female.’ (Quran 3: 36)

Sentences of the type in (5) are what Li and Thompson call “equational sentences ... in which an identificational or member/class relationship is expressed between two NPs” (1977: 419). That is, equational sentences express relationships between the subject and predicate that in languages like English, French, and Spanish require a copula. Equational sentences are characteristic non-verbal predications in spoken and written Arabic alike, in which a copula, verbal or otherwise, is lacking. When a copula is needed, it is usually one of the 3rd-person pronouns (Li & Thompson 1977: 431–433):⁷

- (6) Palestinian Arabic (Li & Thompson 1977: 431)

- a. *hiyye le-mfallme*
 PRO.F.3SG DET-teacher
 ‘She [is] the teacher.’
- b. *il-bint hiyye le-mfallme*
 DET-girl PRO.F.3SG DET-teacher
 ‘The girl [is] the teacher.’

Li & Thompson (1977: 420) label sentences of the first type (6a) “topic-comment constructions” and the second “subject-predicate constructions”, noting that both Hebrew, and Palestinian Arabic (among other languages) have developed a copula by means of the topic-comment construction. In actuality, what holds for Palestinian Arabic holds, with minor variations, for all varieties of Arabic: when a copula is needed, it is expressed as a 3rd person pronoun. As far as written Arabic is concerned, topic-comment and subject-predicate constructions alike are characteristically negated with *laysa*, while verbal predication are negated with reflexes of *lā*, as in (3).

2.3 Subsequent stages of the *laysa* cycle

A stage B, which would see “only a special negative existential form” (Croft 1991: 9). Veselinova (2014: 1338; 2016: 153) observes that stages of the cycle, especially a stage B, may be skipped entirely, and it appears that the *laysa* cycle has done

⁷For more on equational sentences and the copular function of 3rd person pronouns in Arabic, see Eid (1983; 1991) and Choueiri (2016).

David Wilmsen

so. Occasionally, however, *laysa* can negate verbs, characteristic of a stage B>C (Croft 1991: 9–10), and when it does, it is usually for pragmatically marked purposes, notably in posing contrasts between a denial and an assertion (7a) or in rhetorical negations (7b), as in the following from an early genre of Arabic literature, collected sayings of the prophet Muhammad (*Hadith*) compiled by al-Buŷārī (2000: d. 870):

In (7a), the predication might still be read as an existential negation: ‘There is none inherits from me.’ Nevertheless, *laysa* can occasionally negate verbs in apparently unmarked usage:⁸

- (8) *laysa ya-drī kayfa ḥadaθa al-?amr*
 NEG 3M-know.IPFV ADV happen.PFV DET-thing
 ‘He knows not how the thing happened.’ (Kanafani 2006: 28)

Because the negation in (7) and other verbal negations with *laysa* would usually be effectuated with a reflex of *lā*, the choice to negate the verb with *laysa* must invest the statement so produced with some added pragmatic meaning.

As for a Stage C, “in which the negative existential form is the same as the ordinary verbal negator” (Croft 1991: 11), the *laysa* cycle reached it only in the extinct 12th century Arabic dialect(s) of Muslim Iberia (Al-Andalus), where reflexes of *laysa* had become, “an almost universal negator of the perfective, ... imperfectives, and nominal sentences” (Corriente 2013):

- (9) a. *las kān dara-yt-uh*
 NEG.EX be.PFV.3s know.PFV-1s-PRON.3M
 ‘I had not known it.’ (Corriente 2013: 126)

⁸A rarity in other spoken varieties of Arabic, reflexes of *laysa* survive as what Holes (2006: 26) calls a “fossilized remnant” in some southern Peninsular dialects of Arabic, where they can negate verbal predictions (Al-Azraqi 1998: 142–144), typical of a stage B>C.

3 Extensions and commonalities in negative existential cycles in Arabic

- b. *las ni-sammī aḥad*
NEG.EX 1S-name.IPFV one
'I mention not anyone.' (Corriente 2013: 126)
- c. *las niḥun ṣibyān*
NEG.EX PRO.1PL children
'We [are] not children.' (Corriente 2013: 126)

2.4 Terminal stage of the *laysa* cycle

Nevertheless, *laysa* has everywhere entered upon a Stage C>A, “in which the negative-existential-cum-verbal-negator begins to be reanalyzed as only a negator, and a regular positive existential ... comes to be used with it in the negative existential construction” (Croft 1991: 12).⁹ In the Arabic of writing especially, two existential particles *θamma* and *hunāka*, both meaning ‘there’, and a passive-voice construction involving the verb *ya-ğid* ‘he finds’ > *y-ūğad* ‘it [is] found’ appear in the 8th and 9th centuries (Wilmsen 2016a: 354–356). The usual verbal negator *lā* most often negates the verb form: *lā y-ūğad* (lit. ‘it [is] not found’ understood to mean ‘there is not’; example [10a]). Otherwise, *laysa* negates the two existential particles, as in the following from the Hadith collections of Ibn Hanbal (d. 855) and al-Buhārī (10b & 10c):

- (10) a. *fa-lā y-ūğad fi-hi šay?*
CONJ-NEG M.3SG-found.IPFV PREP-PRO.M.3SG thing
'And there [is] not in it [a] thing.' [lit. 'And not found in it thing']
(al-Buhārī 2000: Vol. VIII p. 1256)
- b. *laysa θamma dinār wa-lā dirham*
NEG.EX EX currency CONJ-NEG currency
'Not there [is] [a] dinar and not [a] dirham.' (al-Buhārī 2000: Vol. VIII p. 1323)
- c. *laysa hunāka dinār wa-lā dirham*
NEG.EX EX currency CONJ-NEG currency
'Not there [is] [a] dinar and not [a] dirham.' (Ibn Hanbal no date: Vol. IX, p. 507)

⁹Croft actually says “a regular positive existential verb” (Croft 1991: 12). But in Arabic, the existential particles are almost always not verbs. For its part, *laysa* exhibits the peculiar quality of inflecting as a perfective verb to negate present-time predictions. There is no sign that it ever existed in an imperfective form (see discussion in Wilmsen 2016a: 341–346).

David Wilmsen

Both of the latter two existentials, originate as remote demonstrative pronouns, corresponding in usage to English ‘there’. In the earliest extensive Arabic writing, the Quran, dating to the middle seventh century, *θamma* appears once as an existential particle, but a reflex of *hunāka* appears only as a demonstrative. Negation of either with *laysa* begins to appear in writing after the middle of the ninth (Wilmsen 2016a: 354–355). The *laysa* cycle had thus passed through all of its stages by that time.

It can rightly be asked why all stages of the *laysa* cycle appear to be stacked one atop the other. In the first place, Croft himself notes the overlap of stages (1991: 22; c.f. Veselinova 2016: 146, 149, 151–154). In the second, the Arabic of writing was codified in the eighth through tenth centuries and has changed but little since then, such that Arabic texts produced in the eighth century remain intelligible to readers today, and modern writers adhere to their modes of expression (Wilmsen 2016a: 340). As it stands, the *laysa* cycle is not likely to proceed further, with *laysa* becoming the regular negator, precisely because of the archaic character that its users cultivate to the present day, tolerating but little deviation from it. Noteworthy, too, is that *laysa* is used in writing but hardly ever in speech.

3 The *šī* cycle

For their parts, spoken varieties of Arabic possess between themselves several existential particles (Eid 2008).¹⁰ These are listed in Table 3.1:

Most dialects of Arabic possess only one existential particle, but the Arabic varieties of the southern Arabian Peninsula are remarkable for the presence of multiple particles. Bahrain has *aku*, *fī*, and *šay* (Holes 2016: 110); the Yemen has *šī*, *fī*, and *bī* (Behnstedt 2016: 346–348, maps 136 & 137); and Oman and the UAE possess both *fī* and *šī* – the latter variously realized as *šay?*, *šayy*, *še*, or *šī* (Reinhardt 1894: 112; Johnstone 1967: 170; Brockett 1985: 24; Holes 1990: 71; Holes 2016: 24–28; Davey 2016: 162). All of these are negated with the negator *mā* common to all spoken dialects of Arabic, which, characteristic of a stage A, negates verbal predication and non-verbal existential predication alike. Indeed, (Croft 1991: 7) adduces usage from Syrian Arabic as an example of a stage A. Compare Croft’s examples with an almost identical matched pair from Emirati Arabic:

- (11) Emirati Arabic (Sharjah)

¹⁰The *šī* cycle is examined at greater length in Wilmsen (2020a).

3 Extensions and commonalities in negative existential cycles in Arabic

Table 3.1: Existential particles in spoken Arabic varieties

| Existential particle | Negation | Provenance |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|---|
| <i>aku</i> | <i>mā-kū(-š)</i> | Iraq, Kuwait, Bahrain |
| <i>bī</i> | <i>mā bī(-š)</i> | Syrian steppes, central/ southern Arabian Peninsula |
| <i>fī</i> | <i>mā-fī(-š)</i> | Libya, Egypt, Levant, Arabian Peninsula/Gulf |
| <i>kāyen</i> | <i>mā-kāyen-š</i> | Morocco, Algeria |
| <i>śī</i> | <i>mā śī</i> | Bahrain, UAE, Oman, Yemen |
| <i>θamma, famma, emm</i> | <i>mā (θ/f)ammā-š, mem-š</i> | Tunisia, Malta |

- a. *mā a-ʃraf ism-ə*
NEG 1SG-know.IPFV name-PRO.M.3SG
'I know not its name.' (SMA data)
- b. *mā šay biyūt*
NEG EX houses
'There [were] no houses.'(SMA data)

For its part, the existential particle *fī* has not proceeded beyond Stage A, but existential particle *śī* has. In Emirati Arabic, *śī* shares the existential function with *fī*:

- (12) Emirati Arabic (Sharjah)
- mā śī fayda*
mā fī fayda
NEG EX benefit
'There [is] no benefit.' (SMA data)

A contrast in usage obtains between the two particles in their affirmative and negative functions in Emirati Arabic. Wilmsen (2020a: 528) had observed from limited data that the negation *mā śī* occurs about twice as often as the affirmative *śī* and that affirmative existential predication occurs more often with *fī* than with *śī*. The SMA recordings, from which some of the data for the current study come, reveal a more precise view of the matter. In them, speakers who have occasion to

David Wilmsen

use existential predication use a reflex of *māši* in negation 90 times, as opposed to 32 with *mā fī*. To the contrary, they use *fī* in affirmative existential predication 34 times as opposed to their using *śī* in the affirmative only six times, with some speakers not using it at all. That is, full 85 percent of existential predication are with *fī* and 72.8 percent of existential negations are with a variant of *māši*.¹¹ These figures are summarized in Table 3.2.

Table 3.2: Occurrences of Emirati existentials and their negations in SMA oral histories

| | <i>śī</i> | <i>fī</i> | <i>māši</i> | <i>mā fī</i> |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|--------------|
| Speaker 1F | 0 | 0 | 25 | 4 |
| Speaker 2F | 3 | 1 | 21 | 5 |
| Speaker 1M | 0 | 10 | 18 | 8 |
| Speaker 2M | 2 | 13 | 17 | 7 |
| Speaker 3M | 1 | 5 | 6 | 4 |
| Speaker 4M | 0 | 5 | 3 | 4 |
| Totals | 6 | 34 | 90 | 32 |
| Percentages | 15 | 85 | 72.8 | 26.2 |

3.1 Stage A>B of the *śī* cycle

Such alternation in usage is in accordance with Croft's conception of Stage A>B, in which "a special negative existential form is found ... in addition to the regular existential form" (1991: 7). In this case, the regular existential form being precisely the *fī* that he adduces, albeit for the Syrian Arabic of Damascus. So, too, are univerbations between the negator and the existential particle common in a stage A>B, the negator so formed existing side-by-side with the regular negator + existential particle construction. Existential *śī* does form a univerbation with the negator *mā* to form *māši*. In such a form, reflexes of *māši* can stand alone as an element of negation:

- (13) Emirati Arabic (Sharjah)

¹¹A similar situation obtains in Yemeni Dialects of Arabic, in which, as Behnstedt observes, "the negative form may differ from the positive one in its base lexeme ... such as *bū* 'there is', *mā* *śī* 'there is not' (2016: 345). We shall return to existential *bī* below.

3 Extensions and commonalities in negative existential cycles in Arabic

- lā? (.) mašay (.) infidm-it ha-l-ašyā?*
 NEG NEG.EX disappear.PFV-F.3SG DEM-DET-things
 ‘No. There [are] not. These things have disappeared.’ (SMA data)

A caveat is that according Croft, “the contracted form is the newer one” (Croft 1991: 7). This is likely true of *maši*; but existential *fī* and its negation *mā fī* are relatively new, too. This much has been said about Omani dialects of Arabic (Brockett 1985: 24; Holes 1990: 71; Bernabela 2011: 61; Davey 2016: 171). It appears to be true of Emirati Arabic, too.

3.2 Extension of Stage A>B in the *šī* cycle

A further univerbation occurs between the negator *mā*, a 3rd-person pronoun *hū* ‘he/it [is]’ or *hī* ‘she/it [is]’), and the existential *šī*, usually but not always reduced to /-š/:

- (14) a. *mā hū šī* > *māhūš* > *mūš* > *muš*
 NEG PRO EX NEG NEG NEG
 b. *mā hī šī* > *mahiš* > *mīš* > *miš*
 NEG PRO EX NEG NEG NEG

A clear indicator of the derivation comes from Tunisian Arabic and the closely related peripheral (or remnant or enclave) variety of Arabic Maltese. Tunisian Arabic exhibits several reflexes of both, including *māhūš(i)* *mauš(i)*, *mūši*, *muši*, *muš*, and *mahiš(i)* *mayiš*, *maiš*, *mīši*, *miši*, *miš*; it even has a reduced form *mumš*, derived in the same manner as that in (14), but with the plural 3rd person pronoun *hum* ‘they/them’ (Singer 1984: 718). For its part, Maltese exhibits the derivation in its orthography, which represents the word, realized *mūš* in speech, as <mhus>. Other such precursors to *muš* and *miš* are widely attested and well documented in Arabic dialects from the Yemen to Morocco.¹²

Like *laysa*, both *maši* and *muš/miš* have extended into the negation of equational sentences, especially in dialects of the Yemen (Watson 1993: 253, 258),¹³ where, for example, in the dialect of Sana'a, Yemen, either *miš* or *muš* in addition to shortened forms *māš* or *maš* negate equational sentences (Watson 1993: 253–256):

¹²Rather than reference the many studies documenting the phenomenon, reference is here made to the discussion in Wilmsen (2014: 100–101).

¹³In Emirati Arabic, equational sentences are usually negated with *mū* or *mub*, more on which below.

David Wilmsen

- (15) a. *māš hī* *ħāliy-ih*
 NEG PREP.F.3SG pretty-F.SG
 'She [is] not pretty.' (Watson 1993: 256)
- b. *anā miš fi-l-bayt* *ġāls-ih*
 PRO NEG PREP-DET-house sitting-F.SG
 'I [am] not sitting at home.' (Watson 1993: 258)

In Arabic varieties elsewhere, reflexes of *muš/miš* and *maši* also negate non-verbal predication as the usual negator of equational sentences:

- (16) a. Lebanese Arabic (Beirut)
 hiyye *miš hōn*
 PRO.F.3SG NEG DEM
 'She [is] not here.' (Own data)¹⁴
- b. Egyptian Arabic (Cairo)
 ir-rayyis *miš hīna*
 DET-headman NEG DEM
 'The boss [is] not here.' (Woidich 2006: 334)
- c. Moroccan Arabic (Casablanca)
 huwa *maši hna*
 PRO.M.3SG NEG DEM
 'He [is] not here.' (Harrell 2004: 155)

The negator *miš* is found in Emirati Arabic, too, but it is likely a borrowing from Egyptian and Levantine varieties of Arabic, brought to the Emirates by the large expatriate populations of speakers of those varieties, who are attracted to the Emirates by the many career opportunities.

3.3 Excursus on grammatical šī

It behooves us to note the plural *ašyā?* 'things' in (14) and its singular form *šay?* 'thing' in (10a), one of the many words with that designation in Arabic (c.f. *?amr* in [8]). Before much was known about existential *šī*,¹⁵ speculation had it that the *šī* in negation (i.e., the suffixed /-š/ in some varieties in Table 3.1) derives from the word for 'thing'. The stock demonstration of this being as follows:

¹⁴The Lebanese examples in (17) and (19) are drawn from my observations while living in Beirut from 2007 to 2016.

¹⁵Although it had been attested sporadically since the late 19th century (Reinhardt 1894: 112; Johnstone 1967: 170; Brockett 1985: 24), it has remained largely unexamined until recently (Holes 2016: 24–28, Wilmsen 2017; 2020a).

3 Extensions and commonalities in negative existential cycles in Arabic

- (17) *mā katab ši* > *mā katab-š*
 NEG write.PFV thing NEG write.PFV-NEG
 ‘He wrote not [a] thing.’ > ‘He wrote not.’

As such, it has even been suggested that it plays a role in a presumed Jespersen cycle in Arabic (Lucas 2007). The difficulty with this postulation, as pointed out by Woidich (1990: 139), is in the unmotivated change of valence between the transitive ‘he didn’t write a thing’ and ‘he didn’t write’ and the loss of the predicate between ‘it is not a thing’ and ‘it is not.’ What is more, it happens that reflexes of *ši* perform many functions in spoken Arabic varieties; in interrogation, negation, as an indefinite article, and a quantifier (Wilmsen 2014: 44–63; Wilmsen 2017). All of these are presumed to derive from the *ši* of ‘thing’ (for a recent iteration of this, see Glanville (2018), even though many of them are quite un-thing-like in semantics.

3.4 The B>C Stage of the *ši* cycle

A true stage B would see “only a special negative existential form” (Croft 1991: 9). That has not yet occurred in the Arabic dialects possessing reflexes of *ši* as an existential particle. Like the *laysa* cycle, the *ši* cycle appears to have skipped a stage B. It resumes in Stage B>C, which Croft defines as “gradual substitution of the negative existential for the verbal negator in only part of the verbal grammatical system” (1991: 10). Accordingly, *miš/muš* and reflexes can occasionally negate verbs:

- (18) Egyptian Arabic (Cairo)
- a. *miš ḥa-yi-gi*
 NEG FUT-3-come.IPFV
 ‘He will not come.’ (Doss 2008: 87)
 - b. *miš ?ul-ti la-k*
 NEG say.PFV-1SG DAT-PRO.M.2SG
 ‘[Did] I not tell you?’ (Doss 2008: 87)
 - c. *miš ittafaʔ-t maʃ-āh wa-bass madd-ēt-uh*
 NEG agree.PFV-1SG PREP-PRO.M.3SG PREP-ADV had.sign.PFV-1S-PRO.3M
 ‘I didn’t just agree with him; I had him sign.’ (Doss 2008: 86)
 - d. *bi-ya-axud fulūs miš bi-y-gib fulūs*
 HAB-3-take.IPFV money NEG HAB-3-get.IPFV money
 ‘He takes money; not brings money.’ (Al-Sayyed & Wilmsen 2017: 248)

David Wilmsen

e. Lebanese Arabic (Beirut)

b-a-ʃzim-kon *ʃalā ʔahwe miš ti-ʃrab-ū* *ʃāy*

HAB-1SG-invite.IPFV-PRO.2PL PREP coffee NEG 2-drink.IPFV-PL tea

'I'm inviting you for coffee; [Mind] you not drink tea [beforehand].'

(Own data)

Verbal negation with *miš/muš* instead of the usual *mā* usually imparts some especial pragmatic meaning to the negation. That in (18b) is a rhetorical negation, a negative assertion intended to solicit an affirmative reply; in (18c) it is metalinguistic negation, denying something other than the truth value of the utterance (the speaker, did, in fact, agree); (18d) contrasts a negated proposition against its affirmative; and (18f) is a dehortative (Wilmsen 2016b). In any of these, the regular verbal negator *mā* can, and usually does, apply. As such, these are not true instances of a Stage B>C. For its part, (18a), as an example of a regularly applied verbal negations in a specific sub-domain of verbal negation, is a manifestation of a true Stage B>C. It furthermore appears that *miš/muš* is trending towards the negation of pragmatically unmarked verbs in the dialect of Cairo (Brustad 2000: 303; Doss 2008; Håland 2011; Wilmsen 2020a: 519).

3.5 Stage C and beyond of the *šī* cycle

A characteristic Stage C appears in only two dialects of Arabic: the Egyptian Arabic of the Sharqia governorate north of Cairo, and in the dialect of the Abyan province of southernmost Yemen. As for the former, *miš* "used for negation of imperfect and perfect verbs ... appears to be common" (Håland 2011: v, 70–72, emphasis added):

(19) Egyptian Arabic (Sharqia Governorate)

a. *miš xad-it* *ʃalā l-luǵa*

NEG take.PFV-F.3SG PREP DET-language

'She [has] not taken to [= gotten used to] the language.' (Håland 2011: 59)

b. *miš yi-nfaʃ*

NEG 3-benefit.IPFV

'It benefits not.' (Håland 2011: 72)

So, too, have there been reports of the spread of verbal negation with *muš/miš* in the dialect of the capital city Cairo (Brustad 2000: 301–306; Doss 2008; Wilmsen 2020a: 525), but these remain to be explored in greater detail. It is, neverthe-

3 Extensions and commonalities in negative existential cycles in Arabic

less, a phenomenon of which speakers of Egyptian Arabic are aware (Brustad 2000: 301; Håland 2011: 65–72).

As for the latter, “the Abyani dialect, in particular the Zingabari dialect ... employs a single negative marker *mish* [sic] to negate all types of constructions” (Ahmed 2012: 33), making it a true stage C:

- (20) Yemeni Arabic (Abyan Governorate)

- a. *bū-k miš dafaʃ dayūn-uh*
father-PRO.M.2SG NEG pay.PFV debts-PRO.M.3SG
'Your father paid not his debts.' (Ahmed 2012: 35)
- b. *miš ya-zūr-u giddit-hum ði-l-ayām*
NEG 3-visit.IPFV-PL grandmother-PRO.3PL DEM-DET-days
'They visit not their grandmother these days.' (Ahmed 2012: 38)

A stage C>A appears to be attested only in dialects of Egypt, wherein *muš/miš* may occasionally negate the existential *fī*, which is otherwise more normally negated with the verbal negator *mā*:

- (21) a. Egyptian Arabic (Cairo)

- miš fī sabab muħaddad*
NEG EX reason defined
'There [is] no special reason.' (Doss 2008: 89)

- b. Egyptian Arabic (Sharqia Governorate)

- miš fī šuyl hina*
NEG EX work DEM
'There [is] no work here.' (Håland 2011: 71)

Meanwhile, the erstwhile existential particle *šī/šay* has almost completely lost its identity in most varieties of Arabic, where it has become grammaticalized into a new negator *miš/muš*, as well as assuming other functions (Wilmsen 2014: chpt. 3; Wilmsen 2017). This bespeaks another commonality with the *laysa* cycle: As the existential particle is incorporated into a negator and becomes involved in all manner of equational-sentence negation, it loses its existential identity and is replaced by a newer existential particle.

4 The *bī* cycle

An existential *bī* obtains from the Syrian Plateau (Behnstedt 1997: 346–348, map 336), through Central Arabia (Ingham 1994: 44–45), to the Yemen (Behnstedt 2016:

David Wilmsen

346, map 136).¹⁶ As with the existential particle *fī* (Croft 1991: 7), negations of existential particle *bī* are usually type A, with the regular verbal negator (in spoken Arabic *mā*) negating the existential particle:

- (22) a. Yemeni Arabic (al-Hudeidah)
mā ya-fref-š *ðe*
 NEG M.3SG-know.IPFV-NEG DEM
 ‘He knows not that.’ (Simeone-Senelle 1996: 210)
- b. Yemeni Arabic (Sana'a)
hānā mā bih ḥadd
 DEM NEG EX one
 ‘Here there [is] no one.’ (Watson 1993: 163)

Both existential *bī* and existential *fī* likely derive from an original common Semitic preposition **pi* meaning ‘in’ (Lipiński 2001: 470), and, as prepositions, the two are often interchangeable in their usage (Cowell 2005: 479). Likewise, as existential particles, the two are also almost identical in their usage, albeit usually appearing separately in distinct dialects, probably both deriving from the preposition and an affixed 3rd person pronoun:

- (23) *bī-/fī-h* > *bī(h)/fī(h)*
 PREP-PRO.M.3SG EX

Of the two, *bī* shows signs of entering a negative existential cycle, whereas *fī* does not.

4.1 Excursus on grammatical *bī*-

Aside from being an existential particle and a preposition meaning ‘in’ or ‘with’, the latter often with instrumental usage, for example, *bi-l-id* ‘by hand’, *bī*- performs other grammatical functions in diverse varieties of Arabic, serving as a proclitic marker of the indicative mode in Egyptian (Woidich 2006: 61, 280–284) and Levantine (Cowell 2005: 180, 324–329) varieties of spoken Arabic.¹⁷ Woidich delineates its major functions in Egyptian Arabic as marking the actual (a) or habitual (b) action of the verb:

- (24) Egyptian Arabic (Cairo)

¹⁶I have addressed the *bī*-cycle in greater detail in an as yet unpublished manuscript Wilmsen (2020b).

¹⁷Retsö (2014: 64) lists other Arabic dialects where it also functions as such.

3 Extensions and commonalities in negative existential cycles in Arabic

- a. *dilwa?ti bi-t-labbis il-farūsa*
 ADV IND-F.2SG-dress.IPFV DET-bride
 ‘Now, she [is] dressing the bride.’ (Woidich 2006: 281)
- b. *l-?at̪ri bi-y-?ūm is-sā?ā tamanya*
 DET-train HAB-M.3SG-arise DET-hour eight
 ‘The train leaves at eight.’ (Woidich 2006: 281)

It also functions as a marker of futurity (Cowell 2005: 326):

- (25) Syrian Arabic (Damascus)
- bafd bukra b-i-rūħ fa-l-madrasa*
 PREP tomorrow FUT-3-go.IPFV PREP-DET-school
 ‘The day after tomorrow, he will go to school.’ (Cowell 2005: 324)

Marking futurity is also one of its main functions in the dialects of the Arabian Gulf, Oman, and Yemen (Persson 2008; Retsö 2011; 2014). In Egyptian and Syrian Arabics, the future so marked is more of an imminent potentiality, whereas in southern peninsular Arabic the future could be any time from near (27a) to far (26b):

- (26) Emirati Arabic
- a. *iðā šār maʃ-i šayy b-a-ttaṣil*
 COND happen.PFV PREP-PRO.1SG thing FUT-1SG-contact.IPFV
fī-k
 PREP-PRO.M.2SG
 ‘If anything happens with me, I’ll call you.’ (Jarad 2017: 750)
 - b. *b-a-kammil dirāst-i f-amrīkā*
 FUT-1SG-continue.IPFV study-PRO.1SG PREP-name
 ‘I will continue my studies in America.’ (Jarad 2017: 751)

The origins of the verbal prefix *bi-* are also disputed, with some proposing that in Gulf and southern peninsular varieties of Arabic it is a verb of volition *abā/y-abī* ‘he/it wanted/he/it wants’ (Retsö 2014: 67; Owens 2018: 217–219) while that of the Egyptian and Levantine dialects of Arabic is the preposition *bi-* (Retsö 2014: 66, 70).¹⁸

¹⁸The derivation of the *bi-* verbal prefix in the Arabian peninsular dialects makes sense, in that verbs of volitions are very common sources for future markers. A simple reconstruction from that source, however, is complicated by its use in Yemeni and Omani Arabic as marking both

David Wilmsen

4.2 Negations with *bi-* in equational sentence negation

Another grammatical function of *bi-*, not hitherto explored in any depth, is its involvement in negation, whereby it may act conjointly with the regular verbal negator *mā*, usually in the negation of equational sentences:

- (27) Emirati Arabic (Sharjah)
cidb ʃalā xaṭa mā bi-zēn
lie PREP fault NEG NEG-good
‘[A] lie about an error [is] not good.’ (SMA data)

The two negators *mā* and *bī* can merge into a single negative particle, by which they act upon equational sentences in a manner analogous to that of *māšī*:

- (28) a. Omani Arabic (Sharqiyya)
ʃadan māb zēna al-ħin
name NEG good DET-time
‘Aden [is] no good now.’ (Holes 2008: 485)
b. Emirati Arabic (Sharjah)
ba-ti-ylis-ūn fī l-maylis ti-smaʃ-ūn fī-h
FUT-2-sit.IPFV-PL PREP DET-majlis 2-hear.IPFV-PL PREP-PRO.M.3SG
ʃay mab zēn
thing NEG.EX good
‘You would sit in the majlis, hearing something in it not good.’ (SMA data)

Another commonality, attested form in Gulf Arabic from Kuwait through the Emirates is a univerbation of the negator *mā*, the 3rd person pronoun *hū*, and *bī*, yielding *mub* (Holes 1990: 64, 73, 116, 243):

- (29) Emirati Arabic (Sharjah)
mub fi-š-ʃarğø
NEG PREP-DET-place.name
‘Not in Sharjah.’ (SMA data)

the habitual/indicative and the future. See discussion of the merits of these and other derivations and references to the pertinent studies of the matter in Wilmsen (2020b), where it is argued that another grammatical function of *bi-*, as an adjunct to negation, addressed in the next section, does, indeed, arise from the preposition *bi-*, but by way of existential *bī* (< *bi-hi* ‘in it’), which then becomes involved in an attenuated existential cycle.

3 Extensions and commonalities in negative existential cycles in Arabic

The derivation of *mub* would have proceeded along a similar pathway to that of *muš/miš*:

- (30) *mā hū bi* > *mahub* > *mub*

4.3 The *mā hū bī* sequence: Southern Arabia *mā-hū*

Remnants of this process are on display in southern Arabic varieties from the southernmost Hadramawt province of Yemen ([Al-Saqqaf 1999](#): 185–186) into Najd ([Ingham 1994](#): 44) in central Arabia, and the Hijaz along the west coast ([Omar 1975](#): 41). In these dialects, personal pronouns can affix to the negator *mā*:

- (31) a. Hadrami Arabic (Southern Yemen)
māhu rayyiz minn-ak il-kalām da
 NEG.M.SG agreeable PREP-PRO.M.2SG DET-WORD DEM
 This word [is] not right from you.' ([Al-Saqqaf 1999](#): 186)
- b. Hadrami Arabic (Southern Yemen)
is-sitra māhi mumħūza
 DET-wall NEG.F.SG muddled
 'The wall is not plastered.' ([Al-Saqqaf 1999](#): 186)
- c. Zahrani Arabic (Southern Saudi Arabia)
al-bint māhi fi-d-dār
 DET-girl NEG.F.SG PREP-DET-house
 'The girl [is] not in the house.' ([Alzahrani 2015](#): 305)
- d. Zahrani Arabic (Southern Saudi Arabia)
ar-raġġāl māhu hinxa
 DET-man NEG.M.SG here
 'The man [is] not here.' ([Alzahrani 2015](#): 307)

In the central Hijaz, a reduced form *mū* exists alongside *māhu*:

- (32) *huwwa mū min hina*
 PRO.M.3SG NEG PREP DEM
 'He [is] not from here.' ([Omar 1975](#): 41)

4.4 The *mā hū bī* sequence: Central Arabia *muhub*

Some of the dialects of the central Arabian Peninsula take *māhū* and *mū* a step further, affixing /-b/ on the negator + prounoun:¹⁹

¹⁹See [Prochazka \(2010: 127\)](#)) for a rough distribution of peninsular dialects that augment *mā* + pronominal suffix with /-b/.

David Wilmsen

(33) Najdi Arabic (Central Saudi Arabia)

- a. *Ali muhub fi l-bēt*
name NEG.M.3SG PREP DET-house
'Ali [is] not in the house.' (Binturki 2015: 75)
- b. *as-syār-a mahib xarban-a*
DET-automobile-F NEG.F.3SG ruin-F
'The car [is] not broken down.' (Binturki 2015: 76)

According to Ingham (1994), the elements can be further reduced, while remaining discrete units:

In nominal sentences the construction *ma...b-* occurs. This is a peculiarity of Central Najdi [Arabic] and occurs also as an alternative structure in Classical [i.e., written Arabic].²⁰ With the *ma...b-* construction, the relevant personal pronoun is also introduced producing a topicalized structure of the type 'Hasan, he is not here'. The resulting complexes *ma hu b-* 'he is not' or *ma hi b-* 'she is not' are often reduced to *mu hu b-* or *mu b-* and *mi hi b-* or *mi b-*. (Ingham 1994)

Ingham does not speculate as to the origin of the *b-* in these. For his part, Binturki (2015: 74, 133; after Matar 1976) proposes that it derives from an "an emphatic -b". The parallel development between *muš/miš* and *mub*, however, suggests the possibility of a derivation from the existential particle *bī*. Wilmsen (2017: 288–289) discusses the quasi-copular qualities of grammaticalizations of existential *śī*. The *bī* of negation also possesses a quasi-copular quality.

4.5 The *mā hū bī* sequence: Arabian Gulf *mub*

Negating non-verbal predication with *mub* is emblematic of Gulf Arabic in general, but it is more common in the southern Arabian Gulf than in the northern, with the frequency of usage increasing dramatically between Kuwait, where *mū* accounts for more than 90 percent of usage, and the United Arab Emirates, where *mū* barely reaches 40 percent of usage, and *mub* approaches 50. These figures, summarized in Table 3.3, come from an electronic corpus of Gulf Arabic (Khalifa

²⁰The reference is to negations of equational sentences with *laysa*, which can optionally occur with *bi-*; for example, *laysa ḡayyid* and *laysa bi-ḡayyid* both mean '[It is] not good,' with no apparent pragmatic difference between the two. Negations with *mā ... bi-* are a less-common option in written Arabic.

3 Extensions and commonalities in negative existential cycles in Arabic

et al. 2016). The corpus comprises a genre of online conversational novels, composed in conversational Gulf Arabic of the countries of the Gulf Cooperation Council (GCC): Bahrain, Kuwait, Oman, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, and the UAE. Not every country (and thus its corresponding dialect) is represented equally in the corpus, with roughly 61 percent of the texts coming from Saudi writers, to only thirteen percent from writers from the UAE, with numbers dropping considerably from there. Nevertheless, by comparing frequencies within each dialect area, an idea may be formed about the common usage within each one.

Table 3.3: Instances and relative frequencies of non-verb negators in Gulf Arabic varieties

| Kuwait | | Bahrain | | Qatar | | UAE | | |
|---------------|-------|---------|-------|-------|-------|------|-------|--------|
| | % | # | % | # | % | # | % | # |
| <i>mū</i> | 92.46 | 18609 | 67.28 | 475 | 27.75 | 543 | 39.71 | 20,065 |
| <i>mahub</i> | 0.15 | 30 | 10.2 | 72 | 6.75 | 132 | 1.6 | 809 |
| <i>mub</i> | 5.41 | 1089 | 20.25 | 143 | 46.29 | 906 | 47.43 | 23,963 |
| <i>hub</i> | 1.98 | 399 | 2.27 | 16 | 19.21 | 376 | 11.26 | 5690 |
| <i>Totals</i> | 100% | 20127 | 100% | 706 | 100% | 1957 | 100% | 50527 |

As may be seen, negation techniques for non-verbal predication form a cline from Kuwait to the Emirates, whereby Kuwaiti Arabic uses *mū* in roughly 93 percent of such negations and *mub* a scant 5.4 percent. The further south the dialect area, an inverse relation develops, with Qatari and the Emirati dialects use of the negator *mub* rising to between 46 and 47 percent against the use of *mū*. Noteworthy, too, is the negator *hub*, used in Qatari and Emirati Arabic.

As for the dialects of the two other GCC member states, the Gulf Arabic corpus shows an 86.5 percent usage of *mū* in texts from Saudi Arabia and a corresponding 9 percent usage of *mub*. For its part, usage in Omani texts is almost exclusively with *mū* at over 98 percent of occurrences. Omani dialects are a separate grouping from those of the Arabian Gulf, and the Saudi Arabian dialects represent at least four distinct regional groupings, central (Najdi); western (Hijazi); southern, closely related to Yemeni Arabic; and those of the eastern seaboard, which fall within the Gulf Arabic type. The origins and locales of the Saudi authors cannot always be determined, such that it cannot be certain whether they are all writing from the eastern province, in which Gulf dialects prevail. Nevertheless, the ratios of *mū* and *mub* conform to the cline from the northern Gulf to the southern.

David Wilmsen

4.6 Subsequent stages of the *bī* cycle

Generally, a negator of non-verbal predication, *mub* may occasionally negate verbs with the same sort of pragmatic intent with which the negation of verbs with *miš/muš* in (18), that in (34a) being a dehortative and in (34b) contrasting a negated proposition against its affirmative:

- (34) Emirati Arabic (Sharjah) (SMA data)

- a. *mub t-yī-ni fugub sana ti-gūl waṭani*
NEG 2-come.IPFV PRO.1SG PREP year 2-say.IPFV patriotic
‘[Mind] you not come [to] me after a year, to say [that you are a] patriot.’
- b. *sār i-tālīf mnū yi-digg il-bāb mub gāl*
go.PFV 3-see.IPFV who 3-knock.IPFV DET-door NEG 2-say-PFV
gūm-ī fulān-a inti tālīf-ī-h wa lā fulān
arise.IMP-F so-and-so-F PREP look.IMP-F-PRO.3MS CONJ NEG so-and-so
gūm tālīf-ah
arise.IMP look.IMP-PRO.M.3SG
‘He [himself] went [to] see who knocks [at] the door; he said not
“Get up you or you, see who”.

As with verbal negations with *mub* or *miš/muš*, any of these negations can also be accomplished with the regular verbal negator *mā* or, in the prohibitive, *lā*. The use of an otherwise non-verb negator invests the utterances with an added element of meaning. As such, verbal negations with *mub* are not true expressions of a stage B>C, but they do provide impetus for a “gradual substitution of the negative existential for the verbal negator in only part of the verbal grammatical system” (Croft 1991: 10), as would be characteristic of that stage.

There is a stage C in the *bī* cycle. It is possible, however, to find *mub* negating existential *fi* in a manner consistent with a stage C>A:

- (35) Emirati Arabic (Abu Dhabi)

- il-farab mub fi fi-l-bēt*
DET-ethnonym NEG EX PREP-DET-house
‘The people [are] not there in the house.’ (Al-Rawi 1990: 121)

5 Discussion

Of the three Arabic negative existential cycles, the *laysa* cycle has progressed through all stages of the cycle, reaching Stage C in an extinct variety of Arabic in

3 Extensions and commonalities in negative existential cycles in Arabic

which reflexes of *laysa* were the most common negator of verbal and non-verbal predication alike. It also, to this day, usually negates newer existential particles, in the characteristic manner of a Stage C>A. The *šī* cycle has progressed into a characteristic Stage B>C in its regular negation of futurity in verbs with *miš/muš*, a univerbation of the regular verbal negator, the 3rd-person pronoun, and the existential particle. As for the C stage and beyond, only in a few dialects of Egyptian Arabic does it appear to have moved or to be moving into a true stage C. Otherwise, only the dialects of the Abyan province of the southern Yemen have reached a complete stage C. For its part, the *bī* cycle only manifests stages of the A arc of the cycle, its sole similarity of a stage A>B being its univerbations leading to *mub*, analogous in all respects to *miš/muš* of the *šī* cycle. A univerbation by itself is not a condition for a stage A>B; the negator so formed must also continue to negate existential predication. Only in the *laysa* cycle is that to be seen, and then only in certain contexts involving locatives. It would appear that in all three cycles, the univerbation forms in an incipient stage A>B, whereupon the new negator begins to act upon other types of predication, notably equational sentences of all types. In that respect, neither *mub* nor *miš/muš* are negative existential particles as such, negating, as they do, other types of equational predication than the existential ('it is not' as opposed to 'there is not'). They do, however, derive from univerbations between the negator, a 3rd-person pronoun, and an existential particle.

A word about the missing Stage B is in order. Calling for elaboration of the negative existential cycle model, Veselinova (2014) holds that it should, "allow for lexicalizations of negation other than special negative existentials to enter the Cycle", observing that "it is a process in which not just negative existentials but also other lexicalizations of negation are involved" (2014: 1338, 1139). A commonality between all three cycles in Arabic is in an incipient stage A>B univerbation extending into equational sentence negation. Considering that at that stage in all three, too, the existential particle begins to lose or completely loses its identity as such, skipping a stage B seems inevitable. The stages of all three cycles are tabulated in Table 3.4, the darkly shaded cells indicating a clear manifestation of the relevant arc of the cycle, the lightly shaded ones indicating a partial or incipient entry onto a stage:

A relative chronology emerges from this. In her examination of the cycle in several language families, Veselinova (2014: 1373; 2016: 154) estimates a time frame of about two millennia for the completion of the cycle. Accordingly, by the schema in Table 3.4, the *laysa* cycle would be the longest running. It appears in the earliest extensive Arabic writing, dating to the 7th century AD, more than 1,300 years before present, by which time, it had reached Stage A>B (Wilmsen 2016a: 350).

David Wilmsen

Table 3.4: Stages of Arabic negative existential cycles

| | Stage A | Stage A>B | Stage B | Stage B>C | Stage C | Stage C>A |
|--------------------|---------|-----------|---------|-----------|---------|-----------|
| <i>laysa</i> cycle | ✓ | | ✓ | | ✓ | ✓ |
| <i>šī</i> cycle | ✓ | | ✓ | | ✓ | |
| <i>bī</i> cycle | ✓ | | ✓ | | | ✓ |

By Veselinova's reckoning, the *laysa* cycle should have begun more than half a millennium before attested usage appears, that is, around the 2nd century AD. Indeed, it could have begun even earlier than that. Considering that it reached Stage C in the Arabic of Al-Andalus at the latest by the 12th century, its beginnings may extend to the 9th century BC.

By that same scenario, the *šī* cycle must have begun later, although it is impossible to date how much later, because the earliest documentation of an existential *say* does not come until the end of the 19th century (Reinhardt 1894: 112), late in the progression of the cycle. By that time, the univerbation *miš/muš* had been observed as a negator of equational sentences and in the negation of verbs (Vollers 1890: 44). If the *šī* cycle has taken anywhere as long as the *laysa* cycle to come near to completion, it must have begun about the time that the *laysa* cycle was reaching Stage B, that is, the 8th or 9th century at the latest.

For its part, the *bī* cycle is evidently the youngest of the three, having reached incipient stages A>B and early manifestations of a stage A>B only. Nor does it seem likely that it will progress further. It appears that the negator *mub* had only recently reached its current form in Gulf varieties of Arabic after 18th century tribal migrations to the Gulf from the Najd (Holes 2006: 28–30), where a negator *bī* appears to have originated.

5.1 Extensions and Commonalities

In worldwide and family-based sampling of languages Veselinova (2016) presents a preliminary typology of the negative existential cycle, cataloguing numerous features that appear frequently in languages undergoing it. The three Arabic cycles share in some of these, also exhibiting some properties of their own.

5.1.1 Overlap of stages

Noticeable is the cotemporal occurrence of several stages of a negative existential cycle. This is a defining feature of the negative existential cycle as Croft initially conceived of it: "The sequencing is not absolute: it is not the case that one

3 Extensions and commonalities in negative existential cycles in Arabic

diachronic process is completed before the next process in the sequence begins [...] Thus, sequencing of diachronic processes must allow for temporal overlap” (Croft 1991: 22). This is seen to an extreme degree in the *laysa* cycle, in which all stages are present and overlapping. Otherwise, a complete overlap of stages is unusual. Veselinova (2016: 151–154 and *passim*) confirms this, finding, “overlap of different, non-sequential types/stages [...] in one and the same language” (2016: 154, emphasis added) to be common.

More typical, then, is the *šī* cycle, in which stages A and A>B overlap in the Arabic dialects of the Yemen, where univerbations *māšī* and *miš/muš* are both found, both extending into the realm of equational sentence negation. Elsewhere, in the dialects of the Levant and Egypt, the existential particle is *fi*, not *šī*, although remnants of an affirmative existential *šī* persist in an indefinite quantifier (Wilmsen 2017), but the univerbation *miš/muš* of a stage A>B persists as an equational-sentence negator and as a negator of a specific subdomain of verbal negation, characteristic of a stage B>C. Verbal negations with *miš/muš* are documented in Egyptian Arabic in the late nineteenth century and mid-twentieth century, but they must have been occurring earlier. Wagner (2010: 158) has recently documented a verbal negation with *mš* in a fifteenth-century document from Egypt. A stage C is not documented until the 20th century in a provincial dialect of Egyptian Arabic, but it, too, likely emerged before then.

In the *bī* cycle, too, the existential particle is present in a stage A in a set of Arabic dialects, in the Yemen, central Arabia, and the Syrian Plateau, but the later stage A>B appears in the univerbations *mab* and *mub* in Gulf dialects. In those latter dialects, too, the existential particle is either *šī* or more recently *fi*, not *bī*, but remnants of an existential *bī* persist in the negation complex *mā b(i)*. Indeed, in the Gulf dialects, with their A>B univerbations *māšī* and *mub*, the *šī* cycle and the *bī* cycle themselves overlap. The same might be said for Yemeni varieties, where *mā b(V)*, *mā šī*, and *māšī* are found.

5.1.2 Renewal of the existential particle

Veselinova speaks of the “constant renewal of the negative existential” (2016: 173). In the Arabic cycles it is the affirmative existential particle that is constantly being renewed. In all three, the original particle disappears as the cycle progresses. That of the *laysa* cycle, *?ys*, has long ago disappeared. In those Arabic varieties outside the southern Arabian Peninsula passing through the *šī* cycle, the existential particle *šī* has ceased to be used as such. Although grammaticalizations of the particle do persist, their existential origin is no longer transparently recognizable. In all cases, other existential particles arise to take the place of the

David Wilmsen

erstwhile existential particles that have disappeared into other grammatical operations. To paraphrase Veselinova, existential predication “is so important in human language that it is constantly maintained” (Veselinova 2016: 173).

5.2 A final commonality between Arabic negative existential cycles

We may coincidentally end, as Veselinova does (2016: 174), by drawing a distinction between the negative existential cycle and the Jespersen cycle. The *bī* and *šī* cycles share another remarkable commonality in a further erosion of the negators *mahub* and *mahūš*, by which each loses entirely the erstwhile negative element *ma*, resulting in the negators *hub* (cf. Holes 1990: 64, 73, 116; 2016: 106) and *huwāš* (Reinhardt 1894: 22):

- (36) a. Emirati Arabic (Dubai)
anā hub hindiyy-a
 PRO.1SG NEG Indian-F
 ‘I [am] not Indian.’ (Gumar)
- b. Omani Arabic (Ad Dakhiliyah)
huwā-š sumāni
 PRO.M.3SG Omani
 ‘He [is] not Omani.’ (Own data)

This gives the appearance of a so-called “Jespersen cycle”, whereby a lexical item such as, emblematically, the French word *pas* ‘step’ becomes closely bound up with negation and can come to replace the negator itself, as with some colloquial French varieties, which negate with *pas* alone without the standard preposed negator *ne*. (Veselinova 2016: 53) points out a crucial difference between the two cycles: In the Jespersen cycle a particle that has little or nothing to do with negation eventually comes to oust the older negator. Contrariwise, in the negative existential cycle, an item that does belong to the negative domain is gradually incorporated into verbal negation. Regardless, the post-positive negation with *-š* and *-b* appears to share with the Jespersen cycle the same motivation: The pre-positioned negator *mā* becomes superfluous and is abandoned.

6 Conclusion

The manifestations of the Arabic negative existential cycle are scattered across the map of the Arabophone world, with some varieties exhibiting only parts of

3 Extensions and commonalities in negative existential cycles in Arabic

the cycle. The negator *laysa*, is used universally in writing throughout the Arabophone world, but it is almost non-existent in speech, surviving as a remnant only in dialects of central and southern Saudi Arabia. The *laysa* cycle had reached the final C>A arc of the cycle but it was effectively blocked from proceeding further after the codification of the Arabic of writing beginning in the 8th century.

For its part, existential *bī* has not spread beyond the Arabian Peninsula, including the Syrian Steppes, and the *bī* cycle, too, appears to have been stymied from further development. Because the Gulf varieties of Arabic, where *mub* is most often found, already possess other existential particles, it appears that *mub* itself has been shunted into the negation of equational sentences.

The existential particle *šī* exists as such only in the dialects of the southern Arabian Gulf, Oman, and the Yemen, yet its grammaticalizations occur in Arabic varieties from the Yemen to Morocco. So, too, is it the only one of the three cycles that appears to remain active, having already reached a full-on stage C in the Arabic of the southern Yemen, and it appears to be entering a stage C in Egyptian varieties of Arabic, too.

It appears, then, that the origin of the three existential cycles of Arabic is in Arabic varieties of the southern Arabian Peninsula, for it is there that remnants of all three remain.

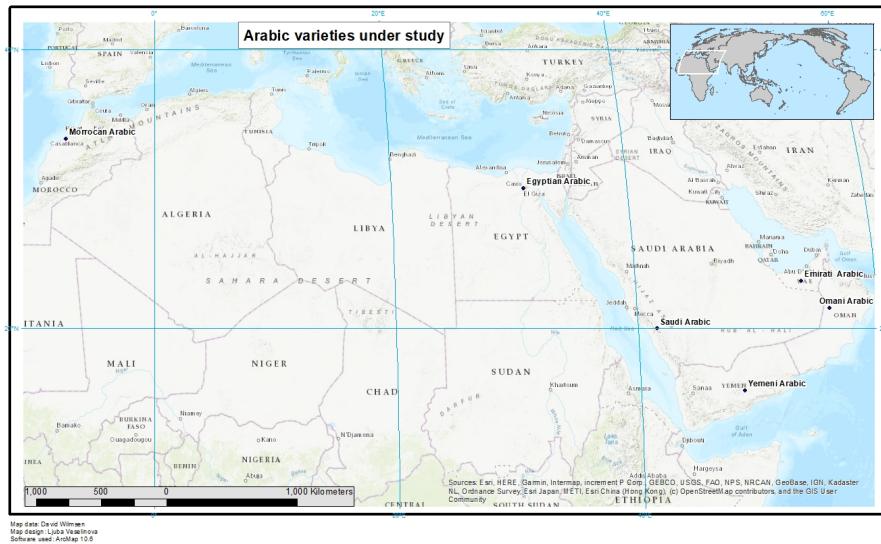
Abbreviations

| | | | |
|------|------------------|--------|---------------------------|
| 1 | 1st person | IPFV | imperfective |
| 2 | 2nd person | M | masculine |
| 3 | 3rd person | NEG | negator |
| CONJ | conjunction | NEG.EX | negative existential |
| DAT | dative | PFV | perfective |
| DEM | demonstrative | PL | plural |
| DET | determiner | PREP | preposition |
| EX | existential | PRO | pronoun |
| F | feminine | Q | interrogative |
| FUT | future | SG | singular |
| HAB | ongoing/habitual | SMA | Sharjah Museums Authority |
| IMP | imperative | | |
| IND | indicative | | |

Sources

Gumar corpus: <https://camel.abudhabi.nyu.edu/gumar/>

David Wilmsen



Map 3.1: Arabic varieties under study

References

- Adwan, Mamdouh. 2000. *'adā'i (My Enemies)*. Beirut: Riyād al-Rayyis.
- Ahmed, Jaklin Mansoor Mohammed. 2012. The syntax of negation in yemeni Arabic. Unpublished PhD dissertation, The English and Foreign Languages University, Hyderabad, India.
- Alzahrani, Salih Jamaan. 2015. *Topics in the grammar of Zahrani spoken Arabic*. Newcastle, Australia: University of Newcastle. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Al-Azraqi, Munira Ali. 1998. *Aspects of the syntax of the dialect of Abha (southwest Saudi Arabia)*. Durham University. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Behnstedt, Peter. 1997. *Sprachatlas von Syrien, 1 Kartenband*. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz.
- Behnstedt, Peter. 2016. *Dialect atlas of North Yemen and adjacent areas*. Leiden: Brill.
- Bernabela, Roy S. 2011. *A phonology and morphology sketch of the Šīħħi Arabic dialect of al-Ğēdīh (Oman)*. Leiden: Leiden University MA thesis.
- Binturki, Turki Abdullah S. 2015. *The acquisition of negation in Najdi Arabic*. University of Kansas. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Blau, Joshua. 1972. Marginalia Semitica II. 2. 57–82.

3 Extensions and commonalities in negative existential cycles in Arabic

- Brockett, A. A. 1985. *The Spoken Arabic of the Khābūra on the Bātīna of Oman* (Journal of Semitic Studies Monograph 7). Manchester: University of Manchester.
- Brustad, Kristen E. 2000. *The syntax of spoken Arabic: A comparative study of Moroccan, Egyptian, Syrian, and Kuwaiti dialects*. Washington, DC: Georgetown University Press.
- al-Buhārī, Abū ‘Abd Allāh Muḥammad b. Ismā‘īl ibn Ibrāhīm b. al-Mughīra b. Bardizba al-Ju‘fī. 2000. *Saḥīḥ al-Buhārī (The Correct of Buhārī)*. Vol. VI and VIII. Facsimile reprint of the 1911 Sultaniyya edition issued by Būlāq Press. Cairo/Stuttgart: Tradigital.
- Choueiri, Lina. 2016. The pronominal copula in Arabic. *Brill’s Journal of Afroasiatic Languages* 8. 101–135.
- Corriente, Federico. 2013. *A descriptive and comparative grammar of Andalusi Arabic*. Leiden: Brill.
- Cowell, Mark. 2005. *A reference grammar of Syrian Arabic: Based on the dialect of Damascus*. Washington, D.C: Georgetown University Press.
- Croft, William. 1991. The evolution of negation. *Journal of Linguistics* 27(1). 1–27.
- Davey, Richard J. 2016. *Coastal Dhofārī Arabic: A sketch grammar*. Leiden: Brill.
- Doss, Madiha. 2008. Evolving uses in Cairene Egyptian Arabic negation forms. *Estudios de dialectología norteafricana y andalusí* 12. 83–91.
- Eid, Mushira. 1983. The copula functions of pronouns. *Lingua* 59. 197–207.
- Eid, Mushira. 1991. Verbless sentences in Arabic and Hebrew. In Bernard Comrie & Mushira Eid (eds.), *Perspectives on Arabic linguistics III*, 31–61. Amsterdam/Philadelphia: John Benjamins.
- Eid, Mushira. 2008. Locatives. In Kees Versteegh, Mushira Eid, Alaa Elgibaly, Manfred Woidich & Andrzej Zaborski (eds.), *Encyclopedia of Arabic language and linguistics*, 80–88. Leiden: Brill.
- al-Farāhīdī, al-Ḥalil ibn Aḥmad. 2003. *Kitāb al-‘ayn: Murattaban ‘alā ḥurūf al-mu‘jam (Kitāb al-‘Ayn in Dictionary Order)*, Book i. Abd al-Aziz Hindāwiyy (ed.). Beirut: Dar al-Kotob al-Ilmiyah.
- Gensler, Orin D. 2000. Why Semitic adverbializers (Akkadian -IŠ, Syriac -Ā’ĪT) should not be derived from existential *’IT. *Journal of Semitic Studies* XLV(2). 233–265.
- Gihami, Gerard. nd. *Encyclopedia of Al-Kindī’s and Al-Fārābī’s terminology*. Beirut: Librairie du Liban.
- Glanville, Peter. 2018. Part, whole, and a grammaticalization path for ši + NP. *al-‘Arabiyya* 51. 49–68.

David Wilmsen

- Håland, Eva Marie. 2011. *Miš yinfa^c a change in progress? A study of extended usage of the negation marker miš in Cairene Arabic*. Oslo: University of Oslo. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Harrell, Richard S. 2004. *A short reference grammar of Moroccan Arabic*. Washington, D.C: Georgetown University Press.
- Holes, Clive. 1990. *Gulf Arabic*. Oxford: Routledge.
- Holes, Clive. 2006. The Arabic dialects of Arabia. *Proceedings of the Seminar for Arabian Studies* 36. 25–34.
- Holes, Clive. 2008. Omani Arabic. In Kees Versteegh, Mushira Eid, Alaa Elgibaly, Manfred Woidich & Andrzej Zaborski (eds.), *Encyclopedia of Arabic language and linguistics*, 478–491. Leiden: Brill.
- Holes, Clive. 2016. *Dialect, culture, & society in Eastern Arabia: 3 phonology, morphology, syntax, style*. Leiden: Brill.
- Ibn Ḥanbal, Aḥmad b Muhammad. no date. *Al-musnad*. Hamza Ahmad al-Zein (ed.). Vol. 9. Cairo: Dar al-Hadīt.
- Ingham, Bruce. 1994. *Najdi Arabic: Central Arabian*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Al-Jallad, Ahmad. 2018. The earliest attestation of laysa and the implications for its etymology. In M. C.A. Macdonald (ed.), *Languages, scripts and their uses in ancient North Arabia*, 111–119. Supplement to volume 48 of the Proceedings of the Seminar for Arabian Studies. Oxford: Archaeopress.
- Jarad, Nabil Ismail. 2017. Grammaticalization in Emirati Arabic. *Arabica* 64. 742–760.
- Johnstone, Thomas Muir. 1967. *Eastern Arabian dialect studies*. London: Oxford University Press.
- Kanafani, Ghassan. 2006. ‘ā’id ilā ḥaifa (Returning to Hafia). Beirut: Mu’assasat al-Abhāt al-‘Arabiyya.
- Khalifa, Salam, Nizar Habash, Dana Abdulrahim & Sara Hassan. 2016. A large-scale corpus of Gulf Arabic. In Nicoletta Calzolari (ed.), *Proceedings of the Tenth International Conference on Language Resources and Evaluation*, 4282–4289. Luxemburg: European Languages Resources Association (ELRA).
- Li, Charles N. & Sandra A. Thompson. 1977. A mechanism for the development of copula morphemes. In Charles N. Li (ed.), *Mechanisms of syntactic change*, 419–44. Austin: University of Texas Press.
- Lipiński, Edward. 2001. *Semitic languages: Outline of a comparative grammar*. Leuven: Peeters.
- Lucas, Christopher. 2007. Jespersen’s Cycle in Arabic and Berber. *Transactions of the Philological Society* 105(3). 398–431.
- Matar, Abd al-Azīz. 1976. *Zawahir nadirah fi lajat al-khalij al-’arabi (rare phenomena in the dialects of the Arabian Gulf)*. Doha: Dar Qatari ibn Fuja’ah.

3 Extensions and commonalities in negative existential cycles in Arabic

- Omar, Margaret K. 1975. *Saudi Arabic: Urban Hijazi dialect*. Washington, D.C: Foreign Service Institute.
- Owens, Jonathan. 2018. Dialects (speech communities), the apparent past, and grammaticalization: Towards an understanding of the history of Arabic. In C. Holes (ed.), *Arabic historical dialectology*, 206–256. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Persson, Maria. 2008. The role of the b-prefix in Gulf Arabic dialects as a marker of future, intent and/or irrealis. *Journal of Arabic and Islamic Studies* 8. 26–52.
- Prochazka, Theodore, Jr. 2010. *Saudi Arabian dialects*. London/New York: Routledge.
- Al-Rawi, Rosina-Fawzia. 1990. *Studien zum arabischen Dialekt von Abū Dhaby: Nominalbildung und -lexik, Texte*. Heidelberg: Julius Groos Verlag.
- Reinhardt, Carl. 1894. *Ein arabischer Dialekt gesprochen in ‘Oman und Zanzibar, nach praktischen Gesichtspunkten für das Seminar für orientalische Sprachen in Berlin*. Stuttgart: Spemann.
- Retsö, Jan. 2011. The 'b imperfect. In Lutz Edzard & Rudolf de Jong (eds.), *Encyclopedia of Arabic language and linguistics, Managing Editors Online Edition*. Consulted online on 13 November 2017. Leiden: Brill. http://dx.doi.org/10.1163/1570-6699_eall_SIM_001004.
- Retsö, Jan. 2014. The bi-imperfect once again: Typological and diachronic perspectives. In Lutz Edzard & John Huehnergard (eds.), *Proceedings of the Oslo-Austin Workshop in Semitic Linguistics*, 64–72. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz.
- Al-Saqqaf, Abdullah Hassan Sheikh. 1999. *A descriptive linguistic study of the spoken Arabic of Wādī Hadramawt, Yemen*. Exeter: University of Exeter. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Al-Sayyed, Amaly & David Wilmsen. 2017. Verbal negation with muš in maltese and Eastern Mediterranean arabics. In Mauro Tosco & Benjamin Saade (eds.), *Advances in maltese linguistics*, 239–260. Berlin: de Gruyter Mouton.
- Simeone-Senelle, Marie-Claude. 1996. Negation in some Arabic dialects of the Ti-haama of the Yemen. In Mushira Eid & Dilworth Parkinson (eds.), *Perspectives on Arabic linguistics*, vol. IX, 207–221. Amsterdam, Netherlands: Benjamins.
- Singer, Hans-Rudolf. 1984. *Grammatik der arabischen Mundart der Medina von Tunis*. Berlin/New York: de Gruyter.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2014. The negative existential cycle revisited. *Linguistics* 52(6). 1327–1389.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2016. The negative existential cycle viewed through the lens of comparative data. In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change continued (Linguistics Today 227)*, 139–187. Amsterdam: Benjamins.

David Wilmsen

- Vollers, Karl. 1890. *Lehrbuch der aegypto-arabischen Umgangssprache, mit Übungen und einem Glossar*. Cairo: self-published.
- Wagner, Esther-Miriam. 2010. *Linguistic variety of Judaeo-Arabic in letters from the Cairo Genizah*. Leiden/Boston: Brill.
- Watson, Janet. 1993. *A Syntax of Ḫanā'i Arabic*. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz.
- Wilmsen, David. 2014. *Arabic indefinites, interrogatives, and negators: A linguistic history of western dialects*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Wilmsen, David. 2016a. Another croft cycle in Arabic: The laysa negative existential cycle. *Folia Orientalia* LIII. 327–367.
- Wilmsen, David. 2016b. The dehortative in the spoken Arabics of the Eastern Mediterranean. *Romano-Arabica* XVI. 133–150.
- Wilmsen, David. 2017. Grammaticalization and degrammaticalization in an Arabic existential particle šay. *Folia Orientalia* LIV. 279–307.
- Wilmsen, David. 2020a. Croft's cycle in Arabic: The negative existential cycle in a single language. *Linguistics* 58(2). 493–535.
- Wilmsen, David. 2020b. On the existential origin of the Arabic negative adjunct bi- and its progression along an attenuated negative existential cycle.
- Woidich, Manfred. 1990. *Materialen zur Kenntnis des Kairenisch-arabischen*. Amsterdam: Instituut voor het Moderne Nabije Oosten, Universiteit van Amsterdam.
- Woidich, Manfred. 2006. *Das Kairenisch-Arabische: Eine Grammatik*. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz.

Chapter 4

The negative existential cycle in Ancient Hebrew

Jacobus A. Naudé^a, Cynthia L. Miller-Naudé^a & Daniel J. Wilson^a

^aUniversity of the Free State

Evidence of diachronic change as opposed to synchronic variation in Ancient (Pre-Modern) Hebrew is currently disputed, as is the relationship of Biblical Hebrew to later varieties of Hebrew as found in Qumran Hebrew and Mishnaic Hebrew. Recent work in historical linguistics, particularly the study of cyclical change in individual constructions, has provided a means to use stages of synchronic variation within a diachronic trajectory for analyzing how languages change. Such a diachronic trajectory includes synchronic variation, transitional stages and overlapping constructions. One cycle which manifests synchronic variation within a diachronic trajectory is the Negative Existential Cycle as introduced by Croft (1991). This cycle is evident in the ancient varieties of Hebrew and adds evidence to the claim that diachronic change is discernible in Ancient Hebrew. One additional change that is observed is a shift in subject agreement from more synthetic to more analytic in certain constructions, which is consistent with the Subject Agreement Cycle in van Gelderen (2011).

Keywords: Biblical Hebrew, Qumran Hebrew, Mishnaic Hebrew, Negative Existential Cycle, Subject Agreement Cycle

1 Introduction

Current research in the historical linguistics of Ancient Hebrew is engaged in a controversy concerning the evidence of diachronic change as opposed to synchronic variation in Biblical Hebrew and in the relationship of the language of



Jacobus A. Naudé, Cynthia L. Miller-Naudé & Daniel J. Wilson

the Bible to later varieties of Hebrew as found in Qumran Hebrew and Mishnaic Hebrew.¹

Traditionally, the Hebrew of the Bible was understood to exhibit at least two, if not three, diachronic stages – archaic Biblical Hebrew, classical Biblical Hebrew (of the monarchic period) and late Biblical Hebrew (of the post-exilic period).² Recently, however, the diachronic model has been challenged, by *inter alia*, Young et al. (2008) and Rezetko & Young (2014) who claim that Biblical Hebrew exhibits only synchronic variation and no clear trajectory can be made between Biblical Hebrew and the much later varieties of Pre-Modern Hebrew.³ The issue is complicated by the oral-written context within which the Bible was written, by scribal redaction of the text, and by scribal transmission over more than a millennium. In this paper, we present an overview of the evidence for the negative existential cycle in Ancient Hebrew, including Biblical Hebrew and epigraphic Hebrew, and describe how this cycle demonstrates a trajectory from Biblical Hebrew to Qumran Hebrew and Mishnaic Hebrew.

After we introduce the syntactic indications of negative scope in Hebrew, we will describe the negative existential constructions. Then we will demonstrate the stages of Croft's (1991) Negative Existential Cycle which are present in Biblical Hebrew and how they persist or change in later varieties of Hebrew. Finally, we will demonstrate some syntactic changes in one specific construction which diffuse into post-biblical Hebrew, providing further evidence for a diachronic trajectory.

¹Biblical Hebrew refers to the Hebrew as found in the Hebrew Bible, which is based on the medieval manuscript tradition of the Masoretes but “reflects to a large extent varieties of Hebrew spoken in Israel from the beginning of the Iron Age (about 1200 BCE) to the Hellenistic era (about 165 BCE)” (van der Merwe, Naudé & Kroeze 2017: 1; see also pp. 2–6 for an overview of the development of Ancient [Pre-Modern] Hebrew). Qumran Hebrew reflects the Hebrew of the texts found in the eleven caves around Khirbet Qumran (ca. 200 BCE to 70 CE) (see Naudé 2003; Naudé & Miller-Naudé 2016b). Mishnaic Hebrew reflects the Hebrew of the sages, the Tannaim and Amoraim, in Palestine and Babylonia. Literature written in Mishnaic Hebrew covers the period of 70 CE to 500 CE, although Mishnaic Hebrew as a living language was spoken in Palestine only until about 200 CE (Bar-Asher 1999: 116; see also van der Merwe et al. 2017: 5; Naudé & Miller-Naudé 2016b).

²See van der Merwe, Naudé & Kroeze (2017: 1–6) for an overview of the development of ancient Hebrew. Archaic Biblical Hebrew (ca. 1200–1000 BCE) reflects the oldest stratum of Hebrew in the Bible, as found especially in the ancient poems. Classical Biblical Hebrew of the monarchial period (ca. 1000–586/7 BCE) includes both the Israelian dialect and the standard Judean scribal dialect and is the language of the pre-exilic prose sections of the Hebrew Bible. Late Biblical Hebrew (ca. 539–165 BCE) is the language of the post-exilic sections of the Hebrew Bible.

³The arguments are summarized in Naudé & Miller-Naudé 2016a,b.

4 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Hebrew

As preliminary to the following discussion, we describe the syntactic features of negative scope, which relates to standard verbal negation (as illustrated in 1a and 1b) as well as the negative existential (as illustrated in 2a and 2b). There are two kinds of negative scope in Biblical Hebrew (Snyman & Naudé 2003; Snyman 2004; Naudé & Rendsburg 2013). Sentential negation occurs when the negative marker immediately precedes the verb, which is regularly in initial position in the sentence (1a). By contrast, constituent negation occurs when the negative marker precedes a non-verbal constituent (1b):

- (1) a. *lō²=šālaḥtî* *'et=han-nəbī¹im*
 NEG=send.PFV.1SG OBJ=ART-prophets
 'I did not send the prophets.' [BHS Jeremiah 23:21]
 b. *wə²-'attâ lō²='attem šəlaḥtem* *'ōfî hēnnâ kî hā-'*
 and-now NEG=M.2PL send.PFV.M.2PL OBJ.1SG here COMP ART-God
 'And not you sent me here, but rather God.' [BHS Genesis 45:8]

The scope of the negative modifies the semantic interpretation of the sentence. In (1a) above, the sentence indicates that God did not send the prophets; whereas in (1b), the sentence does not deny that Joseph was sent, but only that it is not his addressees, his brothers, who effected the sending.

Negative existential constructions usually involve sentential negation, as illustrated in (2a). Less frequently negative existential constructions may involve constituent negation.⁴ In (2b) the negative existential negates a bare noun and the negative existential followed by the noun are the object of the preposition.

Possession is regularly expressed in Hebrew using an existential construction with a prepositional phrase headed by the preposition *l-* ('to'). With this construction, sentential and constituent negation occurs with the negative existential marker, as illustrated in (3a) and (3b), respectively, in present time:⁵

⁴See also the examples discussed in Naudé & Rendsburg (2013: 803, §2.5) as closely related to constituent negation.

⁵The positive possessive construction uses the positive existential marker *yēš* for present time reference and a form of the copular verb *hyh* for past time, future time or non-indicative modality.

Jacobus A. Naudé, Cynthia L. Miller-Naudé & Daniel J. Wilson

- (3) a. *'en melek lā-nū*
 NEG.EX king to-1PL
 ‘We have no king (lit. there is no king for us).’ [BHS Hosea 10:3]
- b. *'en lī bēn*
 NEG.EX to-1SG son
 ‘Not I have a son (lit. there is not to me a son).’ [BHS 2 Samuel 18:18]

Possession can also be expressed in Hebrew using the copula with the same prepositional phrase to indicate past time, future time or non-indicative modality. The possessive construction may involve sentential negation, as in (4a), or constituent negation, as in (4b):

- (4) a. *lō' yihyeh lākem*
 NEG COP.M.3SG.IPFV to.M.3PL
 ‘It will not belong to you (lit. it will not be to you).’
 [BHS Jeremiah 35:7]
- b. *lō' lō yihyeh haz-zāra'*
 NEG to.M.3SG COP.M.3SG.IPFV ART-seed
 ‘Not belonging to him would be the offspring (lit. not to him will be the offspring).’
 [BHS Genesis 38:9]

2 Constructions with the negative existential marker

In Biblical Hebrew, the marker of standard negation in finite, indicative verbal sentences is *lō'*, as illustrated in (1a) above (see also Sjörs 2018: 143–172). There is also a negative existential marker, *'ayin* (usually vocalized as the “construct form” *'en*)⁶ and a positive existential marker, *yēš* (5):

- (5) *'en=lehem hōl 'el=tahat yādī kī= 'im=lehem qōdes yēš*
 NEG.EX=bread common to=under hand.1SG COMP= if=bread holy EX
 ‘There is no common bread on hand, but holy bread there is.’
 [BHS 1 Samuel 21:5]

The two existential markers do not index tense or aspect; they default for present time. As a result, the verbal copula *hyh* is used for existential sentences that

⁶The historical origin of the negative existential marker has been connected to the interrogative adverb and homonym *'ayin* ‘where’ (see, e.g. Joön & Muraoka 2009: 569). The two vocalizations of the negative existential relate to the syntactic contexts in which they occur; see Naudé et al. 2018; 2019.

4 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Hebrew

specify perfective aspect (6a), or imperfective aspect with a future sense (6b). The verbal copula is never used to express existence that is linked to the moment of speaking.

- (6) a. *lō²=hāyâ* *gešem bā-’āreš*
 NEG=COP.PFV.M.3SG rain in.ART-land
 ‘There was no rain in the land.’ [BHS 1 Kings 17:7]

b. *wə-lō²=yihyeh* *’ōd mabbûl lə-šahēt* *hā-’āreš*
 and-NEG=COP.IPFV.M.3SG again flood to-destroy.INF ART-land
 ‘And there will not again be a flood to destroy the land.’ [BHS Genesis 9:11]

The copula is also used for existential sentences which express non-indicative modality. In (7a), the positive construction is illustrated and in (7b), the negative construction illustrates the fact that the negative marker *'al* is used with non-indicative finite verbs rather than the indicative negative marker *lō*:

This picture of the distribution of the standard negator and the negative existential marker becomes more complex, because the negative existential marker is also used to negate some verbal predictions, most prominently participial predictions (see Miller-Naudé & Naudé 2015), as illustrated in (8):

- (8) *'ê̄n=ham-melek nôšā^c bə-rob=hāyil*
 NEG.EX=ART-king save.PASS.PTCP⁷ in-abundance.GEN=army
 ‘The king is not saved by the greatness of his army.’ [BHS Psalm 33:16]

⁷The verbal form is in the Niphal stem, which is used for passive or reflexive meanings; see van der Merwe, Naudé & Kroese (2017: 78–79).

Jacobus A. Naudé, Cynthia L. Miller-Naudé & Daniel J. Wilson

As is indicated below, the negative existential marker expands its use so that it is used to negate verbal sentences. At the same time, the participle expands its use as the main predication in a sentence.

In this section we listed the various constructions in Biblical Hebrew which utilize the negative existential markers. In the following section we examine aspects of the negative existential cycle in ancient Hebrew.

3 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Hebrew

Before demonstrating the stages of the negative existential cycle in Ancient Hebrew, a word is necessary on what constitutes a “stage” in historical linguistics. This matter is important and is connected to the debated issue of synchrony vs. diachrony, which has received increasing scrutiny in recent decades. (Lass 1997: 12) poses the following question:

How much of what looks like (synchronic) structure really is, and how much is rather detritus left behind by historical processes, that even if they leave notable residues have no particular present relevance? ... In this sense a language-state as an object of academic scrutiny is no different in principle from a kidney, a mountain range, or an art style.

Certain formulations such as A > B are commonly used to represent stages of linguistic change. Another, more appropriate formulation A > A ~ B > B has been used by Croft 1991 in his seminal work on the negative existential cycle. Brinton & Traugott critique this formulation saying, “Even this is misleading, since often, especially in domains that involve meaning, earlier patterns only become restricted or fossilized, not entirely lost” (Brinton & Traugott 2005: 6). They propose an alternate formulation:

$$A > \begin{cases} A \\ B \end{cases} > (B)$$

This formulation states that the emergence of B as a distinct stage may or may not occur. Any theory of a stage in historical linguistics must, therefore, acknowledge the mixture of older and newer forms existing contemporaneously while also acknowledging that some stages will not evolve (see also Croft 1991: 22–25; Veselinova 2016). Additionally, newer forms may emerge yet not diffuse throughout the language, but be subsumed by other forms.

4 *The negative existential cycle in Ancient Hebrew*

In his theory of language change and diffusion, Naudé (2012) lays out four dimensions that are relevant for the analysis of ancient texts in historical linguistics. The first dimension is the idiolect that develops when the grammar of an individual differs from the input source (e.g. child and his parents). This is called the individual dimension and is the source of language change.

The second dimension is the sociological dimension. This relates to the diffusion of the change throughout the language community. Ringe & Eska (2013: 214) describe this process as follows:

Yet, should it be the case that a syntactic parameter changes its setting from one generation to the next via imperfect learning in the acquisition process, we have to ask why we find that change takes place only gradually in the documentary record. This seeming paradox has been solved by Kroch 1989, who points out that a parameter for which only a small amount of data is present in the primary linguistic data heard during the process of acquisition can lead two learners to acquire two different grammars. This has given rise to Kroch's Grammars in Competition Hypothesis, in which parameter settings, not entire grammars, compete; it is manifested in the variation found in the documentary record as the reflex of an innovative parametric setting competes with and eventually supplants the reflex of the older parametric setting.

Naudé adds that this sociological diffusion occurs in the shape of an S-shaped curve with the new option beginning slowly, accelerating, and finally leveling off once the competition is resolved.

The third dimension is the chronological dimension. In this dimension, newer forms exist and change side-by-side with older forms called "stylistic fossils". Naudé says, "These stylistic fossils are in competition – at certain stages they are dominant and at other stages they are dominated – and they may be present in the speech community for centuries" (Naudé 2012: 73). As older forms erode and become limited in their use, newer forms pick up the slack and represent a renewal, a "diachronic cycle". This cycle is not a reversal of directionality, but a termination of one unidirectional process and the restarting of another in the same general direction (Naudé 2012: 73).

Naudé's fourth dimension acknowledges that analyzing ancient texts involves working with written language. All historical linguistic studies that span more than a few generations must interact with written text.⁸ This point is important

⁸Historical linguistics involving languages which have only a very recent written tradition (or no written tradition) can only be accomplished by comparative historical analysis of related languages or dialects for which a written tradition exists.

Jacobus A. Naudé, Cynthia L. Miller-Naudé & Daniel J. Wilson

for our definition of a stage. The written dimension preserves a picture of the status of diffusion at the time of writing. If written texts comprise our data, then each text which gives evidence that a change has diffused represents a stage. This stage may only reflect change in a single construction, but it still should be considered a stage. For this reason, syntactic structures in different corpora reflect different stages insofar as they have qualitative differences. A stage in diachronic syntax, then, is construction-specific and is discerned by observing the degree of diffusion between written texts. These stages are part of a cycle which is constantly being renewed.

In terms of Croft's diachronic typology of the negative existential cycle, Biblical Hebrew exhibits a variable stage A ~ B in that there is a dedicated negative existential form (*'en*) but it is used in specific contexts in which past or future time do not need to be specified but can be inferred from the surrounding context. For those contexts which specify past or future time, the *lō'* + verbal copula construction is used. While it might be possible to posit that *lō'* + verbal copula represents a pre-biblical stage A in which the standard verbal negator is used to negate existential sentences, this stage cannot be clearly discerned in the Hebrew Bible.⁹ Furthermore, the use of *'en* is far more prominent than *lō'* + verbal copula in expressing negative existential sentences in Biblical Hebrew.¹⁰ In post-biblical Hebrew, the *lō'* + copula form of the negative existential decreases in use in Qumran, though it does still occur:

- (9) *w-plth l² thyh*
and-survivor NEG COP.IPFV.F.3SG
'There will be no survivor.' [DSSR 1QM 1:6]

In Mishnaic Hebrew there are very few examples of a genuine negative existential with the construction *lō'* + copula:

- (10) *lō' hāyətā hāšēr bīrūšālayim še-'ēn-āh*
NEG COP.PFV.F.3SG courtyard in.Jerusalem REL-NEG.EX-F.3SG
mə'irā mē-'ōr bêt haššō'ēbā
illumined.PTCP from-light.GEN house.GEN hashshoebah
'And there was not a courtyard in Jerusalem that was not illuminated by

⁹An anonymous reviewer suggested that Job 38:26 provides an example of the standard verbal negator *lō'* without a copula: '*ereš lō' yis* 'a land [which] no man (is).' We argue instead that if *lō' yis* (lit. not man) was a verbless sentence with a null (implicit) copula, it would have a pronominal clitic for disambiguation (see Naudé 1996). We understand the phrase in Job 38:26 as a noun (*land*) modified by a noun phrase with constituent negation (*no man*); the phrase means 'an uninhabited (lit. no human) land.'

¹⁰We have identified only 61 examples of the negative existential *lō'* + verbal copula in Biblical Hebrew as compared to 383 examples of the dedicated negative existential *'en*.

4 *The negative existential cycle in Ancient Hebrew*

the light of the house of Hashshoebah.'

[M Sukkah 5:3]

An alternative strategy for Stage A is attested in Biblical Hebrew in a single example:

- (11) *lō' yēš=bēnēnū mōkīah*
NEG EX=between.1PL arbiter.PTCP

'There does not exist between us an arbiter.'

[BHS Job 9:33]

This construction uses the standard verbal negator before the positive existential marker (*yēš*). This strategy does not seem to be attested in later stages of Hebrew.¹¹ However, this strategy occurs in Biblical Aramaic, a related Northwest Semitic language, in which the positive existential particle *'itay* is negated by the standard verbal negative *lā'* (e.g. Daniel 2:10, 3:29, 4:32). In later Targumic Aramaic, the standard verbal negative and the positive existential became fused into a new existential marker *layit*, an illustration of Stage B. The sole example in Biblical Hebrew may thus be an Aramaism (see Driver & Gray 1921: xlvi–xlvii) or it may reflect a change which did not diffuse or develop in Hebrew as it did in Aramaic.

In addition to the stage A~B in which both the dedicated negative existential *'ēn* and *lō' + copula* occur, it is also clear that the dedicated negative existential marker *'ēn* is expanding its domain of use from existential sentences to verbal sentences – Croft's variable stage B ~ C – and this is the most dominant pattern in the Hebrew Bible.¹² The extension of the negative existential marker *'ēn* to verbal sentences occurs only when the verbal predicate is a non-finite verb and especially a participle. The fact that the participle has both nominal and verbal characteristics (Andersen & Forbes 2007; 2012: 33–35) undoubtedly facilitates the expansion of the negative existential from purely nominal predicates to participial predicates. Veselinova (2016: 157) has found that non-finite verbal forms cross-linguistically are often the first to allow negation with a negative existential marker. The stage B ~ C which is observed in Biblical Hebrew can be seen in Epigraphic Hebrew, the non-biblical materials from the time of the Bible, which can be dated paleographically. In a few examples, *'ēn* negates both verbless existential sentences (12) and verbal predicates with participles (13).

¹¹In the Mishnah, there is a single example of *lō'* preceding *yēš* but this construction is unique because of its connection with the interrogative marker, meaning 'is it not the case that there exist' (with the pragmatic sense 'it is certainly the case that there are') *wahālō' yeš še'ēnān mōsəqîn [zitēhn] 'ellā' lə'āhar rəbē'ā šənîyyâ*. 'But is it not the case that there are not those who pick the olives only after the second rain [falls]?' (M Pe'ah 8.1).

¹²For cross-linguistic data illustrating that a contextually restricted negator expands into the domain of verbal negation, see also Veselinova (2014) for data from Hawai'iian (Polynesian) and Veselinova (2015) for data from Zyryan Komi (Uralic).

Jacobus A. Naudé, Cynthia L. Miller-Naudé & Daniel J. Wilson

- (12) *'yn [p]h ksp*
 NEG.EX here silver
 ‘There is no silver here.’ [HAE Jer(7):2 line 1]¹³

(13) *'yn[n]y šlh*
 NEG.EX.1SG send.PTCP.M.SG
 ‘I am not sending.’ [HAE Lak(6):1.4 lines 7–8]¹⁴

For an example of how these constructions expand their use, in Qumran Hebrew it is possible for *'en* to negate an infinitival clause:

- (14) *b-h^twpp kwl hṣy s̥t l-’yn hšb*
 when-fly.INF all.GEN arrows.GEN pit to-NEG.EX return.INF
 ‘when the arrows of the pit fly off without returning’ [DSSR 1QH^a 11.28]

In Mishnaic texts the plural participle may be used with *'en* to express an impersonal and permanent prohibition.

- (15) *nāšim wa-‘ābādīm ū-kətannîm ’ēn məzammânîm ‘älé-hem*
 women and-slaves and-minors NEG.EX invite.PTCP.PL on-3MP
 ‘Women, slaves, or minors may not invite others.’ [M Berakot 7.2]

The use of *yēš* with the plural participle similarly expresses a general, impersonal, positive statement (Pérez Fernández 1997: 134):

- (16) *yēš məbî’im* *bikkurîm*
EX bring.PTCP.M.PL firstfruits
‘There are those who bring the firstfruits.’ [M Bikkurim 1.1]

Examples (14–16) thus demonstrate that in post-Biblical Hebrew, there is further expansion of the use of the negative existential marker for the negation of verbal constructions as part of the B ~ C cycle. Although this change began in post-exilic Biblical Hebrew with a few examples, it becomes very common in Qumran Hebrew and Mishnaic Hebrew (Hurvitz 2014: 36–39).

An additional environment where 'en functions similarly to a simple negator is in a verbless locative sentence, as in example (17).¹⁵

- (17) *wə-hinnē 'en=yōsēp bab-bōr*
 and-behold NEG.EX=Joseph in.ART-pit
 ‘Behold, Joseph was not in the pit.’ [BHS Genesis 37:29]

¹³See also the example in HAE Lak(6):1.4 line 5.

¹⁴See also HAE Arad(8):40 lines 13–14.

¹⁵See also BHS Exodus 17:7, 1 Samuel 9:11, 14:39.

4 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Hebrew

In example (17), *Joseph* cannot serve as the pivot of an existential because it is a proper name. Proper names cannot function as the pivots of existentials due to the *definiteness effect* (or *definiteness restriction*) (Milsark 1974: 195; Leonetti 2008). The definiteness effect is a cross-linguistic phenomenon of existentials whereby definite NPs are prohibited from serving as the pivot, as in the English example (18).

- (18) * There is it/the dog/that dog/Fido/ (Leonetti 2008: 132)

The proper noun *Joseph* in (17), instead, is the subject of a simple predication. Example (17) demonstrates that *'en* may be used in locative predication. This is especially significant in light of the semantics of existential sentences. Existentials have been compared to locatives—the main difference between them being the reorientation of the figure-ground relationship. Creissels compares existentials to locatives saying,

What distinguishes existential clauses from plain locational clauses is a different perspectivization of figure-ground relationships whose most obvious manifestation is that, contrary to plain locational clauses, existential clauses are not adequate answers to questions about the location of an entity, but can be used to identify an entity present at a certain location (Creissels 2014: 2).

Partee & Borschev (2004) introduce the notion of Perspective Centre to compare existentials to locatives. In a locative sentence, the THING is chosen as the perspectival centre while the LOCATION is chosen in an existential sentence. The difference is represented in (19), with the Perspectival Centre underlined:

- (19) a. Existential
 “There is a glass on the table.”
 b. Locative
 “The glass is on the table.”

It is significant that in Biblical Hebrew, the negative existential particle may be used in both existential and locative sentences. Other languages which allow this have been identified in Veselinova (2013).

There is a second variable stage B ~ C in which the *lō'* + copula construction negates a participle. Just as the negative existential particle *'en* enters the verbal domain by negating the participle, *lō'* + copula does as well. Biblical Hebrew has only 5 examples of this construction (20).¹⁶

¹⁶See also the Biblical Hebrew examples in BHS Exodus 23:26; Isaiah 10:14; Jeremiah 50:3; Ezekiel 41:6; Daniel 8:7.

Jacobus A. Naudé, Cynthia L. Miller-Naudé & Daniel J. Wilson

- (20) *wə-lō²=yihyâ* *’ăhûzîm* *bə-qîr* *hab-bāyit*
 and-NEG=COP.IPFV.M.3PL fasten.PTCP.M.PL in-wall.GEN ART-house
 ‘They were not fastened to the wall of the house.’ [BHS Ezekiel 41:6]

In Qumran Hebrew and Mishnaic Hebrew, the use of construction *lō²* + copula + participle is used in additional contexts in which Biblical Hebrew generally use the negator *lō²* plus a perfective or imperfective verb. The Qumran Hebrew example in (21b) uses a *lō²* + copula + participle in contrast with the Biblical Hebrew example in (21a) which uses *lō²* + imperfective verb.

- (21) a. *lō² yābō²* *bēt* *YHWH*
 NEG enter.IPFV.M.3SG house.GEN YHWH
 ‘It will not enter the house of YHWH.’ [BHS Hosea 9:4]
- b. *w-lw³ yhyw* *b’ym* *bl^c* *’l twk*
 and-NEG COP.IPFV.M.3PL enter.PTCP.M.PL suddenly into midst.GEN
mqdšy
 temple.1SG
 ‘So that they will not enter suddenly into the midst of my temple.’
 [DSSR 11Q19 46:10–11]

Example (22b) illustrates that the *lō²* + copula + participle construction persists in Mishnaic Hebrew where Biblical Hebrew would use a *lō²* + finite verb (22a).

- (22) a. *wə-’ābîw* *wə-immô* *lō² yādə’û* *kî*
 and-father.M.3SG and-mother.M.3SG NEG know.PFV.M.3PL COMP
mē-YHWH hî²
 from-YHWH F.3SG
 ‘His father and his mother did not know that it was from YHWH.’
 [BHS Judges 14:4]
- b. *lō² hāyâ* *yōdēa^c* *šeyp-yeš lô* *rə’āyâ*
 NEG COP.PFV.M.3SG know.PTCP.M.SG REL-EX to.M.3SG proof
û-māṣā² *rə’āyâ*
 and-find.PFV.M.3SG proof
 ‘He did not know that he had proof but he found proof.’
 [M Sanhedrin 3:8]

This construction provides yet another example of the expansion of forms into post-biblical Hebrew.

There may also be evidence for the variable stage C ~ A in which the negative existential is used not only for verbal predication, but also to negate the

4 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Hebrew

affirmative existential. There is only one example in Biblical Hebrew which may possibly point to this stage:

- (23) *'oznayim lā-hem wə-lō' ya'azinū 'aḥ 'ēn=yeš=rūah
 ears to-M.3PL and-NEG hear.IPFV.M.3PL indeed NEG.EX=EX=breath
 bə-pīhem
 in-mouth.M.3PL*

‘They have ears, but they cannot hear; nor is there breath in their mouth (lit. there does not exist the existence of breath in their mouth).’

[BHS Psalm 135:17]

In (23), a sentence is predicated with the positive existential *yēš* but preceded by the negative existential *'ēn*.¹⁷ It is possible that this example reflects poetic license or that the sentence reflects a change in the language resembling the last stage of the negative existential cycle which was not successfully diffused through the language (see Naudé 2012). With only one example, we cannot be certain about the status of a variable C ~ A stage.

We have seen extensive evidence for stages A ~ B and B ~ C of the negative existential cycle, including further expansions of the use of the negative existential marker to negate various kinds of verbal constructions in post-biblical Hebrew.

The negative existential cycle provides a means to use stages of synchronic variation within a diachronic trajectory for analyzing these Ancient Hebrew constructions. Such a diachronic trajectory acknowledges synchronic variation, transitional stages and overlapping constructions, all of which reflect the ways in which languages change over time.

4 The shift from synthetic to analytic pronominal subjects of negative existentials

In this section we revisit the question of diachronic change exhibited in the negation of the participle with special reference to constructions involving left dislocation Naudé & Miller-Naudé 2016b. In this section we provide additional evidence that seemingly small changes involving left dislocation constructions reflect change in syntactic structures. Furthermore, some constructions which

¹⁷In BHS 1 Samuel 21:9, a positive existential sentence is preceded by *'in*, whose identification is uncertain. It might be an alternate spelling of the negative existential marker (the reading of some manuscripts) or it might be a mistaken vocalization of the interrogative marker *'en* ‘where?’

Jacobus A. Naudé, Cynthia L. Miller-Naudé & Daniel J. Wilson

seem to be synchronic variants in terms of the negative cycle can be shown to be diachronically rather than synchronically related on the basis of syntax.

This section demonstrates that in addition to the expanding domains of various existential forms, the forms themselves are subject to change based on other factors. *Van Gelderen* (2016: 7) reviews the treatment of analytic and synthetic languages and demonstrates how macro-cycles can be discerned in addition to cycles such as the ones demonstrated in §3. In macro-cycles, languages can move from being more analytic, in which they are closer to having a one-to-one relationship between word and morpheme, to more synthetic in which isolated forms move to become more agglutinative and separate words are reanalysed morphologically as part of another word (e.g. English *going to* > *gonna*) (see *van Gelderen* 2016: 6–8 for a description of the development of this notion). As the cycle continues, eventually the synthetic forms move toward being more analytic and reproduce isolated forms again. Analytic and synthetic stages can occur simultaneously in different systems of a language. A language can be in one stage for agreement and in another for negation (*van Gelderen* 2016: 7). In this section, we demonstrate that the pronominal subject of participial predicates negated with the negative existential marker is manifesting a shift in agreement from a synthetic inflectional stage where the subject is a pronominal suffix into an analytic isolating stage where the subject is an independent personal pronoun.

There are three types of constructions in which the participle is negated with *'ēn* in Biblical Hebrew (see *Miller-Naudé & Naudé* 2015 for additional details). In the first type, a pronominal suffix is joined to the negative existential marker which is followed by a participle with its object and adjuncts:

- (24) *'im=’ēnkā mēšīb da' kî=môt*
 if=NEG.EX.M.2SG return.PTCP know.IMP.M.SG that=die.INF.ABSL
tāmūt ’attâ wə-kol=’ăšer=lāk
 die.IPFV.M.2SG M.2SG and-all=REL=to.M.2SG
 ‘If you do not return, know that you shall surely die, you and all who are yours.’ [BHS Genesis 20:7]

This construction can be modified through left dislocation, in which a constituent appears outside the initial boundary of the sentence and is resumed within the sentence as a pronominal suffix on the negative existential marker:

- (25) *kî ha-hayyim yôdə'îm šey-yāmūtû wə-ham-mētîm*
 for ART-living.PL know.PTCP.PL rel-die.IPFV.M.3PL and-ART-die.PTCP
’ēn-ām yôdə'îm mə’ūmâ
 NEG.EX-M.3PL know.PTCP.PL anything
 ‘For the living know that they will die, but the dead, they do not know

4 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Hebrew

anything'

[BHS Qohelet 9:5]

The subject constituent (*the dead*) is left dislocated, and a resumptive subject pronoun is suffixed to the negative existential. (For the syntactic and semantic features of topicalization and left dislocation in Biblical Hebrew, see Naudé 1990; Holmstedt 2014; Naudé & Miller-Naudé 2017). The same construction occurs in Qumran Hebrew:

- (26) [wə]-³p ²my ²ynnh m³mnt ²šr
 [and]-even mother.1SG NEG.EX.F.3SG believe.PTCP.F.SG REL
 tr²n[y] ²wd
 see.IPFV.F.3SG.1SG again
 'Even my mother, she does not believe that she will see me again.'
 [DSSR 4Q200 f4:4]

The construction is also found in Mishnaic Hebrew:

- (27) haš-šum wə-hab-bəšālīm ²ēn-ān mištārpīn
 ART-garlic and-ART-onion.PL NEG.EX-M.3PL join.PTCP.M.PL
 'Garlic and onions, they do not join together.' [M Peah 6:9]

In Qumran Hebrew an independent personal pronoun can be used for the subject instead of a pronominal suffix on the negative existential marker:

- (28) w-³m ²yn hw² bħwn b-kl ²lh
 and-if NEG.EX M.3SG distinguish.PTCP.PASS.M.SG in-all.GEN these
 'if he is not qualified in these (rules)' [DSSR CD 13:3]

This innovation has diffused and is also found in Mishnaic Hebrew:

- (29) [wə]-²ēn ²at yākol lə-pañošō
 [and]-NEG.EX M.2SG be.able.PTCP to-help.INF.M.3SG
 'And you are not able to help him.' [M Nedarim 9:4]

In Qumran Hebrew, a left dislocated pronoun may be resumed with an independent personal pronoun following the negative existential, rather than with a pronominal suffix (contrast example 25)¹⁸:

¹⁸In citations of manuscripts or epigraphic texts (e.g. from DSSR or HAE), opening and/or closing brackets are used to indicate broken texts which are reconstructed.

Jacobus A. Naudé, Cynthia L. Miller-Naudé & Daniel J. Wilson

- (30) *w-hw' 'yn hw' lbws b-g[dy]*
 and-M.3SG NEG.EX M.3SG dressed.PASS.PTCP in-garments.GEN
h-qwdš
 ART-holiness
 ‘and he, he is not dressed with the sacred vestments’
 [DSSR 11Q19 35:6 (= 11QT)]

What is important is that the constructions found in Biblical Hebrew in which pronominal subjects of the negative existential marker are realized as pronominal suffixes (24, 25) all continue in Qumran Hebrew (26) and in Mishnaic Hebrew (27). However, new constructions in which the pronominal subject is realized as an independent pronoun are appearing in Qumran Hebrew (28, 30) alongside those inherited from Biblical Hebrew and those changes are diffusing and persisting into Mishnaic Hebrew (29). The shift from synthetic (inflectional) to analytic (isolating) pronouns is apparent in the new constructions that have developed after Biblical Hebrew. There is, however, one similar example with independent subject pronouns in post-exilic Biblical Hebrew:

- (31) *wə-'én 'ăní wə-'aħay ú-nə'āray wə-'anšē*
 and-NEG.EX 1SG and-brothers.1SG and-servants.1SG and-men.GEN
ham-mišmār 'ăser 'ahāray 'én= 'ănaħnū pōšatîm bəgādēnû iš
 ART-guard REL after.1SG NEG.EX=1PL put.off.PTCP clothing.1PL man
śilħ-ô ham-māyim
 weapon-M.3SG ART-water
 ‘So not I nor my brothers nor my servants nor the men of the guard who
followed me – we did not take off our clothes; each (kept) his weapon
 (even) at the water.’
 [BHS Nehemiah 4:17]

The example in (31) is striking because it involves both constituent negation of the subject with the first person plural independent pronoun (as well as conjoined noun phrases) and left dislocation with the subject resumed in the sentence proper (see Miller-Naudé & Naudé 2015). It is also the only example in the Bible which uses an independent subject pronoun for both the dislocated element and the resumed element. In this respect, the example exhibits an early change which was diffused and persisted in Qumran Hebrew and into Mishnaic Hebrew. The left-dislocation construction is a plausible environment for the birth of an idiolect which was subsequently embraced and diffused throughout the linguistic community.

Example (31) is also striking for another reason. According to the Subject Agreement Cycle as described in van Gelderen (2011: 41), the cycle of change in

4 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Hebrew

subject agreement often begins with the 1st and 2nd person rather than 3rd person. Van Gelderen describes three stages of the Subject Agreement Cycle. In stage (A), a full pronoun is used for the subject. In stage (B), a pronominal suffix is used for the subject. In stage (C), a new nominal element is needed alongside the pronominal suffix, usually a noun phrase functioning as the topic (van Gelderen 2011: 41). The developments in Ancient Hebrew subject agreement in constructions with the negative existential marker display a trajectory of language change. Biblical Hebrew exhibits the stage (B) – the subject is indicated as a pronominal suffix on the negative existential – as illustrated in examples (24) and (25). Stage (B) persists in Qumran Hebrew (26) and Mishnaic Hebrew (27). Stage (C) is attested in Biblical Hebrew in only one late, post-exilic case (31), but it becomes more frequent in Qumran Hebrew (28, 30) and Mishnaic Hebrew (29).

In the second construction involving negation of the participle with the negative existential marker in Biblical Hebrew, the negative existential is followed by an explicit noun phrase subject and the participle with its objects and/or adjuncts:

- (32) *haš-ṣaddiq ’abād wə-’ēn ’iš sām ‘al=leb*
 ART-righteous perish.PFV.M.3SG and-NEG.EX man put.PTCP on=heart
 ‘The righteous person perishes and no one considers (lit. puts it on the heart).’ [BHS Isaiah 57:1]

The construction is found in Qumran Hebrew:

- (33) *w-’]yn yd[yw] št[w]pwt b-mym*
 and-NEG.EX hands.M.3SG wash.PASS.PTCP in-water
 ‘... and his hands are not washed with water.’ [DSSR 4Q277 f1ii:11]

The construction is also found in Mishnaic Hebrew:

- (34) *’ēn hāmōr yošē’ bə-marda’at bi-zman še-’ēnāh*
 NEG.EX donkey go.out.PTCP with-saddle at-time REL-NEG.EX.F.3SG
qəšûrā lō
 tied.PTCP.F.SG to.M.3SG
 ‘A donkey does not go out with its saddle cloth when it is not tied to him.’ [M Šabbat 5:4]

With a dislocated subject constituent, constructions of this type take the shape of (29) above and do not manifest the shift from suffixes to independent pronouns.

In the third construction of the negative existential marker with the participle, the negative existential occurs in a sentence in which a participle does not have an explicit subject:

Jacobus A. Naudé, Cynthia L. Miller-Naudé & Daniel J. Wilson

- (35) *wə-’im=’ēn mōšîa^c ’ōtānū wə-yāṣā’nū ’ēlēkā*
 and-if=NEG.EX deliver.PTCP OBJ.1PL and-go.out.IPFV.1PL to.M.2SG
 ‘... if no one delivers us, then we will go out to you’ [BHS 1 Samuel 11:3]

This use of the negative existential marker is also found in Qumran Hebrew, as illustrated in (36):

- (36) *w’n qbr*
 and-NEG.EX bury-PTCP.MS
 ‘and no one buries’ [DSSR 4Q176:Frgs. 1–2, col. 1:4]

In contrast to example (34) in which the scope of the negative existential is the sentence, in (35) and (36), the negative existential marker syntactically modifies a null (or, implicit) subject – the scope of the negative existential particle is the null subject constituent and not the entire predication. In effect, the negative existential marker is functioning as a quantifier. Three arguments have been advanced for this claim (see Miller-Naudé & Naudé 2015; Naudé & Miller-Naudé 2016a). First, the participle is always in the unmarked masculine singular form, as illustrated in (37):

- (37) *tāqə’ū bat-tāqôa^c wə-hākîn hak-kol wə-’ēn hōlēk lam-milhāmâ*
 sound.PFV.M.3PL on.ART-horn and-prepare.INF ART-all and-NEG.EX
 go.PTCP.M.SG to.ART-battle
 ‘They have sounded the horn and everything is prepared, but no one goes to battle.’ [BHS Ezekiel 7:14]

The finite verb (*they have sounded*) has a plural subject; the participle (*goes*) is masculine singular and has an indefinite, non-referential subject.

Second, the negative existential may be followed by a prepositional phrase which modifies the null subject and not the participle:

- (38) *wə-’ēn mib-bal’āday mōšîa^c*
 and-NEG.EX from-beside.1SG save.PTCP.M.SG
 ‘and no one beside me saves’ [BHS Isaiah 43:11]

Third, the negative existential as a quantifier may serve as the subject of more than one participle, as in (39):

4 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Hebrew

- (39) *wə-’ēn=ḥōleḥ mikkem ‘ālay wə-gōleḥ*
 and-NEG.EX=sick.PTCP.M.SG from.M.2PL over.1SG and-uncover.PTCP.M.SG
’et=’oznî
 ACC=ear.1SG

‘and no one of you is concerned over me and informs me’ (lit., and no one of you is sick for me and uncovers my ear)

[BHS 1 Samuel 22:8]

The negative existential marker in (39) cannot be understood as negating the two predication expressed by the participles because negation of a predication in ancient Hebrew, either by the negative existential marker or by the marker of standard negation, regularly requires that the negative marker be overtly expressed with each predication (for the ways in which negation in poetry may differ from prose in this regard, see Miller 2005). Instead, the negative existential marker in (39) functions as a negative quantifier ‘no one’.

5 Conclusion

In this paper we have provided evidence that Ancient Hebrew manifests diachronic change which corresponds to Croft’s negative existential cycle. While stages A (at the beginning of the cycle) and C ~ A (at the end of the cycle) are only rarely attested in Biblical Hebrew, variable stages A ~ B and B ~ C are well attested. In Qumran Hebrew, variable stage A ~ B continues, but the use of the negative existential marker expands its range of constructions while the alternate construction for expressive negative existentials (the standard negator *lō* + copula) decrease. The same is true in Mishnaic Hebrew. Variable stage B ~ C presents a similar kind of expansion involving the negative existential marker in Qumran Hebrew and Mishnaic Hebrew and a concomitant decrease in the alternative construction involving the copula. The stages of the negative existential cycle thus reveal both complex toleration of multiple constructions in single stages, as well as clear diachronic trajectories of change from Biblical Hebrew into Qumran Hebrew and Mishnaic Hebrew.

We have also demonstrated a trajectory of change from Biblical Hebrew to Qumran Hebrew and Mishnaic Hebrew in the form of the subject of a participial predicate negated with the negative existential marker. In Biblical Hebrew, the subject in this construction is a pronominal suffix affixed to the negative existential marker (synthetic morphology). In Qumran Hebrew and Mishnaic Hebrew, the subject may continue to be a pronominal suffix (synthetic morphology) or it may be an independent subject pronoun (analytic morphology). The trajectory

Jacobus A. Naudé, Cynthia L. Miller-Naudé & Daniel J. Wilson

from a pronominal suffix to an independent subject pronoun is in accord with the Subject Agreement Cycle.

The syntactic data on negative existentials support a complexity approach to language change and diffusion in ancient Hebrew in which there is a diachronic trajectory from Biblical Hebrew to both Qumran Hebrew and Mishnaic Hebrew. This is in direct contradiction to the claims of those who deny any diachronic trajectories in ancient Hebrew.

Sources

- BHS *Biblia Hebraica Stuttgartensia*. Edited by K. Elliger & W. Rudolph. Stuttgart: Bibelgesellschaft, 1997.
- DSSR *The Dead Sea Scrolls Reader*. 2 vols. 2nd edn. Edited by Donald W. Parry & Emanuel Tov. Leiden: Brill, 2014.
- HAE *Handbuch der Althebraischen Epigraphik*. 3 vols. Edited by Johannes Renz & Wolfgang Röllig. Darmstadt: Wissenschaftliche Buchgesellschaft, 1995.
- M *Six Divisions of the Mishnah (Shisha Sidrei Mishnah)*. Eshkol edition. Accordance software, 2000.

Acknowledgements

We thank the editors and anonymous reviewers for their comments on an earlier version of this paper. This work is based on research supported in part by the National Research Foundation of South Africa (Jacobus A. Naudé UID 85902 and Cynthia L. Miller-Naudé UID 95926). The grantholders acknowledge that opinions, findings and conclusions or recommendations expressed in any publication generated by the NRF supported research are those of the authors, and that the NRF accepts no liability whatsoever in this regard.

4 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Hebrew

Abbreviations and symbols

| | | | |
|------|-------------------------|--------|----------------------|
| 1 | first person | NEG | negative |
| 2 | second person | NEG.EX | negative existential |
| 3 | third person | NIND | non-indicative |
| ABSL | absolute | OBJ | object |
| ACC | accusative | PASS | passive |
| ART | article | PFV | perfective |
| COMP | complementizer | PL | plural |
| COP | copula | REL | relative marker |
| EX | affirmative existential | SG | singular |
| F | feminine | | |
| GEN | genitive | | |
| IMP | imperative | | |
| INF | infinitive | | |
| IPFV | imperfective | | |
| JUS | jussive | | |
| M | masculine | | |

The stem (*binyān*) of verbal forms is not indicated; footnotes clarify the glosses where necessary.

The equals sign represents the orthographic symbol *maqqef* in the Hebrew text, which indicates cliticization of one word on another. Square brackets are used to indicate reconstructed letter(s) in places where the text is fragmentary.

In the epigraphic texts cited from HAE, texts are identified by location (e.g. Jer = Jerusalem, Lak = Lakish, Arad = Arad) and century (e.g. 6 = 6th century BCE).

ISO 639-3 code **hbo**

References

- Andersen, Francis A. & A. Dean Forbes. 2007. The participle in Biblical Hebrew and the overlap of grammar and lexicon. In Sarah Maleno & David Miano (eds.), *Milk and honey: Essays on ancient Israel and Bible in appreciation of the Judaic Studies Program at the University of California, San Diego*, 185–212. Winona Lake: Eisenbrauns.
- Andersen, Francis A. & A. Dean Forbes. 2012. *Biblical Hebrew grammar visualized* (Linguistics Studies in Ancient West Semitic 6). Winona Lake: Eisenbrauns.
- Bar-Asher, Moshe. 1999. Mishnaic Hebrew: An introductory survey. *Hebrew Studies* 40. 115–151.

Jacobus A. Naudé, Cynthia L. Miller-Naudé & Daniel J. Wilson

- Brinton, Laurel J. & Elizabeth C. Traugott. 2005. *Lexicalization and language change*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Creissels, Denis. 2014. *Existential predication in typological perspective*. Unpublished manuscript, University of Lyon. <http://www.deniscreissels.fr/public/Creissels-Exist.Pred.pdf>.
- Croft, William. 1991. The evolution of negation. *Journal of Linguistics* 27(1). 1–27.
- Driver, S. R. & George Buchanan Gray. 1921. *A critical and exegetical commentary on the Book of Job*. New York: Charles Scribner's Sons.
- Holmstedt, Robert D. 2014. Critical at the margins: Edge constituents in Biblical Hebrew. *Kleine Untersuchungen zur Sprache des Alten Testaments und seiner Umwelt* 17. 109–156.
- Hurvitz, Avi. 2014. *A concise lexicon of Late Biblical Hebrew: Linguistic innovation in the writings of the Second Temple Period*. Leiden: Brill.
- Joüon, P. & T. Muraoka. 2009. *A grammar of Biblical Hebrew*. 2nd reprint of 2nd edn, with corrections. Rome: Gregorian & Biblical Press.
- Lass, Roger. 1997. *Historical linguistics and language change*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Leonetti, Manuel. 2008. Definiteness effects and the role of the coda in existential constructions. In Henrik H. Müller & Alex Klinge (eds.), *Essays on nominal determination: From morphology to discourse management*, 131–162. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Miller, Cynthia L. 2005. Ellipsis involving negation in biblical poetry. In Ronald L. Troxel, Kelvin G. Friebel & Kelvin G. Magary (eds.), *Seeking out the wisdom of the ancients: Essays offered to honor Michael V. Fox on the occasion of his sixty-fifth birthday*, 37–52. Winona Lake: Eisenbrauns.
- Miller-Naudé, Cynthia L. & Jacobus A. Naudé. 2015. Negation and the participle in Biblical Hebrew. *Kleine Untersuchungen zur Sprache des Alten Testaments und seiner Umwelt* 19. 165–199.
- Milsark, Gary L. 1974. *Existential sentence in English*. Cambridge: Massachusetts Institute of Technology. (doctoral dissertation).
- Naudé, Jacobus A. 1990. A syntactic analysis of dislocations in Biblical Hebrew. *Journal of Northwest Semitic Languages* 16. 115–130.
- Naudé, Jacobus A. 1996. Resumptive pronouns in Biblical Aramaic relatives. *Southern African Journal of Linguistics Supplement* 29. 125–147.
- Naudé, Jacobus A. 2003. The transitions of biblical Hebrew in the perspective of language change and diffusion. In Ian Young (ed.), *Biblical Hebrew: Studies in chronology and typology*, 189–214. London: T & T Clark International.

4 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Hebrew

- Naudé, Jacobus A. 2012. Diachrony in Biblical Hebrew and a theory of language change and diffusion. In Cynthia L. Miller-Naudé & Ziony Zevit (eds.), *Diachrony in Biblical Hebrew*, 61–82. Winona Lake: Eisenbrauns.
- Naudé, Jacobus A. & Cynthia L. Miller-Naudé. 2016a. Historical linguistics, editorial theory and Biblical Hebrew: The current state of the debate. *Journal for Semitics* 25. 501–531.
- Naudé, Jacobus A. & Cynthia L. Miller-Naudé. 2016b. The contribution of Qumran to historical Hebrew linguistics: Evidence from the syntax of participial negation. *HTS Teologiese Studies / Theological Studies* 72(4). a3150, not relevant, see below. <https://hts.org.za/index.php/hts/article/view/3150/6985>.
- Naudé, Jacobus A. & Cynthia L. Miller-Naudé. 2017. At the interface of syntax and prosody: Differentiating left dislocated and tripartite verbless clauses in Biblical Hebrew. *Stellenbosch Papers in Linguistics* 48. 223–238.
- Naudé, Jacobus A., Cynthia L. Miller-Naudé & Daniel J. Wilson. 2018. The negative existential in non-initial position in pre-modern Hebrew. Presentation at International Congress of Linguistics, Cape Town.
- Naudé, Jacobus A., Cynthia L. Miller-Naudé & Daniel J. Wilson. 2019. Trajectories of diachronic change in Qumran Hebrew: Evidence from the negative existential in post-predicate position. In John Collins & Ananda Geyser-Fouchée (eds.), *Scribal practice, text and canon in the Dead Sea Scrolls: Essays in memory of Peter Flint* (Studies in the Texts of the Desert of Judah), 273–296. Leiden: Brill.
- Naudé, Jacobus A. & Gary A Rendsburg. 2013. Negation: Pre-Modern Hebrew. In Geoffrey Khan (ed.), *Encyclopedia of Hebrew language and linguistics*, vol. 2, 801–811. Leiden: Brill.
- Partee, B. H. & V Borschev. 2004. The semantics of Russian genitive of negation: The nature and role of perspectival structure. *Semantics and Linguistic Theory* 14. 212–234.
- Pérez Fernández, Miquel. 1997. *An introductory grammar of Rabbinic Hebrew*. Leiden: Brill.
- Rezetko, Robert & Ian Young. 2014. *Historical linguistics and Biblical Hebrew: Steps towards an integrated approach*. Atlanta: SBL.
- Ringe, Don & Joseph Eska. 2013. *Historical linguistics: Toward a twenty-first century reintegration*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Sjörs, Ambjörn. 2018. *Historical aspects of standard negation in Semitic* (Studies in Semitic Languages and Linguistics 91). Leiden: Brill.
- Snyman, F. P. J. 2004. *The scope of negative lō in Biblical Hebrew* (Acta Academica Supplemetum 3). Bloemfontein: UFS-SASOL Library.

Jacobus A. Naudé, Cynthia L. Miller-Naudé & Daniel J. Wilson

- Snijman, F. P. J. & Jacobus A. Naudé. 2003. Sentence and constituent negation in Biblical Hebrew. *Journal of Semitics* 12. 237–267.
- van der Merwe, Christo, Jacobus A. Naudé & Jan H. Kroeze. 2017. *A Biblical Hebrew reference grammar*. 2nd edn. London: Bloomsbury.
- van Gelderen, Elly. 2011. *The linguistic cycle: Language change and the language faculty*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- van Gelderen, Elly. 2016. Cyclical change continued. In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change continued* (Linguistics Today 227), 4–17. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2013. Negative existentials: A cross-linguistic study. *Italian Journal of Linguistics* 25(1). 107–145.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2014. The negative existential cycle revisited. *Linguistics* 52(6). 1327–1389.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2015. Special negators in the Uralic languages: Synchrony, diachrony and interaction with standard negation. In Matti Miestamo, Anne Tamm & Beáta Wagner-Nagy (eds.), *Negation in Uralic languages* (Typological Studies in Language 108), 547–599. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2016. The negative existential cycle viewed through the lens of comparative data. In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change continued* (Linguistics Today 227), 139–187. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Young, Ian, Robert Rezetko & Martin Ehrensvärd. 2008. *Linguistic dating of biblical texts*. 2 vols. London: Equinox.

Chapter 5

The negative existential cycle in Ancient Egyptian

Elsa Oréal^a

^aFrench National Centre for Scientific Research

Ancient Egyptian has a very long attested history, which allows us to follow the emergence and evolution of several negative patterns. In spite of the inherent obstacles in a dead language's documentation, my research – focusing on negation in Earlier Egyptian (roughly defined as the language of texts written from 3000 to 1300 BCE) but tracing the relevant forms until Coptic (the last phase of the language, written in the Greek alphabet from the 4th to 14th century CE) – sheds light on a renewal process that appears to belong to the category of the negative existential cycle. This process has long remained misunderstood, but recent progress in the field of linguistic typology regarding linguistic change in the negative domain makes it possible to propose a coherent historical analysis of the data. Starting with a transitional phase (C-A) documented in Old Egyptian, the Egyptian negative existential cycle does not illustrate Croft's model in an ideal way. However, it offers a concrete case for a better understanding of how structural and functional parameters are intertwined in explaining this type of evolution.

Keywords: Negative existential Cycle. Nominalization. Grammaticalization. Ancient Egyptian

1 Introduction

Ancient Egyptian is a dead language whose history is generally divided into the following main phases: Old Egyptian (mid- to late 3rd millennium BCE), Middle Egyptian (ca. 2200–1700 BCE), Late Egyptian (14th–7th cent. BCE), Demotic (7th cent. BCE–5th cent. CE) and Coptic (ca. 4th cent.–ca. 14th cent. CE).¹ My

¹See Loprieno (1995), Loprieno & Müller (2012), and Grossman & Richter (2014) for a general overview.



Elsa Oréal

contribution involves data coming from the whole history of the language, but focuses on Old and Middle Egyptian (known as Earlier Egyptian in Egyptological linguistics). Negation and negative patterns in Ancient Egyptian have long been one of the thorniest topics in Egyptological linguistics. The reasons for this are twofold. From a philological viewpoint, the very spelling of negative morphemes appears to be problematic. Due to the functional characteristics of hieroglyphic writing, not only the functions but also the forms of negation have been subject to debate. On the other hand, the linguistic approach to Egyptian negation has suffered from a lack of precision in its diachronic dimension. The latter is perfectly understandable, given the state of the art. It is especially noteworthy that the language known as Earlier Egyptian covers a time period spanning from 3000 to 1300 BCE. Such a period may obviously appear to historical linguists as long enough to allow for substantial changes in the language, but for grammarians exploring the enduring history of Egyptian, it has long been considered as a more or less homogeneous unit. A better understanding of the changes happening in the course of this history may be reached with a more fine-grained analysis of the sources. In this context, the evolution of negation represents one of the more fertile fields of investigation. More specifically, the historical attestation of the Egyptian language offers a precious chance to analyse the evolution of a negative system over the long run. Previous studies have already attempted to recognize well-known patterns of change in the Egyptian data. As shown in van der Auwera 2009, the very notion of the Jespersen cycle was formulated by Gardiner, a famous Egyptologist, as soon as 1904. An attested history of negation in Earlier Egyptian presents us with an ongoing negative existential cycle (NEC). The understanding of the way negation functions in this phase of the language can thus improve greatly, thanks to recent typological research after Croft's pioneering formulation in 1991, especially by Veselinova (2013; 2014; 2016). In a reciprocal way, analysing these historical data may bring to light an interesting case that allows an assessment of the postulated motivations for changes at each step of the cyclical model, as elaborated in previous studies.

This article's contributions thus go as follows: §2 is a general description of the Egyptian NEC, presenting new analysis of the data.² §3 explores the diachrony of the NEC in a more detailed way, focusing on problems bound with the nature of the documentation, and it highlights the results that can still be gained. §4 examines the interplay of functional motivations, such as analogy or emphasis with structural features in changes within the NEC. A tentative conclusion in §5 widens the perspective opened by the study of the Egyptian NEC, showing its relevance to the larger understanding of grammaticalization paths involved in the

²For a general introduction of the NEC, see the introduction of this volume.

5 *The negative existential cycle in Ancient Egyptian*

renewal of the verbal system in Older Egyptian. At the end of this contribution, a table in Appendix (see 5.1) presents the main patterns involved in the NEC. It may be useful for the reader to refer to this table in order to better understand the position of each detailed step in the general history.

2 The Ancient Egyptian NEC: A general view

In this section, a descriptive analysis of the Egyptian NEC is given according to the chronological order of an ideal cycle, without taking into account the problems raised by transitional phases and their possible overlap. These difficulties are presented in more detail in §3. However, the following idealized sketch of the general evolution may be useful for the reader:

1. The earliest documented stages show a C-A transition. The negator transliterated as *ni* can be shown to have been an earlier negative existential.³
2. In Old Egyptian, this negator can occur with verbal nominalizations, leading to its reanalysis as a clausal negation.
3. The same negator also extends to clauses with different types of stative predicates, showing a convergence with the positive existential predication pattern extending to stative predicates.
4. This negator *ni* begins to occur with various forms of the verb *wnn* ‘to exist’ used as an existential copula.
5. The collocation *ni wn* [neg. ‘exist’] fuses into a new negative existential marker, written *nn*.
6. In several stages, this new negator *nn* spreads again to other contexts, such as those with originally locative adjuncts, leading to reanalysis as a negator plus locative predicate, and to other stative predicates.
7. The new negator *nn* comes to be used with verbal predicates, in particular modal ones.

³The transliteration of Ancient Egyptian used here, as in Egyptological linguistics, represents written signs (be they hieroglyphics, signs in the various cursive writings, or Greek letters in the case of Coptic) and not the sounds of the language. In some cases, the phonemic reality is still a matter of discussion.

Elsa Oréal

8. A new stage of the cycle involves the new negator, itself a fusion of the oldest negation plus an existential verb, and a form of the very same verb *wnn*, leading to the collocation *nn wn*. For reasons that are still unclear, *nn* also began to be written *bn*.
9. The collocation *nn wn* fuses into *mn*, which also extends from existential constructions to constructions with stative predicates and some verbal predicates.

2.1 A reconstructed Type C and a transitional type C–A: The negation *ni* in Proto-Egyptian

Egyptian documentation begins at a point when a transition between a type C and a type A is already happening in the language. However, it is possible to at least partially reconstruct the phase immediately preceding the most ancient historical data. In Proto-Egyptian, as one may call it, “there is a special negative existential predicate, which is identical to the verbal negator” (Croft 1991: 6). The form of the negator is generally transliterated as *ni*.⁴ Its use as a negative existential left traces in the oldest documentation, although *ni* is not limited to this construction in historical times:

- (1) Old Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

$$\begin{array}{llllll} ni & mdʒw & dʒi & sw & m wʒt & ppy pn \\ \text{NEG.EX} & \text{opponent} & \text{oppose} & \backslash \text{PTCP} & \text{M.3SG} & \text{in way PN DEM} \end{array}$$

‘There is no opponent who would oppose himself in the way of this Pepi.’
(Pyramid Text § 1237bP)⁵
- (2) Early Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

$$\begin{array}{lll} ni & jr-t-n=j & r=f \\ \text{NEG.EX} & \text{do} \backslash \text{REL-F.SG-ANT=1SG} & \text{against=M.3SG} \end{array}$$

‘There is nothing that I did against him.’ (Letter to the Dead, Hu bowl 3)

The origin of the negation *ni* is likely to be a verb expressing absence or non-existence in a stative construction (sometimes termed ‘Old Perfect’ in grammars).

⁴ Alternative proposals for the transliteration of the form exist but are not crucial for the historical reconstitution of the Egyptian NEC.

⁵ Pyramid Texts are a corpus of ritual texts relating to the survival of the dead king in the hereafter. They are inscribed in royal graves from the end of the Old Kingdom but may represent older stages of the language. The extent of the preservation of archaic features in this corpus is still a matter of debate.

5 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Egyptian

This is shown by its location at the beginning of the sentence, the very place of the verbal predicate in the construction of the Old Egyptian stative perfect gram that follows VSO order. The use of the form *ni* alone as a predicate appears to be attested in one example belonging to the most ancient documentation in Old Egyptian. It thus occurs in a non-literary papyrus:

- (3) Old Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

zwnw 1 *'wt* 1 *mndm* 1 *ni* *w'r* 2

zunu 1 aut 1 nedjem 1 none/absent war 2

'zunu-vessel: 1, aut-vessel 1, nedjem-basket 1: lacking, war-vessel: 2'

(Papyrus British Museum 10735)⁶

It is only speculative but not irrelevant to mention the verb *nj* 'to rebuff' as a possibly more specific lexical meaning in some proto-stage of the Egyptian language. Graphically, the writing known for this lexeme is interesting, as it shows an arm as a graphemic classifier, possibly a gesture symbolizing refusal, as does the sign of the two open arms that serves to write the negation *ni* itself.⁷

Already in Old Egyptian, the negation *ni* may be followed by various verbal forms whose common feature is to have their origin in nominalizations, while the primary participant is encoded as a possessor, with no distinctions between S, A, P semantic roles. Verbal paradigms known as recent suffixal conjugations generally share a common origin as former nominalizations. Still under discussion are the criteria allowing consideration of the various relevant constructions as involving grammaticalized verbal forms. I shall focus in the present chapter on negative constructions.⁸ Distinct nominal marks are the source for the resulting verbal morphology, as far as it is possible to reconstruct it. The source construction is of the following type:

- (i) Negative existential *ni* + Action nominalization + Suffix pronoun

Semantically, the path of change belongs to a well-known type that is attested in many distinct language families:

- (ii) There is not my V-ING > I did/do not Verb

⁶This translation reflects the fact that Egyptologists do not know the precise equivalents for these substantives, except that they must refer to a kind of vessel.

⁷See Loprieno (1995: 125) for the interpretation of this logogram as symbolizing a gesture of negation. On the function of unpronounced graphemic classifiers, see Goldwasser & Grinevald (2012).

⁸In a further stage of the renewal of the verbal system, a nominalization showing a <-t> specializes for a passive reading in constructions where the possessor thus appears as P.

Elsa Oréal

Depending on the nominalization involved in these constructions, different TAM readings arise. When the action nominal is unmarked in the source construction, it is mainly past, but it can also be non-past and generic:

- (4) Old Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

ni m3=j mjtj n zrw pn
NEG see\NMLZ=1SG like of goose this

‘I haven’t seen the like of this goose ever.’ (lit. ‘There is not my seeing the like of this goose’) (Meir III)

With an ending <-w>, whose function and meaning have been heavily discussed⁹, the same action nominal follows the negation *ni* to form a construction with a modal reading:

- (iii) Negative Existential + Action nominal with <-w> ending + Suffix pronoun

Semantically, the path of change may be assumed to be as follows:

- (iv) There is not any V-ING of me > I shall not Verb

It should be noted that the nominalization involved in the source construction is unmarked for voice, so that both an active and a passive reading may arise:

- (5) Old Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

ni h3i-w ntr-w r=k m rn=k pw n(j) j3t
NEG go_down\NMLZ-INDEF god-PL to=2SG.M in name=2SG.M DEM of Iat
‘The gods shall not go down to you in this your name of Iat.’ (lit. ‘There is not any going down to you’) (Pyramid Text § 1537bP)

- (6) Old Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

ni rdi-w wnjs n nsr=tн ntr-w
NEG give\NMLZ-INDEF Wenis to flame-2PL god-PL
‘Wenis shall not be given to your flame, gods!’ (lit. ‘There is not any giving of Wenis to your flame’) (Pyramid Text § 323bW)

⁹Working on nominalizations as a source for the renewal of the Earlier Egyptian verbal system, I suggest that the Action nominalization marked by this ending <-w> in the same way as other non-finite forms of the verbal root (most notably participles) has other uses whose reading can be related to indefinite semantics, the ending <-w> prototypically indicating class membership. See [Oréal \(2017\)](#).

5 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Egyptian

There remain uncertainties in glossing some examples in Earlier Egyptian. They are connected to a larger question regarding the grammaticalization pathway of verbal paradigms known as recent suffixal conjugation or *sDm=f*. How long should these forms be considered as still being nominalizations in various constructions? In other words, what are the criteria defining a verbal form having a nominalization as a source? This problem is the subject of an ongoing discussion in the field of Egyptological language studies and it cannot be solved in the present contribution. However, the historical mechanisms involved in the grammaticalization of such constructions belong to a typologically well-known phenomenon.¹⁰ More peculiar is the notion of indefinite marking on an action nominal giving rise to modality after grammaticalization of the form in a construction.¹¹

The extension of the negation *ni* is not restricted to the negation of verbal predicates according to the asymmetry just described. It also extends to stative predicates, such as locative predication, as shown in the following example:

- (7) Old Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)
- ni tw jm=sn*
NEG M.2SG among=3PL
'You are not among them.' (Pyramid Text 251dW)

Such an evolution involves the relaxing of the referential constraint on the subject/topic present in the former locative-presentative when turning into locative predication:¹²

- (v) *ni* + non referential subject ('there is no man')
 - > *ni* + non referential subject + locative predicate ('there is no man in the house')
 - > *ni* + referential subject + locative predicate ('the man is not in the house')

This path of change is parallel to the grammaticalization of the initial particle *jw* from locative copula to auxiliary in stative and verbal constructions, as will be illustrated in the next section. The spread of the pattern to a referential subject may indeed not be explained without supposing a convergence with the evolution of the positive existential predication.

¹⁰See, e.g., [Malchukov \(2013\)](#) on similar problems raised by the process of verbalization in Siberian languages.

¹¹See [Oréal \(2017\)](#) on the pathways that allow such a transfer from nominal to verbal morphology.

¹²See [Veselinova \(2013: 108\)](#) on the typologically frequent structural similarity between these constructions and mere existential constructions.

Elsa Oréal

2.2 Towards a type A: The verb of existence *wnn* combined with the negation *ni*

In its most ancient attestation, the existential predication assumes the following form, preserved as an archaizing pattern:

- (vi) locative particle *jw* + subject

This construction is extremely rare in the documentation and not widely recognized as such in grammars.¹³ Loprieno (1995: 122) cites two occurrences in the Coffin Texts and in a literary text written in Middle Egyptian:

- (8) Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)
 $jw \ s̄p \ dd \quad PN \ jw \ kn̄ \ dd \quad PN$
LOC light say\IPFV PN LOC darkness say\IPFV PN
‘There is light, says PN; there is darkness, says PN.’ (Coffin Text IV 29e)

- (9) Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)
 $jw \ šw \ m \ 'q-jb$
LOC lack in confident
‘There is a lack of close friends.’ (Dialogue of a Man with his Ba 123–124)

The latter example is reminiscent of another possible example belonging to the much older corpus of the Pyramid Texts that Allen (2017: 333) translates with an existential reading:¹⁴

- (10) Old Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)
 $jw \ šw \ m \ mtrw$
LOC lack in testimony
‘There was a lack of testimony.’ (Pyramid Text § 317b)

One can perhaps add the following example from a caption in a daily life scene in an Old Kingdom tomb. It might also attest the construction in Old Egyptian, but its meaning is not completely assured:

¹³See, however, the analysis along similar lines proposed by Helmut Satzinger at a workshop in 2001: <https://homepage.univie.ac.at/helmut.satzinger/Texte/Aspectsjw.pdf>.

¹⁴Although convincing, this analysis cannot exclude a construction involving a zero subject and a stative as predicate (*jw Ø Sw m*, ‘It is deprived of’). In the latter case, there would be no existential construction here but rather a stative predication introduced by *jw*, which in synchrony represents a prototypical use of Earlier Egyptian *jw*.

5 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Egyptian

- (11) Old Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

jw ʒpd s3i-w hr=f
 LOC bird satiate\PTCP-PRED ON=M.3SG

‘There is a bird with which one may be satiated.’ (Tomb of Ti, pl. 116)

However, the role of *jw* in constructions with a ‘locative-presentative’ function, in the sense of Hengeveld (1992), fully confirms its role in the most ancient form of existential predication:

- (12) Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

jw jt jm=f
 LOC barley in=M.3SG

‘There is barley in it.’ (Sinuhe B 84)

Already in Old Egyptian, the ‘*jw* + Subject + Predicate’ constructions are also used as plain intransitive sentences:

- (13) Old Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

jw ʒpd pn dd3 wrt
 LOC bird this fat\PTCP very

‘This bird is very fat.’ (Tomb of Ibi)

This reading generalizes in Earlier Egyptian. In parallel to this evolution, the existential construction itself is renewed by a construction using a form of the verb of existence *wnn*:

- (14) Old Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

jn jw wn rm
 INTER LOC exist\PTCP.STAT fish
 ‘Is there some fish?’ (Tomb of Djau)

The same phenomenon occurs in negative existential statements, where the existential verb *wnn* is introduced in new patterns. Already in Old Egyptian, one thus finds the negation *ni* associated with the same existential verb *wnn* in two distinct constructions:

1. The construction *ni wnt*
2. The construction *ni wn*

Both involve the same form *ni* but with a different status in each case, showing that construction (i) must have emerged before construction (ii), as we shall see now.

Elsa Oréal

(i) The construction *ni wnt* This construction involves the negation of existence *ni* followed by a nominalization of the verb *wnn* marked by a -*t* ending:¹⁵

- (15) Old Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)
 šw³ jw^cw ni wnt hr=f zš
 be_poor\PTCP heir NEG exist\NMLZ with=M.3SG writing
 ‘Poor is the heir who has no writing.’ (lit. ‘when there exists not a writing with him’) (Pyramid Text § 475aWN)
- (16) Old Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)
 ni wnt zʒb tʒtj nb sr nb jm
 NEG exist\NMLZ senior.vizir any magistrate any there except=1SG
 wp-r=j w^c=k
 be_alonePTCP.RES=1SG
 ‘(His majesty let me enter in order to audition alone) no senior vizier or any magistrate being there besides me alone.’ (Inscription of Weni, 10–11)

This construction must have emerged at a time when the negation *ni* still had its stative meaning of non-existence. It is thus prior to construction (ii), which is derived from an intransitive construction where *ni* functions as Standard Negation and no longer as a stative predicate, as will be shown in (ii).

(ii) The construction *ni wn* The alternative construction *ni wn* is also already attested in an Old Kingdom inscription. It takes the following form:

- (17) Old Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)
 s^t ni wn mw hr tsw
 CONJ NEG exist\PTCP.STAT water on banks
 ‘When there is no water on the banks’ (Inscription of Weni 44–45)

There has been some discussion around the nature of the form taken by the existential verb *wnn* in this construction.¹⁶ In order to understand it better, one needs to look at the positive existential construction:

¹⁵The precise semantics of this ending common to the source of passive forms, infinitives of certain classes of verbs and a ‘not...yet’ construction is still under discussion, but one can safely assume that it is a morphological feature characterizing a nominal form of the verb.

¹⁶See Meltzer (1990). Although *wn* is often analysed as a *sDm-f* form from the verb *wnn*, no such form is ever attested with an actual suffix pronoun (**ni wn-f*). When the meaning is ‘there is none’, the reference to an item that can be deduced from the context is in fact assumed by a zero.

5 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Egyptian

- (18) Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)
- jw wn nds ddj rn=f*
 LOC exist\PTCP.STAT man Djedi name=M.3SG
 'There is a man named Djedi.' (Tale of pWestcar 6, 26)

In locative predication, usually the subject directly follows the initial particle, be it *jw* or another one, like the subordinator *sk* in the following example:

- (19) Old Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)
- nḥm-w šb(w)=f m-‘=f sk sw wn*
 take\PTCP-PL food=M.3SG from=M.3SG as M.3SG exist\PTCP.PRED
 'Those who wanted to take his food away from him as it was there'
 (Pyramid Text § 290d–291aT)

What happens in the existential construction is an inversion of the order subject-predicate triggered by information structure. In the existential predication, the subject is not thematic but falls rather under the scope of focus/rheme. In that case, it has to follow the predicate, rather than preceding it. Example (20) makes this contrast in constituent order obvious:

- (20) Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)
- jst wn hmt=f mrt rn=s*
 now exist\PTCP.STAT wife=3SG.M Meret name=3SG.F
 'Now there was his wife named Meret.' (Tale of the Eloquent Peasant R 1, 2)

2.3 The emergence and extension of the negation *nn*: A type B in Middle Egyptian

The negation *nn* is the form traditionally acknowledged in grammars as the existential negation in Classical Egyptian, be it literary or documentary:

- (21) Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)
- nn hrw-jb*
 NEG.EX peaceful
 'There is no peaceful one.' (Dialogue of a Man with his Ba 125–126)
- (22) Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)
- nn hm-t*
 NEG.EX servant-F.SG
 'There is no servant.' (Letter UC 32092C r 11)

Elsa Oréal

The very fact that *nn* functions as existential negation, a role formerly played by *ni*, has sometimes been interpreted by philologists as resulting from a graphic confusion in older sources. Such an analysis is prompted by the absence of a diachronic perspective of Earlier Egyptian, instead conceived of as a homogeneous block. The more recent form *nn* is indeed the successor of *ni* as a form dedicated to existential negation, with *ni wñ* and *ni wnt* being intermediary, in accordance with the NEC. Its formal relationship with the general negation *ni* prompted several hypotheses, among them a process of morphological fusion between *ni* and a following particle *jn*. According to Loprieno (1995: 127), following a suggestion by Osing (1979), this postulated collocation would attest a kind of Jespersen cycle. However, the attested use of the particle *jn* does not support this historical reconstruction, neither semantically nor syntactically. This particle remains difficult to gloss due to its polyfunctionality, but the crucial point from a historical point of view is that the hypothesized collocation **ni jn* is not attested except for very rare occurrences, which are not likely to represent a source construction for a morphological fusion. On the contrary, the following proposal is based on a well-attested combination. Vergote (1965: 359) already suggested the hypothesis advocated here, namely, that *nn* is the result of the fusion of the negative *ni* with the following existential verb *wñn*:

- (23) *nn* < *ni wñ*
 NEG.EX NEG exist\PTCP
 ‘there is no’ ‘there exists not’

This note remained mainly unnoticed. However, in the perspective of a NEC, it makes perfect sense.¹⁷ In Croft’s (1991) terms, the process of phonological fusion that gives rise towards the end of the Old Kingdom to the form *nn* dedicated to the negative existential function is characteristic of the transition between a type A and a type B.

The form *nn* does not remain specialized in this function for long. Indeed, the documentation shows a stage where *nn* is already extended to express the meaning ‘without’ when followed by an infinitive. According to Loprieno et al. (2017: 256–257), the first examples of the negation *nn* where it does not function as a negative existential but as the negation in locative predication date to the late First Intermediate Period and early Middle Kingdom. It is well established in literary Middle Egyptian:

¹⁷ Osing (1979: 311) rejects it on the basis of its poor attestation. However, the collocation of the particle *jn* with the older negation *ni* proposed as a source for *nn* is even much more elusive.

5 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Egyptian

- (24) Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

nn sj m jb-j
NEG F.3SG in heart-1SG

‘It was not in my heart’ (Sinuhe 223–224)

As Loprieno et al. (2017) put it, “the underlying reason for the change from *n* to *nn*-negations in adverbial sentences is unknown”.¹⁸ However, a path of change similar to what happened already in Old Egyptian with the negation *ni* can be postulated within a diachronic perspective. It involves again the relaxing of the referential constraint on the subject/topic from locative-presentative¹⁹ to locative predication:

Step (1) *nn* + non referential subject (‘there is no man’)

Step (2) *nn* + non referential subject + locative predicate (‘there is no man in the house’)

- (25) Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

nn hn jm n 'b^c pri m r3=j
NEG.EX word there of exaggeration come_out\PTCP in mouth-1sg

‘There is no word of exaggeration in what came out of my mouth.’ (Stela of Sesostris III at Semnah = Berlin ÄM 1157 l. 16–17)

Step (3) *nn* + referential subject + locative predicate (‘the man is not in the house’)

The use of *nn* also extends to all kinds of stative predicates (e.g. property predicates) in Middle Egyptian, thus replacing the older *ni* in this function as well:

- (26) Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

nn nn šri-w
NEG this be_small\PTCP.PFV-PRED

‘This is not small.’ (Sinuhe, Ashmolean Ostracon 47)

Tenses known as ‘Pseudo-verbal’ constructions are also concerned, but the spread of *nn* to these followed a different chronology.

It is also to be noted that already in its early attestation *nn* is used with the meaning ‘without’ before an infinitive:²⁰

¹⁸An analysis based on pragmatic factors was proposed in Loprieno (1991), but Uljas (2013) points out several aspects that cannot be accounted for according to it.

¹⁹See Veselinova (2013: 108) on the typologically frequent structural similarity between these constructions and mere existential constructions.

²⁰Veselinova (2013: 118) shows that in various languages, this use is a frequent extension of the negative existential.

Elsa Oréal

- (27) Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

jri-kw m ‘q nn dd=f
do\PTCP-PRED.1SG as enter\PTCP NEG.EX say\INF-3SG.M

‘I was made one who enters without being called’ (Stela of Wepwawetaa = Münich Gl. WAF 35 line 16)

2.4 Towards a new type C?: The use of *nn* with a verb

As stated in Loprieno et al. (2017: 258), “the use of *nn* seems to have begun in utterances expressing strong denials and refusals by the speaker... However, the spread of *nn* in verbal sentences may also have been motivated by the morphological collapse of specific Prospective form(s) within the so-called *sDm-f* formation.” The following example from the Middle Kingdom may illustrate such an emphatic use:

- (28) Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

nn šn^c-tw=t_n m st qsnt
NEG.EX detain\SBJV-PASS-2PL in place dire

‘You shall not be detained in a dire place.’ (Stela of Nebipusenwosret = BM EA 101 line 14–15)

As is often the case, the use of the negative existential first extends only to part of the verbal system. Within Middle Egyptian (2200–1700 BCE), *nn* in fact does not become the Standard Negation, but comes to be used in a verbal construction with modal semantics. I will focus here on the beginning of this process of extension to the verbal system that is never fully completed, with part of the verbal system remaining untouched until Coptic. Two historical scenarios appear to compete in the explanation of this process:

1. one involves only the transfer of a whole inherited construction, where *nn* stems out of *ni wn*, as is the case in negative existential constructions, and
2. the other involves a proper expansion of the negative existential *nn* to negate a modal form.

In both cases, there are good reasons to assume that the special paradigm of forms attested in the construction had acquired its modal semantics as a complement of manipulative verbs such as *rDi* ‘to let/allow’.²¹

²¹On the use in main clauses of verb forms whose modal semantics emerge from their primary use in compleative clauses, see Evans (2007) and the notion of insubordination, whose applicability to the Egyptian tense sometimes called ‘Subjunctive’ still needs further research.

5 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Egyptian

The first scenario (i) involves the transfer of an inherited construction. One may postulate an evolution according to which the collocation *ni wn* that lies at the source of *nn* by fusion was used before a verbal form functioning as its subject:

- (29) **ni wn jwt-f* > *nn jwt-f*
 NEG exist come\SBJV-3SG.M NEG come\SBJV-3SG.M
 ‘There is no (possibility) that he shall come’ > ‘he shall not come’

However, there is no trace of a construction **ni wn sDm-f* in the documentation. On the contrary, the *nn sDm-f* construction seems to gradually replace the construction *ni* + Verbal nominalization marked for indefiniteness (mentioned in § 1.1) It appears semantically likely that the need for emphasis prompted a functional renewal, according to which the negative existential as such came to be used with a sbjval form as subject:

- (30) *nn jwt-f* > *nn jwt-f*
 NEG.EX come\SBJV-3SG.M NEG come\SBJV-3SG.M
 ‘There is not that he shall come’ > ‘he shall not come’

This second scenario (ii) thus involves the expansion of the negative existential *nn* to replace the older *ni* in negating a modal form that is also distinct from the older one.²² It remains difficult to decide which of these potential paths of change was followed in the Egyptian case. Less systematically, one also finds the negation *nn* in constructions involving other verbal forms, such as the Anterior *sDm-n-f*, but the reality behind the graphic reading is a matter of debate and this use in any case remains non-standard. It is also important to state that a large part of the Egyptian negative system involves neither locative nor verbal predicates but nominal predication, be it with classifying or identifying semantics.²³ Only towards the end of the period known as Middle Egyptian does the form *nn* also extend to negate nominal predication in the strict sense, taking over another part of the former domain of the negation *ni*.²⁴ In Late Egyptian, *nn* takes the graphic form *bn*. As such, it is attested more largely, while the domain of use of *ni*, which becomes graphically *bw*, is drastically reduced. Thus, *bn* can be said to become the standard negation in Later Egyptian, in association with the morph *jwn#* >

²²See Vernus (1990) on this process.

²³On non-verbal predication in Ancient Egyptian, see the rich study by Loprieno et al. (2017), which includes all known stages of its long history.

²⁴See Uljas (2013) on this evolution.

Elsa Oréal

Coptic IN. However, at this point in time, *bn* had long ceased to function as a negative existential; thus, no new stage C can be observed. The history of the combination *bn...jwn#* represents another kind of linguistic cycle typical of the renewal of negation that lies beyond the scope of the present contribution.²⁵

2.5 Re-starting a cycle: The rise of *nn wn* and the new type A

As stated by Veselinova (2016: 174), in various languages a NEC can be observed to re-start many times without being completed. In Earlier Egyptian, the same process seems to happen when the verb *wnn* appears again in a new construction after the negation *nn*, which used to express the existential negation alone:²⁶

- (31) Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

nn wn *q-w jm*
NEG exist\PTCP.PRED.M.SG ration-PL there

‘(Can I be confident that I did give rations to my household while one writes to me saying) there are no rations there?’ (pBM 10549, vso1-2)

The very same relationship as the one between *ni* and *ni wn* obtains between this negative existential construction and the predication involving a thematic subject. The latter respects the usual ‘Subject-Predicate’ order in locative predictions:

- (32) Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

pʃ *šm* *hn=f nn sw wn*
DEM\M.SG go\PTCP.M.SG with=M.3SG NEG M.3SG exist\PTCP.PRED.M.SG

‘That one with whom one used to go, he does not exist.’ (Dialogue of a Man with his Ba 126-127)

With a rhematic subject, the existential verb comes before the subject:²⁷

- (33) Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

²⁵On this Jespersen cycle, see Winand (1997).

²⁶Previous Egyptological analysis sometimes considers *nn* as a shortened version of *nn wn*, a view that diachronic data do not support without mentioning the neglected possibility of a NEC happening in Earlier Egyptian.

²⁷For an alternative analysis of the form *wn* as a *sDm-f* form, see, e.g., Uljas (2013).

5 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Egyptian

$nn \ wn$ $mʒjr$ $n \ hʒw=j$ $nn \ hqr$ n
 NEG exist\PTCP.PRED.M.SG miserable of surroundings=1SG NEG hungry of
 $rk=j$
 time=1SG

‘There was no miserable in my surroundings, no hungry (person) in my time.’ (Imeny, Beni Hassan I, 8, 18-19)

In this example, the older dedicated negative existential *nn* also occurs in parallel with *nn wn*. The coexistence of older and newer forms is not surprising, and it is found in other languages as well.²⁸ The construction also occurs with no subject at all:

- (34) Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)
 $hr \ nb \ hr \ nn \ wn$
 face every QUOT NEG exist\PTCP.PRED.M.SG
 ‘Everyone is saying: there is nothing.’ (Admonitions 6, 3)

The existential negation *nn wn* began to extend to constructions involving a verbal form without ever moving into the domain of standard negation. Already at the beginning of the 12th Dynasty (20th century BCE), one finds the negative existential *nn wn* used in a construction before the Anterior, a verb form marked for anteriority by a suffix *-n*:

- (35) Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)
 $jw \ rdi-n=j \ mw \ n \ jb \ hbsw \ n \ hʒjj \ nn \ wn$
 LOC give-ANT=1SG water to thirsty clothes to naked NEG EX\PTCP.M.SG
 $jr-n=j \ r \ rmt$
 do-ANT=1SG against people
 ‘I gave water to the thirsty one, clothes to the naked one, on no occasion did I act against people.’ (Stela Louvre C 196)

It is also attested before a nominalization with modal prospective semantics:

- (36) Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)
 $nn \ wn \ mwt-k \ hr \ hʒst$
 NEG.EX EX\PTCP.M.SG die\NMLZ-2SG.M on desert
 ‘You shall not die in the desert.’ (Sinuhe B 197)

²⁸See Veselinova (2014).

Elsa Oréal

- (37) Classical Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)
- | | | | | |
|-----------|--------------|----------------------|----------|------------|
| <i>nn</i> | <i>wn</i> | <i>hh-j-k</i> | <i>r</i> | <i>nhh</i> |
| NEG.EX | EX\PTCP.M.SG | seek\NMLZ-PASS-2SG.M | for | eternity |
- 'You shall not be sought in eternity.' (Harpist song, Theban Tomb 50, Text J)

However, this kind of use is rarely attested and did not generalize. It seems to have remained bound to an emphatic context of utterance. Thus, the renewal of the negative existential by way of the existential copula does not necessarily give an impulse to a new NEC, when other structural conditions that favour this evolution are lacking.

The maximal extension of *nn* > *bn* as quasi-Standard Negation and the use of *nn/bn wn* as a usual negative existential construction are likely to have coincided at a point in the history of Ancient Egyptian that is not well documented in the preserved sources (see §3.3). However, the consecutive situation in Late Egyptian attests that this stage, corresponding to a new type A in an ideal NEC, was indeed realized as a concrete step in its development.²⁹

2.6 The emergence of *mn*: From A to B in Later Egyptian

Phonological fusion happens again in Later Egyptian, the second typologically defined phase in the history of the Egyptian language. It thus characterizes a further transition from a type A to a type B, as was already the case in Earlier Egyptian with the reconstructed emergence of *nn* out of *ni wn*:

Middle Egyptian *nn wn* > Late Egyptian and Demotic *mn* > Coptic *mn*

The following example comes from a documentary source in Late Egyptian, dating approximately from the 12th century BCE:

- (38) Late Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)
- | | | | | | | |
|-----------|---------------|----------------|---------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>hr</i> | <i>jnn mn</i> | <i>bhz jmi</i> | <i>jni-tw</i> | <i>p₃-h^ctj</i> | <i>hn^c</i> | <i>p₃-wt</i> |
| PRT | if | NEG.EX | calf | let\IMP | bring-PASS | DEF-bed |
- 'If there is no calf, let the bed and the coffin be brought.' (Ostracon Berlin 12630, verso 1)

The coexistence of *bn* and *mn* in two patterns sharing the function of expressing sentential possession within the same phase of the language has been studied in Depuydt (2008). According to this study, the construction involving *mn* is an

²⁹On the transition between Earlier and Later Egyptian and the discontinuity of sources attesting the various stages in Ancient Egyptian history, see Zöller-Engelhardt (2016).

5 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Egyptian

existential sentence while the one involving *bn* is not. Within Late Egyptian synchrony, this is certainly true. However, it does not imply that *bn* never had the function of a negative existential. It seems more relevant to say that the latter was no longer an existential construction. In the diachronic perspective presented in here, the change in the status of the older construction is only natural and easy to explain, as was already the case in the preceding transition from the reconstructed types B to C in Older Egyptian. One needs only to recognize that twice in the history of Ancient Egyptian, the negative existential (first *ni*, then *nn*) extended its use to negating locative predication, and thus to possessive predication, which follows a well-known locative strategy in this language.

Unlike the former fusion from *ni wn* to *nn*, the fusion from *nn wn* into *mn* has long been recognized as such in the Egyptological literature. The same form remains in use as the negative existential until Coptic, with some variations in form according to the dialect that are not relevant to the general evolution:

- (39) Coptic (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

mn-nute nsa-nt'k *Apollôn*
 NEG-god except-M.2SG Apollo

'There is no god but you, Apollo.' (Till, KHML II 33, 16-17)

One can assume that the Egyptian NEC stops at this point, since the negation *mn* does not seem to extend to cover the domain of standard negation in Coptic, although it does also spread to some modal constructions, including the prohibitive/vetitive and the negative jussive.³⁰ However, as will be seen in the next section, the whole history of its development from Middle Egyptian onwards is more complex than the presentation of its steps as distinct stages may suggest, and there are reasons to assume that the NEC lost its full force even before its last effects in Late Egyptian and Coptic.

3 The complex diachrony of the Egyptian NEC

This section presents a historical analysis of the Egyptian NEC that focuses on data that make the general picture more complicated than what may seem at first sight. As in other language families, synchronic variation plays a key role at different points in this history, thus making transitional stages more important than stable types. However, the nature of the Egyptian documentation needs to be taken into account in order to assess the meaning of variation within the

³⁰On this topic, see Grossman & Polis (forthcoming)

Elsa Oréal

distinct corpuses that constitute it. A methodological preamble in §3.1 thus anticipates a presentation of the particular problems connected to the chronology of the attestation of forms and constructions. §3.2 sheds light on the fact that the existential negation may not be dedicated to one use, even in the first phase of its emergence. §3.3 is devoted to showing some atypical features of the Egyptian NEC.

3.1 Layering and the problem of diglossia in Ancient Egyptian

Before turning to facts regarding the precise chronology of the Egyptian NEC, an analysis of various factors that make it difficult to establish is in order. It is a well-known fact that prolonged variation between older and emergent forms in a given phase of a language may obscure the historical reconstruction of its evolution. The phenomenon of layering plays the same role in Egyptian as in other languages. Beyond negation, it is observed in many domains of the language. In this respect, there is nothing particular to Ancient Egyptian. However, the nature of the documentation makes the situation of the linguist even more difficult. First, it is not always possible to date a document with the precision needed to reconstruct a historical path. Moreover, even in texts that can be dated with some accuracy and belong to the same historical moment, layering plays different roles and can have different effects, according to its register, genre or discourse category. From the end of Middle Kingdom on, the use of the classical language in texts showing various degrees of formality prompted Egyptologists to create the notion of *Egyptien de tradition*.³¹ This label designates a multifaceted reality. Middle Egyptian becomes a literary language of communication in formal register, used much like Latin in the Medieval Period. However, the concrete reality bound with this general definition can vary a lot from one text to another, depending on time but also on various contexts of use. Beyond the extension of the well-known phenomenon of layering, the Egyptian documentation thus shows a preservation of ancient forms in texts dating from times much posterior to their living use in the spoken language. As for negative existential constructions, the conservatism in formal and literary registers may be illustrated through the use of the construction *ni wn*. It is indeed maintained in texts written in *Egyptien de tradition* during the New Kingdom, such as seen in the following example, which shows its use for expressing sentential possession:

- (40) Classical Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

³¹On this situation of diglossia, see Vernus (1996).

5 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Egyptian

ni wn st=sn
 NEG exist\PTCP.M.SG place=3PL

‘Their place does not exist’ > ‘They have no place’ (Theban Tomb 50,
 Harpist song B 11)

Diglossia is a complex phenomenon, and the Egyptian case for linguistic variation according to discourse registers or contexts of use is still in need of further research, although promising steps have already been taken.³² However, one may assume that there is no progressive transition between the use of two successive written registers in the larger sense, so that the whole history of Ancient Egyptian as a spoken language remains undocumented. As a consequence, there may be a gap in the attestation of linguistic change between Middle Egyptian *stricto sensu* and Late Egyptian texts. This gap affects different linguistic phenomena in various ways, and its impact on the history of existential negation will be examined in §3.3.

3.2 When existential negations take over discourse functions in the negative domain

As mentioned in §2.2, the verb of existence *wnn* is combined in two distinct constructions with the negation *ni* in order to renew the existential construction. However, only one of these follows a typical path of change towards a new type B (*ni wn* > *nn*). The construction *ni wnt* follows another path of evolution, taking over a pragmatically marked function in the negative domain. Already in Old Egyptian, the form *wnt* is grammaticalized as a conjunction in a variety of compleptive constructions.³³ As a consequence, in the attested documentation, the former existential verb *wnt* is probably also reanalysed as such in the former negative existential construction (within which I propose that it emerged). Semantically, this reanalysis prompted the use of the construction as a denial operator, as is astutely observed by Uljas (2007: 192–193). Later on, in order to express the negation of existence, a new form of the existential verb *wnn* is even reintroduced as an existential predicate after *ni wnt*:

- (41) Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

³²In particular, see works such as Stauder (2013), Werning (2013) and Polis (2017).

³³See Uljas (2007) on the use of *wnt* as a complementizer in Old Egyptian. The usual hypothesis concerning its etymology sees it as a perfective feminine/neuter singular participle from the verb *wnn* ‘to exist’.

Elsa Oréal

dr-ntt ni wnt wn q3i hrw r=tnj ‘
 for NEG COMPL exist\PTCP.PRED.M.SG high voice against=2DU here
 ‘For it is not the case that there is/was someone who raises/raised his
 voice against both of you here.’ (Letter to the Dead, Naga ed Deir 3500
 K4-5)

- (42) Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)
ni wnt wn shʒ st
 NEG COMPL exist\PTCP.PRED.M.SG remember F.3SG
 'There was no one who would remember it.' (Berlin 13272)

In a syntactic context of dependence, the older construction may also be used as an alternative to the use of *nn*, new negative existential having taken over the meaning ‘without’ in such position. The use of *ni wnt* as a negative existential still appears in a medical treaty from the First Intermediate Period:

- (43) Middle Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)
ni wnt srf nb jm-s
 NEG-EX heat any in-F.3SG
 'There being no heat at all within it.' (Papyrus Edwin Smith, plate 15, l. 12)

In this subordinate clause, the use of *nn* would have yielded a meaning ‘without’. In the very same text, *nn* is indeed attested with this meaning before an infinitive:

The difference in meaning is slight: while the use of *ni wnt* does not imply anything regarding the expected state of the patient (no heat is a neutral description of what the practitioner might happen to find in his exploration), '*nn + Infinitive*' indicates that the absence of movement is an atypical state.

3.3 Atypical features in the Egyptian NEC and its chronology

Despite the inherent limitations presented in §2.1, it remains possible to retrace a somewhat imprecise path of change along steps with a plausible, if partly speculative, chronology. If one considers the *Pyramid Texts* as a corpus preserving

5 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Egyptian

at least partially a phase of the language history anterior to other Old Egyptian sources, the Egyptian attested documentation begins at a point of the cycle where it reaches completion: negation of action and negation of existence are the same (type C). Unfortunately but not unexpectedly, the first attested stage in the history of the Egyptian language is already a layered one. But even this transitional phase seems to be typologically precious, since Croft (1991: 18) states that ‘types A and B are far more common than type C’ and that type C–A will be extremely rare. It is thus interesting to be able to observe a transitional phase C–A in Old Egyptian. However, this phase and the consecutive phase A are not prototypical in the sense that they do not fit with the original hypothesis. First, as seen in Section refs:AE1-2, two constructions (*ni wn* and *ni wnt*) are successively created, both using the same existential verb. Only one of these (*ni wn*) follows a path of change predicted in the ideal NEC, giving rise to a new negator (*nn*) that is at first dedicated to the existential negation. There is thus a dead end in the development of the transition from type C to type A.

In Later Egyptian, as stated in the preceding section, no new stage C ever happened, for the negation *bn* had ceased to function as an existential negation long before it reached the status of (quasi-)Standard Negation. Even the actual existence of a new stage A cannot definitively be assumed to have taken place. The use of *bn wn* as existential negation is in fact almost not attested in the documentation.³⁴ The following example is one of the very rare instances:

- (45) Late Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)
 is *bn wn* *m-di=k* *sšw* *qnw*
 INTER NEG exist\NMLZ PREP=2SG.M scribes many
 ‘Don’t you have many scribes at your disposal?’ (Papyrus Anastasi 5, 11,
 4)

The expected existential negation should here be the form *mn* resulting from the fusion of *bn wn* in a text from this stage in the history of the language. However, it belongs to a corpus of texts traditionally called the Late Egyptian Miscellanies, which may show archaizing features. The same phenomenon may occur in the following literary text, where the graphical alternation between Middle Egyptian *nn* and Late Egyptian *bn wn* witnesses a deliberate play of graphical conventions by the scribe who composed the text:

- (46) Late Egyptian (Egyptian [Afro-Asiatic], Egypt)

³⁴Many thanks are due to Stéphane Polis, who kindly searched the Ramses database for attestations of *bn wn* in Late Egyptian.

Elsa Oréal

| | | | | | |
|--|-----------|-----------------------------|-----------|------------|------------------------|
| <i>nn</i> | <i>s3</i> | <i>n imj-r3-pr-hd</i> | <i>bn</i> | <i>wn</i> | <i>[lacuna] imj-r3</i> |
| NEG.EX | son | to director_of_the_treasury | NEG | exist\nMLZ | [heir] director |
| 'There is no son for the director of the treasury, there exists [no heir] for the director' (Wisdom of Ani 20, 5-7, O. Gardiner 357) | | | | | |

Thus, it remains possible that the second stage A, which is poorly attested in the preserved documentation, was indeed an actual step in the historical development but remains obscured by the gap in written data between Classical Egyptian and Late Egyptian, as explained in §2.1.

4 What motivates type changes within the NEC?

Croft (1991) proposes distinct characterizations for the change from one type to another, according to the transitional phase considered. This is schematically summarized as follows:

- (i) from type A to type B: fusion
- (ii) from type B to type C: emphasis
- (iii) from type C to type A: syntactic analogy

Thus, each kind of transition would appear to be motivated by a phenomenon belonging to a distinct domain: pragmatics, syntax and morphology. The process of phonological fusion as it is analysed in Croft (1991) appears rather less problematic than the precise role of emphasis and analogy in other transitional phases postulated in the ideal model of the cycle. It only raises a question as to the chronological relationship between the morphological process, according to which the former Standard Negation fuses with the existential verb and the 'spread' of the dedicated existential copula to other verbal and non-verbal predictions, as seen in §2. In the next sections, I shall try to reconsider the qualification of changes (i) and (ii) in light of the Ancient Egyptian data.

4.1 Re-assessing the role of syntactic analogy

Syntactic analogy is supposed to characterize transitions from type C to type A. In the history of Earlier Egyptian, this process seems to happen three times:

(Phase 1) From *ni* to *ni wnt*

5 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Egyptian

(Phase 2) From *ni* to *ni wn*

(Phase 3) From *nn* to *nn wn*

Each time, a form of the existential verb *wnn* is added to the former existential construction. In each case, however, there is no precise analogy to a standard verbal pattern. In phases (2) and (3), it is the stative predication that gives rise to the negative existential construction via a word order change that befits its information structure features. The only syntactic analogy that may be invoked is the one with the positive existential statement, which is itself renewed by adding the existential copula:

- (47) a. *jw S > jw wn S*
 LOC S > LOC exist\PTCP.PRED S
 ‘There is S.’
- b. *ni S > ni wn S*
 NEG.EX S > NEG exist\PTCP.PRED S
 ‘There is no S.’
- c. *nn S > nn wn S*
 NEG.EX S > NEG exist\PTCP.PRED S
 ‘There is no S.’

One may now ask whether the evolution in the positive existential construction is itself motivated by some kind of syntactic analogy. This is not the case, for this construction was shown in §2.2 to derive from the stative pattern according to a word order change whereby the indefinite subject, being rhematic, comes to be placed after the existential copula. Its emergence is likely linked to the fact that the former existential pattern had been extended to the stative predication in general, according to a path that can be schematized as follows:

- (48) a. *jw + indefinite S*
 ‘There is bread.’
- b. *jw + indefinite S + locative predicate*
 ‘There is bread in the house.’

This pattern is extended to referential subjects via a bridging use involving a change of scope: the presentative reading is interpreted by the listener as concerning the locative predication as a whole with a thetic information structure, much like the scope of French *il y a* can extend over an existential subject or a whole presentative clause:

Elsa Oréal

- (49) *jw* + referential S + locative predicate
 ‘There is your bread in the house.’

One step beyond, the particle *jw* loses its locative semantics and becomes an auxiliary with a grounding discourse function as a textual marker:

- (50) *jw* + referential S + stative predicate
 ‘Your bread is in the house.’

By the same token, a need arises for a renewed expressive mean. The new existential predication introduces the existential verb as a stative predicate, thus making existential semantics explicit again, while displacing the subject to the rhematic position, befitting its informational status:

- (51) *jw* + referential S + *wn* ≠ *jw* + *wn* + indefinite S
 ‘The bread is existing.’ ‘there is bread.’

Only in phase (1) is there a possible (though not directly attested) source construction common to Standard Negation and the new negative existential. The choice of the nominalization marked with an ending *-t* would parallel the grammaticalization of the so-called t-passive form from an action nominal marked for completive aspect following the former negative verb *ni*.³⁵

- (52) a. *ni jri-t P*
 NEG do\NMLZ-COMPL P
 ‘There is no action of P’ > ‘P was not done.’
- b. *ni wn-t §*
 NEG exist\NMLZ-COMPL S
 ‘There is no completed existence of S’ > ‘there is no S.’

Even in this case, however, the analogy appears to be a superficial description of what happens in the language. From a functional point of view, the introduction of the verb of existence *wn* in each of the patterns under consideration can be explained as arising from the need for the renewed expression of existence. After the relaxation of the conditions of use bearing on the former existential construction, which has now become a stative construction, existential semantics would otherwise be absent. Thus, it is only from a partial point of view that

³⁵For data concerning the evolution of passive forms and constructions in Earlier Egyptian, see Stauder (2014). However, his analysis and the diachronic path of change proposed in this paper differ in more than one respect.

5 *The negative existential cycle in Ancient Egyptian*

this change may be qualified as formal and motivated by analogy as such. It cannot be demonstrated based on the preserved documentation, but one can even consider that this functional need for a renewal of expressive means has more to do with pragmatics than with syntax. Along this line of analysis, emphasis thus does not seem to be characteristic only of the transition from a type B to a type C, an evolution that is the subject of the next section.

4.2 Emphasis as a functional motivation for change: NEC as another kind of Jespersen cycle

According to Croft (1991), the communicative need for more emphasis would be the functional input for the change from type B to type C, when the existential negation is extended to negate verbal clauses. Let us look back to the Egyptian case and what the documentation allows us to observe in this regard. This transition is potentially relevant to two distinct phases in the history of the Egyptian language:

1. (i) The reconstructed phase C with *ni* serving both as Standard Negation and as existential negation.
2. (ii) The transitional phase B' to C' (incomplete), during which *nn/BN* gradually extends to negate almost every kind of predication.

These can be further explained as follows:

(i) As seen in the preceding section, it is not clear whether the use of the existential negation *ni* with nominalizations according to an asymmetric negative strategy correlates with a pragmatic need for more emphasis. Since this extension is already completed in the most ancient documented stage of the language, one can only assume that such a need was an input towards change. In a way, the very fact that nominalizations in general play a crucial role in the renewal of the verbal system in the stage prior to Old Egyptian represents an argument against such a pragmatic motivation in the negative domain. However, there is also the possibility that a change in the negative domain, motivated in its incipient stage by a pragmatic need, might have been later extended to the rest of the verbal system. Along this line of historical explanation, the NEC would indeed help us to understand what prompted a more general evolution in the structure of the Egyptian verbal system.

(ii) As was already mentioned in the preceding §2, a new type C never obtains in Middle Egyptian or in Late Egyptian, for *bn* no longer functions as a negative

Elsa Oréal

existential when its development as a negator reaches its maximal extension and becomes something close to the Standard Negation in the language. Moreover, its pathway of change was even shown to be the same as was the case for *ni* in the preceding evolution from type C to type A: the relaxing of the constraint of indefinite reference on the subject made *nn* capable of expressing the negation in all sorts of stative predication. From there, its spread to the nominal predication appears to fall within the scope of analogy more than anything else. On the other hand, its use with a modal verbal form (sometimes called subjunctive *sdm-f*) also used in positive modal main clauses by insubordination may indeed be considered to derive from a need for emphasis. Such an explanation would account for its gradual replacing of the more ancient modal construction based on the negation *ni* and a nominalization. However, as seen in §2, there is a gap in the attestation of the spoken register in Earlier Egyptian that allows for an unattested intermediary step **ni wn* subjunctive *sDm-f*. In that case, the construction using the dedicated negative existential *nn* would be inherited, deriving from a former construction involving the existential verb and the Standard Negation. As a consequence, it would seem questionable to speak of the negative existential extending to Standard Negation.³⁶ However, such a situation does not exclude emphasis as a motivation for the emergent construction in its incipient stage. An especially interesting point for a better understanding of the NEC might lie in the similar development attested in a modern language, such as Kannada:

Kannada is a good example of diglossia as there are substantive differences between the literary and the spoken language on many levels. With regard to negation, it has to be said that one and the same strategy seems to be used to negate verbs with past time reference in both Literary and Spoken Kannada. Clear differences for the expressions of SN are observed for verbs/simple verbal sentences with present/future time reference. (Veselinova 2016: 168)

In Late Egyptian, the negation for verbs with past time reference, *bw*, is the direct successor of the negation *ni*. But constructions used to negate sentences with future/modal reference differ in more than one aspect from earlier patterns. It thus confirms that the expansion of the negative existential into the verbal domain may obtain preferably both in the spoken register and in non-past contexts.

³⁶In such cases, Veselinova (2014) states that the cycle is not operational.

5 *The negative existential cycle in Ancient Egyptian*

5 Conclusion and avenues for further research

From the point of view of Ancient Egyptian grammatical studies, it thus appears that the reconstruction of a NEC allows a solution to problems about negation that had remained pending for a long time. In particular, the coexistence of distinct forms expressing existential negation in Earlier Egyptian can be better understood as the result of layering in documentation that contains more diachronic change than has been generally assessed in philological studies. On the flip side, the Ancient Egyptian data bring to linguistic research on negation an interesting case for an evolution attested over a long period of time. The study of these data confirms that transitional stages tend to be stable, as was already established in Veselinova's pioneering studies on other language families. It also shows ideal stages that are not strictly consecutive: Ancient Egyptian illustrates the fact that overlaps are likely to occur between stages. As for the diachronic dimension, the attested history of Ancient Egyptian would appear to provide a case for the study of a potential NEC without reconstruction. Somewhat disappointingly, Middle Egyptian itself shows just another case of a long period of time where the negative existential is used for a specific sub-domain (modal/future negation, as in Bulgarian and Macedonian, with an inherited construction rather than an actual instantiation of the NEC, according to [Veselinova 2014](#)). However, the very notion of Standard Negation in a language such as Ancient Egyptian is obscured by the presence of other types of predication as prominent as verbal predication. Taking into account this specific structural feature, it appears that the NEC is almost completed in Late Egyptian (with *bn* serving as quasi-Standard Negation), even if it does not reach a new stage C. Since the negative existential itself had been re-created long before (emergence of *mn*), the ideal type C postulated in [Croft \(1991\)](#) never happened to exist as such. A new cycle was thus re-started before the previous one completed, much in line with other situations studied in [Veselinova \(2016\)](#). As seen in the preceding sections, establishing the precise chronology in the Egyptian case is not easy. However, the extant data appear to suggest a period stretching from 1000 years as the time from a phase A to the next transitional phase C-A.³⁷

Regarding the path of change involving nominalizations and negative existentials, the Egyptian data bring to light a further question as to the historical intricacies of the NEC and the grammaticalization process of new verbal constructions based on nominalizations. [Veselinova \(2013: 139\)](#) argues that 'negative

³⁷As for the time dimension of the NEC in general, [Veselinova \(2014: 1327\)](#) states that 'modeling this cycle, as its completion, i.e. the negative existential turning into a full-fledged marker of standard negation, appears to take longer than 2000 years'.

Elsa Oréal

existentials state the absence of an entity rather than negating its presence'. Consequently, the action, when negated by a negative existential in a given language, is conceptualized and encoded as an entity. This approach requires particular consideration in the Egyptian case. In the phase of its history just before Old Egyptian, it appears most likely that the entire verbal system was renewed according to a process that involved the grammaticalization of constructions with nominalizations. This phenomenon is not restricted to the negative polarity, but extends to positive constructions as well. Thus, a question may be asked as to the relevance of the renewal of negative patterns for the evolution of the whole verbal system. Following Veselinova (2016), the encoding of actions in nominalizations appears functionally correlated with the use of the negative existential as a more emphatic construction in its incipient stage.³⁸ Such a process would suggest that the impetus for the global renewal of verbal predication in pre-Old Egyptian may have come from the new negative pattern using the negative existential in combination with verbal nominalizations.

Abbreviations

| | | | |
|-------|-------------------|--------|----------------------|
| ANT | Anterior | M | masculine |
| C | common gender | NEG | negation |
| COMPL | completive | NEG.EX | negative existential |
| CONJ | conjunction | NMLZ | nominalization |
| COP | copula | PASS | passive |
| DEF | definite | PL | plural |
| DEM | demonstrative | PREP | preposition |
| DU | dual | PRT | particle |
| F | feminine | PTCP | participle |
| IMP | imperative | QUOT | quotative |
| IPFV | imperfective | REL | relative |
| INDF | indefinite | RES | restative |
| INF | infinitive | SBJV | subjunctive |
| INTER | interrogative | SG | singular |
| LOC | locative particle | STAT | stative |

³⁸See Veselinova (2016: 160) on Turkish.

5 *The negative existential cycle in Ancient Egyptian*

Acknowledgements

My thanks are due to Stéphane Polis for searching the Ramses database and collecting information for me about the existential negations in Late Egyptian. All errors and approximations remain mine. I am also deeply indebted to Eitan Grossman for his perceptive reading and many suggestions.

Appendix

The following table lists the various patterns and stages of the NEC. It is to be understood as a postulated reconstruction based on documentation that does not allow us to establish a precise chronology of changes (for reasons discussed in §3.1). Thus, while the order of succession and the approximate time of emergence of the relevant forms and constructions can be assumed with relative confidence, a strict dating remains out of reach and the proposed dates remain suggestive and hypothetical. The asterisk before a type indicates a historical phase that may be assumed to have happened when the gap between the written register and the spoken language was maximal, so that the documentation does not attest its realization. Such periods occur in particular during the transition between two language norms and are designated here as Proto-Middle Egyptian and Proto-Late Egyptian.

References

- Allen, James P. 2017. A grammar of the Ancient Egyptian Pyramid Texts. Languages of the ancient Near East 7, Winona Lake.
- Croft, William. 1991. The evolution of negation. *Journal of Linguistics* 27(1). 1–27.
- Depuydt, Leo. 2008. Late Egyptian *bn n.f* and *mn mdj.f* « he has no ». *Revue d'Egyptologie* 59. 111–124.
- Evans, Nicholas. 2007. Insubordination and its uses. In Irina Nikolaeva (ed.), *Finiteness: theoretical and empirical foundations*, 366–431. Oxford & New York: Oxford University Press.
- Goldwasser, Orly & Colette Grinevald. 2012. What are determinatives good for? In Eitan Grossman, Stéphane Polis & Jean Winand (eds.), *Lexical semantics in ancient Egyptian*, 17–53. Hamburg: Widmaier.
- Grossman, Eitan & Stéphane Polis. Forthcoming. Prohibitive strategies and prohibitive cycles in ancient egyptian. In Elsa Oréal (ed.), *Negation in ancient egyptian*. Berlin & New York: De Gruyter Mouton.

Elsa Oréal

Table 5.1: Patterns and stages of the NEC

| Type | Reconstructed chronology | Incipient Use as NegEx | Standard NegEx | Standard or Close-to-standard Negation |
|------|---|------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| *C | Proto-Egyptian (unattested) | | <i>ni</i> | <i>ni</i> |
| A | Old Egyptian (ca. 2500–2200 BCE) | | <i>ni wn(t)</i> | <i>ni</i> |
| *A-B | Proto-Middle Egyptian (unattested) | <i>nn</i> | <i>ni wn(t)</i> | <i>ni</i> |
| B-C | Early Middle Egyptian (ca. 2200–2000 BCE) | | <i>nn</i> | <i>ni</i> <i>nn + Verb (modal)</i> |
| C-A | Middle Egyptian (ca. 2200–1700 BCE) | <i>nn wn</i> | <i>nn</i> | <i>ni</i> <i>nn + Verb (modal)</i> |
| *A-B | Proto-Late Egyptian (unattested) | <i>mn</i> | <i>bn wn (= nn wn)</i> | <i>bn (= nn)</i> <i>bw (= ni)</i> |
| B | Late Egyptian (ca. 1400–700 BCE) | | <i>mn</i> <i>bn wn (rare)</i> | <i>bn</i> <i>bw</i> |

- Grossman, Eitan & Tonio Sebastian Richter. 2014. The Egyptian-Coptic language: Its setting in space, time and culture. In Eitan Grossman, Martin Haspelmath & Tonio Sebastian Richter (eds.), *Egyptian-Coptic linguistics in typological perspective*, vol. 55, 69–101. Berlin: Walter de Gruyter.
- Hengeveld, Kees. 1992. *Non-verbal predication*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Loprieno, Antonio. 1991. Focus, mood and negative forms: Middle Egyptian syntactic paradigms and diachrony. *Lingua Aegyptia* 1. 201–226.
- Loprieno, Antonio. 1995. *Ancient Egyptian: A linguistic introduction*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Loprieno, Antonio & Matthias Müller. 2012. Ancient Egyptian and Coptic. In Zygmunt Frajzyngier & Erin Shay (eds.), *The Afroasiatic languages*, 102–144. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Loprieno, Antonio, Matthias Müller & Sami Uljas. 2017. *Non-verbal predication in Ancient Egyptian* (The Mouton Companions to Ancient Egyptian Series 2). Berlin: Walter de Gruyter.
- Malchukov, Andrej. 2013. Verbalization and insubordination in Siberian languages. In Martine Irma Robbeets & Hubert Cuyckens (eds.), *Shared gram-*

5 The negative existential cycle in Ancient Egyptian

- maticalization: With special focus on the Transeurasian languages (Studies in Language Companion Series 132), 177–208. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Meltzer, Edmund S. 1990. Iw wn / nn wn + indefinite noun in Middle Egyptian. *Journal of Ancient Civilizations* 5. 135–150.
- Oréal, Elsa. 2017. Nominalizations as a source for verbal morphology: Grammaticalization paths of modality and information structure in Earlier Egyptian. *Lingua Aegyptia* 25. 1–33.
- Osing, Jürgen. 1979. Zur Entstehung der mittelägyptische Negation nn. In Edgar Pusch & Manfred Görg (eds.), *Festschrift Edel: ägypten und Altes Testament* 1, 302–313. Bamberg: M. Görg.
- Polis, Stéphane. 2017. Linguistic variation in Ancient Egyptian. An introduction to the state of the art (with special attention to the community of Deir el-Medina). In Jennifer Cromwell & Eitan Grossman (eds.), *Scribal repertoires in Egypt from the new kingdom to the Early Islamic period*, 60–88. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Stauder, András. 2013. *Linguistic dating of Middle Egyptian literary texts* (Lingua Aegyptia Studia Monographica 12). Hamburg: Widmaier.
- Stauder, András. 2014. *The earlier Egyptian passive: Voice and perspective* (Lingua Aegyptia Studia Monographica 14). Hamburg: Widmaier.
- Uljas, Sami. 2007. *The modal system of earlier Egyptian complement clauses: A study in pragmatics in a dead language* (Probleme der Ägyptologie 26). Leyde: Brill.
- Uljas, Sami. 2013. Some remarks on a negated Earlier Egyptian nominal sentence and related constructions. *The Journal of Egyptian Archaeology* 99(1). 241–251.
- van der Auwera, Johan. 2009. The Jespersen cycles. In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change*, 35–71. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Vergote, Jozef. 1965. Les formes verbales égyptiennes et leur vocalisation. *Orientalia* 34(3). 345–371.
- Vernus, Pascal. 1990. Future at issue. Tense, mood and aspect in Middle Egyptian: Studies in syntax and semantics. *Yale Egyptological Studies* 4.
- Vernus, Pascal. 1996. Langue littéraire et diglossie. In Antonio Loprieno (ed.), *Ancient Egyptian literature*, vol. 10 (Probleme der Ägyptologie), 555–564. Leiden: Brill.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2013. Negative existentials: A cross-linguistic study. *Italian Journal of Linguistics* 25(1). 107–145.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2014. The negative existential cycle revisited. *Linguistics* 52(6). 1327–1389.

Elsa Oréal

- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2016. The negative existential cycle viewed through the lens of comparative data. In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change continued* (Linguistics Today 227), 139–187. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Werning, Daniel A. 2013. Linguistic dating of the Netherworld Books attested in the New Kingdom. A critical review. In Gerald Moers, Kai Widmaier, Antonia Giewekemeyer, Arndt Lümers & Ralf Ernst (eds.), *Dating Egyptian literary texts*, vol. 11 (Lingua Aegyptia Studia Monographica), 237–281. Hamburg: Widmaier Verlag.
- Winand, Jean. 1997. La négation BN ... IWN# en néo-égyptien. *Lingua Aegyptia* 5. 223–236.
- Zöller-Engelhardt, Monika. 2016. *Sprachwandelprozesse im ägyptischen. Eine funktional-typologische Analyse vom Alt- zum Neuägyptischen* (Ägyptologische Abhandlungen 72). Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz Verlag.

Part II

Eurasia

Chapter 6

Negative existentials in Indo-European: a typological and diachronic overview

Annemarie Verkerk^a & Shahar Shirtz^b

^aMax Planck Institute for the Science of Human History and Universität des Saarlandes ^bUniversity of Oregon

The investigation of the Negative Existential Cycle ([Croft 1991](#)) has focused thus far on individual languages and small language (sub)families. The current paper serves as a starting point to analyze change in negative existentials and to establish the stability of the various attested construction types in a larger language family, Indo-European. Our ultimate objective is to conduct a quantitative phylogenetic study and this is only possible by consulting a large sample of related languages. Our first step is to present a typological and diachronic overview of negative existentials in 42 languages including Romance, Celtic, Germanic, Baltic, and the Indo-Iranian languages as well as Albanian, Modern Armenian and Greek. We find that the Romance languages in our sample are consistently Type A, while the Germanic languages are consistently Type A~B. Indo-Iranian is far more varied and the most promising branch of Indo-European in terms of providing evidence for relevant diachronic pathways. We speculate on the reasons for the stability of Romance's Type A and Germanic's Type A~B and conclude that further phylogenetic analysis of additional languages is needed from these branches as well as from Indo-Iranian. We present evidence for the coexistence of two distinct negative existential constructions in several Indo-Iranian languages and discuss how the interaction of two or more constructions may contribute to further change within the Negative Existential Cycle.

Keywords: Negative Existential Cycle, Indo-European, typological change, Iranian, Indo-Aryan, Germanic, Romance, Celtic



Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

1 Introduction

This paper is an examination of the Negative Existential Cycle (NEC, Croft 1991) in a broad sample of 42 Indo-European languages. The NEC is a typological hypothesis on how special existential negators may arise and ultimately be used as standard verbal negators. Recent studies by Veselinova (2013; 2014; 2015; 2016) who has studied both a large sample of languages from around the world as well as a wide range of language (sub)families, show that when considering the actual processes through which the negators evolve, the NEC often does not take the form of a cycle. The six stages of the NEC are not necessarily consecutive, as languages can be split (that is, have different constructions for (existential) negation belonging to different types), and there is considerable variation in the stability of these stages. The NEC also interacts with other cycles and pathways through which negators arise, including Jespersen's Cycle (see van Gelderen 2021 [this volume]). Existentials are closely related to locatives (Clark 1978; Creissels 2013), both conceptually and concerning the constructions used to encode them (see the introduction to this volume).

Cross-linguistic work on the NEC has been mostly limited to Croft's (1991) original study, to the articles by Veselinova (2013; 2014; 2015; 2016) and to more general work on negation (Kahrel & van den Berg 1994; Cyffer et al. 2009; Budd 2010; Willis et al. 2013). The current volume addresses this gap by gathering information on the NEC in a wealth of different languages and families. Our contribution focuses on the Indo-European language family, with the aim to first provide an overview of the constructions that are used for negative existentials in the various sub-branches of the family, and second, to analyze the stability of some of these construction types. We hope that this article contributes to a comparative phylogenetic analysis in which we can more explicitly test the stability and direction of change.

§2 of this paper begins with a brief introduction to the NEC itself, using Indo-European illustrations from the current language sample, especially from languages that have not been considered in the literature thus far. In §3, we present and specify the motivation for the different methods that we used to collect our data as well as the definitions used in our operationalization of negative existential clauses. The fourth section is a detailed report on the different construction types that express a negative existential function across different branches of Indo-European. This is followed in §5 by some of the diachronic and theoretical considerations that the data analyzed here raises, and there we argue for also using evidence from phylogenies when testing pathways of morphosyntac-

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

tic change. Finally, we present our conclusions and suggest several possible directions for future studies.

2 The Negative Existential Cycle in Indo-European

The Negative Existential Cycle ([Croft 1991](#)) is a hypothesis on how special existential negators may arise and may subsequently evolve into standard verbal negators. This cycle has six stages ([Veselinova 2014](#)) or language types ([Croft 1991](#)),¹ each with a different relationship between the expression of verbal negation and the expression of negative existentials:

- Type A: The negative existential construction is the affirmative existential predicate accompanied by the ordinary verbal negator.
- Type A~B: As Type A, but additionally one finds a special negative existential form, often a fusion of the regularly negated existential construction.
- Type B: Only a special negative existential form exists.
- Type B~C: The special negative existential form begins to be used for ordinary verbal negation.
- Type C: The negative existential form is the same as the ordinary verbal negator
- Type C~A: The negative existential form + verbal negator begins to be reanalyzed as only a negator, and is used as such in combination with an affirmative existential verb to form a negative existential

After the negative existential form + verbal negator in Type C~A is analyzed solely as a verbal negator, Type A is reached again and the cycle is complete. The cycle, then, is an attempt to make the typology of negative existential constructions more dynamic, providing a diachronic context for each construction type.

We now illustrate each of these types, beginning with Type A, where standard negation is used for both verbal and existential predicates. We illustrate this stage by citing data from Catalan (cat, Romance). Sentential negation in Catalan is expressed by *no* in the preverbal position:

¹We adopt the term “stage” when discussing the diachronic interpretation of the NEC, and “type” when referring to the synchronic characterization of a language.

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

- (1) Catalan ([Hualde 1992](#): 154)

En Joan no viu a Barcelona.
ART John NEG live.3SG in Barcelona
'John does not live in Barcelona.'

Existential clauses in Catalan are expressed by a special construction that uses *haver-hi* 'there is', literally 'there has,' where *hi* is a locative adverbial clitic. This construction is similar to other clauses in Catalan and is negated by a preverbal *no*:

- (2) Catalan ([Wheeler et al. 1999](#): 460)

Hi ha tres possibilitats.
there have.PRS.3SG three possibility.PL
'There are three possibilities.'

- (3) Catalan ([Wheeler et al. 1999](#): 422)

No hi ha cap examen on no enxampin algú copiant.
NEG there have.PRS.3SG any exam where NEG catch.SBJV.3PL somebody copy.GER
'There is no exam where they don't catch somebody copying.'

In the second stage (Type A~B), a special negator is used for existential sentences that only occur in specific contexts (see the discussion below on details regarding the variation allowed in the usage of the special negator). An example of this type is Sivandi (siy, Central Iranian). The Sivandi standard negation marker is a *na(y)-* or *ne(y)-* prefix ([Lecoq 1979](#): 69). Sivandi negative existentials can be formed by *dār-* 'be located, be at, have' or the past tense copula *bi* as illustrated in (4). The existential markers can be negated by the standard preverbal negator *na-*, *ne-*, *ney-* as in (5):

- (4) Sivandi ([Lecoq 1979](#): 85)

ye pīrežen=i bi
one old.woman=INDF be.PST.3SG
'There was an old woman.'

- (5) Sivandi ([Lecoq 1979](#): 89)

albatta barqa=m na=bi
evidently electricity=TOP NEG=be.PST.3SG
'(Someone lit a candle), evidently there was no electricity.'

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

Sivandi also has a special negative copula form, *nūnd*, which is historically composed of the negation marker *ne-* added to another element, the exact identity of which is still unclear. This is a negative copula form that is used as the negative counterpart of the Present tense copula:

- (6) Sivandi (Lecoq 1979: 150)
- vällāh, me či tū das=em nūnd
by.god 1SG what in hand=1SG NEG.COP
'By God, there's nothing in my hand'

The existential predicates in the next construction type, Type B, are not negated by the standard negator, but only through a special strategy. One example of a Type B language is Kurmanji Kurdish [kmr]. In Kurmanji, a preverbal marker *na-*, *ne-*, considered to be either a prefix or clitic, is used for standard negation:

- (7) Kurmanji (Thackston 2006: 35–36)
- ez na=tʃ-im doctor
1SG NEG=go.PRS-1SG doctor
'I am not going to the doctor.'

The affirmative existential construction consists of a single-figure constituent followed by the regular copula:

- (8) Kurmanji (Thackston 2006: 31)
- Got-in-eke pêşiy-ên me heye.
say-NMZL-CNST.INDF ancestor-PL 1PL.OBL be.PRS.3SG
'There is a saying of our ancestors.'

The negative existential does not take the form of a negated affirmative existential construction, but is formed by using the special verb *tun-*:

- (9) Kurmanji (Thackston 2006: 32)
- Di vî warî da otorîtey-eke resmî tune.
in DEM regard in authority-CNST.INDF official COP.NEG.PRS.3SG
'In this regard, there is no official authority.'

For Type B~C, the special existential negator is also used under certain conditions to negate some verbal predicates. In the current sample, Type B~C is attested in Oriya (ory, Eastern Indo-Aryan), but its description is slightly complicated. We will discuss this further in §4.1. Veselinova (2014) has described two other Type B~C Indo-European languages, Bulgarian [bul] and Macedonian [mkd]. Veselinova (2014: 1332–1333) offers the following examples and analysis for Bulgarian.

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

The standard negator generally found in Slavic and specifically in Bulgarian is the pre-verbal particle *ne* (ex. 10a–b). The existential negator, however, is *njama*, which is a reduction of the third person singular of the verb *imam* ‘to have’ (ex. 10c–d). The form *njama* is used in the future tense as a standard negator (ex. 10e–f), that is, only under specific conditions. That is, *njama* is not restricted to negative existentials.

- (10) Bulgarian (*Veselinova 2014*: 1332–1333)

- a. *Maria pee.*
Maria sing.3SG.PRS
'Maria sings.'
- b. *Maria ne pee.*
Maria NEG sing.3SG.PRS
'Maria does not sing.'
- c. *Ima div-i kotk-i*
have.3SG.PRS wild-PL cat-PL
'There are wild cats.'
- d. *Njama div-i kotk-i.*
not.have.3SG.PRS wild-PL cat-PL
'There aren't any wild cats.'
- e. *Dovečera shte xodja na kino.*
tonight FUT go.1SG.PRS to cinema
'I will go to the movies tonight.'
- f. *Dovečera njama da xodja na kino.*
tonight not.have.3SG.PRS sub go.1SG.PRS to cinema
'I will not go to the movies tonight.'

In the following stage, Type C, the special existential negator is commonly used for negative verbal predicates but replaces the affirmative existential marker rather than combining with it. There are several Type C negative existential constructions in Indo-European languages, particularly in Indo-Iranian languages, and this is illustrated more thoroughly in §4.1. Here, we demonstrate this pattern by citing examples from Kupia (key, Eastern Indo-Aryan), spoken in Northern Andhra Pradesh. In (11a) *nay* is used as the verbal negation marker. In (11b) *nay* is used as the negative existential copula:

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

- (11) a. Kupia (*Christmas & Christmas* 1973b: 38)
anne nig-e nay
 and run-3SG NEG
 '(The tiger stood up) and didn't run.'
- b. Kupia (*Christmas & Christmas* 1973b: 23)
i:ndʒa santa-yi ne dorku ja-t-i wastuwu nay
 DEM market-LOC NEG available become-PRS-F goods NEG
 'There are no goods that aren't available at the market.'

The final stage, Type C~A, represents a further step in that the special existential negator combines with the affirmative existential construction to form the negative existential construction, however the result is emphatically or pragmatically marked. Croft's (1991) example of a Type C~A language is an Indo-Aryan language, Marathi [mar], where the negative existential form *nāhi* can function as the negative existential, but it also can combine with the positive existential *āhe*:

- (12) Marathi (Croft 1991: 12, p.c. Madhav Deshpande, Croft's glosses)
- a. *tithə koṇi āhe*
 there anyone EX
 'Is anyone there?'
 - b. *koṇi tithə dzāt [əts] nāhi*
 anyone there goes [EMPH] NEG
 'Nobody goes there.'
 - c. *tithə koṇi nāhi [āhe]*
 there anyone NEG [EX]
 'There isn't anyone there.'

Croft (1991: 12) states that the negative existential construction that contains both *nāhi* and *āhe* is more emphatic than the construction with only *nāhi*, suggesting that the construction that combines the two is more recent. The Negative Existential Cycle is complete once the emphatic or pragmatic markedness of the combination of the former special existential negator and the affirmative existential wears off. We then return to Type A, where a standard negator is used for both verbal and existential predicates.

Croft (1991) analyzed a sample of 23 unrelated languages and drew on general diachronic processes to infer the directionality of change and to propose the Negative Existential Cycle (Croft 1991: 3–4, 13ff). This has since been investigated more directly by Veselinova (2013; 2014; 2015; 2016), who has analyzed a

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

large sample of languages throughout the world as well as a large range of language (sub)families to determine the historical processes therein. The analyses by Croft and Veselinova of some negative existential construction types differ. For example, to describe stage A~B, Croft (1991: 6–12) emphasizes the existence of a construction with a special negative existential form in addition to a construction with the standard verbal negative marker. In contrast, Veselinova (2014: 1328) emphasizes that the special form is limited to specific contexts, depending on factors such as tense or aspect. Furthermore, Veselinova (2013: 136–138) argues that special negative existential markers (that is, those implicated in Type B constructions), can arise through multiple processes and only some of them are directly connected to Croft’s cycle. These points highlight the differences between the three transitional construction types. While Type A~B requires the co-existence of two constructions, one of Type A and one of Type B, Types B~C and C~A are defined by the distinct uses of the negative existential marker, and therefore do not require the existence of two negative existential constructions.

The most important conclusions of Veselinova’s investigations are summarized in Veselinova (2016: 170ff). First, the types identified in the Negative Existential Cycle are construction types rather than language types because we find that these types co-occur within the same language. Veselinova (2014: 1372–1373, 1343ff) first identifies these split languages in the Polynesian subfamily, and later notes that the most common split type is A~B/B~C (Veselinova 2016: 154). Below, we further identify such co-occurrences in Indo-European, offering additional support for Veselinova’s findings.

Second, the six types of the Negative Existential Cycle do not necessarily present a diachronic sequence. Veselinova (2014: 1336–1337; see also Croft 1991: 22) demonstrates that while Bulgarian (see ex. 10 above) and Macedonian are excellent examples of the transitional Type B~C, whereas all other Slavic languages are either Type A or Type A~B, Bulgarian and Macedonian are not examples of the Negative Existential Cycle at work, as they have not gone through stage B. A similar story can explain changes in the distribution of the Russian special negator *net* (Veselinova 2014: 1335, 1337–1338). Aside from these “gaps” in the Cycle, Veselinova (2013: 127) first observes that as an alternative route to the Negative Existential Cycle, special negative existential forms can change into standard negation markers when they are used as pro-sentences (‘Are you at home?’ ‘No [I am not at home]’) and later on as general words for ‘no’ (see also Veselinova 2014: 1339). Subsequent analysis in Veselinova (2016: 155ff) reveals at least three other attested diachronic processes. This means that the Negative Existential Cycle is not the only diachronic process through which special negative existential forms can enter the domain of standard negation.

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

The third and last point is that an analysis of the Negative Existential Cycle that is based on a language family from a historical-comparative perspective has consequences for our understanding of the stability of the various construction types and the rate of change between them (*Veselinova 2015: 577; 2016: 170*). Through the course of her investigation, *Veselinova (2016: 150)* finds that the “transitional” stages A-B and B~C are cross-linguistically more common than the “non-transitional” stages of C and A. These “transitional” stages can be maintained for extended periods of time, which also accounts for their synchronic dominance. *Veselinova (2016)* reports on an accumulation of findings on the Negative Existential Cycle in six language (sub)families, but only one of these (Polynesian) features all six types. The Polynesian subfamily has diverged only relatively recently (approximately 2,000 years ago). *Veselinova (2016: 155)* suggests that the type of subordination construction that several Polynesian languages used for negation has been conducive to frequent renewal and rapid change in this family. This stands in contrast to several other, older families – Berber, Dravidian, Uralic – where only a few types of the Negative Existential Cycle are attested (see *Veselinova 2016: 147–149*). Hence, changes that occur within the Negative Existential Cycle as well as through other processes that result in special negative existential forms expressing standard verbal negation, depend on the language or language family-specific characteristics (*Veselinova 2016: 154; 2014: 1373*). This position is in line with current research in typology that demonstrates that language families have their own lineage-specific trends, both regarding features that tend to be stable and correlated with each other (*Dunn et al. 2011; Dediū & Levinson 2012; Bickel 2013*).

The aim of the current paper is to present a first preliminary overview of the constructions that are used for negative existentials in the various sub-branches of the Indo-European language family. In the future, we intend to expand the dataset to conduct an analysis using phylogenetic comparative methods. As *Veselinova (2013)* has demonstrated in a worldwide sample of 95 languages, Western Europe is not a particularly exciting place to investigate negative existential constructions, as the Western-European branches of Indo-European are relatively uniform in terms of the construction types that express the negative existential domain.² Nevertheless, our objective is to contribute to the current set of family-based historical-comparative studies. We decided to investigate Indo-European languages despite the limited variation in Western Europe for three, specific

²This is not an exceptional pattern, considering for instance clause alignment patterns, where Western European languages are uniformly accusative (*Siewierska 2013*), while the Indo-Iranian languages display considerable variation (*Haig 2008; Verbeke 2013*).

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

reasons. First, this is a large family that has been widely and extensively documented, which unlocks the potential to discover the entire cycle. Additionally, while the Indo-European languages of Western Europe are not especially varied, the Indo-Iranian languages do display interesting variation. Finally, there is also potential for an analysis of the interactions between some Indo-European branches and Uralic and Dravidian language families, which have already been studied by Veselinova (2015; 2016) as well as the Semitic and Tibeto-Burman families.

3 Methodology

The negative existential, like other domains of nominal predication, tends to be under-reported in published grammatical descriptions, either in the form of full reference grammars or grammar sketches. To overcome this, this study uses a combination of data sources to increase the coverage in terms of languages and branches. We included languages from each major branch of Indo-European, based on the likelihood of materials and experts being available in an attempt to establish a wide genealogical and geographical coverage. For example, we include Indo-Aryan languages from the Eastern, Northern, and Southern Zones, as well as Central and Western Iranian languages. To obtain the broadest language sample possible at this time, our sources include reference and sketch grammars as well as data from an analysis of published textual material and data from a translation questionnaire.

The translation questionnaire was slightly adjusted from Veselinova (2014) (Veselinova 2014, Appendix C) and is included in Appendix A. Those experts and colleagues who have completed the translation questionnaire for their native language or their language of expertise are mentioned by name unless they preferred to remain anonymous. The questionnaire elicits translations of many different types of clauses, both affirmative and negative. Besides existential clauses, the questionnaire includes clauses that are expected to be completely verbal, such as “Marie sang.” or “Marie didn’t sing.” and clauses which belong in the domain of nominal predication (as defined, for example, in Payne 1997: 111–127) such as “Tom is tall.” or “Tom isn’t tall.”. This allowed us to evaluate the similarities in the expression of negation across different functional and grammatical domains. We then typically asked follow-up questions and elicited further grammatical patterns that express negative existence. For example, having identified a specific pattern in the expression of negative existential in one language (such as an A-B split that is based on tense), we can probe whether similar patterns exist in other closely related languages.

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

The third data source we consulted consists of published naturalistic texts. We find that the direct use of texts aids us in analyzing many similarly “minor” functions (such as other specific subdomains of nominal predication) or even “major” functions such as discourse functions, which tend to not make their way to reference grammars. This is not a critique of grammar writing practices – good grammars are often long and sufficiently detailed. They cannot and should not be expected to cover all functional domains that future linguists may potentially inquire about. The fact that many reference grammars are sufficiently detailed to enable linguists to directly consult primary texts testifies to the superb quality of these grammatical descriptions.

The analysis of primary textual data from a variety of languages is rather the reality of researching constructions or functions that have not been thoroughly analyzed either in a typological or a descriptive sense. This is a labor-intensive task, but it is aided here by the fact that negative existence is often expressed by similar, even cognate, grammatical means, and that the grammatical patterns are similar to a large degree. The textual analysis also allows us to discern the common discourse situations that the negative existential constructions occur in, which often involve a change of location or a shift in the deictic center.

We do not see an *a priori* advantage to any of the three types of data sources used here. Yet the reality is that grammatical descriptions tend to not mention grammatical patterns that express the negative existential domain and negative existential clauses have a very low frequency in naturalistic texts. Thus, even when information from different sources was (at least potentially) available, we gave precedence to information from native speakers or language experts.

As demonstrated by Veselinova (2013: 112ff) and by her subsequent work, the type of negative existential construction is identified by comparing the negation strategies of existential constructions to that of standard verbal predicates. Of special importance here are locative sentences which are often encoded by very similar constructions but must be conceptually distinguished. This difference is found in the information status of the subject and the perspective on the figure-ground relationship between figure and the ground (p.c. Ljuba Veselinova, Creissels 2013):

- (13) predicate location: The book is on the table.
existence: There is a book (on the table).

The figure entity of a locative predicate tends to be given information or be identifiable in context, while the comparable entity of an existential predicate is indefinite, potentially indicating new information that is not usually mentioned

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

or referred to in the text immediately preceding the clause. The locative predicate establishes the location of an entity while the existential predicate is used to predicate the existence of an entity relative to a specific, often identifiable, location (Creissels 2013). Creissels' (2013) conceptualization of existentials avoids positing their semantics, that is, the notion that existential predicates assert or deny the existence of something, as their main defining property (Creissels 2013: 6ff). Nevertheless, in our search for existential predicates, we attempted to find and elicit as many examples as possible, both with and without an explicit location present ('on the table'), in an attempt to ensure that the two are considered separately in our analysis. When their encoding diverges, we are interested in existentials only and do not include details on locatives.

4 Typological overview

In this section, we survey negative existentials that occur in the major Indo-European branches, moving from East to West. We begin with Indo-Iranian and end with Celtic. This section does not feature all the languages we collected data on. In Appendix B, we present a full overview of all 42 languages we investigated and provide examples and source information in the same order of branches. For ease of presentation, given the large number of scripts involved, we use transcriptions or transliterations into the Latin script in all examples.

4.1 Indo-Iranian

This section surveys the different negative existential construction types attested in a sample of Indo-Iranian languages. The survey reveals that across Indo-Iranian, all six types of negative existential constructions in Croft's (1991) cycle occur and that different construction types co-exist in some languages: most notably A and B (essentially instances of Croft's Type A~B) or C and A (essentially instances of Croft's Type C~A), but also A & B~C or B & C. These results are summarized in Table 6.1 below. Considering the attested combinations of states, together with the combinations found in Polynesian languages (Veselinova 2014), we argue in §5 below that at least some of the unattested combinations thus far might be the result of the definitions of the different construction types.

Many Indo-Iranian languages express the affirmative existential domain by a combination of a copular verb and a NP expressing the existing entity. This is illustrated by the clauses in examples (14) and (15), which are from Middle Persian (pal, Western Iranian, circa 3rd century CE – 9th century) and Assamese

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

Table 6.1: Overview of classification of Indo-Iranian languages

| Language | Genealogical Affiliation | Iso-code | Glottolog code | Classification | Source(s) |
|----------------|--------------------------|----------|----------------|----------------|---|
| Old Persian | Old Iranian | peo | oldp1254 | A | Primary texts (inscriptions) |
| Middle Persian | Western Middle Iranian | pal | pahl1241 | A~B | Primary texts (Zoroastrian MP) |
| Tajik | Western Iranian | tgk | taji1245 | A~B | Own data, Perry 2005 |
| New Persian | Western Iranian | pes | west2369 | A~B | Own data |
| Sivandi | Central Iranian | siy | siva1239 | A~B | Lecoq 1979 |
| Gorani | Central Iranian | hac | gora1267 | A~B | Mahmoudveysi et al. 2012 |
| Gilaki | Central Iranian | glk | gila1241 | A | Rastorgueva et al. 2012 |
| Ziyarati | Central Iranian | mzn | maza1291 | A | Shokri et al. 2013 |
| Kurmanji | Central Iranian | kmr | nort2641 | B | Thackston 2006 |
| Taleshi | Central Iranian | tly | taly1247 | C~A | Paul 2011 |
| Koroshi | Central Iranian | ktl | koro1296 | A~B | Nourzaei et al. 2015 |
| Hindi | Central Zone Indo-Aryan | hin | hind1269 | C~A | Bashir 2006, godaan by Munshi Premchand |
| Odia | Eastern Zone Indo-Aryan | ory | oriy1255 | A & B~C | Neukom & Patnaik 2003 |
| Assamese | Eastern Zone Indo-Aryan | asm | assa1263 | A~B | p.c Nihankara Dutta, Krishna Boro |
| Kupia | Eastern Zone Indo-Aryan | key | kupi1238 | B & C | Christmas & Christmas 1973a, b |
| Marathi | Southern Zone Indo Aryan | mar | mara1378 | C~A | Croft 1991 |
| Nepali | Northern Zone Indo-Aryan | npi | nepa1254 | A | Sugam Singh, Marie-Caroline Pons (p.c.) |

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shartz

(asm, Eastern Indo-Aryan). The functional range of the copular verbs in these two clauses is not limited to clauses that express the existential domain but also includes other nominal predication domains.

- (14) Middle Persian (AWN 9.2)

ud mardōm bud hēnd
and people be.PST be.PRS.3PL

‘And there were people (who were as bright as the sun).’

- (15) Assamese (p.c. Nihankara Dutta, Krishna Boro)

bonoria mekuri as-e
wild cat COP-3SG.PRS

‘There are wild cats (in the world).’

Much of the variation in the expression of the negative existential in Indo-Iranian is the result of different types of interaction between some form of the verbal copula and a standard verbal negation marker. In many constructions across the Indo-Iranian languages, the standard verbal negation marker simply accompanies the copular verb. In other constructions, morphological reduction of the two leads to univerbation and to the emergence of innovative negative copulas or innovative verbal negation markers. Other factors that increase the crosslinguistic variation in this domain are the rise of innovative locative copulas, usually labeled as ‘stay,’ ‘exist (in)’ or ‘be at,’ and innovative negation markers. Rather than describing the different construction types attested in each language, the focus of this section is on examples that illustrate instances of each different construction type across the family.

In Old Persian [peo], the standard negation marker *naiy* is deployed in a pre-verbal position. The Old Persian affirmative existential is expressed by a copula accompanied by a NP expressing the existing entity, similar to the two clauses in examples (14) and (15) above. Clauses that express the negative existential in Old Persian, while apparently rare, are composed of a combination of the standard verbal negation marker *naiy* followed by the verbal copula. These two are accompanied by a NP that conveys the existing entity, as illustrated by example (16). Negative existential clauses in Old Persian are therefore an instance of Croft’s Type A construction.

- (16) Old Persian (DB1:48–49)

naiy āha martiya naiy pārsa naiy māda ...
NEG COP.PST.3SG man NEG persian NEG median

‘there was no man, not Persian, not Median, (... who dared to speak up)’

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

This situation is common across the Indo-Iranian languages, and it is responsible for many occurrences of Type A constructions. In the (a–b) pairs in examples (17–19) below, the clauses in (a) illustrate the standard verbal negation marker as it occurs in Middle Persian [peo], Sivandi [siv], and Ziyarati [maz] (Sivandi was also discussed in §2). The clauses in (b) illustrate a negative existential construction in each language. Across these pairs, the verbal negation marker in (a) is the same negation marker deployed in (b). The straightforward difference between the Middle Persian affirmative existential in example (14) above, and the negative existential in example (17b) below, is the presence of the standard negation marker that occurs in a preverbal position.

- (17) a. Middle Persian (DK6:50)

wināh nē kun-ēd
sin NEG do.PRS-3SG

‘He will not sin.’

- b. Middle Persian (PRDD:18a)

agar ātaxš ī wahrām nē būd
if fire LNK Wahram NEG be.PST.3SG

‘If the fire of Wahram did not exist. (lit. if there was no fire of Wahram)’

- (18) a. Sivandi (Lecoq 1979: 90)

ū bāy-gar-i mardem na=šu
3SG garden-PL-LNK people NEG=go.PST.3SG

‘He did not go into the gardens of those people.’

- b. Sivandi (Lecoq 1979: 89)

albatta barqa=m na=bi
evidently electricity=TOP NEG=be.PST.3SG

‘(someone lit a candle), Evidently there was no electricity.’

- (19) a. Ziyarati Mazandarani (Shokri et al. 2013: 26)

te harf=am na-it-i
2SG word=1SG NEG-get.PST-2SG

‘You did not understand my words.’

- b. Ziyarati Mazandarani (Shokri et al. 2013: 84)

sūpā da-ni-bu-in ...
watchman PRV-NEG-be.PST-3PL

‘(if) there are no watchmen’

Locative verbs, often understood to mean something like ‘stay,’ ‘exist (in),’ or ‘be at’, are usually negated by the standard negation marker. The (a) clauses in

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

examples (20) and (21) illustrate the standard verbal negation markers that occur in Assamese [asm] and Gilaki [glk], and their (b) counterparts show that this marker is used to negate locative verbs in the negative existential pattern. The Sivandi standard negation marker, a preverbal *na-*, as illustrated by (18a) above, also occurs in (22) in a negative existential clause, with an innovative locative verb.

- (20) a. Assamese (p.c. Nihankara Dutta, Krishna Boro)
mohila-goraki(-e) gan na-ga-j
 woman-CLF-(NOM) song NEG-sing-3SG
 'The woman didn't sing.'
- b. Assamese (p.c. Nihankara Dutta, Krishna Boro)
bonoria mekuri na-t^hak-e
 wild cat NEG-stay-3SG.PRS
 'There are no wild cats.'
- (21) a. Gilaki ([Rastorgueva et al. 2012](#): 125)
nə-kun-əm
 NEG-do.PRS-1SG
 'I do not make'
- b. Gilaki ([Rastorgueva et al. 2012](#): 326; their glosses and parsing)
mašin nə-ø-na-ø
 car NEG-PRF-exist.PST-3SG.PST
 'There are no cars.'
- (22) Sivandi ([Lecoq 1979](#): 150)
ke bār na=dār-e
 COMP grain NEG=be.at-3SG
 '(He closed his windmill down) because there was no grain.'

So far, the examples for Croft's Type A constructions all involve preverbal negation markers, which are commonly found in the Indo-Iranian language family. However, many Indo-Aryan languages underwent different historical processes that resulted in changes in the relative order of the negation marker and the negated verb. This is illustrated by example (23a) below from Nepali [npi], where the post-verbal negation marker is essentially suffixed to the verb.³ The predicates in the negative existential clauses in examples (23b–c) differ in the type of copular verbs, but both are negated by the same marker used with finite verbs, as in example (23a):

³This is a rather simplified picture of polarity in the Nepali verb, but other negation markers behave similarly with respect to the variables analyzed here.

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

- (23) Nepali (Sugam Singh, Marie-Caroline Pons (p.c.))
- a. *yini mahilā-le jhyāl phod-inan*
DEM woman-ERG window break-NEG.PST.3SG
'The woman didn't break the window.'
 - b. *bāri-mā birālo-haru chha-inan*
garden-LOC cat-PL be-NEG.PST.3SG
'(He is looking outside.) There are no cats in the garden.'
 - c. *jāgali birālo-haru thi-enan*
jungle cat-PL be.PST-NEG.PST.3SG
'There were no wild cats (back in the day, before they were brought here).'

The negative existential clauses presented thus far differ in a number of variables that include the type of copula used and the syntax of the negation marker. Despite these dissimilarities, however, all of these constructions are instances of Croft's Type A construction: The negation marker used to negate existential predicates is the standard negation marker, and the relative order of the negation marker and the existential predicate is identical to that of the negation marker and a finite verb. In some of the languages analyzed here, including Old Persian, Nepali, Gilaki, and Ziyarati, negative existential constructions of this type are the only ones attested in the analyzed material. In other languages, such as Middle Persian, Sivandi, and Assamese, constructions of this type co-exist with other types. The interaction between the standard verbal negation marker and the copula used in existential constructions sometimes results in a re-analysis of the two as a single entity, and this occasionally leads to a morpho-phonological reduction and the rise of an innovative negative copula.⁴

In Middle Persian, the Present tense 3SG copula, *ast*, is not attested with *nē*, the Middle Persian standard negation marker, preceding it.⁵ Instead, the two have been reanalyzed as an innovative negative copula, *nēst* (also transcribed as *nest*). This reduction is essentially limited to the copula, and the negation marker *nē* does not reduce before other *a*-initial (or vowel-initial) verbs. The negative copula *nēst*, in turn, is often treated as a lexical stem. For example, the abstract noun marker *-īh*, can follow it to form the word *nēstīh* 'non-existence, nothing(ness)'

⁴As these copulas occur in clauses that express other nominal predication domains, such as the predicate adjective or proper inclusion, this reduction is likely to also be motivated by these more frequent domains.

⁵In Parthian, another Middle Iranian language (circa 3rd century BCE – 3rd century CE), sequences of *nē* and *ast* do occur (see Skjærøv 2009a: 216).

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

as opposed to *astīh* ‘existence’. The clause in (24) illustrates the use of this copula in a negative existential clause. The use of the Middle Persian negative copula is not limited to existential contexts, and it is also found negating clauses that express other nominal predication domains such as predicate adjective or proper inclusion.

- (24) Middle Persian (DK6:50)

az padidīgīh rāh ī ḍ dušaxw nēst
from repentance road LNK to hell NEG.COP.PRS
'From repentance, there is no road to Hell.'

A similar situation is attested in Sivandi and Assamese, where the innovative negative copulas *nund* and *nai* are deployed by speakers in many types of clause constructions, including the negative existential. It seems safe to assume that the first phonological segment of both *nai* and *nund* is related to the synchronically standard verb negation marker in each of these languages, but the evolution of the remaining markers is difficult to ascertain.

- (25) Sivandi (Lecoq 1979: 150)

vāllāh, me či tū das=em nūnd
by.god 1SG what in hand=1SG NEG.COP
'God, there's nothing in my hand.'

- (26) Assamese (p.c. Nihankara Dutta, Krishna Boro)

sotal-ot (eta-u) mekuri nai
yard-LOC (one-ADD) cat NEG.EX
'(He's looking into the yard.) There are no cats in the yard.'

In Middle Persian, Sivandi, and Assamese, a special negative form of the copula occurs, which is used in many domains of negative nominal predication. This copula is also used in negative existential clauses, which leads to a construction of Croft's Type B. In these three languages, these negative existential constructions co-exist together with constructions of Type A, as illustrated above. Thus, since these languages have constructions of Type A alongside constructions of Type B, they belong to Croft's stage A~B.

Constructions of Type B are the only type of negative existential forms attested in some of the languages analyzed here. For example, in Kurmanji Kurdish [kmr], the standard verbal negation marker is a preverbal *na-*, and is illustrated in example (27a) (Kurmanji was also discussed in §2). The affirmative existential domain is expressed in Kurmanji by combining the affirmative copula *hene* with a single

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

NP that expresses the existing entity. The negative existential is nonetheless expressed by the negative (locative) copula, *tune*, which is accompanied by a single NP that expresses the non-existing entity, as illustrated in (27c).

- (27) Kurmanji ([Thackston 2006](#): 35–36, our glosses and parsing)

- a. *ez na=tʃ-im doctor*
1SG NEG=go.PRS-1SG doctor
'I am not going to the doctor.'
- b. *sedem-ê wê hene*
reason-CNST.MSG 3FSG.OBL COP.3SG
'There are reasons for it.'
- c. *madem.ku zimannivîs tune*
as.long.as writer NEG.COP
'as long as there are no writers'

Another language that has a special negative form of the copula in clauses that express the negative existential is Kupia [key], an Eastern Indo-Aryan language spoken in Andhra Pradesh (Kupia was also discussed in §2). The standard verbal negation marker in this language is a post-verbal *nay*, illustrated by example (28a). The affirmative existential in Kupia is expressed by a combination of the affirmative copula *as* with a single NP, much like example (15) above from Assamese. The negative counterpart of the Kupia copular verb *as-* is *nenj-*. This is found in many clauses that express different types of nominal predication, including the negative existential. Example (28b) illustrates this instance of Croft's Type B. In Kupia, however, the negative existential is also expressed by another construction, illustrated in (28c). The Kupia standard negation marker *nay* functions in this construction as the negative existential predicate.⁶ Thus, this is an instance of Croft's Type C construction: the standard negation marker is identical to the negative existential marker.

- (28) a. Kupia ([Christmas & Christmas 1973a](#): 309)

- geeru band-i nay*
house build-1SG NEG
'I am not building / won't build a house.'

- b. Kupia ([Christmas & Christmas 1973b](#): 31)

- am-ci e:jansi-te saraiyayina da:k̤tar-lu nenj-ili*
1SG-GEN agency-LOC fitting doctor-PL NEG.COP-PRF
'There weren't any fitting doctors in our agency.'

⁶This use of *nay* as a copula is not limited to negative existential constructions and is also attested in other domains of nominal predication.

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

c. Kupia (*Christmas & Christmas 1973b*: 83)

gerr-i ay-ile kicco nay
house-LOC come-TMP what NEG

'And when they came into the house, there was nothing in it.'

In Kupia, then, we find two distinct negative existential constructions. They are presented above in examples (28b) and (28c), which represent Type B and Type C, respectively. It is important to note, however, that Kupia cannot be considered to be an example of Croft's Type B~C. This type is defined as a situation in which the negative existential is identical to the standard negation marker in some constructions but not in others. That is, it occurs when finite verbs are negated by several negation markers. Some of these markers are identical to the negative existential marker, while others are not. Kupia has one major negation marker that is used with finite verbs, a post-verbal *nay*. Some remnants of other negation markers exist, such as a preverbal *ne-*, which has been found to be fossilized in some negative verbs, such as the negative copula *nenj-*, *netr-* 'be unable', or *neen-* 'be ignorant of, not know' (*Christmas & Christmas 1973a*: 310). Thus, Kupia is an example of a language with both Type B and Type C negative existential constructions.

The analysis of some negative existential constructions as an instance of Croft's Type B~C requires the co-existence of several distinct standard verbal negation markers, as *Veselinova (2014: 1329)* observes. This situation is attested in Standard Oriya [ory], a language that is closely related to Kupia and that has both a preverbal negation marker *no* and a post-verbal negation marker *nahī*. The use of these markers is presented in examples (29a) and (29b).

(29) Oriya (*Neukom & Patnaik 2003*: 340–341)

a. *se gol-a nahī*
3SG go.PST-3SG NEG

'He did not go.'

b. *kintu bɔrttɔman se no-j-ib-o kahīki*
but now 3SG NEG-go-FUT-3SG why
'But why shouldn't she go now?'

The affirmative existential in Standard Oriya is expressed by a combination of the verbal copulas *ɔch-* or *th-* and a NP expressing the (non-)existing entity. The negative existential is expressed by two different types of constructions. In example (30), *nahī* follows the single NP of the clause. The parsing and glossing of *nahī* that Neukom and Patnaik provide in their grammar reflects their understanding of the origin of this form as a negative verbal copula. Note, however,

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

that it is identical to the verbal negation marker in example (29a) above, which Neukom and Patnaik do not analyze. The form *nahī* is therefore used as the predicate in negative existential clauses, without any further expression of negation or any another existential copula. It is also used as the negation marker in verbal clauses such as example (29a) above. Since there are other verbal negation markers, such as the preverbal *nɔ*, the clause in (30) illustrates Croft's Type B~C.

- (30) Oriya (Neukom & Patnaik 2003: 72)

bɔ̄lɔ̄ nah-ī chɔ̄tɔ̄ di-ɔ̄
big NEG.be-3SG small give-2PL.IMP

'There are no big ones – (costumer:) Give (me) a small one!'

In Standard Oriya, the existential domain can also be expressed by the pre-verbal negation marker *nɔ*- followed by the copular verb *th-*. This strategy is illustrated in example (31), where the first two clauses represent this type of negative existential clause. In other words, in Standard Oriya we find both Type A and Type B~C negative existential constructions.

- (31) Oriya (Neukom & Patnaik 2003: 195)

premika nɔ-th-ile birɔ̄hɔ̄ jɔ̄ntrɔ̄nqo nɔ-tha-nt-a ki
mistress NEG-be-COND.CVB separation pain NEG-be-COND-3SG or
kehi mɔ̄dɔ̄ pi-u-nɔ-tha-nt-e
anybody wine drink-IP-NEG-AUX-COND-3PL

'If there were no girls, there would be no pain of separation nor would anybody drink alcohol.'

In conclusion, Kupia and Standard Oriya represent two closely related stages of Croft's cycle. Both languages use the verbal negation markers *nahī* or *nay* as negative existential predicates. However, Standard Oriya has also retained a second verbal negation marker, which introduces some variation to the negation patterns of finite verbs. A similar second marker was lost in Kupia (but was fossilized in a number of verbs). The loss of this second verbal negation marker in Kupia resulted in Kupia having Type C constructions instead of Type B~C constructions, as in standard Oriya.

Further, the co-existence of a Type B and a Type C negative existential constructions in one language creates a curious situation. According to Croft (1991), the next step in the cycle for Type B construction would be that the specialized negative existential would begin to act as a negation marker for verbs. Since another Type C construction already exists in the language, there would be two negative existential markers that are also used as standard negation markers. At

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

this stage, then, there would be two distinct standard negation markers, and this development shifts the classification of the old Type C construction into Type B~C, in the reverse direction from the one Croft's cycle predicts. This suggests that two distinct Type C constructions, then, cannot co-exist in one language.

Finally, some Indo-Iranian languages have examples of the C~A stage of Croft's cycle. These languages include Hindi (hin, [Bashir 2006](#)) and Marathi (mar, [Croft 1991](#)), but this stage is illustrated here by data from Taleshi (tly, [Paul 2011](#)). In Taleshi, the standard verbal negation marker is a preverbal *ni*- or *na*-, as shown in example (32a). The affirmative existential in Taleshi is expressed by a combination of a verbal copula and a NP, which is similar to the examples from other Indo-Iranian languages presented above. One type of negative existential that Taleshi has involves using the negation marker *ni* alone, which is shown in example (32b). In this example, *ni* is preceded by a NP and is not followed by a copula. In contrast, example (32c) shows that *ni* can be followed by a copula.

- (32) a. Taleshi ([Paul 2011](#): 255)
- | | | |
|--------------------------|------------|---------------|
| <i>hic</i> | <i>kas</i> | <i>ni-a-š</i> |
| none somebody NEG-PRS-go | | |
| 'No one is going.' | | |
- b. Taleshi ([Paul 2011](#): 214)
- | | | | | |
|--|-----------|-----------------|-----------|----------------|
| <i>câra=i</i> | <i>ni</i> | <i>magam əm</i> | <i>ki</i> | <i>bə-š-am</i> |
| solution=INDF NEG except DEMP COMP SUBJ-go-1PL | | | | |
| 'There is no solution but that we go.' | | | | |
- c. Taleshi ([Paul 2011](#): 422)
- | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------|-------------|
| <i>vin-ə</i> | <i>sas=i</i> | <i>ni=a</i> |
| see-3SG voice=INDF NEG=COP.3SG | | |
| 'She sees that there is no answer.' | | |

The two constructions in examples (32b–c) above may be instances of Croft's Type C~A constructions. The standard verbal negation marker can function as the negative existential predicate, as shown in (32c), but can also accompany a verbal copula, as it does in (32b). It is difficult to determine, however, whether combining the copula and the negative marker *ni* results in some pragmatic or emphatic effect as [Croft \(1991\)](#) and [Veselinova \(2014\)](#) seem to suggest.⁷

This section provided a rather brief overview of the different types of negative existential constructions attested in the Indo-Iranian languages surveyed

⁷It is somewhat unclear, at least to us, whether the Talishi negative existential *ni* was ever a component in a Type B negative existential construction, and if it was, what form did the standard verbal negation take at that time.

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

for this paper. This overview provides evidence that all six stages of Croft's cycle are present in the Indo-Iranian family. This section also showed that at least in some instances, two distinct negative existential construction types co-exist in the same language. The section did not cover the different language-specific historical processes of reanalysis and actualization that occurred in each of the languages. Indeed, the origins of some special negative existential markers, such as those in Sivandi and Kurmanji, remain unclear. The forms of other markers, such as the Hindi or the Standard Oriya *nahī*, have been the subject of debate in the literature (for Hindi, see the references in [Bashir 2006](#)).

4.2 Armenian, Albanian, Greek

This section offers a short overview of the negative existential constructions that occur in Modern Armenian [hye], Albanian [sqi], and Modern Greek [ell]. Even though these languages do not form a genealogical subgroup, they are discussed here for the sake of simplicity.

First, in Modern Eastern Armenian [hye], standard negation is expressed by the negative prefix *č-* that attaches to most verb forms, except for imperatives ([Dum-Tragut 2009: 522](#)):

- (33) Armenian ([Dum-Tragut 2009: 51](#))
- a. *Vardan-ě gneč' gírk'-ě.*
Vardan.NOM-DEF buy.AOR.3SG book.NOM-DEF
'Vardan bought the book.'
 - b. *Vardan-ě č'-gneč' gírk'-ě.*
Vardan.NOM-DEF NEG-buy.AOR.3SG book.NOM-DEF
'Vardan did not buy the book.'

The verb *em* 'to be' functions both as a copula and as an auxiliary ([Dum-Tragut 2009: 215](#)) but is not used for existentials. However, one verb is frequently used for both locatives and existentials: the defective verb *kam* 'exist' ([Dum-Tragut 2009: 282](#)). The following are examples of a locative existential and a 'true' existential, respectively:

- (34) Armenian ([Dum-Tragut 2009: 104–105](#))
- Hamaynk'-i lekavar-i t-an-ě heraxos*
community-DAT leader-DAT house-DAT-DEF telephone.NOM
č'-k-a.
NEG-exist-PRS.3SG
'There is no telephone in the house of the leader of the community.'

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

- (35) Armenian ([Dum-Tragut 2009](#): 693)

Inč'u č'-k-an barjrakarg ēk'skursavar-ner?
why NEG-exist-PRS.3PL high.quality tourist.guide-PL.NOM
'Why there are no high-quality tourist guides?' (headline)

Both *kam* 'to exist' and the copula *em* are used for locatives, while only *kam* can be used to predicate existence without overtly referring to a specific situation or location. Both *kam* and *em* are negated with the negative prefix *č'*-, similar to prototypical verbs, which classifies Modern Armenian as a Type A language.

Modern Greek [ell] exhibits similar characteristics.⁸ This language negates predicates by placing the negative morpheme *δεν*, *δεν* 'not' before the verb ([Holton et al. 2012](#): 510). Another negator also exists and is used for sentences in the subjunctive mood, but that does not concern us here.

- (36) Modern Greek ([Holton et al. 2012](#): 510)

Oι συγγενείς του δεν θα του δώσουν καμιά βοήθεια
oi syngeneís tou δen θa tou dósoun kamiá voíθeia
DEF.PL relative.PL POSS.3SG NEG FUT 3SG.ACC give any aid
'His relatives are not going to give him any help.'

Modern Greek is similar to Armenian in that it does not permit the use of the copula *είμαι* (*eímai* 'to be') in existential predicates. Instead, either *υπάρχω* (*ypárcho* 'to exist') or *έχω* (*écho* 'to have') are used:

- (37) Modern Greek ([Holton et al. 2012](#): 493)

Δεν υπάρχει φάρμακο σ' αυτή την αρρώστια
δen ypárchei fármako s'-aftí tin arróstia
NEG exist medicine of-DEM.F.SG DEF.F.ACC illness
'There is no cure [lit. 'medicine'] for this illness.'

- (38) Modern Greek (p.c. Eirini Skourtanioti)

Δεν έχει αδέσποτες γάτες
δen éxei aðéspotes gátes
NEG have.PRS.3SG stray cat.PL
'There are no stray cats.'

Modern Greek uses the standard negator to negate existential sentences and we can therefore classify it as Type A.

⁸The history of negation in Greek is rife with innovations and renewals, especially when different dialectal varieties are considered (for example, see [Kiparsky & Condoravdi 2006](#)). We have only included data from one formal variety of Modern Greek here, and aim to include additional varieties in future research that uses phylogenetic methods to analyze Croft's cycle.

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

Standard (Tosk) Albanian [sqi] has four negative morphemes, *nuk*, *s'*, *mos*, and *jo* (Turano 2000: 82; for another negative morpheme, *as*, see Buchholz & Fiedler 1987: 172). *mos* is used to negate subjunctive, imperative and optative clauses as well as gerunds and infinitives (Turano 2000: 85), *jo* is referred to as a ‘constituent negator’ and its usage is restricted to nominals, adjectives, prepositional phrases, and adverbials (Turano 2000: 86). This means that only *nuk* and *s'* are relevant to the present discussion. Both *nuk* and *s'* are predominantly used in standard verbal negation and are interchangeable, although there are differences pertaining to stylistics and usage (Buchholz & Fiedler 1987: 172).

- (39) Albanian (Turano 2000: 82)

- a. *Nuk vajta* (*më*) *në bibliotekë.*
NEG go.PST.1SG (anymore) in library
'I didn't go to the library (anymore).'
- b. *S'-vajta* (*më*) *në bibliotekë.*
NEG-go.PST.1SG (anymore) in library
'I didn't go to the library (anymore).'

The verb used for existential predicates is *ka* ‘to have’, as Camaj (1984: 12), who explicitly glosses the third person singular form of the verb, *ka*, to mean ‘he, she has’ and ‘there is’, and its negated forms *nuk ka*, *s'ka* to mean ‘there is no’. Camaj’s (1984) grammar includes several examples of existential predicates and we have listed a negated one below:

- (40) Albanian (Camaj 1984: 12/257)

- Në mulli ka* *drithë e miell.*
in mill have.3SG grain and flour
'In the mill there is grain and flour.'

- (41) Albanian (Camaj 1984: 70)

- Ndër ne s'-ka* *kundërshtime.*
among 1PL.ACC NEG-have.3SG objection.PL
'There are no conflicts among us.'

As *ka* ‘to have’ is negated in the same manner as any other verb, Albanian is classified as a Type A language.

4.3 Balto-Slavic

The standard negator in both Latvian [lav] and Lithuanian [lit] is the marker *ne*:

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

- (42) Latvian ([Mathiassen 1997](#): 164)
Viņš ne-runā latviski.
 3SG.M NEG-speak.PRS.3SG Latvian
 ‘He doesn’t speak Latvian.’
- (43) Lithuanian ([Mathiassen 1996](#): 185)
Aš ne-nusipirkau naujo dviračio
 1SG NEG-buy.PST.1SG new.GEN bicycle.GEN
 ‘I have not bought a new bicycle.’

The copula is used in both languages (Latvian *ir* ‘to be’ and Lithuanian *būti* ‘to be’) for a range of nonverbal predicate domains, including existentials. In Latvian, the negative present tense form of the copula has a special negated form, *nav*, as is evident in example (44b). In Lithuanian, the present tense negative form of the copula is a contraction of the negator *ne* and the non-negative form of the copula *yra*, which is written *nėra*, as example (45b) illustrates ([Mathiassen 1996](#): 1976). In the past tense, both languages use the standard negator *ne* (examples 44d, 46).

- (44) Latvian (p.c. Sandra Grinberga)
- Ir savvaļas kaķi.*
 PRS.COP wild cat.PL.NOM
 ‘There are wild cats.’
 - Nav savvaļas kaķu.*
 NEG.PRS.COP wild cat.PL.GEN
 ‘There are no wild cats.’
 - Bija savvaļas kaķi.*
 PST.COP wild cat.PL.NOM
 ‘There were wild cats.’
 - Ne-bija savvaļas kaķu.*
 NEG-PST.COP wild cat.PL.GEN
 ‘There were no wild cats.’
- (45) Lithuanian (p.c. Algirdas Sabaliauskas)
- Čia yra laukinių kačių.*
 here be.PRS.3SG wild.GEN.M.PL cat.GEN.M.PL
 ‘There are wild cats.’
 - Čia laukinių kačių nėra.*
 here wild.GEN.M.PL cat.GEN.M.PL NEG.be.PRS.3SG
 ‘There are no wild cats.’

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

- (46) Lithuanian (Kalėdaitė 2008: 134)

Protestuoti dėl to ne-buvo kam.
 protest.INF because.of that NEG-be.PST.3SG who.DAT
 'There was no one who would protest about that.'

Both Latvian and Lithuanian have a special negative existential form that is restricted to the present tense and standard negation of the affirmative existential in the past tense, which classifies them both as Type A~B languages.

Veselinova (2014) has analyzed Slavic languages in detail. Table 6.2 below is her Table 2 from Appendix B and is reproduced to provide an overview of the characteristics of the Slavic languages.

4.4 Romance

The Romance languages that we have investigated thus far are identical in their treatment of negative existentials in that they are all Type A (see Table 6.3 below). This can be illustrated by citing data from Romanian [ron]. The standard negator in Romanian is the preverbal particle *nu* 'not':

- (47) Romanian (Gönczöl-Davies 2008: 56)

O fată face sport, cealaltă fată nu face.
 INDF.F.SG girl make.PRS.3SG sport other.F.SG girl NEG make.PRS.3SG
 'One girl does sports, the other girl doesn't.'

This same negator is used in negative existentials, which may be formed by using different verbs: *a se gasi* 'to find themselves', *a exista* 'to exist', and the copula *a fi* 'to be'. The latter is not preferred and only occurs when the negated sentence is absolutely and universally true:

- (48) Romanian (p.c. Andreea Calude)

- Se găsesc pisici sălbatici.*
 MID.3SG find cat.PL wild.PL
 'There are wild cats.'
- Nu se găsesc pisici sălbatici.*
 NEG MID.3SG find cat.PL wild.PL
 'There are no wild cats.'
- Nu există pisici sălbatici.*
 NEG exist cat.PL wild.PL
 'There are no wild cats.'

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

Table 6.2: Overview of the standard and special negators in Slavic as reported in Veselinova (2014: 1378), see also Veselinova (2016: 176)

| Group/ Language | Iso- code | Glotto- code | Standard negator | Existential negator | Classifi- cation |
|----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|---------------------|---|---------------------|
| East/ | | | | | |
| Byelorussian | bel | bela1254 | ne | <i>njama</i> ‘not exist, not.have’ | A~B |
| Russian | rus | russ1263 | ne | <i>net</i> ‘not exist, not.have’ | A~B |
| Ukrainian | ukr | ukra1253 | ne | <i>nema/nemae</i> ‘not exist, not.have’ | A~B |
| South/ | | | | | |
| Bulgarian | bul | bulg1262 | ne | <i>njama</i> ‘not exist, not.have’ | B~C |
| Macedonian | mkd | mace1250 | ne | <i>nema</i> ‘not exist, not.have’ | B~C |
| Serbian/ Croatian | srp/ hrv | serb1264/ croa1245 | ne | <i>nema</i> ‘not exist, not.have’ | A~B |
| Slovene | slv | slov1268 | ne | <i>ne obstaja</i> ‘NEG exist’ | A |
| West/ | | | | | |
| Czech | ces | czec1258 | ne- | <i>ne-existujou</i> ‘NEG- exist.PL.PRS’ | A |
| Slovak | slk | slov1269 | ne- | <i>ne-jestvujú/existujú</i> ‘NEG-exist.PL.PRS’ <i>(nieto</i> ‘not exist’) | ?A~B →A |
| Kashubian | csb | kash1274 | nie | <i>ni ma</i> ‘not.have’ | A~B |
| Polish | pol | poli1260 | nie | <i>nie ma</i> ‘NEG have’ | A~B |
| Upper Sorbian | hsb | uppe1395 | nie- | <i>nie-dawa</i> ‘NEG-give’ <i>nie-eksistuja</i> ‘NEG- exist.PL.PRS’ | A |
| Lower Sorbian | dsb | lowe1385 | nie- | <i>nje-dajo</i> ‘NEG-give’ <i>nje-eksistěruju</i> ‘NEG- exist.PL.PRS’ | A |

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

- d. *Nu este viață eternă.*
 NEG be.PRS.3SG life eternal
 ‘There is no eternal life.’

The other Romance languages we have investigated thus far share this dispreference for the copula in existential sentences. Italian [ita] uses *esistere* ‘to exist’, Spanish [spa] uses the present indicative form *hay* of the verb *haber*, which means ‘there is, there are’, Catalan [cat] uses *haver-hi* ‘there is (lit. there has)’, and French [fra] uses *exister* ‘to exist’. In addition, French uses the verb *avoir* ‘to have’ in a set phrase *il y a* [3SG.M LOC have.3SG.PRS], ‘lit. he has to him’. This phrase is also negated by using the standard negator *ne ... pas*, as in the following example:

- (49) French (Offord 2006: 87)

Il a voulu trouver un poste, mais il n-y en avait pas.
 3SG.M have.3SG.PRS try.PTCP find.INF INDF job but 3SG.M NEG-LOC of.PL have.3SG.IP NEG
 ‘He tried to find a job, but there weren’t any.’

Table 6.3: Overview of the standard and special negators in the Romance dataset

| Language | Iso-code | Glotto-code | Standard negator | Classification | Source(s) |
|----------|----------|-------------|------------------|----------------|--|
| Latin | lat | lati1261 | non | A | p.c. Paul Hulsenboom, Greenough et al. (1903), Roby (1862) |
| Romanian | ron | roma1327 | nu | A | p.c. Andreea Calude, Gönczöl-Davies (2008) |
| Spanish | spa | stan1288 | no | A | Butt & Benjamin (1994) |
| Catalan | cat | stan1289 | no | A | Hualde (1992), Wheeler et al. (1999) |
| French | fra | stan1290 | (ne) pas | A | p.c. Raphaël Domange, Lang & Perez (2004), Offord (2006) |
| Italian | ita | ital1282 | non | A | p.c. Francesca Di Garbo, Peyronel & Higgins (2006) |

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

4.5 Germanic

As Veselinova (2013: 114–115) noted in her discussion of Swedish [swe], Swedish, and to differing extents, all modern Germanic languages, have two strategies to form negative existentials. The pattern can be illustrated by data from Western Frisian [fry]. The most common sentential negator in Western Frisian is *net* ‘not’:

- (50) Western Frisian (Tiersma 1999: 91)
- ik wit net oftsto wol taliten wurdst*
1SG know NEG whether indeed admit.INF become
'I don't know whether you will be admitted.'

The determiner *gjin* ‘no’, however, occurs in many non-verbal predicates, including existentials and possessives:

- (51) Western Frisian (p.c. Eric Hoekstra)
- Der binne gjin wylde katten.*
there be no wild cat.PL
'There are no wild cats.'
- (52) Western Frisian (Tiersma 1999: 102)
- Hy hat gjin fyts.*
3SG.M have no bike
'He has no bicycle.'

Using *gjin* ‘no’ implies a categorical denial that wild cats exist, as in example (51). Furthermore, the standard negator *net* ‘not’ is used when the figure is quantified:

- (53) Western Frisian (p.c. Eric Hoekstra)
- Der binne net folle wylde katten.*
there be NEG many wild cat.PL
'There are not many wild cats.'

This situation is paralleled in English [eng], where we find two strategies, one with the standard negator *not* and the other with the negative quantifier *no*:

- (54) English (own knowledge)
- a. *There are no tame zebras.*
 - b. *There aren't any tame zebras. (There are not any tame zebras.)*

All Germanic languages included in our data use a negative quantifier to some extent (see Table 6.4 and Appendix B). The North Germanic languages – Swedish

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

[swe], Norwegian [nob], Danish [dan], and Icelandic [isl] – allow greater variation in their use of the standard negator than the Western Germanic languages (English, Western Frisian, Dutch [ned], German [deu], and Eastern Frisian [frs, a Low German variety]). [Bordal \(2017\)](#) demonstrates that the two Swedish negative existential constructions do not vary freely, but their use correlates with conditional versus unconditional absence. However, it is currently unclear whether similar principles apply to the other North Germanic languages. In English, the negative quantifier can be used for other nominal predicates ('Alice is no teacher.'), locatives ('There is no cheese in the fridge.'), and predicative possession ('Lisa has no bike.'), although the usage depends on cross-dialectal variation and pragmatic functions. The range seems similar for the Western Frisian *gin* 'no', the Dutch *geen* 'no', and the German *kein* 'no', while for Eastern Frisian, comparable clauses allow the usage of both *kien* 'no' and the standard negator *neet* 'not'.

The widespread usage of negative quantifiers next to or instead of standard negation marking for negative existentials in the Germanic languages suggests that this is a rather old strategy. In addition, several of these negative quantifiers are etymologically related: The negative quantifiers in Swedish, Norwegian, Danish, and Icelandic have a common origin in the Old Norse form [non] *engi* 'none, no one, no', while the origin of the Dutch and German markers can be traced back to a formation that means 'not one'. Given that the Germanic subfamily is approximately 2,500 years old ([Henriksen & van der Auwera 1994](#): 1), this particular construction may be both ancient and stable. Work by [Jäger \(2007\)](#) on Old High German and Middle German suggests that the origin of negative quantifier usage for the negation of nominal predicates may have its origin in so-called negative concord that also appeared in Old English. That said, additional Germanic languages, perhaps most importantly the Gothic language [got], should be investigated to determine whether there are any languages that deviate from the described pattern.

It is possible to conduct more extensive, in-depth research on the conditions for the use of the standard negation marker and the negative quantifier in each of these languages, as [Bordal \(2017\)](#) did for Swedish. Nonetheless, we restrict ourselves to stating that we classify these languages as Type A~B. The reason for this is that these languages form negative existentials by using both the standard negator (Type A) and using the negative quantifier (Type B). It has also been demonstrated that some of the Germanic languages use the two construction types to express different types of negative existential semantics. Since the deployment of one construction type and not the other in other Germanic languages might be motivated by similar semantic considerations, we classify all Germanic languages as Type A~B.

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

Table 6.4: Overview of the standard and special negators in the Germanic dataset

| Language | Iso-code | Glottocode | Standard negator | Negative quantifier | Classification | Source(s) |
|-----------------|----------|------------|------------------|---------------------|----------------|---|
| English | eng | stan1293 | not | no | A~B | own knowledge |
| Western Frisian | fry | west2354 | net | gjin | A~B | p.c. Eric Hoekstra, Tiersma (1999) |
| Dutch | nld | dutc1256 | niet | geen | A~B | own knowledge |
| German | deu | stan1295 | nicht | kein | A~B | p.c. Anne-Maria Fehn |
| Eastern Frisian | frs | east2288 | neet | kien | A~B | p.c. Temmo Bosse |
| Swedish | swe | swed1254 | inte | ingen | A~B | Bordal (2017), p.c. Ljuba Veselinova |
| Norwegian | nob | norw1259 | ikke | ingen | A~B | p.c. Benedicte Haraldstad Frøstad |
| Danish | dan | dani1285 | ikke | ingen | A~B | p.c. Bjarne Ørnes |
| Icelandic | isl | icel1247 | ekki | enginn | A~B | p.c. Elísabet Eir Cortes, Bjarnason (1998), Einarsson (1949), Wood (2012) |

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

Classifying the Germanic languages as Type A~B, similar to several Indo-Iranian languages, blurs the differences in the synchronic morphosyntax used to express the negative existential in those branches, and eventually the fact that the patterns emerge from rather distinct historical processes. The Germanic languages have no special existential negators. This includes negators that appear to be mergers of the standard negator as we illustrated with an example from Middle Persian in §4.1, or diachronically opaque negators. This indicates that languages may arrive at stage A~B through different historical processes.

4.6 Celtic

The Celtic languages include examples of both Type A, Type A~B, and Type B (see Table 6.5 below for a complete overview). The most ancient language among them, Old Irish is a straightforward example of Type A. Old Irish [sga] has a verbal negator *ni*, which is a particle that attaches to the beginning of the verb:

- (55) Old Irish (p.c. Cormac Anderson)

- a. *can-aid máire*
sing-PRS.3SG Mary
'Mary sings.'
- b. *ni-cain máire*
NEG-sing.PRS.3SG Mary
'Mary does not sing.'

Several Celtic languages express nonverbal predicates either through the copular verb or with what is called the substantive verb (*taat*). Old Irish uses the latter (McCone 2005: 39ff); it behaves similarly to any verb and is negated with *ni*:

- (56) Old Irish (p.c. Cormac Anderson)

- a. *at-taat fíad-chait and*
at-COP.PRS.3PL wild-cat.nom.PL in.3SG.N
'There are wild cats.'
- b. *ni-taat fíad-chait and*
NEG-COP.PRS.3SG wild-cat.NOM.PL in.3SG.N
'There are no wild cats.'

In the examples in (56), *and* is the third person singular neuter form of the preposition *i* 'in'. As it can be specified to refer to person and number, we can therefore

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

analyze it as the inclusion preposition ‘in’, with its function roughly corresponding to English ‘there’. Modern Irish [gle] and Scottish Gaelic [gla] below also feature similar inflected prepositions.

Modern Irish negative existentials cannot be classified as Type A constructions, but rather as Type B. Standard negation in Irish is expressed by placing the negative particle, *ní*, in front of a verb, which causes lenition if the initial consonant of the verb can be lenited (Stenson 2008: 86):

- (57) Modern Irish (Stenson 2008: 86)

- a. *Glanann sí a seomra.*
clean.PRS she POSS room
'She cleans her room.'
- b. *Ní għlanann Caitríona a seomra.*
NEG clean Caitríona POSS room
'Caitríona doesn't clean her room.'

Like Old Irish, Modern Irish uses what is referred to as the substantive verb *ta ē* for existential predicates. However, the substantive verb appears to have a special negative form *ni ēl*, and cannot be considered to be a standardly negated verb. Etymologically, the negative substantive verb appears to incorporate the standard negator along with some other element.

- (58) Modern Irish (p.c. Cormac Anderson)

- a. *Tá cait fián ann.*
COP cat.PL wild in.3SG.M
'There are wild cats.'
- b. *Nil cait fián ann.*
COP+NEG cat.PL wild in.3SG.M
'There are no wild cats.'

Modern Irish can be contrasted with Scottish Gaelic, which continues to use standard negation for existential predicates and hence can be classified as Type A. The negators in Scottish Gaelic are the preverbal particles *cha(n)* and *nach* (Lamb 2001: 61). The following example illustrates their usage in a double negative construction:

- (59) Scottish Gaelic (Lamb 2001: 61)

- cha chreid mi nach eil iad gu math*
NEG believe.INDF 1SG NEG.COMP be.PRS 3PL ADV good
'I believe they are well.' [Lit. I don't believe that they are not well.]

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

Scottish Gaelic uses the verb *bi* ‘to be’ for existential predicates. This verb has two forms in the present tense, which are the independent form *tha*, and the dependent form *eil* (whose form can be *bheil*, *beil*, or *eil*, *l*, depending on the dialect, register and the grammatical context, Lamb 2001: 54). Approximately ten irregular verbs feature this independent-dependent split including *bi*. These verbs must use their dependent form after certain pre-verbal particles, including the two negators, interrogative clause marker, complementizers, and conditional clause markers (Lamb 2001: 50). The consequence of this is that the verb *bi* ‘to be’ appears to be very different in affirmative and negative existential predicates. This is not due to the negation strategy, but rather to the structure of the verbal system.

- (60) Scottish Gaelic (p.c. William Lamb)

- a. *Tha cait fhiathaich ann.*
COP.PRS cat.PL wild in.3SG.M
‘There are wild cats.’
- b. *Chan eil cait fhiathaich (idir) ann.*
NEG COP.PRS.DEP cat.PL wild (at.all) in.3SG.M
‘There are no wild cats.’

Welsh is classified as Type A (for additional information on the historical development of negation strategies in Welsh and Breton, see Willis 2013). The last Celtic language to be discussed here, Breton [bre], is classified as Type A-B. Breton has a double negator, *ne ... ket*, which is located on both sides of the verb:

- (61) Breton (Press 1986: 126)

- Ne ro ket al laeron a laezh da zen.*
NEG give.PRS NEG DEF robber.PL PREP milk to anyone
‘The robbers give no-one any milk.’

The copula *bezañ* (‘to be’) (Press 1986: 144ff) is used for a variety of nonverbal predicates, including nominals, locatives, and existentials. It has a set of negative forms in the present tense: “There is considerably more freedom where the verb is negative, the only strict rule being that (a) *zo* must be replaced by *n'eo ket*, *n'eus ket* or *n'emant ket*, etc. as appropriate. There is no form *ne zo ket*.” (Press 1986: 152). Below are two examples, one locative (62) and one existential (63). The special form of the negated copula is a Type B construction. Nevertheless, for the past tense, a regularly negated inflected form of the copula is used, which is evident in example (64). Breton thus uses both standard negation for existentials and special negative existential constructions that are both conditioned by tense, which results in it being categorized as Type A~B.

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

- (62) Breton (Press 1986: 154–155)
- a. *Un draonienn a zo du-hont.*
ART valley VERB.PRT COP.PRS to-there
'There's the/a valley over there.'
 - b. *An draonienn n'emañ ket du-hont.*
ART valley NEG+COP NEG to-there
'There's no valley over there.'
- (63) Breton (p.c. Marianna Donnart)
- a. *Kizhier gouez a zo.*
cat.PL wild VERB.PRT COP.PRS
'There are wild cats.'
 - b. *N'eus ket kizhier gouez.*
NEG+COP NEG cat.PL wild
'There are no wild cats.'
- (64) Breton (p.c. Marianna Donnart)
Ne oa ket kizhier gouez.
NEG COP.3SG.IP NEG cat.PL wild
'There were no wild cats.'

5 Diachronic and theoretical considerations

The overview of strategies used to express the negative existential predicate in 42 Indo-European languages presented above reveals that the subgroup that displays the most variation is Indo-Iranian, followed by the Balto-Slavic group, which was also reported by Veselinova (2014). Other major branches of the Indo-European family – Romance, Germanic, and Celtic – do not display considerable variation. Overall, we found 20 instances of Type A, 26 of Type A~B, 2 of Type B, 2 of Type B~C, and 3 of Type C~A. In addition, we found that Oriya is split between Type A and Type B~C and that Kupia is split between Type B and Type C. This is only partly consistent with the worldwide sample compiled by Veselinova (2016: 147), who reports that Type A and Type B are most common cross-linguistically, followed by Type B~C. In contrast, we only detected two examples of Type B~C. In Veselinova's (2016: 147ff) families, Types B, B~C, and A~B are most common, this is in line with the prevalence of Type A~B in our data.

However, as we are analyzing related languages, we cannot consider each instance of two constructions of the same type as diachronically independent due

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

Table 6.5: Overview of the standard negators and negative existentials in the Celtic dataset

| Language | Iso-code | Glotto-code | Standard negator | Negative existential | Classification | Source(s) |
|--------------------|----------|-------------|------------------|--------------------------|----------------|---|
| Breton | bre | bret1244 | ne ... ket | n' + NEG.COP + ket | A~B | p.c. Marianna Donnart, Press (1986) |
| Welsh | cym | wels1247 | ddim | ddim + cop | A | p.c. David Willis, King (2003) |
| Old Irish | sga | oldi1245 | ni- | ni-cop | A | p.c. Cormac Anderson, Stenson (1981; 2008) |
| Irish | gle | iris1253 | ní | nil | B | p.c. Cormac Anderson, McCone (2005) |
| Scottish Gaelic | gla | scot1245 | cha(n), nach | cha(n) + cop | A | p.c. William Lamb, Lamb (2001) |

to common retentions. All the Romance languages investigated thus far appear to inherit their Type A negative existential construction from a common ancestor, just as all the Germanic languages seem to have retained their split Type A~B constructions. The higher frequency of some construction types in Indo-European might therefore be the result of a single innovation which ends up being very stable in daughter languages. This suggests, then, that taking phylogenetic information into consideration when analyzing a pathway or a cycle might provide important clues to the scenarios that result in the emergence of the aggregate synchronic patterns. Figure 6.1, presented below, maps the classifications of the different negative existential constructions onto a phylogenetic tree depicting the Indo-European languages. Additionally, the states of the negative existential constructions are reconstructed at each ancestral node. This illustrates the changes in the construction types expressing the negative existential domain that are likely to have occurred across the Indo-European family. The classifications of negative existential constructions in our sample are additionally plotted on a map in Figure 6.1.

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shartz

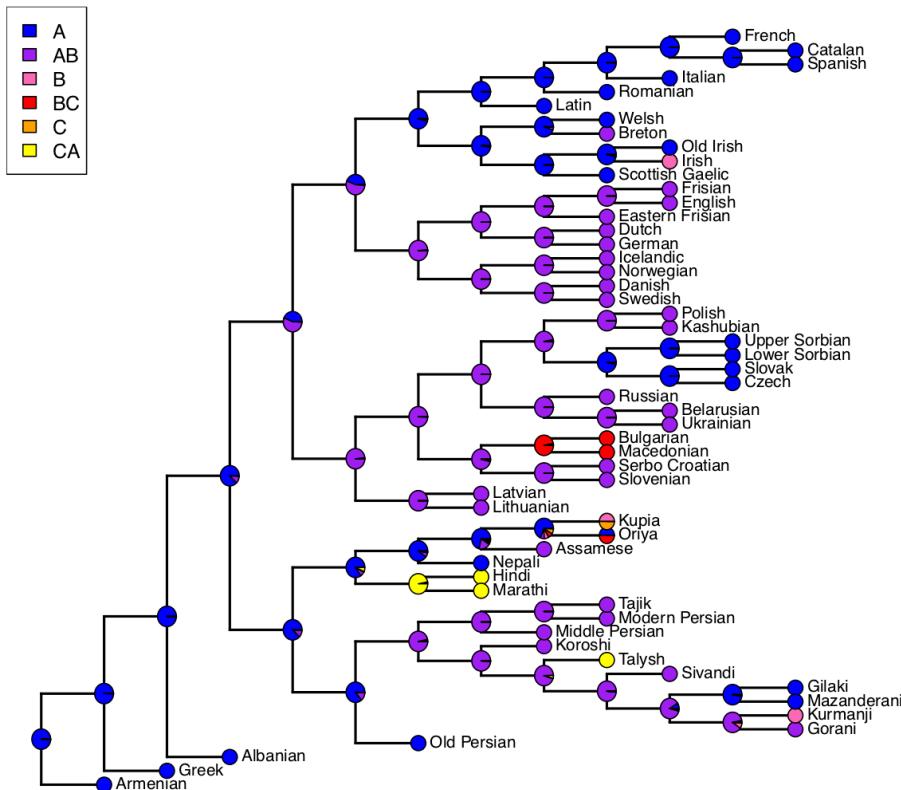


Figure 6.1: An overview of the current classifications of negative existential construction types overlaid on a modified Indo-European Glottolog tree (Hammarström et al. 2018). The Slavic classifications are based on Veselinova (2014). The colored circles at the end of the tree branches represent our classifications (as well as those of Veselinova 2014). The pie plots on the internal nodes represent marginal ancestral state reconstructions conducted in the R package corHHM (Beaulieu 2014, R Project). The R script for this plot is available here DOI: 10.5281/zenodo.4444990. As this analysis requires a binary tree with branch lengths, the Glottolog tree was made binary by following Bouckaert et al. (2012) and a branch length of 1 was set for each branch. We do not imply that this is how the Indo-European languages actually evolved; this is simply one of many possibilities that we selected for display purposes only.

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European languages

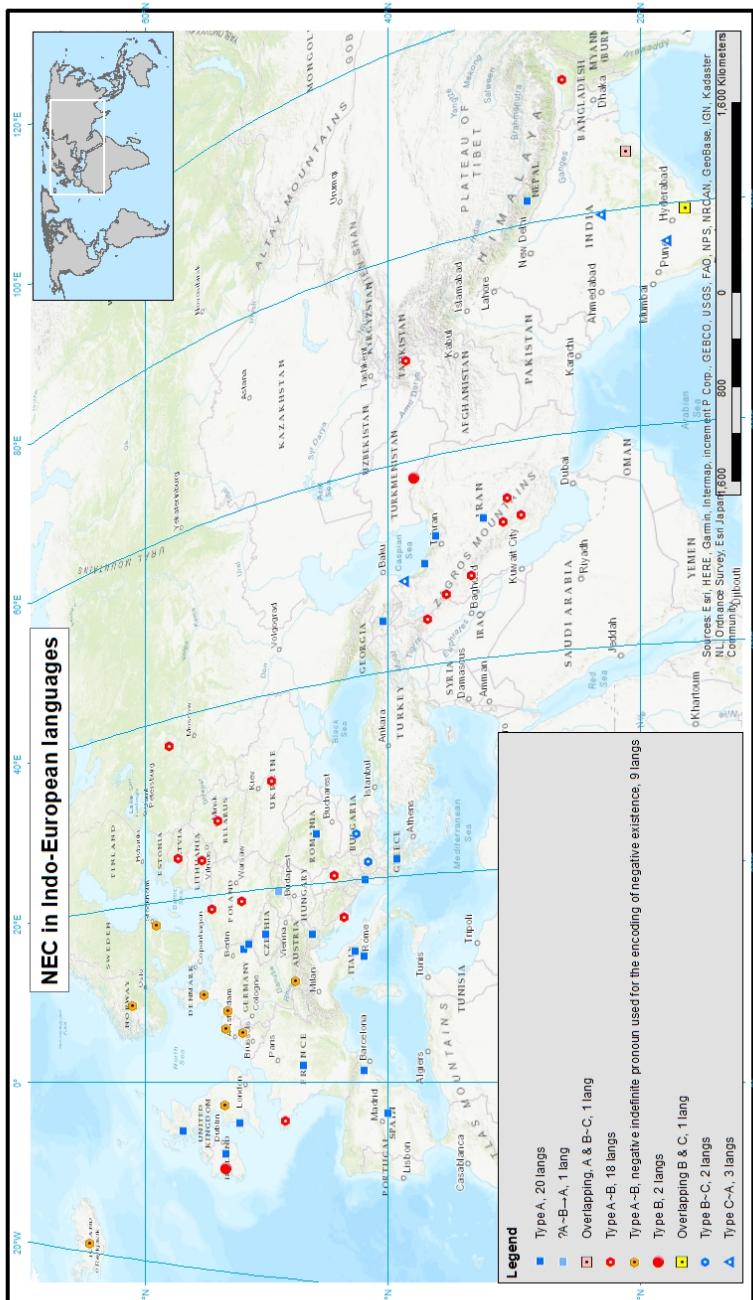


Figure 6.2: Geographic distribution of NEC types in Indo-European languages

Map data: António Reis Veréek, Shahar Shavit, Luba Veselova
Map design: Luba Veselova
Software used: ArcMap 10.5

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

There are three reasons why we choose to display the classifications of the negative existentials in our sample on a phylogenetic tree: 1) this format may provide us with an insight into the validity of the NEC; 2) it helps us to estimate the stability of certain classifications over time; and 3) it contributes to our ultimate aim of conducting a phylogenetic comparative analysis of a larger dataset.

The first point is relevant, for example, for the status of Gilaki and Mazandarani. They “return” to state A while their immediate ancestor, as most contemporary Iranian languages, was likely state A~B. This suggests an innovation and loss of type B constructions rather than a very rapid cycling through the NEC. This type of innovation can involve factors such as an emergent locative copula based on verbs such as ‘stay’ or ‘be at’. These types of innovative copulas tend to retain verbal negation patterns, which results in a Type A negative existential construction. A loss of a Type B construction which co-exists with a Type A construction, then, might seem like a “return” to Type A from Type A~B.

As for the second point, it is easy to use the format of the phylogenetic tree to determine the stability of some types over time. All the Romance languages investigated thus far, including Latin, are of type A. If we add the time that each of these languages has been independent from its sister languages, that is, the time elapsed since two sister languages separated from their common ancestor, then Type A appears to be a stable trait of this subfamily for thousands of years of evolution. Of course, we have only investigated 6 languages out of 80 Romance varieties, so this is only a preliminary suggestion at best.

A similar logic applies to the Germanic languages. Proto-Germanic reconstructs as state A~B in the current analysis. The data from the contemporary Germanic languages also suggest that Type B constructions, where negation is expressed by a negative quantifier, are quite old and were possibly a part of the Proto-Germanic inventory. Despite the variation in the usage of negative quantifiers in Type B constructions across the Germanic languages, these Type B constructions are 1) at least in part cognate terms and 2) relevant in the description of all the Germanic languages we examined thus far.

Another example of a relatively stable pattern is the prevalence of Type A(~B) constructions across Iranian. In Iranian, the Past tense copular verbs, which are cognates of Middle Persian *būd* ‘was’, were often retained in negative existential clauses. The combination of these copulas and the Iranian negative particle *ne* did not undergo reduction and univerbation, which was presumably also due to phonotactic constraints (unlike the Present tense copulas, see §4.1 above). Consequently, the negative existential with the Iranian Past tense copula is negated by the same marker that is used to negate prototypical verbs. The result is a conservative Type A negative existential construction. The reduction of the Present

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

tense copula and the Iranian Negative particle resulted in a Type B construction, which leads to the classification of many Iranian languages as instances of Type A~B.

The third point is that we argue that phylogenetic comparative analyses are suitable to formally analyze the results of the Negative Existential Cycle within a single family. Thus far, we have conducted preliminary phylogenetic comparative analyses on the current dataset to test whether Croft's NEC more adequately explains the attested cross-linguistic distribution of negative existential patterns than alternative models. The Negative Existential Cycle makes the following highly specific claim regarding the expected direction of changes in the negative existential domain:

$$A > A\sim B > B > B\sim C > C > C\sim A > A$$

These directional changes can easily be contrasted with alternative models, such as the reverse pattern of change:

$$A < A\sim B < B < B\sim C < C < C\sim A < A$$

Comparing the likelihood of pathways of change is possible even if not all construction types are attested in the dataset. Nevertheless, our preliminary testing suggests that our dataset is too limited to answer this question. Together with Veselinova's (2014) Slavic data, we have information on the negative existential constructions in 55 Indo-European languages. Yet for at least two groups, Romance and Germanic, our data is completely void of variation, and thus from an evolutionary perspective, the data are useless to determine which paths of change are likely and which are unlikely. Given the variation we discovered in Indo-Iranian languages, we aim to collect a larger dataset that includes many more languages of this subfamily, as well as additional Romance and Germanic languages.

The lack of special negative existential markers or constructions in the language families of Western Europe that was first noted by Veselinova (2013: 117) warrants further explanation, particularly now that we have essentially replicated this finding by consulting a larger language sample. First, the current dataset suggests that Type A is ancestral to the Indo-European language family. This is a very tentative conclusion – even though Albanian, Modern Greek, and Modern Armenian represent subfamilies that split off from the Indo-European family first (at least in Bouckaert et al. 2012), each has been evolving for thousands of years and the different components attested in their negative existential constructions are not always cognate. As a consequence, despite their seeming uniformity, it

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

is unclear at this point whether the ancestors of these languages were also Type A. Another focus for a larger dataset should thus be to collect data from a larger set of ancient languages. However, for the time being, we must acknowledge that when addressing the dominance of Type A in Western Europe, we are most likely discussing a stable, inherited state (see Croft 1991: 19) and not a number of independent changes towards Type A.

An explanation for the lack of special negative existential constructions in Western Europe is likely to be dependent on the inheritance or expansion of specific constructions, as noted by Veselinova (2014: 1330) for Slavic. The question is why the Romance languages, at least those featured in the current paper, do not change to Type A~B given their tentative ancestral Type A classification, while at least some Slavic and most Indo-Iranian languages do.⁹ And why do negators and verbs in Germanic not merge to form special negative existential constructions? We suggest that an explanation must at least partly involve the morpho-phonology of the standard negation marker. Dryer (2013) reports that the negation in the Indo-European languages of Europe is marked by negative particles rather than negative affixes (with few exceptions in Eastern Europe, including Lithuanian, Latvian, Czech, and Sorbian). Presumably one of the most common pathways to Type A~B, merging the negator with an existential verb, is less likely due to the phonotactic, prosodic, and word order environments in the Western European languages. The morphological distance between the standard negation marker and the verb could therefore prohibit a reduction, which would have then led to the emergence of Type A~B in Western Europe. This is similar to the suggestion made above regarding the lack of reduction of the negation marker and the Past tense copula in Iranian. We do not posit the reluctance of a merger of the negation marker and the verb as the only or even the most important factor. The frequent use of the negative quantifier in Germanic may certainly likewise play a role. The central position of the Germanic and Romance languages in the Standard Average European Sprachbund (van der Auwera 2011) may also have been significant in the stability of the Romance Type A construction and the Germanic specific Type A~B constructions. Recent work by Drinka (2017) on perfect constructions also demonstrates the workings of areal influence in European languages.

Our study also supports Veselinova's finding (Veselinova 2014: 1343–1366), which was also noted by Croft, that some languages have two distinct negative

⁹It should be noted that spoken French is moving towards stage A~B. The fixed expression *il n'y pas* 'there is/are no' is essentially a phonologically reduced, single lexical unit (p.c. Ljuba Veselinova).

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

existential construction types, each potentially belonging to a different stage of Croft's cycle. Our data includes some similar scenarios in the Indo-Iranian languages and to a lesser extent in the Germanic languages. Acknowledging that multiple types of negative existential constructions may co-exist in the same language necessitates that we reconsider: 1) which types of constructions *do* co-exist, and which *cannot* co-exist, and 2) when two construction types co-exist, what effects will a change to one construction have on the classification of the other, and will these effects be in the same direction as Croft's (1991) cycle? That is, if a combination of construction types does not occur, can we therefore argue that it is because it cannot emerge during language change or is it because of how the different negative existential construction types are defined?

Veselinova (2014) demonstrates in her Polynesian data that Type B constructions can co-exist with Type B~C constructions (as in Kapingamarangi), and that constructions of Type B can co-exist with constructions of Type C (as in Tahitian). We presented above the same patterns of co-existence in Kupia and Standard Oriya, which are both Eastern Indo-Aryan languages. Furthermore, nothing appears to prohibit a language from having multiple constructions of Type A (that is, two distinct negation markers, both also used to negate existential predicates), or multiple constructions of Type B (such as two special negative existential markers).

There seems to be, however, some restrictions to the co-existence of Type C constructions and other types of constructions. First, it appears that two Type C constructions cannot co-exist. Such a situation would entail that two distinct negation markers be used both as negative existential predicates and to negate verbs (under some different conditions, presumably). By definition, in this context, some variation occurs in the expression of verbal negation. Each of the two negative existential markers, then, is used to negate verbs only under some conditions, which means that the two negative existential constructions should be classified as instances of Type B~C. Another combination which seems impossible is two non-cognate constructions of Type A and Type C. Again, this situation has two distinct (and potentially non-cognate) verbal negation markers, which means that the verbal negation marker which doubles as a negative existential marker is used to negate verbs only under some conditions, and hence should be classified as an instance of Type B~C.

The logical impossibility of some combinations of the construction types defined by Croft (1991) and Veselinova (2014) means that at least in some scenarios where a language has two distinct negative existential constructions, a change in one entails a change in the second as well. Such a possibility was mentioned in §4.1 above for languages with a Type B and a Type C construction, such as Kupia

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

or Tahitian. In these languages, an extension of the Type B negative existential marker to be used for verbal negation (such as Type B > Type B~C) would lead to variation in verbal negation. Thus, the status of the older Type C construction would move “backwards” on Croft’s (1991) cycle to be Type B~C (i.e., Type C > Type B~C). This would lead to two B~C type constructions co-existing in the same language. In this situation, in turn, neither construction can move into the domain of Type C constructions without a loss of the other. In other words, as long as both Type B~C constructions co-exist, there is some variation in the domain of verbal negation. Thus, only a loss of this variation, that is, a loss of one of the Type B~C construction, would lead to a change in the status of the other to a Type C construction.

6 Conclusions

This paper offers an overview of the constructions that express negative existential functions in 42 Indo-European languages, which combined with Veselina’s (2014) analysis of Slavic languages, results in data for 55 Indo-European languages. While this constitutes a rather small sample, we hope to expand this number to create a larger sample that may be used to conduct a comprehensive phylogenetic comparative analysis. Thus far, we detected distinct patterns of variation, with the Romance languages uniformly classified as Type A, the Germanic languages as uniformly Type A~B, while the Indo-Iranian language family is far more varied and with further study, may resemble Polynesian in that it contains all six types of the Negative Existential Cycle. The reason for these patterns of variation may be different patterns of morphosyntax and morpho-phonology in the different sub-branches of Indo-European, a hypothesis that would need to be tested in future work. We concluded by discussing the theoretical considerations that emerge when languages need to be classified as having two distinct negative existential constructions, when each may belong to a different type of the NEC. How these distinct negative existential constructions may interact has consequences for the expected diachronic changes within the Cycle. Hence, describing how negative existentials and standard negation interact has yet again become slightly more complicated, which is a good sign for the prospective study on this topic.

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

Acknowledgements

We would like to thank Ljuba Veselinova first and foremost for getting us involved in negative existentials, believing that an analysis of Indo-European languages would be worthwhile, and for several rounds of feedback on earlier versions of this paper. We are also grateful for the helpful and challenging questions posed by an anonymous reviewer. We wish to express our appreciation to all those named below as well as unnamed who answered questions regarding the behavior of negative existentials in their languages of expertise. Special thanks to Cormac Anderson for his interest in this project.

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

6 *Negative existentials in Indo-European***Abbreviations**

| | | | |
|--------|--|-------|-----------------------|
| 1,2,3 | 1 st , 2 nd , 3 rd person | | |
| ABL | ablative | | |
| ACC | accusative | | |
| ADD | additive | | |
| ADV | adverb | | |
| AOR | aorist | | |
| ART | article | | |
| AUX | auxiliary | NMZL | nominalization |
| CAUS | causative | NOM | nominative |
| CLF | classifier | NPST | non-past |
| COMP | complementizer | OBJ | object |
| COND | conditional | OBL | oblique |
| COP | copula | PC | person-marking clitic |
| CVB | converb | PFV | perfective |
| DAT | dative | PL | plural |
| DEF | definite | POSS | possessive |
| DEM | demonstrative | PP | past participle |
| DEMP | demonstrative proximate | PREP | preposition |
| DEP | dependent | PROG | progressive |
| EMPH | emphatic | PRS | present |
| ERG | ergative | PRF | perfect |
| EX | affirmative existential | PRT | particle |
| EXPL | expletive | PRV | preverb |
| F | feminine | PST | past |
| FUT | future | PTCP | participle |
| GEN | genitive | QUANT | quantifier |
| GER | gerund | REL | relative |
| HAB | habitual | SBJV | subjunctive |
| IMP | imperative | SG | singular |
| IND | indicative | TMP | temporal |
| INF | infinitive | TOP | topic |
| IP | imperfect | TR | transitive |
| LNK | linker | VN | verbal noun |
| LOC | locative | | |
| M | masculine | | |
| MID | middle | | |
| NEC | Negative Existential Cycle | | |
| NEG | negative | | |
| NEG.EX | negative existential | | |
| N | neuter | | |

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

Appendix A

The translation questionnaire that was used to elicit data for many languages in the current sample

Negation questionnaire

The context descriptions are given in square brackets; further clarifications about the example sentences come in between parentheses. Neither the contexts, nor the clarifications are to be translated. Please translate only the **bold face text**.

Please provide a morpheme to morpheme translation for all of the translated examples below. Should it turn out that the English examples/situations are in any way culturally inappropriate, e.g. take up topics or objects that are taboo or simply do not exist in your culture/language, feel free to substitute them with sentences that fit better your language.

1. *Language info*

1.1. *Language name*

1.2. *Genealogical affiliation*

1.3. *Where is it spoken? Or where did you study it?*

2. *Are you a native speaker? If not, how did you gain knowledge of this language?*

3. *Verbal sentences*

(1) Example

Mary sings

(2) Example

Mary does not sing

(3) Example

Mary likes movies

(4) Example

Mary does not like movies

The answers to 3.1 below and sub-questions can be very short or just references to other sources.

3.1. Can you think of any tense-aspect categories where the negator used in 1 through 4 cannot be used? If 'yes':

3.1.1. Please name these categories. It would be helpful to give examples too if

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

possible (a pointer would be fine too, see above);

3.1.1.1. What negator is used with them? Again, examples or references are welcome.

4. Non-verbal sentences

4.1. Equational predicates

(5) Example

[Introducing a guest to the family]: **This is my friend Tom**

(6) Example

[A family gathering plus a guest]

Your mom [looking at the guest]: Is this Tom?

Speaker B: **This is not Tom, it's Jake.**

4.2. Descriptive (*property ascribing*) predicates

(7) Example

[Two people who met recently are talking about a common acquaintance] Speaker

A: What does Tom do?

Speaker B: **Tom is a teacher.**

(8) Example

[Same context as in (7)]

Speaker A: Is Tom a teacher?

Speaker B: **Tom is not a teacher, he is a doctor.**

(9) Example

[Talking about the appearance of a somebody I just met] **Tom is tall.**

(10) Example

[Same context as in (9)] **Tom is not tall.**

(11) Example

[Tom just heard some really good news] **Tom is happy.**

(12) Example

[Tom is waiting for some news that's long delayed] **Tom is not happy.**

4.3. Locative and locative-presentative predicates

(13) Example [Somebody comes to your house, looking for your brother] (Yes, wait a minute), **Tom/he is here.**

(14) Example [Same context as in (13)] (Sorry), **Tom/he is not here.**

(15) Example [Same context as in (13)] (Sorry), **Tom/he is not here, he is in town.**

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

(16) Example [Hearing trashing and noise, looking through the window] **There are some wild cats in the garden.**

(17) Example [Same context as in (16)] Speaker A: Do you think there are any wild cats in the garden? Speaker B: **There aren't any wild cats in the garden.**

4.4. Clauses where only existence is predicated

(18) Example [The teacher, in a zoology/natural sciences class] **There are wild cats** (in Africa or somewhere else; there is such a thing as wild cats).

(19) Example [Same context as in (18)] **There are no wild cats** (in Africa or anywhere, there is no such thing as wild cats).

(20) Example [Same context as in (18)] **Wild cats exist** (The sense is the same as for 4.15; this is basically to check whether the language has an intransitive existential verb as the English *exist*, French *exister*, Modern Greek *ipárho*, Russian *sushestvovat'*.)

(21) Example [Same context as in (18)] **Wild cats do not exist.**

4.5 Predicative possession

(22) Example

[Talking about helping somebody to move]
(Tom can help), **Tom/he has a car.**

(23) Example

[Same context as in (22)]
(Tom cannot help), **Tom/he does not have a car.**

Appendix B

1. Indo-Iranian

Old Persian (based on Skjærvø 2009c and Bisitun inscription, Schmitt 1991)

Verbal negation: Preverbal *naiy-*

Affirmative existential: the copular verb expresses existence (Skjærvø 2009d: 134).

Negative existential: consists of a combination of the verbal negation marker and the affirmative existential.

- (65) *naiy āha martiya naiy pārsa naiy māda ...*
NEG COP.PST.3SG man NEG persian NEG median
'There was no man, not Persian, not Median, (... who dared to speak up).'
(DB1:48–49)

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

Summary: A

Middle Persian (editions of primary texts used in the paper are cited above; see also Skjærøvø (2009b) for overview of Western Middle Iranian).

Verbal negation: preverbal *ne-* / *nē-* (different philologists have different interpretations of the vowel length).

Affirmative existential: expressed by clauses with a copular verb: *būd-* for past and *ast* for present.

Negative existential: with a past tense copula and its present tense counterpart *baw-*, the standard verbal negation marker *nē-* is found.

- (66) *agar ātaxš ī wahrām nē būd*
 if fire LNK Wahram NEG be.PST.3SG
 ‘If the fire of Wahram did not exist (lit. if there was no fire of Wahram)’(PRDD:18)

The form *ast* is negated by *nēst* (or *nest*; depending on vowel length interpretation). This negation marker is clearly an amalgam of *nē-* and *ast*, but there are good reasons to consider it as a unique marker.

- (67) *az padīdīgīh rāh ī ō dušaxw nest*
 from repentance road LNK to hell NEG.COP
 ‘From repentance, there is no road to Hell.’ (DK6:50)

Summary: with the past tense, the negative existential is expressed by the copula preceded by the standard verbal negation marker, hence: Type A. In the present tense, a specific negative form of the copula is used, *nēst*, therefore Type B. Hence: Type A~B

Sivandi (Data from Lecoq 1979)

Standard verbal negation: preverbal *na-*, *ne-*, *ney-*

Affirmative existential: figure + (ground) + copular verb

- (68) *ye šāh-i bi*
 one king-INDF be.PST.3SG
 ‘There was a king.’ (Lecoq 1979: 107)
- (69) *ye čašme-y en*
 one fountain-INDF be.PRS.3SG
 ‘There is a fountain.’ (Lecoq 1979: 127)

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

Negative existential:

1. The locative verb *dār-* ‘be located’, ‘be.at’, ‘have’ + standard verbal negation marker

- (70) *ke bār na=dār-e*
COMP grain NEG=be.at-3SG
'(He closed his windmill down) because there was no grain.' (Lecoq 1979: 150)

2. The past tense copulas + the standard verbal negation marker:

- (71) *albatta barqa=m na=bi*
evidently electricity=TOP NEG-be.PST.3SG
'(Someone lit a candle), evidently there was no electricity.' (Lecoq 1979: 89)

3. *Nūnd*, a negative copula.

- (72) *Kasi dege ba goft=eš nūnd.*
Someone other to say=3SG NEG.COP
'No one else answered his appeals.' (Lecoq 1979: 95)
- (73) *vāllāh, me či tū das=em nūnd*
by.god 1SG what in hand=1SG NEG.COP
'By God, there's nothing in my hand.' (Lecoq 1979: 150)
- (74) *xolāse hīč goftegūi az pīrežen-e nūnd*
and.finally NEG question from old.woman-DEF COP.NEG
'And at the end, there were no questions from the old woman.' (Lecoq 1979: 108)

Summary: with two existential copulas, the past tense copula and the locative verb, are negated by the standard negation form. Hence: Type A. The present tense negative existential is expressed using a negative copula *nūnd*. Hence: Type B.

Hence: Type A~B.

New Persian / Tajik (own knowledge; p.c. Cormac Anderson; see also Perry 2005, Windfuhr & Perry 2009)

New Persian and Tajik exhibit remarkably similar behavior. Verbal negation in both is expressed by the preverbal *ne-*, *ni-*.

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

The affirmative existential is expressed by a combination of the figure (NP), optional ground (PP, NP), and a copular verb:

- (75) *dar in ōtaq do panjere hast* (New Persian)
dar in xona du tireza hast (Tajik)
in DEM room two window EX.3SG
‘There are two windows in this room.’ (Windfuhr & Perry 2009: 450)

Negative existentials are formed by replacing the affirmative existential copula *hast* with its negative counterpart *nest*:

- (76) *Dar in χona tireza nest.*
in DEM house window NEG.COP.PRS.3SG
‘There are no windows in this house.’ (Tajik, Perry 2005: 202)

Past tense copulas are negated by *ne-*, *ni-* in this construction. Furthermore, in New Persian, *dastan* ‘have’ is used in the negative existential as well.

- (77) *gurba-ye vafī na-dar-ad*
cat-LNK wild NEG-have-3SG
‘There are no wild cats.’ (p.c. Cormac Anderson)

Summary: Type A~B

Gorani (Data from Mahmoudveysi et al. 2012.)

Verbal negation: prefixed / procliticized *ne-* / *na-* / *niy-* (Mahmoudveysi et al. 2012: 25)

Affirmative existentials are expressed by a copular verb that is preceded by the figure argument (with an optional ground argument).

- (78) *ya dāya kaywānū ma-w-u*
one mother old.lady IND-be.PRS.3SG
‘There is an old lady.’ (Mahmoudveysi et al. 2012: 15)
- (79) *čünka nwār-aka hē*
because cassette-DEF exist.3SG
‘because there are cassettes’ (Mahmoudveysi et al. 2012: 34)

Negative existentials are formed by *nīya* or *naw* that Mahmoudveysi et al. interpret as a negative copula.

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

- (80) *falā-ka-y mwāy ay wā nīya*
 farmer-DEF-? IND.say.PRS.3SG well wind not.exist.3SG
 ‘The farmer says: “Well, there’s no wind.”’ (Mahmoudveysi et al. 2012: 61)
- (81) *masan yā barq naw*
 for.example one electricity NEG.COP
 ‘(when,) For example, there is no electricity.’ (Mahmoudveysi et al. 2012: 159)

Summary: Type A~B.

Gilaki (Rastorgueva et al. 2012)

Verbal negation is expressed by a preverbal *ne-*, *na-*, *n-*. The exact form is determined by phonotactics.

Affirmative existential:

- (82) *ustatər utey=ə xeli nah-a*
 over.there room=LNK empty exist.PRS.3SG
 ‘Over there, there is an empty room.’ (Rastorgueva et al. 2012: 310)
- (83) *ita re nah-a*
 one road exist-3SG
 ‘There is one road.’ (Rastorgueva et al. 2012: 318)
- (84) *miz=ə=ru du=ta kiteb dərə*
 table=LNK=ON two=CLF book be.located.3SG
 ‘There are two books on the table.’ (Rastorgueva et al. 2012: 134)
- (85) *exər din=u məzháb=u xude ki is-ə*
 after.all religion=and faith=and god COMP be.PRS.3SG
 ‘After all, there is religion, faith and God.’ (Rastorgueva et al. 2012: 275)

Negative existential: expressed by the verbal negation marker that is attached to one of the copulas used in the affirmative existential forms.

- (86) *u bəleyə ki dər dunye nə-na bi*
 and misfortune REL in world NEG-exist be.PST
 ‘whatever misfortune that existed in the world’ (Rastorgueva et al. 2012: 263)
- (87) *mašin nə-ə-na-ə*
 car NEG-PFV-exist.PST-3SG.PST
 ‘There are no cars.’ (Rastorgueva et al. 2012: 326, their glosses and zeroes)

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

- (88) *ame xenə hitʃ kəs n-es-ə*
 1PL house NEG somebody NEG-be.PRS-3SG
 'There is nobody at home.' (Rastorgueva et al. 2012: 133)

Summary: Type A.

Ziyarati (Shokri et al. 2013)

Verbal negation: expressed by *ne-* or *na-* prefix / proclitic.

Affirmative existential: expressed by the copular verb or by the locative copula *dār-* 'be.at' or 'be located'.

- (89) *jānevar dar-e, xu dar-e*
 wild.animals be.at.PRS-3SG boar be.at.PRS-3SG
 '(Why (do) we need a night watchman?) There are wild animals; there are boars.' (Shokri et al. 2013: 84)
- (90) *messe alān ye jāmeā=i hasse ke ...*
 for.example now one shirt=INDF be.PRS.3SG COMP
 'There is a shirt that (has buttons all the way up).' (Shokri et al. 2013: 153)
- (91) *esā in rasmā ā-bee*
 nowadays DEM ceremony-PL PRV-be.PST.3PL
 'Nowadays there are ceremonies ...' (Shokri et al. 2013: 80)

Negative existential: expressed by one of the copulas above preceded by a verbal negation marker.

- (92) *supā da-ni-bu-in ...*
 watchman PRV-NEG-be.PST-3PL
 '(if) there are no watchmen' (Shokri et al. 2013: 84)
- (93) *ammā dige age na=bu ke ...*
 but PRT if NEG=be.PST.3SG COMP ...
 'but if there is no one who (want to buy our goods)' (Shokri et al. 2013: 82)
- (94) *zemestān o bāhār o payiz o tābestān ne=dāft-e*
 winter and spring and autumn and summer NEG-be.at.PST-3SG
 'There was no winter, spring, autumn, and summer (i.e., where we live there is no difference between the seasons).' (Shokri et al. 2013: 65)

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

Summary: Type A.

Kurmanji ([Thackston 2006](#), our glosses and parsing)

Verbal negation: *na, ne*.

Affirmative existential: formed with the usual copulas preceded by a single figure constituent.

- (95) *Got-in-eke pêşiy-ên me heye.*
say-NMZL-INDF ancestor-PL 1PL.OBL be.PRS.3SG
'There is a saying of our ancestors.' ([Thackston 2006](#): 31)

Negative existential: expressed by *tun-*

- (96) *Di vî warî da otorîtey-eke resmî tune.*
in DEM regard in authority-INDF official COP.NEG.PRS.3SG
'In this regard, there is no official authority.' ([Thackston 2006](#): 32)
- (97) *madem ku zimannivîs tune*
as.long.as COMP writer COP.NEG.PRS.3SG
'as long as there are no writers' ([Thackston 2006](#): 32)
- (98) *ger xwendevan-ên kurdî tunebin*
if reader-PL Kurdish COP.NEG.PST
'if there are not readers of Kurdish' ([Thackston 2006](#): 31)

Summary: Type B.

Taleshi ([Paul 2011](#)).

Verbal negation: The standard verbal negation is a *nə-, ni-*.

Affirmative existential:

- (99) *vind=əš=e də gəla əmsafa hest-e*
see=3SG=TR two CLF then exist-3SG
'He saw that there are two baskets.' ([Paul 2011](#): 358)
- (100) *vin-ən kə bale, vâš b-a*
see-3PL COMP yes grass be-3SG
'They see that yes, there's grass.' ([Paul 2011](#): 210)
- (101) *iâ rama=i dari=a*
here flock=INDEF exist=COP.3SG
'There is a flock here.' ([Paul 2011](#): 243)

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

Negative existential: The standard verbal negation is often used:

- (102) *ǵeir az xudâ hikas ne-bu*
 apart from god nobody NEG-be.3SG
 ‘Apart from God, there’s nobody.’ (Paul 2011: 176)
- (103) *vin-ə sas=i ni=a*
 see-3SG voice=INDF NEG=COP.3SG
 ‘She sees that there is no answer.’ (Paul 2011: 422)

Rarely in the data presented in Paul 2011 *ni* is used alone in negative existentials:

- (104) *câra=i ni magam əm ki bə-š-am*
 solution=INDF NEG except DEMP COMP SBJV-go-1PL
 ‘There is no solution but that we go.’ (Paul 2011: 214)

Summary: Type C~A

Koroshi (Nourzaei et al. 2015)

Verbal negation: expressed by a preverbal *na-*, *nā-* *nay-*.

Affirmative existential: expressed by the copula preceded by a single-figure constituent (and an optional ground constituent).

- (105) *ye ādam=e bīčāra=en*
 one person=LNK poor=COP.NPST.3SG
 ‘There is a poor fellow.’ (Nourzaei et al. 2015: 31)
- (106) *yek dāzan=ē bod-a=ø*
 one woman=INDF become.PST-PP=COP.NPST.3SG
 ‘There is (lit. has been) a woman.’ (Nourzaei et al. 2015: 90)

Negative existential: expressed by a copula preceded by the verbal negation marker:

- (107) *ǵayr az xodā hīčka nay-at-Ø*
 except from god nobody NEG-COP.PST-3SG
 ‘Except for God, there was no one.’ (Nourzaei et al. 2015: 123; formula)

Occasionally found expressed by *nē*, which is not mentioned in the grammar sketch by Nourzaei et al., but is glossed by them as a non-past tense copula.

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

- (108) *bāk=ē nē*
fear=INDF NEG.be.NPST.3SG
'(And I said:) No problem!' (Nourzaei et al. 2015: 149)
- (109) *be.xātere.ke ay dar=ī fāyeda nē*
because from in=PC.3SG use NEG.be.NPST.3SG
'because there was nothing to gain (lit. there is no use)' (Nourzaei et al. 2015: 144)

Summary: A~B

Hindi (see Bashir 2006)

Odia (Neukom & Patnaik 2003)

Verbal negation: The most common verbal negation marker is a post-verbal *nahī*. The copula *th-* (often referred to as a locative but used for other functions as well) is negated by a preverbal *nɔ-* and this negative marker is occasionally also found on other, lexically heavy verbs. This occurs when an old *th-*-auxiliary is involved in the creation of the form, but it is also found in other circumstances.

- (110) *se gɔl-a nahī*
3SG go.PST-3SG NEG
'He did not go.' (Neukom & Patnaik 2003: 340)
- (111) *se muṇḍɔ hɔla-i nahī kɔr-iba-ru ɔnyɔ jɔṇɔ-kɔ kɔh-il-a*
3SG head shake-CVB NEG do-INF-ABL other CLF-DEF say-PST-3SG
'since she shook her head and said no, the other one said...' (Neukom & Patnaik 2003: 43)
- (112) *khel-u-nɔ-th-il-a*
play-IPFV-NEG-AUX-PST-1SG
'I was not playing.' (Neukom & Patnaik 2003: 340)
- (113) *kintu bɔrtɔman se nɔ-j-ib-ɔ kahīki*
but now 3SG NEG-go-FUT-3SG why
'But why shouldn't she go now?' (Neukom & Patnaik 2003: 341)
- (114) *ta-ku sɔtɔrkɔ kɔr-a-i-de-b-e pūɔ jemiti istri nɔ-chū-ē*
3MSG-DAT careful do-CAUS-CVB-give-FUT-2PL boy in.order iron
NEG-touch-3SG.HAB
'Warn her that the boy should not touch the iron.' (Neukom & Patnaik 2003: 155)

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

Affirmative existential: The usual verbal copulas *ɔch-* and *th-* are used here.

- (115) *eθhi kete-gurie saikel ɔch-i*
here some-PL bicycle be-3SG
'There are some bicycles here.' (Neukom & Patnaik 2003: 47)
- (116) *tumɔ laibreri-re bɔngɔla bɔhi ɔch-i? hɔ̄ kete-khɔṇḍɔ ɔch-i*
2SG library-LOC Bangla book be-3SG yes some-CLF be-3SG
'Are there Bengali books in your library? Yes, there are some.' (Neukom & Patnaik 2003: 118)
- (117) *e bɔs-re purusɔ o stri-mansɔ-nkɔ-rɔ bɔs-iba jaga ɔch-i*
DEM bus-LOC man and woman-PL-OBL-GEN sit-INF place be-3SG
'In this bus there are seats for gentlemen and (seats) for ladies.' (Neukom & Patnaik 2003: 38)

Negative existential: The post-verbal negation marker *nahī* is used without a copula (B~C, because there is another SN). Neukom and Patnaik parse this marker as a negative copula and a third person singular bound person marker. As *th-* is negated with a preverbal *nɔ-*, it is also negated in this manner when it functions as the existential copula. This negation marker is also used with prototypical action verbs (not only when *th-* is an auxiliary).

- (118) *deulɔ bhitor-e kie ɔch-i ki? na, kehi nah-ī*
temple inside-LOC someone be-3SG INT no anyone NEG.be-3SG
'Is there someone in the temple? No, there isn't anyone.' (Neukom & Patnaik 2003: 100)
- (119) *bɔlɔ nah-ī chotɔ di-ɔ*
big NEG.be-3SG small give-2PL.IMP
'There are no big (ones); give me small (ones).' (Neukom & Patnaik 2003: 72)
- (120) *premika nɔ-th-ile birɔhɔ jɔntrɔṇɔ nɔ-tha-nt-a ki*
mistress NEG-be-COND.CVB separation pain NEG-be-COND-3SG or
kehi mɔdɔ pi-u-nɔ-tha-nt-e
anybody wine drink-IPFV-NEG-AUX-COND-3PL
'If there were no girls, there would be no pain of separation nor would anybody drink alcohol.' (Neukom & Patnaik 2003: 195)

Summary: Type A & Type B~C

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

Nepali Sugam Singh, Marie-Caroline Pons (p.c.)

Verbal negation: *-dina* and *-in(a)n* verbal suffixes; both can be further parsed, but this is not essential to illustrate the point here.

- (121) *yini mahilā git gāū-dina-n*
DEM woman song sing-NEG.PRS.3SG
'The woman doesn't sing.' Sugam Singh, Marie-Caroline Pons (p.c.)
- (122) *yini mahilā-le git gā-inan*
DEM woman-ERG song sing-NEG.PST.3SG
'The woman didn't sing.' Sugam Singh, Marie-Caroline Pons (p.c.)
- (123) *yini mahilā jhyal phod-dinan*
DEM woman window break-NEG.PRS.3SG
'The woman didn't break the window.' Sugam Singh, Marie-Caroline Pons (p.c.)
- (124) *yini mahilā-le jhyāl phod-inan*
DEM woman-ERG window break-NEG.PST.3SG
'The woman didn't break the window.' Sugam Singh, Marie-Caroline Pons (p.c.)

Affirmative existential: with the usual verbal copulas.

- (125) *bāri-mā birālo-haru chha-n*
garden-LOC cat-PL be-3SG
'(When he looked outside) there were cats in the garden.' Sugam Singh, Marie-Caroline Pons (p.c.)
- (126) *bāri-mā birālo-haru thi-e*
garden-LOC cat-PL be.PST-3SG
'(When he looked) there were no cats in the garden.' Sugam Singh, Marie-Caroline Pons (p.c.)

Negative existential: The usual verbal negation markers are used here regardless of tense/aspect.

- (127) *bāri-mā birālo-haru chha-inan*
garden-LOC cat-PL be-NEG.PRS.3SG
'(He is looking outside) There at no cats in the garden.' Sugam Singh, Marie-Caroline Pons (p.c.)

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

- (128) *bāri-mā birālo-haru thi-enan*
garden-LOC cat-PL be-NEG.PST.3SG
‘(he looked outside) There were no cats in the garden.’ Sugam Singh,
Marie-Caroline Pons (p.c.)
- (129) *jāgali birālo-haru hū-deinan*
jungle cat-PL be.PRS-NEG.PRS.3SG
‘There are no wild cats.’ (also given for ‘wild cats don’t exist’). Sugam
Singh, Marie-Caroline Pons (p.c.)
- (130) *jāgali birālo-haru thi-enan*
jungle cat-PL be.PST-NEG.PST.3SG
‘There were no wild cats (back in the day, before they were brought
here).’ Sugam Singh, Marie-Caroline Pons (p.c.)

Summary: Type A.

Assamese (p.c. Krishna Boro and Nihankara Dutta).

Verbal negation: Verbs are negated by a *ni-* prefix or by a *nasil* negative auxiliary. The negative auxiliary is probably historically *ni- + as* COP + *il* PST, and are parsed here in this manner. Whether this parsing is a synchronic reality in the minds of speakers is questionable (we would like to thank Krishna Boro for this point).

- (131) *Mohila-goraki(-e) gan na-ga-j.*
Woman-CLF(-NOM) song NEG-sing-3SG
‘The woman didn’t sing.’ (p.c. Krishna Boro and Nihaikara Dutta)
(some experts consider the optional –e an Ergative marker)
- (132) *mohila-goraki(-e) gan go-a n-as-il-e*
woman-CLF(-NOM) song sing-PTCP NEG-COP-PST-3SG
‘The woman didn’t sing.’ (p.c. Krishna Boro and Nihaikara Dutta)

Affirmative existential: The usual verbal copulas *as-* or *t^hak-* are used here. The later is often referred to as a “locative” existential in the (Eastern) Indo-Aryan literature, but it can be found also in other types of nominal predication domains.

- (133) *sotal-ot keitaman mekuri as-e*
yard-LOC some cat COP-3SG.PRS
‘(Hearing noise from outside) there are some cats in the yard’ (p.c.
Krishna Boro and Nihaikara Dutta)

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

- (134) *sotal-ot keitaman mekuri as-il*
 yard-LOC some cat COP-PST
 '(When he looked to the yard) there were some cats in the yard.' (p.c.
 Krishna Boro and Nihaikara Dutta)
- (135) *bonoria mekuri t^hak-e / as-e*
 wild cat stay-3SG.PRS / COP-3SG.PRS
 'There are wild cats.' (p.c. Krishna Boro and Nihaikara Dutta)

Negative existential: A special negative existential *nai* is used (hence: Type B), but also *na-* and *nasil* are found (hence Type A). There seems to be a tense/aspect interaction with regards to the distribution of these markers.

- (136) *sotal-ot (eta-u) mekuri nai*
 yard-LOC (one-ADD) cat NEG.EX
 '(He's looking into the yard) there are no cats in the yard.' (p.c. Krishna
 Boro and Nihaikara Dutta)
- (137) *sotal-ot (eta-u) mekuri n-as-il*
 yard-LOC one-ADD cat NEG-be-PST
 '(When he looked into the yard) there were no wild cats in the yard.' (p.c.
 Krishna Boro and Nihaikara Dutta)
- (138) *bonoria mekuri na-t^hak-e*
 wild cat NEG-stay-3SG
 'There are no wild cats.' (p.c. Krishna Boro and Nihaikara Dutta) (the
 verb in this clause means 'stay, be at, exist')
- (139) *bonoria mekuri n-as-il*
 wild cat NEG-be-PST
 'There were no wild cats (back in the day, before they were brought
 here).' (p.c. Krishna Boro and Nihaikara Dutta)

Summary: Type A~B

Kupia (*Christmas & Christmas 1973a,b*; we will not repeat examples from the paper here)

Verbal negation: Is expressed by a post verbal *nay* (see the example in our article).

Affirmative existential: Copular verb + NP expressing the figure + optional NP / PP expressing the ground.

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

Negative existential: There are two construction types. In both, the copula is replaced completely by a different marker. Construction type one is of type B, and a special negative form of the copula (*nенj-*) replaces the copular verb used in the affirmative. The second is of type C and the Verbal negation marker is used as a special negative existential marker.

Summary: Type B and Type C.

2. Albanian, Armenian, Greek

Albanian

Standard (Tosk) Albanian has four negative morphemes, *nuk*, *s'*, *mos* and *jo* (Turano 2000: 82), see Buchholz & Fiedler (1987: 172) for another negative morpheme, *as*. *mos* is used to negate subjunctive, imperative and optative clauses as well as gerunds and infinitives (Turano 2000: 85). *jo* often referred to as a ‘constituent negator’ and is restricted to use with nominals, adjectives, prepositional phrases, and adverbials (Turano 2000: 86). Only *nuk* and *s'* are relevant for the present discussion. They are interchangeable even though they are used differently (Buchholz & Fiedler 1987: 172). Both occur in standard negation:

- (140) *Nuk vajta (më) në bibliotekë.*
 NEG go.PST.1SG (anymore) in library
 ‘I didn’t go to the library (anymore).’ (Turano 2000: 82)
- (141) *S’-vajta (më) në bibliotekë.*
 NEG-go.PST.1SG (anymore) in library
 ‘I didn’t go to the library (anymore).’ (Turano 2000: 82)

The verb used for existential predicates is *ka* ‘to have’, as indicated by Camaj (1984: 12), who explicitly glosses the third person singular form of the verb, *ka*, to mean ‘he, she has; there is’, and its negated form is *nuk ka*, *s’ka* with ‘there is no’.

Camaj’s (1984) grammar includes several examples of existential predicates. The examples below illustrate the use of the affirmative and negated existential predicates:

- (142) *Në mulli ka drithë e miell.*
 in mill have.3SG grain and flour
 ‘In the mill there is grain and flour.’ (Camaj 1984: 12/257)

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

- (143) *ndér ne s'ka kundërshtime*
 among 1PL.ACC NEG+have.3SG objection.PL
 ‘There are no conflicts among us.’ (Camaj 1984: 70)

As *ka* ‘to have’ is negated as any other verb, Albanian is classified as a type A language.

Armenian

Modern (Eastern) Armenian has the negative prefix *č-* for standard negation and this prefix attaches to most verb forms, except for imperatives (Dum-Tragut 2009: 522):

- (144) *Vardan-ě gneč' gírk'-ě.*
 Vardan.NOM-DEF buy.AOR.3SG book.NOM-DEF
 ‘Vardan bought the book.’ (Dum-Tragut 2009: 51)
- (145) *Vardan-ě č'-gneč' gírk'-ě.*
 Vardan.NOM-DEF NEG-buy.AOR.3SG book.NOM-DEF
 ‘Vardan did not buy the book.’ (Dum-Tragut 2009: 51)

Modern Armenian *em* ‘to be’ expresses copular meaning and also functions as an auxiliary (Dum-Tragut 2009: 215):

- (146) *Anuš-ě gelec'ik aljik ē.*
 Anuš.NOM-DEF beautiful girl.NOM is.3SG
 ‘Anuš is a beautiful girl.’ (Dum-Tragut 2009: 215)
- (147) *Anuš-ě gelec'ik aljik č'-ē.*
 Anuš.NOM-DEF beautiful girl.NOM NEG-is.3SG
 ‘Anuš is not a beautiful girl.’ (Dum-Tragut 2009: 215)

The copula is used for locatives in the following:

- (148) *Im hayr-ě Ani hyuranoc'-um ē.*
 my father.NOM-DEF Ani.NOM hotel-LOC be.3SG
 ‘My father is in the Hotel Ani.’ (Dum-Tragut 2009: 382)

However, another verb that is frequently used for both locative and true existentials is the defective verb *kam* ‘to exist’ (Dum-Tragut 2009: 282). The following are examples of a locative existential and a true existential:

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

- (149) *Hamaynk'-i tekavar-i t-an-ě heraxos*
 community-DAT leader-DAT house-DAT-DEF telephone.NOM
č'-ka.
 NEG-exist-PRS.3SG
 ‘There is no telephone in the house of the leader of the community.’
 (Dum-Tragut 2009: 104–105)
- (150) *Inč'u č'-k-an barjrakarg ēk'skursavar-ner?*
 why NEG-exist-PRS.3PL high.quality tourist.guide-PL.NOM
 ‘Why there are no high-quality tourist guides?’ (headline) (Dum-Tragut 2009: 693)

It seems that both *kam* ‘to exist’ and the copula *em* are used for locatives, while only *kam* alone can be used to predicate existence, without reference to a specific situation or location. Both *kam* and *em* are negated with the negative prefix *č'*, classifying Modern Armenian as a type A language.

Modern Greek

In Modern Greek, the negative morpheme *δεν* (*den*) ‘not’ is placed before the verb to form a negative indicative statement (Holton et al. 2012: 510). Another negator exists for sentences in the subjunctive mood, but this is not addressed here.

- (151) *Oi συγγενείς του δεν θα του δώσουν καμιά βοήθεια*
 Oi syngeneís tou den θa tou dósoun kamiá voíθeia
 DEF.PL relative.PL POSS.3SG NEG FUT 3SG.ACC give any aid
 ‘His relatives are not going to give him any help.’ (Holton et al. 2012: 510)

It is possible to use the *δεν* (*den*) ‘not’ in combination with the copula *είμαι* (*eímai*) for many non-verbal predicates, including locatives:

- (152) *Δεν είναι καμιά αδέσποτη γάτα στον κήπο*
 den eínaí kamiá aðéspoti gáta ston kípo
 NEG be.3SG none stray cat in.DEF garden
 ‘There isn’t any wild cat in the garden.’ (p.c. Eirini Skourtanioti)

Nonetheless, for existential predicates, *υπάρχω* (*ypárcho*) ‘to exist’ or *έχω* (*écho*) ‘to have’ must be used rather than the copula:

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

- (153) *Δεν υπάρχει φάρμακο σ' αυτή την αρρώστια*
 $\delta\acute{e}n$ *ypárchei fármako s'-aftí tin arróstia*
 NEG exist medicine of-DEM.FSG DEF.ACC illness
 ‘There is no cure [lit. ‘medicine’] for this illness.’ (Holton et al. 2012: 493)
- (154) *Στην Ολλανδία, με νόμο του 1976 απαγορεύεται να ανοίγουν τα καταστήματα τις Κυριακές, ...*
 ... $\varepsilon n\acute{o}$ *antíθétos stin Polonia* $\delta\acute{e}n$ *ypárchoun pléon periorismoi.*
 ...enó antiθétos stin Polonia NEG exist much restriction.PL
 while instead in.DEF Poland NEG exist much restriction.PL
 ‘In the Netherlands, a 1976 law prohibited opening shops on Sundays, whereas in Poland, there are no such restrictions anymore.’ (Puigdollers 2015: 483)
- (155) *Δεν εχει φωτα στο σπιτι τους.*
 $\delta\acute{e}n$ *echei fota sto spiti tous.*
 NEG have.PRS.3SG light.PL on.DEF house POSS.3PL
 ‘There are no lights in their house.’ (Holton et al. 2004: 199)
- (156) *Δεν έχει αδέσποτες γάτες*
 $\delta\acute{e}n$ *échei aðéspotes gátēs*
 NEG have.PRS.3SG stray cat.PL
 ‘There are no stray cats.’ (p.c. Eirini Skourtanioti)

While the copula cannot be used, Modern Greek is a clear instance of Type A because it uses the standard negator for negative existentials. For a similar analysis of Modern Greek, see also Veselinova (2013: 115–116). For more information regarding diachronic change in Greek negation, see Kiparsky & Condoravdi (2006).

3. Baltic

Latvian

Standard negation in Latvian is expressed through the preverbal particle *ne*:

- (157) *Marija dzied.*
 Mary sing.PRS.3SG
 ‘Mary sings.’ (p.c. Sandra Grinberga)
- (158) *Marija ne dzied.*
 Mary NEG sing.PRS.3SG
 ‘Mary does not sing.’ (p.c. Sandra Grinberga)

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

- (159) *Viņš ne-runā latviski.*
 3SG.M NEG-speak.PRS.3SG Latvian
 ‘He doesn’t speak Latvian.’ (Mathiassen 1997: 164)

In negative existentials, as in many other contexts where the copula is used, the negated form of the copula *ir* ‘to be’ in the present tense has the form *nav*:

- (160) *Afrikā ir lauvas.*
 Africa COP lion.PL.NOM
 ‘In Africa there are lions.’ (Mathiassen 1997: 164)
- (161) *Latvijā nav lauvu.*
 Latvia NEG.COP lion.PL.GEN
 ‘In Latvia there are no lions.’ (Mathiassen 1997: 164)
- (162) a. *Ir savvalas kaķi.*
 COP wild cat.PL.NOM
 ‘There are wild cats.’ (p.c. Sandra Grinberga)
- b. *Nav savvalas kaķu.*
 NEG.COP wild cat.PL.GEN
 ‘There are no wild cats.’ (p.c. Sandra Grinberga)

In contrast, in the past tense, a regularly negated form of the copula is used:

- (163) a. *Bija savvalas kaķi.*
 PST.COP wild cat.PL.NOM
 ‘There were wild cats.’ (p.c. Sandra Grinberga)
- b. *Ne-bija savvalas kaķu.*
 NEG-pst.COP wild cat.PL.GEN
 ‘There were no wild cats.’ (p.c. Sandra Grinberga)

The copula *ir* ‘to be’ is used in this manner for all the non-verbal sentences we investigated in our questionnaire, including equational predicates, descriptive predicates, locative predicates (see above, examples 96 and 97), and negative existentials. Hence, we classify Latvian as Type A~B, as a special negative existential construction exists but its usage is dependent on TAM.

Lithuanian

Mathiassen (1996: 176–177) states that the most important verbal negator in Lithuanian is *ne*, which can be a prefix for verbs and other word classes:

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

- (164) *Aš nusipirkau naujq dvirati.*
 1SG buy.PST.1SG new.ACC bicycle.ACC
 ‘I have bought a new bicycle.’ (Mathiassen 1996: 185)
- (165) *Aš ne-nusipirkau naujo dviracio.*
 1SG NEG-buy.PST.1SG new.GEN bicycle.GEN
 ‘I have not bought a new bicycle.’ (Mathiassen 1996: 185)

For non-verbal predicates, one option is to delete the copula *būti* ‘to be’; these are then negated by inserting *ne*:

- (166) *jis studentas*
 3SG.M.NOM student.NOM.M.SG
 ‘He is a student.’ (Mathiassen 1996: 176)
- (167) *jis ne studentas*
 3SG.M.SG NEG student.NOM.M.SG
 ‘He is not a student.’ (Mathiassen 1996: 176)

In most cases, however, the copula is present. For the present tense, the negative form of the copula is a contraction of the negator *ne* and the non-negative form of the copula *yra*, which is written *néra* (Mathiassen 1996: 1976):

- (168) *Čia yra laukinių kačių*
 here be.PRS.3SG wild.GEN.M.PL cat.GEN.M.PL
 ‘There are wild cats.’ (p.c. Algirdas Sabaliauskas)
- (169) *Čia laukinių kačių néra*
 here wild.GEN.M.PL cat.GEN.M.PL NEG.be.PRS.3SG
 ‘There are no wild cats.’ (p.c. Algirdas Sabaliauskas)

We analyze this contracted form as a special negative existential marker. In the past tense, a regularly negated form of the copula is used to form the negative existential:

- (170) *Protestuoti dėl to ne-buvo kam.*
 protest.INF because.of that NEG-be.PST.3SG who.DAT
 ‘There was no one who would protest about that.’ (Kalédaité 2008: 134)

As the negative existential in Lithuanian has both a special negative existential construction (in the present tense) and the standard negation construction (in the past tense), we can classify it as Type A~B.

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

4. Romance

French

Negation in French is formed through the double negation *ne ... pas* ‘not’, but the first element is often omitted in informal speech (Lang & Perez 2004: 219).

- (171) *Si les Dupont ne sont pas là maintenant,*
 if DEF.ART.PL Duponts NEG be.PRS.3PL NEG here now
 ‘If the Duponts are not here now, (it’s because they won’t be coming.)’
 (Lang & Perez 2004: 219)

Locatives can make use of the construction *il y a* ‘there is/are’ to stipulate the presence or absence of a particular entity in a specific situation or location. This construction is negated by *ne ... pas* ‘not’ as usual.

- (172) *Il y a au moins dix coffrets de portables parmi lesquels choisir.*
 3SG there have.PRS at least ten case.PL of mobile.PL among which.PL choose.INF
 ‘There are at least ten mobile holders to choose from.’ (Offord 2006: 274)
- (173) *Il n'-y a pas de centre équivalent en Belgique.*
 3SG NEG-there have.PRS NEG of center equivalent in Belgium
 ‘There isn’t an equivalent center in Belgium.’ (Offord 2006: 208)

For negative existentials, when the existence of an entity is negated altogether, French has to make use of the verb *exister* ‘to exist’:

- (174) *Les chats sauvages (n')-existent pas.*
 DEF.ART.PL cat.PL wild.PL (NEG)-exist.PRS.3PL NEG
 ‘There are (no) wild cats.’ (p.c. Raphaël Domange)

French is therefore an example of a Type A language.

Italian

In Italian, sentential negation is formed by the marker *non* ‘not’:

- (175) *Non parlo italiano.*
 NEG speak.PRS.1SG Italian
 ‘I don’t speak Italian.’ (Peyronel & Higgins 2006: 41)

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

Similar to French *il y a* ‘there is/are’, Italian has a fixed construction involving *essere* ‘to be’ to introduce the presence or absence of an entity, *c’è* ‘there is’ and *ci sono* ‘there are’. While no specific context or location need be mentioned, these statements are implicitly or explicitly situated in particular situations. They are negated by using *non* ‘not’, as any predicate is.

- (176) *Nel negozio ci sono molti clienti.*
 in.DEF shop there be.PRS.PL many customer.PL
 ‘There are a lot of customers in the shop.’ *Peyronel & Higgins (2006: 32)*
- (177) *Non ci sono clienti.*
 NEG there be.PRS.PL customer.PL
 ‘There aren’t any customers.’ *Peyronel & Higgins (2006: 33)*

However, *c’è* ‘there is’ and *ci sono* ‘there are’ cannot be used when the existence of an entity itself is negated. Instead, the verb *esistere* ‘to exist’ is used:

- (178) *I gate selvatici non esistono.*
 DEF.PL cat.PL wild.PL NEG exist.PRS.3SG
 ‘There are no wild cats.’ (p.c. Francesca Di Garbo)

As the verb is negated using the standard negation marker *non* ‘not’, Italian can be classified as Type A.

Romanian

Negation in Romanian is achieved through the preverbal particle *nu* (see Gönczöl-Davies 2008):

- (179) *O fată face sport, cealaltă fată nu face.*
 INDF.F.SG girl make.PRS.3SG sport other.F.SG girl NEG make.PRS.3SG
 ‘One girl does sports, the other girl doesn’t.’ (*Gönczöl-Davies 2008: 36*)

This same negator is used in negative existentials:

- (180) *Se găsesc pisici sălbatrice.*
 MID.3SG find cat.PL wild.PL
 ‘There are wild cats.’ (p.c. Andreea Calude)
- (181) *Nu se găsesc pisici sălbatrice.*
 NEG MID.3SG find cat.PL wild.PL
 ‘There are no wild cats.’ (p.c. Andreea Calude)

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

The sentence above has the verb *a se gasi* ‘to find themselves’ (middle voice). It is also possible to use *a exista* ‘to exist’, but the copula, which appears in many other non-verbal constructions, is dispreferred without a locative:

- (182) *Nu există pisici sălbatrice.*
NEG exist cat.PL wild.PL
‘There are no wild cats.’ (p.c. Andreea Calude)
- (183) *El nu e aici, e în oraș.*
3SG.M NEG be.PRS.3SG here, be.PRS.3SG in town.
‘He is not here, he is in town.’ (p.c. Andreea Calude)
- (184) *Nu e nici o pisică sălbatică *(acolo/aici).*
NEG be.PRS.3SG even INDF cat.PL wild.PL *(there/here)
‘There aren’t any wild cats there/here.’ (p.c. Andreea Calude)
- (185) *Nu sunt mulți copii la școală azi.*
NEG be.PRS.3PL many child.PL at school today
‘There are not many kids at school today.’ (p.c. Andreea Calude)

When the negated sentence is absolutely and universally true, the copula can be used, but the existential verb is still the default:

- (186) *Nu este viață eternă.*
NEG be.PRS.3SG life eternal
‘There is no eternal life.’ (p.c. Andreea Calude)
- (187) *Nu sunt luni de toate culorile.*
NEG be.PRS.3PL moon.PL of all color.PL
‘There are no rainbow-coloured moons.’ (p.c. Andreea Calude)

Despite this dispreference for the copula in the negative existential construction, the negator *nu* is identical in all of these sentences. The same applies when the pivot is quantified:

- (188) *Nu sunt multe pisici sălbatrice.*
NEG be.PRS.3PL many cat.PL wild.PL
‘There are not many wild cats.’ (p.c. Andreea Calude)

Spanish

Spanish has only one sentential negator, the preverbal *no* (Butt & Benjamin 1994: 319ff.).

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

- (189) *¿Se lo has dado?*
 3SG 3SG.OBJ have.PRS.2SG give.PST.PTCP
No, no se lo he dado.
 NEG NEG 3SG 3SG.OBJ have.PRS.1SG give.PST.PTCP
 ‘Did you give it to him/her/them?’
 No, I didn’t give it to him/her/them.’ (Butt & Benjamin 1994: 320)

Butt & Benjamin (1994: 382ff) features a chapter on existential sentences. They detail that true existentials are formed with the present indicative form *hay* of the special verb *haber*, which means ‘there is, there are’. The verb *estar* is used for locatives, meaning ‘to be located/there’. The different usages of *hay* and *estar* are illustrated here:

- (190) *Hay un gerente en la compañía.*
 HAY INDF manager in DEF company
 ‘There’s a manager in the company.’ (i.e. ‘a manager exists’) (Butt & Benjamin 1994: 383)
- (191) *Está el gerente*
 be.PRS.3SG DEF manager
 ‘The manager is there/here/in.’ (Butt & Benjamin 1994: 383)

The existential construction with *hay* is negated with *no* as is any other verb:

- (192) *No hay dinero.*
 NEG HAY money
 ‘There’s no money (anywhere).’ (Butt & Benjamin 1994: 383)
- (193) *No hay nadie que sepa tocar más de un violín a la vez.*
 NEG HAY nobody REL know.SBJV.3SG play more of one violin at DEF vez.
 time
 ‘There is no one who can play more than one violin at once.’ (Butt & Benjamin 1994: 269)

Spanish is therefore classified as a Type A language.

Catalan

Sentential negation in Catalan is expressed by *no* in preverbal position:

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

- (194) *En Joan viu a Barcelona.*
 ART John live.3SG in Barcelona
 ‘John lives in Barcelona.’ (Hualde 1992: 154)
- (195) *En Joan no viu a Barcelona.*
 ART John NEG live.3SG in Barcelona
 ‘John does not live in Barcelona.’ (Hualde 1992: 154)

Existential sentences have a special construction that consists of the verb *haver-hi* ‘there is’, literally ‘there has’, which is not one of the copulas *ser* or *estar*, as may be expected. These have received some attention as impersonal sentences (Hualde 1992: 81; Wheeler et al. 1999: 460). Hualde (1992: 81) notes that in example 196, there is optional agreement between the verb and the noun phrase, suggesting that *quatre gats* can also be analyzed as the subject (see also Wheeler et al. 1999: 460). While Hualde (1992) glosses *hi* as a locative element, Wheeler et al. (1999: 460) classify it as an adverbial clitic.

- (196) *Hi havia / havien quatre gats.*
 LOC have.IP.3SG have.IP.3PL four cat.PL
 ‘There were four cats.’ (Hualde 1992: 81)
- (197) *Hi ha tres possibilitats.*
 there have.PRS.3SG three possibility.PL
 ‘There are three possibilities.’ (Wheeler et al. 1999: 460)

Similar to any other verb in Catalan, this construction is negated through a pre-verbal *no*:

- (198) *No hi podia haver hagut cap altra manera d'-aconseguir-ho.*
 NEG there can.IP.3SG have.INF have.PTCP NEG other way of-achieve.INF-3SG
 ‘There could not have been any other way of achieving it.’ (Wheeler et al. 1999: 460)
- (199) *No hi ha cap examen on no enxampin algú copiant.*
 NEG there have.PRS.3SG NEG exam where NEG catch.SUBJ.3PL somebody copy.GER
 ‘There is no exam where they don’t catch somebody copying.’ (Wheeler et al. 1999: 422)

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

Catalan is therefore classified as a Type A language.

Latin

Latin has various negative particles (Greenough et al. 1903: 129) of which only *non* is relevant for the current purposes. The particle *ne* is also used for clause negation, but only in the subjunctive mood (p.c. Paul Hulsenboom).

- (200) *Non recusabo quominus omnes mea scripta legant.*
NEG protest that all my writings read
'I will not object to all men reading my writings.' Roby (1862: 145)

The copula *sum* is used for most nonverbal predicates, including existentials, and these are negated using *non* as it is in any other clause:

- (201) *Feles ferae sunt.*
cat.PL wild.PL be.3PL
'There are wild cats.' (p.c. Paul Hulsenboom)
- (202) *Feles ferae non sunt.*
cat.PL wild.PL NEG be.3PL
'There are no wild cats.' (p.c. Paul Hulsenboom)

Since Latin uses the standard negation marker to negate existential predicates, we classify it as Type A.

5. Germanic

All Germanic languages are classified as Type A~B, see article.

English

In English, one of the negators that is used for existential predictions is the negative quantifier *no*:

- (203) *There are no tame zebras.*

The standard negator *not* can be used when the pivot is quantified:

- (204) a. *There are not many tame zebras.*
b. *There aren't any tame zebras.*

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

German

In German, the preferred negator for existential predictions is the negative quantifier *kein*, while the standard negator is *nicht*. Existential constructions are introduced by the fixed expression *es gibt*, with the neutral third person singular pronoun *es* followed by the third person form of the verb *geben* ‘to give’. This is functionally equivalent to the English *there is/are*. The use of the copula *sein* ‘to be’ is not allowed in existential constructions, and it triggers context-bound and situational readings, most commonly locative.

- (205) *Es gibt kein-e Lehrer.*
 it give NEG.QUANT-PL teacher.PL
 ‘There are no teachers.’ (p.c. Anne-Maria Fehn)
- (206) *Tom ist (nicht) glücklich.*
 Tom be.PRS.3SG (NEG) happy
 ‘Tom is (not) happy.’ (p.c. Anne-Maria Fehn)

However, the standard negator *nicht* can be used when the pivot is quantified:

- (207) *Es gibt nicht viele Kuchen.*
 it give NEG many cakes
 ‘There are not many cakes.’ (p.c. Anne-Maria Fehn)

The negative quantifier can also be used for certain types of non-existential negation, including the first example of truly standard negation:

- (208) *Ludwig mag kein-e Film-e.*
 Ludwig likes NEG.Q-PL movie-PL
 ‘Ludwig does not like movies.’ (p.c. Anne-Maria Fehn)
- (209) *Ronald ist kein Lehrer, er ist Doktor.*
 Ronald is NEG.QUANT teacher he is doctor
 ‘Ronald is not a teacher, he is a doctor.’ (p.c. Anne-Maria Fehn)
- (210) *Klara hat kein Auto.*
 Klara has NEG.QUANT car
 ‘Klara does not have a car.’
- (211) *Da sind kein-e Wildkatz-en im Garten.*
 there are NEG.QUANT-PL wild.cat-PL in.DEF garden
 ‘There are no wild cats in the garden.’

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

The negative quantifier seems to be used in a greater range of constructions than its counterparts in Dutch and English. We cannot further consider whether it is taking over standard negation.

Dutch

In Dutch, the preferred negator for existential predictions is the negative quantifier *geen*:

- (212) *Er zijn geen taxis.*
 there are NEG.QUANT taxis
 ‘There are no taxis.’ (own data)

However, the standard negator *niet* can be used when the pivot is quantified:

- (213) *Er zijn niet veel taxis.*
 there are NEG many taxis
 ‘There are not many taxis.’ (own data)

Western Frisian

The most common negator in Western Frisian is *net* ‘not’ (Tiersma 1999: 102–103):

- (214) *ik wit net oftsto wol taliten wurdst*
 1SG know NEG whether indeed admit.INF become
 ‘I don’t know whether you will be admitted.’ (Tiersma 1999: 91)

The determiner *gjin* ‘no’, nevertheless, is used in many non-verbal predicates, including existentials and possessives:

- (215) *Der binne gjin wylde katten.*
 there be no wild cat.PL
 ‘There are no wild cats.’ (p.c. Eric Hoekstra)
- (216) *Hy hat gjin fyts.*
 3SG.M have no bike
 ‘He has no bicycle.’ (Tiersma 1999: 102)

As in many other Germanic languages, it is possible to use the standard negator when the pivot is quantified:

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

- (217) *Der binne net folle wylde katten*
 there be NEG many wild cat.PL
 ‘There are not many wild cats.’ (p.c. Eric Hoekstra)

Hence, we classify Western Frisian as Type A~B.

Eastern Frisian

Not to be confused as a close relative of Western Frisian, Eastern Frisian is a Low German variety. It behaves similar to Standard German and the other Germanic languages, but there appears to be a wider range of contexts in which the determiner *kien* ‘no’ can be used. The standard negator is *neet* ‘not’:

- (218) *Marie singt neet.*
 Marie sing.3SG NEG
 ‘Mary does not sing.’ (p.c. Temmo Bosse)

For negative existential predicates, the determiner *kien* ‘no’ is used in combination with *geven* ‘to give’ or *wesen* ‘to be’:

- (219) *Dat gifft kien wille Katten.*
 EXPL give.3PL no wild cat.PL
 ‘There are no wild cats.’ (p.c. Temmo Bosse)
- (220) *Daar bünd kien wille Katten.*
 there be.3PL no wild cat.PL
 ‘There are no wild cats.’ (p.c. Temmo Bosse)

The standard negator *neet* ‘not’ can be used when a quantifier is present:

- (221) *Daar bünd / Dat gifft neet mennig wille Katten.*
 there be.3PL EXPL give.3PL NEG many wild cat.PL
 ‘There are not many wild cats.’ (p.c. Temmo Bosse)

Due to this split in usage, we classify Eastern Frisian as Type A~B.

Swedish

In Swedish, the preferred negator for existential predictions is the negative quantifier *ingen* (Bordal 2017). The verb most frequently used to express existence is *finns* (Bordal 2017: 9).

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

- (222) *Det finns ingen ost i kylskap-et.*
it be.at any cheese in fridge-DET
'There is no cheese in the fridge.' (Veselinova 2013: 115)

However, the standard negator *inte* can also be used:

- (223) *Det finns inte ost i kylskap-et.*
it be.at NEG cheese in fridge-DEF
'There isn't any cheese in the fridge.' (Veselinova 2013: 115)

Bordal (2017) is a corpus study that aims to describe the choice between the usage of the negative quantifier/negative indefinite pronoun versus standard negation. Reference grammars of Swedish recommend using the standard negator *inte*, but Bordal (2017: 15ff) demonstrates that there is a major preference for *ingen*. The reason for this preference is semantic; negation using *ingen* is absolute, and the existence of the pivot nominal is negated. In contrast, negation using *inte* and an indefinite pronoun suggests an absence of the pivot nominal rather than non-existence, and hence it is dispreferred (Bordal 2017: 21–22). See also Veselinova (2013: 114–115) for earlier comments on Swedish negative existentials.

Norwegian

In Norwegian, the negator for existential predictions can be the standard negator *ikke*:

- (224) *Anton er ikke her, han er i byen.*
Anton is NEG here he is in town
'Anton is not here, he is in town.' (p.c. Benedicte Haraldstad Frøstad)
- (225) *Det finnes ikke ville katter.*
there are NEG wild cats
'There are no wild cats.' (p.c. Benedicte Haraldstad Frøstad)

However, the negative quantifier can also be used:

- (226) *Det fantes ingen erstatning.*
there was NEG.QUANT replacement
'There was no substitute.' (p.c. Benedicte Haraldstad Frøstad)

It is also possible to use the negative quantifier in combination with *finnes*, but this is ambiguous with the following two interpretations:

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

- (227) *Det finnes ingen ville katte.*
 there are NEG.QUANT wild cats
 1. ‘There are no wild cats. (anywhere, they don’t exist)’
 2. ‘There are no wild cats. (here right now/in this room/etc.)’ (p.c.
 Benedicte Haraldstad Frøstad)

Danish

In Danish, the negator for existential predictions can be the standard negator *ikke*:

- (228) *Peter læser ikke bogen.*
 Peter reads NEG book.DEF
 ‘Peter does not read the book.’ (p.c. Bjarne Ørnes)
 (229) *Der findes ikke vilde katte.*
 there are NEG wild cats
 ‘There are no wild cats.’ (p.c. Bjarne Ørnes)

The verb *at findes* ‘to exist’ is used with all the existential constructions that pertain to situations that are a certain way in the world at large; it can be contrasted to the use of *være* ‘to be’, which is used in more specific contexts:

- (230) *Der er vilde katte i haven i aften.*
 there are wild cats in garden.DEF this evening
 ‘Tonight there are wild cats in the garden.’ (p.c. Bjarne Ørnes)

The standard negator *ikke* has to be used with any quantifier that is not *nogen* ‘any’:

- (231) *Der findes ikke mange vilde katte.*
 there are NEG many wild cats
 ‘There are not many wild cats.’ (p.c. Bjarne Ørnes)

But otherwise, the negative quantifier *ingen* is interchangeable with the standard negator *ikke + nogen* ‘any’. The difference between the two is stylistic, where the second is more frequent, especially in spoken language, and the first is more formal and used in written language:

- (232) *Der findes ingen vilde katte.*
 there are no wild cats
 ‘There are no wild cats.’ (p.c. Bjarne Ørnes)

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

- (233) *Der findes ikke nogen vilde katte.*
there are NEG any wild cats
'There are no wild cats.' (p.c. Bjarne Ørnes)

Icelandic

The most common negator in Icelandic is *ekki* 'not':

- (234) *Þjóðin lét ekki blekkjast af þessum Bretapægu stjórnvöldum okkar.*
nation.DEF let NEG deceive.PST by this Britain.friendly government our
'The nation didn't let itself be deceived by this Britain-friendly government of ours.' (Wood 2012: 286)

However, locative, existential, and possessive clauses make use of another negator, *enginn* 'nobody, none', which inflects for number, case, and gender:

- (235) *Ég hef enga frétt.*
1SG have none story
'I have no news, I have nothing new.' (Bjarnason 1998: 62)
- (236) *Það var enginn maður par.*
INDEF.SBJV be nobody man there
'There was nobody (no man) there.' Einarsson (1949: 123)
- (237) *Það eru engir villikettir.*
INDEF.SBJV be.PL none wild.cat.PL
'There are no wild cats.' (p.c. Elísabet Eir Cortes)

Other than *enginn* 'nobody, none', the standard negator *ekki* 'not' can also be used:

- (238) *Það eru ekki alltaf jólín.*
INDEF.SBJV be.PL none always Christmas
'It's not always Christmas.' (expression)

The preferences for these negators require further investigation. At present, we classify Icelandic as a Type A~B language.

6. Celtic

Breton

Breton has a double negator, *ne ... ket*, which is located on both sides of the verb:

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

- (239) *Ne ro ket al laeron a laezh da zen.*
 NEG give.PRS NEG the robber.PL PREP milk to anyone
 ‘The robbers give no-one any milk.’ Press (1986: 126)

When the copula *bezañ* ‘to be’ (Press 1986: 144) is negated, it takes one of a set of special (contracted?) forms (Press 1986: 152), as is evident in the pair of sentences below:

- (240) *Ur c'helenner eo Tom.*
 ART teacher COP Tom
 ‘Tom is a teacher.’ (p.c. Marianna Donnart)
- (241) *N'eo ket ur c'helenner, ur medesin eo Tom*
 NEG+COP NEG ART teacher ART doctor COP Tom
 ‘Tom is not a teacher, he is a doctor.’ (p.c. Marianna Donnart)

This special form of the copula is shared by negative locatives and negative existentials:

- (242) *Un draonienn a zo du-hont.*
 ART valley VERB.PRT COP to-there
 ‘There’s the/a valley over there.’ (Press 1986: 154)
- (243) *An draonienn n’emañ ket du-hont.*
 ART valley NEG+COP NEG to-there
 ‘There’s no valley over there.’ (Press 1986: 155)
- (244) *Kizhier gouez a zo.*
 cat.PL wild VERB.PRT COP.PRS
 ‘There are wild cats.’ (p.c. Marianna Donnart)
- (245) *N'eus ket kizhier gouez.*
 NEG+COP NEG cat.PL wild
 ‘There are no wild cats.’ (p.c. Marianna Donnart)

Nonetheless, in the past tense, there is no special form of the copula for negation (see paper) and we therefore classify Breton as Type A~B

Welsh

Welsh uses the negator *ddim* for negation:

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

- (246) *Ddaru ni °ddim gweld y ffilm neithiwr.*
 AUX.PST we NEG see.VN DEF.ART film last.night
 ‘We didn’t see the film last night.’ (King 2003: 190)

Existential sentences are formed by using the copula *bod* ‘to be’ (see King 2003: 142ff):

- (247) *Mae cathod gwyllt yn bod.*
 be.PRS.3SG cats wild PROF be.INF
 ‘There are wild cats.’ (p.c. David Willis)
- (248) *Dydy/dyw cathod gwyllt ddim yn bod.*
 NEG.be.PRS.3SG cats wild NEG PROG be.INF
 ‘There are no wild cats.’ (p.c. David Willis)

In the negated existential sentence, the first instance of the copula *bod*, which functions as an auxiliary (see King 2003: 142ff) also has a negated form. This also occurs in other negated sentences in the same tense:

- (249) *Mae-’r cwrw ‘ma-’n °gryf.*
 be.PRS.3SG-ART beer this-PROG strong
 ‘This beer is strong.’ (King 2003: 146)
- (250) *Dydy-’r cwrw ‘ma °ddim yn °gryf.*
 be.NEG.PRS.3SG-ART beer this NEG PROG strong
 ‘This beer is not strong.’ (King 2003: 146)

Hence, existential negation functions similar to standard negation, and Welsh belongs to type A. See Willis (2013) for more information on the historical development of these and other negation strategies in Breton and Welsh.

Irish

Standard negation in Irish is achieved by placing a negative particle, *ní*, in front of the verb, which causes lenition if the initial consonant of the verb can be lenited (Stenson 2008: 86):

- (251) *Glanann sí a seomra.*
 clean.PRS she POSS room
 ‘She doesn’t clean her room.’ Stenson (2008: 86)

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

- (252) *Ní għlanann Caitríona a seomra.*
 NEG clean Caitríona POSS room
 ‘Caitríona doesn’t clean her room.’ Stenson (2008: 86)

For the sake of simplicity, only the negative particle that is used with finite verb forms is mentioned here, but there are more of these types of particles, distinguishing a) polarity, b) interrogation, c) non-past vs past and d) non-relative versus relative. The same applies for the copula and substantive verb below (see Stenson 1981: 93).

For the analysis of existential negation, two verbs are relevant. Irish has both a copula, with the present form *is* (negative form *ní*), and a substantive verb with the imperative form *bí* (present punctual *tá*, negative form *nil*) (Stenson 1981: 94). The former is used for essential or inherent qualities, while the latter is used for more temporal qualities, relating to matters such as existence, location and possession. The negative form of the copula, *ní*, should be considered formally distinct from the negative particle *ní*, as the former does not cause consonant lenition.

Copula usage for “essential” predicates is as follows:

- (253) *Is múinteoir é.*
 COP teacher him
 ‘He’s a teacher.’ (Stenson 1981: 132)
- (254) *Ní múintoir é.*
 NEG+COP teacher him
 ‘He isn’t a teacher.’ (Stenson 1981: 132)

Substantive verb *taě* or *niěl* usage for locative predicates:

- (255) *Tá sé anseo.*
 COP he here
 ‘He is here.’ (p.c. Cormac Anderson)
- (256) *Níl sé anseo, tá sé sa^L bhaile.*
 COP+NEG he here COP he in.the town
 ‘He is not here, he is in town.’ (p.c. Cormac Anderson)

Substantive verb usage for existential predicates is the following:

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shartz

- (257) *Tá cait fián ann.*
 COP cat.PL wild in.3SG.M
 ‘There are wild cats.’ (p.c. Cormac Anderson)
- (258) *Níl cait fián ann.*
 COP+NEG cat.PL wild in.3SG.M
 ‘There are no wild cats.’ (p.c. Cormac Anderson)

Whether or not existential predicates are negative, they are expressed by a particular copular form, often referred to as the substantive verb. The word *ann* in the existential predicates is the third person singular masculine form of the preposition *i* ‘in’, and it has a similar meaning to the English ‘there’ (see Stenson 2008: 11). As the locus of predication can be specified for person and number, we can refer to it as an existential preposition ‘in’.

We classify Irish as Type B, despite the construction being not unique to negative existentials, but it is certainly different from standard negation.

Old Irish

Old Irish has a verbal negator *ni*, which is a particle that attaches to the beginning of the verb:

- (259) *can-aid máire*
 sing-PRS-3SG Mary
 ‘Mary sings.’ (p.c. Cormac Anderson)
- (260) *ni-cain máire*
 NEG-sing.PRS.3SG Mary
 ‘Mary does not sing.’ (p.c. Cormac Anderson)

The substantive verb *a:taat* behaves like a normal verb (McCone 2005: 40).

- (261) *a:taat da n-orpe*
 COP.PRS.3PL two inheritance.PL
 ‘there are/exist two inheritances’ (McCone 2005: 40)

It can be used for locatives (in example (263), at- is a verbal particle meaning ‘at’):

- (262) *ni-ta Cormac sund, at-ta in-sind chathr-aig*
 NEG-COP.PRS.3SG Cormac here, at-COP.PRS.3SG in-ART city-DAT.SG
 ‘Cormac is not here, he is in town.’ (p.c. Cormac Anderson)

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

- (263) *at-taat fíad-chait in-sind gurt*
 at-COP.PRS.3PL wild-cat.NOM.PL in-ART garden.DAT.SG
 ‘There are wild cats in the garden.’ (p.c. Cormac Anderson)
- (264) *ni-taat fíad-chait in-sind gurt*
 NEG-COP.PRS.3PL wild-cat.NOM.PL in-ART garden.DAT.SG
 ‘There are no wild cats in the garden.’ (p.c. Cormac Anderson)

The substantive verb can also be used for existential predicates. The form *and* below is identical in composition and meaning to the Modern Irish *ann*.

- (265) *at-taat fíad-chait and*
 at-COP.PRS.3PL wild-cat.NOM.PL in.3SG.N
 ‘There are wild cats.’ (p.c. Cormac Anderson)
- (266) *ni-taat fíad-chait and*
 NEG-COP.PRS.3PL wild-cat.NOM.PL in.3SG.N
 ‘There are no wild cats.’ (p.c. Cormac Anderson)

As we can consider the substantive verb to be equivalent to any normal verb, no formal distinction is made between standard negation and existential negation. Old Irish can therefore be classified as Type A.

As an aside, the same might apply for predicates that take the copula rather than the substantive verb, including adjectives and nouns (McCone 2005: 39).

- (267) *is fer hard Find*
 COP.PRS.3SG man.NOM.SG tall Find
 ‘Find is tall.’ (p.c. Cormac Anderson)
- (268) *ni fer hard Find*
 NEG.COP.PRS.POS.3SG man.NOM.3SG tall Find
 ‘Find is not tall.’ (p.c. Cormac Anderson)

The negative copula *ni* might be considered to be *ni-ø*, where *ni* is the standard negator, and the copula has a zero form.

Scottish Gaelic

The negators of Scottish Gaelic are the preverbal particles *cha(n)* and *nach*. The following example illustrates both of them in a double negative construction:

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

- (269) *cha chreid mi nach eil iad gu math*
 NEG believe.INDF 1SG NEG.COMP be.PRS 3PL well
 ‘I believe they are well.’ [Lit. I don’t believe that they are not well]
 (Lamb 2001: 61)

As in Irish and Old Irish, Scottish Gaelic has two verbs that are relevant to construct non-verbal predicates: the “substantive” verb *tha* and the defective copula *is* (Lamb 2001: 65). The form *tha* is the independent present form of the verb *bi* ‘to be’, which is often used as an auxiliary with a verbal noun (Lamb 2001: 54). The sentence below illustrates both the independent present form *tha* and the dependent present form *eil* (varies according to dialect, register and grammatical context for the forms *bheil*, *beil*, *eil*, ‘l’):

- (270) *chan eil Mairi cho bradach agus a tha Seumas*
 NEG be.PRS.DEP Mary as thievish and REL be.PRS James
 ‘Mary isn’t as thievish as James is.’ (Lamb 2001: 42)

The dependent form of approximately 10 irregular verbs, including *bi* ‘to be’, is used when the verb is preceded by what are referred to as pre-verbal particles or sentence class markers, including the clausal negator *cha(n)* (*cha* appears before consonant-initial words, *chan* before vowel-initial words) (Lamb 2001: 48–50).

The copula *is* is used for predicate nominals (Lamb 2001: 66–67), while the substantive verb *tha* is used for predicate adjectives, locatives, possession and existentials (Lamb 2001: 67–69).

- (271) *Tha cait fhiathaich anns a’ ghàradh.*
 be.PRS cat.PL wild in ART.DEF garden
 ‘There are some wild cats in the garden.’ (p.c. William Lamb)
- (272) *Chan eil cait fhiathaich anns a’ ghàradh (ann / idir).*
 NEG be.PRS.DEP cat.PL wild in ART.DEF garden (at.all / at.all)
 ‘There aren’t any wild cats in the garden.’ (p.c. William Lamb)
- (273) *Tha cait fhiathaich ann.*
 be.PRS cat.PL wild there
 ‘There are wild cats.’ (p.c. William Lamb)
- (274) *Chan eil cait fhiathaich (idir) ann.*
 NEG be.PRS.DEP cat.PL wild (at.all) there
 ‘There are no wild cats.’ (p.c. William Lamb)

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

The function of *idir* and *ann* in the current context is to emphasize negation. However, *ann* can be interpreted as a preposition, which is similar to the *ann* found in Irish. It is obligatory in (273) and (274) where it has the same function as English *there*, and is optional in (272). The adverb *idir* serves the same function of emphasizing (272).

While the form of the negative existential, [*chan eil ...*], does not feature the non-negative form of the substantive, *tha*, this is a consequence of the special dependent forms that certain verbs take, including *bi/tha* but also *abair* ‘say’ and *rach* ‘go’. Hence, negative existentials are not formed by a construction that is different from standard negation and Scottish Gaelic can be classified as Type A.

References

- Bashir, Elena. 2006. Change in progress: Negation in Hindi and Urdu. In Rajendra Singh (ed.), *The yearbook of SA Languages and Linguistics 2006*, 3–29. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Beaulieu, Jeremy. 2014. *Package ‘corHMM’: analysis of binary character evolution*.
- Bickel, Balthasar. 2013. Distributional biases in language families. In Balthasar Bickel, Lenore A. Grenoble, David A. Peterson & Alan Timberlake (eds.), *Language typology and historical contingency: In honor of Johanna Nichols*, 415–444. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Bjarnason, Solveig. 1998. *Parlons islandais: Langue et culture*. Paris: L’Harmattan.
- Bordal, Heidi Valentine. 2017. *Negation of existential predication in Swedish: A corpus study*. Stockholms universitet. (MA thesis).
- Bouckaert, Remco, Philippe Lemey, Michael Dunn, Simon J. Greenhill, Alexander V. Alekseyenko, Alexei J. Drummond, Russell D. Gray, Marc A. Suchard & Quentin D. Atkinson. 2012. Mapping the origins and expansion of the Indo-European language family. *Science* 337. 957–960.
- Buchholz, Oda & Wilfrid Fiedler. 1987. *Albanische Grammatik*. Leipzig: Verlag Enzyklopädie.
- Budd, Peter. 2010. Negation in Bierebo and the other languages of Epi, Central Vanuatu. *Oceanic Linguistics* 49(2). 511–541.
- Butt, John & Carmen Benjamin. 1994. *A new reference grammar of modern Spanish*. London: Edward Arnold.
- Camaj, Martin. 1984. *Albanian grammar*. Wiesbaden: Otto Harrassowitz.

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

- Christmas, Raymond B. & J. Elisabeth Christmas. 1973a. Clause patterns in Kupia. In Ronald L. Trail (ed.), *Patterns in clause, sentence, and discourse in selected languages of India and Nepal, part 2*, 257–343. Norman, Okla.: Summer Institute of Linguistics.
- Christmas, Raymond B. & J. Elisabeth Christmas. 1973b. Kupia texts. In Ronald L. Trail (ed.), *Patterns in clause, sentence, and discourse in selected languages of India and Nepal, part 3* (Publications in Linguistics and Related Fields 41), 3–108. Norman, Okla.: Summer Institute of Linguistics.
- Clark, Eve V. 1978. Locationals: Existential, locative, and possessive constructions. In Joseph H. Greenberg (ed.), *Universals of human language*. Vol. 4: *Syntax*, 85–126. Stanford: Stanford University Press.
- Creissels, Denis. 2013. *Existential predication in typological perspective*. Paper presented at the 46th Annual Meeting of the Societas Linguistica Europaea, Split, Croatia, 18–21 September 2013. Revised May 2014.
- Croft, William. 1991. The evolution of negation. *Journal of Linguistics* 27(1). 1–27.
- Cyffer, Norbert, Erwin Ebermann & Georg Ziegelmeyer (eds.). 2009. *Negation patterns in West African languages and beyond*. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Dediu, Dan & Stephen Levinson. 2012. Abstract profiles of structural stability point to universal tendencies, family-specific factors, and ancient connections between languages. *PloS One* 7(9), e45198. 1–15.
- Drinka, Bridget. 2017. *Language contact in Europe: The periphrastic perfect through history*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Dryer, Matthew S. 2013. *Negative Morphemes*. Matthew S. Dryer & Martin Haspelmath (eds.). <http://wals.info/chapter/112> (2018-05-20).
- Dum-Tragut, Jasmine. 2009. *Armenian*. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Dunn, Michael, Simon J. Greenhill, Stephen C. Levinson & Russell D. Gray. 2011. Evolved structure of language shows lineage-specific trends in word-order universals. *Nature* 473. 79–82.
- Einarsson, Stefán. 1949. *Icelandic: Grammar, texts, glossary*. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins Press.
- Gönczöl-Davies, Ramona. 2008. *Romanian: An essential grammar*. London: Routledge.
- Greenough, J. B., G. L. Kittredge, A. A. Howard & B. L. D’Ooge. 1903. *New Latin grammar*. Boston: Ginn & Company.
- Haig, Geoffrey L. J. 2008. *Alignment change in Iranian languages: A construction grammar approach*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Hammarström, Harald, Sebastian Bank, Robert Forkel & Martin Haspelmath. 2018. *Glottolog 3.2*. Jena: Max Planck Institute for the Science of Human History.

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

- Henriksen, Carol & Johan van der Auwera. 1994. The Germanic languages. In Ekkehard König & Johan van der Auwera (eds.), *The Germanic languages*, 1–18. London: Routledge.
- Holton, David, Peter Mackridge & Irene Philippaki-Warburton. 2004. *Greek: An essential grammar of the modern language*. London: Routledge.
- Holton, David, Peter Mackridge & Irene Philippaki-Warburton. 2012. *Greek: A comprehensive grammar*. 2nd edn. London: Routledge.
- Hualde, José Ignacio. 1992. *Catalan*. London: Routledge.
- Jäger, Agnes. 2007. ‘No’ changes: On the history of German indefinite determiners in the scope of negation. In Elisabeth Stark, Elisabeth Leiss & Werner Abraham (eds.), *Studies in language companion series*, 141–170. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Kahrel, Peter & René van den Berg (eds.). 1994. *Typological studies in negation*. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Kalėdaitė, Violeta. 2008. Language-specific existential sentence types: A case study of Lithuanian. *Kalbotyra* 59(3). 128–137.
- King, Gareth. 2003. *Modern Welsh: A comprehensive grammar*. London: Routledge.
- Kiparsky, Paul & Cleo Condoravdi. 2006. Tracking Jespersen’s cycle. In Mark Janse, Brian Joseph & A. Ralli (eds.), *Proceedings of the 2nd International Conference of Modern Greek Dialects and Linguistic Theory*, 172–197. Patras: University of Patras.
- Lamb, William. 2001. *Scottish Gaelic*. München: Lincom.
- Lang, Margaret & Isabelle Perez. 2004. *Modern French grammar: A practical guide*. 2nd edn. London: Routledge.
- Lecoq, P. 1979. *Le dialect du Sivand*. Weisbaden: Harrasowitz.
- Mahmoudveysi, Parwin, Denise Bailey, Ludwig Paul & Geoffrey Haig. 2012. *The Gorani language of Gawraju, a village of west Iran: Texts, grammar, and lexicon*. Wiesbaden: Reichert.
- Mathiassen, Terje. 1996. *A short grammar of Lithuanian*. Columbus: Slavica.
- Mathiassen, Terje. 1997. *A short grammar of Latvian*. Columbus: Slavica.
- McCone, Kim. 2005. *A first Old Irish grammar and reader*. Maynooth: National University of Ireland.
- Neukom, Lukas & Manideepa Patnaik. 2003. *A grammar of Oriya*. Zürich: Seminar für Allgemeine Sprachwissenschaft.
- Nourzaei, Maryam, Carina Jahani, Erik Anonby & Abbas Ali Ahangar. 2015. *Koroshi: A corpus-based grammatical description*. Uppsala: Acta Universitatis Upsaliensis.

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

- Offord, Malcolm. 2006. *A student grammar of French*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Paul, Daniel. 2011. *A comparative dialectal description of Iranian Taleshi*. University of Manchester. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Payne, Thomas E. 1997. *Describing morphosyntax: A guide for field linguists*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Perry, John R. 2005. *A Tajik Persian reference grammar* (Handbuch der Orientalistik: Section Eight: Uralic & Central Asian Studies 11). Leiden: Brill.
- Peyronel, Stella & Ian Higgins. 2006. *Basic Italian: A grammar and workbook*. London: Routledge.
- Press, Ian. 1986. *A grammar of Modern Breton*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Puigdollers, A. R. Revuelta. 2015. Managing information in Modern Greek: Parallel focus markers. *Studies in Greek Linguistics* 35. 478–489.
- R Development Core Team. 2008. *R: A language and environment for statistical computing*. Vienna: R Foundation for Statistical Computing.
- Rastorgueva, V. S., A. A. Kerimova, A. K. Mamedzade, L. A. Pireiko & D. I. Edelman. 2012. *The Gilaki language*. English translation editing and expanded content by Ronald M. Lockwood. Uppsala: Acta Universitatis Upsaliensis.
- Roby, Henry John. 1862. *Elementary Latin grammar*. Reprinted in 2010. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Schmitt, Rudiger. 1991. *Part I, Inscriptions of Ancient Iran. The Bisitun Inscriptions of Darius the Great* (Corpus Inscriptionum Iranicarum I. The Old Persian inscriptions. Texts I). London: Corpus Inscriptionum Iranicarum (=DB).
- Shaked, Shaul. 1979. *The wisdom of the Sasanian Sages: An edition, with translation and notes of Dēnkard, Book six*. (=DK6). Boulder: Westwind Press.
- Shokri, G., C. Jahani & H. Barani. 2013. *When tradition meets modernity: Five life stories from the Galesh community in Ziarat, Golestan, Iran*. Uppsala: Acta Universitatis Upsaliensis.
- Siewierska, Anna. 2013. Alignment of Verbal Person Marking. In Matthew S. Dryer & Martin Haspelmath (eds.), *The World Atlas of Language Structures Online*. Leipzig: Max Planck Institute for Evolutionary Anthropology. <http://wals.info/chapter/100> (2018-05-25).
- Skjærvø, Prods Oktor. 2009a. Middle West Iranian. In Gernot Windfuhr (ed.), *The Iranian languages*, 2012 paperback ed., 196–278. London: Routledge.
- Skjærvø, Prods Oktor. 2009b. Middle west iranian. In Grenot Windfuhr (ed.), *The iranian languages* (Routledge Language Family Series), 196–278. London & New York: Routledge.
- Skjærvø, Prods Oktor. 2009c. Old Iranian. In Gernot Windfuhr (ed.), *The Iranian languages*, 2012 paperback ed., 43–195. London: Routledge.

6 Negative existentials in Indo-European

- Skjærø, Prods Oktor. 2009d. Old iranian. In Grenot Windfuhr (ed.), *The iranian languages* (Routledge Language Family Series), 43–195. London & New York: Routledge.
- Stenson, Nancy. 1981. *Studies in Irish syntax*. Tübingen: Gunter Narr.
- Stenson, Nancy. 2008. *Basic Irish: A grammar and workbook*. London: Routledge.
- Thackston, W. M. 2006. *Kurmanji Kurdish: A reference grammar with selected readings*. Harvard: Harvard University. https://sites.fas.harvard.edu/~iranian/Kurmanji/kurmanji_1_grammar.pdf.
- Tiersma, Pieter Meijes. 1999. *Frisian reference grammar*. Jjouwert: Fryske Akademy.
- Turano, Giuseppina. 2000. On clitics and negation in Albanian. *Rivista di Grammatica Generativa* 25. 81–117.
- Vahman, Fereydun. 1988. *Ardā Wirāz Nāmag – The Iranian ‘Divina Commedia’*. (=AWN). London: Curzon Press.
- van der Auwera, Johan. 2011. Standard Average European. In Benny Kortmann & Johan van der Auwera (eds.), *The languages and linguistics of Europe: A comprehensive guide*, 291–306. Berlin: De Gruyter Mouton.
- van Gelderen, Elly. 2021. The Negative Existential and Other Cycles: Jespersen, Givón, and the Copula Cycle. In Ljuba Veselinova & Arja Hamari (eds.), *The Negative Existential Cycle*, 531–553. Berlin: Language Science Press. DOI: ??.
- Verbeke, Saartje. 2013. *Alignment and ergativity in new Indo-Aryan languages*. Berlin: De Gruyter Mouton.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2013. Negative existentials: A cross-linguistic study. *Italian Journal of Linguistics* 25(1). 107–145.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2014. The negative existential cycle revisited. *Linguistics* 52(6). 1327–1389.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2015. Special negators in the Uralic languages: Synchrony, diachrony and interaction with standard negation. In Matti Miestamo, Anne Tamm & Beáta Wagner-Nagy (eds.), *Negation in Uralic languages* (Typological Studies in Language 108), 547–599. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2016. The negative existential cycle viewed through the lens of comparative data. In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change continued* (Linguistics Today 227), 139–187. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Wheeler, Maw W., Alan Yates & Nicolau Dols. 1999. *Catalan: A comprehensive grammar*. London: Routledge.
- Williams, Allen V. 1990. *The Pahlavi Rivayāt accompanying the Dādestān ī dēnīg*. (=PRDD). Copenhagen: Munksgaard.

Annemarie Verkerk & Shahar Shirtz

- Willis, David. 2013. Negation in the history of the Brythonic Celtic languages. In David Willis, Christopher Lucas & Anne Breitbart (eds.), *The history of negation in the languages of Europe and the Mediterranean*. Vol. I: Case studies, 239–298. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Willis, David, Christopher Lucas & Anne Breitbart (eds.). 2013. *The history of negation in the languages of Europe and the Mediterranean*. Vol. I: Case Studies. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Windfuhr, Gernot & John R. Perry. 2009. Persian and Tajik. In Gernot Windfuhr (ed.), *The Iranian languages*, 416–544. London: Routledge.
- Wood, Jim. 2012. *Icelandic morphosyntax and argument structure*. New York University. (Doctoral dissertation).

Chapter 7

The negative existential cycle in Moksha Mordvin: From a negative existential into a negative auxiliary

Arja Hamari^a

^aUniversity of Helsinki

Moksha (Mordvin, Uralic) has a complex negation system with several negative markers. I examine two of these markers: the negative existential *aš* (~ *ajas*) and the past tense negative auxiliary *aš-*. This auxiliary is generally assumed to have developed when the negative existential *aš* acquired the additional function of an auxiliary. This study demonstrates that the negative existential cycle provides a framework to understand the development of the negative existential into a negative auxiliary; the negative existential entered the verbal domain as the short answer ‘no’ and was fused with the older negative auxiliary, *iž-*, which continues to be used as an alternative to *aš-*. This study is based on the analysis of corpus data: First, to clarify their relationship in the contemporary language, the different functions of the negative existential are introduced. Second, the competing paradigms of the two negative auxiliaries *aš-* and *iž-* are investigated.

Keywords: Uralic, Moksha, negative existential, negative auxiliary, past tense

1 Introduction

Moksha and its closest sister language, Erzya, form the Mordvin branch of the Uralic language family. The Proto-Mordvin period began in approximately 1500 BCE and this period was preceded by a protolanguage that was common to the Mordvin, Finnic and Saami languages. The division of Proto-Mordvin into Moksha and Erzya probably began around the eighth century CE (Bartens 1999: 13–15; Keresztes 2011: 13–14).



Arja Hamari. 2021. The negative existential cycle in Moksha Mordvin: From a negative existential into a negative auxiliary. In Ljuba Veselinova & Arja Hamari (eds.), *The Negative Existential Cycle*, 265–296. Berlin: Language Science Press. DOI: ??

Arja Hamari

The Mordvin languages are spoken in Russia, with less than half of Mordvins living in the autonomous Republic of Mordovia, which is situated in the middle course of the Volga. The remaining Mordvins reside in the surrounding provinces of the Russian Federation as well as in the neighboring republics of Chuvashia and Tatarstan. According to the latest census of the Russian Federation in 2010, there are approximately 806,000¹ ethnic Mordvins. Of these, 431,600 were reported to have mastered either Erzya or Moksha, but no reliable data is available on their native languages. However, it is estimated that around a third of the speakers speak Moksha, while two-thirds speak Erzya. The number of speakers of both languages are declining, as Russian is replacing them, especially among the younger generations.

The negation system of both Mordvin languages is known to be complex. Both languages have different types of negative markers and their distribution is determined by factors such as the type of clause, type of predicate, tense, and mood. The system can be explained predominantly by innovations that occurred during the Proto-Mordvin period and are therefore shared by both sister languages (Bartens 1999: 140–144; Hamari 2007; 2011; 2013; Hamari & Aasmäe 2015). However, the situation is somewhat different for the negative existentials. The Moksha and Erzya languages have a special negator for existential and possessive clauses (Moksha *aš*² ~ *ajaš* and Erzya *aras*), but the origin of both negators is uncertain and no common source can be reconstructed for these markers. In addition, only Moksha *aš* has further developed the function of a past tense negative auxiliary. Moksha also has an older past tense negative auxiliary *iž-* (dialectally *az-*), which has the etymological cognate *ež-* in Erzya.

The purpose of this paper is to examine the development of the Moksha existential marker *aš* into a past tense negative auxiliary *aš-* of verbal clauses from the viewpoint of the negative existential cycle originally described by Croft (1991). I will begin the examination in §3 by providing an overview of the negative constructions reconstructed for Proto-Uralic and of what is known about the development of negative existentials in Uralic languages. In §4 I will introduce the negation system of Moksha to clarify the functions of the different negative markers. In §5 I examine the several functions of the Moksha negative existential *aš*. In

¹According to some sources, the number is 744,237 (for example, see Hamari & Aasmäe 2015). However, this smaller figure does not include the persons who declared themselves either as Erzyas or Mokshas rather than Mordvins (cf. http://www.gks.ru/free_doc/new_site/perepis2010/croc/Documents/Vol4/pub-04-01.pdf).

²For purposes of this study, the negative existential is referred to as *aš*, while the negative auxiliary with the same stem is marked with a hyphen, that is, *aš-*. This is because the negative existential can appear without further inflection, whereas the negative auxiliary always has a personal ending following the stem.

7 *The negative existential cycle in Moksha Mordvin*

§6, in order to determine the current situation for the negative existential cycle in the language, I will analyze the contemporary uses of the negative auxiliary *aš-* and its relationship to the auxiliary *iž-*. The development of the negative existential *aš* and the auxiliary *aš-* is discussed in §7 and conclusions are presented in §8.

I previously studied the functions of the Moksha negative markers – including the existential *aš* and auxliliary *aš-* in Hamari (2007; 2013). However, this paper examines their mutual relationship in the contemporary language in the light of new data, and discusses the historical development of the functions in closer detail than in the earlier studies.

The data for the present study were gathered from an electronic corpus referred to as MokshEr. The corpus is administered by The Research Unit for Volgaic Languages at the University of Turku. This corpus includes literary texts, such as journals and newspapers from the years 2002–2005, as well as works of fiction. The size of the corpus is approximately 485,000 words. The references to MokshEr indicate the locations of the data within the corpus itself.

2 Transcription

The Uralic Phonetic Alphabet (also known as the Finno-Ugric transcription system) was adopted to transcribe Moksha (see Sovijärvi & Peltola 1977). It is important to mention that Moksha has a reduced vowel /ə/ that usually occurs in an unstressed position, predominantly in non-initial syllables but also in unstressed initial syllables. This reduced vowel has both velar and palatal allophones. The Uralic Phonetic Alphabet represents the palatal allophone as /ə/ and the velar as /ə̄/. In the transcriptions of the present study, the Moksha reduced vowel is indicated by a /ə/ but its velar and palatal allophones are not differentiated.

3 Negative markers in the Uralic languages

Two negative markers are reconstructed in the Uralic protolanguage: the negative auxiliary **e-* in standard negation, and the imperative auxiliary **elV-*, which may have been some type of extension or a supplementary form of **e-* (Janhunen 1982: 37). According to Janhunen, the negative auxiliaries probably carried the marking of the subject person, tense, and mood, while the lexical verb had a fixed form with a suffix in *-*k*³. This suffix was most likely an original nominalizer of

³In Uralic linguistics, the form of the lexical verb that occurs in a negative auxiliary is often referred to as a connegative.

Arja Hamari

verbs, and it was also used to mark the imperative of the second person singular in the affirmative. Honți (1997: 241–242) argues that as the form of the lexical verb in standard negation was originally based on a nominalized verb form, the negative constructions could have originated as copula clauses with a negative copula verb, as in **e-m mene-k* ‘I am not a goer’ (*-m ‘1SG’, **mene-* ‘go’) > ‘I don’t go, I am not going’. Most, but not all, contemporary Uralic languages have retained at least some traces of the original negative markers **e-* and/or **elV-* in their negation of verbal clauses; in many languages, these are still negative auxiliaries with conjugational properties but in others, some form of the auxiliary may have developed into a generalized negative particle (for example, see Comrie 1981).

In addition to the negators of verbal clauses, many Uralic languages have separate negative markers for non-verbal clauses. Veselinova (2015) examines the special negators in the Uralic languages that negate stative predictions, that is, predictions without a verbal predicate. Veselinova concludes that this language family has three types of special negators: (i) *Negative existentials* are most typically used to negate existence, location, and possession; (ii) *Ascriptive negators* are used to negate predictions in identity, class inclusion, and property attribution; and (iii) *General stative negators* negate all stative predictions. The special negators that most widely occur in the Uralic languages are the negative existentials and while ascriptive negators are also rather common, general stative negators only occur in Udmurt and in (now extinct) Kamas. None of these negators, however, descend from Proto-Uralic but instead must be regarded as more recent innovations (see Veselinova 2015: 567–568, 570–571, 572 for references to diachronic information). As a consequence, if special negators of stative predictions existed in Proto-Uralic, no evidence can be found in the daughter languages to suggest this.

The development of negative existentials that occur in contemporary Uralic languages differ. Veselinova (2015: 566–567) concludes that a negative existential can be (a) a fusion of a negative marker and a (nominalized) form of a copula or copula-like verb, (b) a specified function of a particular form of the original negative verb, (c) a reanalysis of a word with an inherently negative content, or (d) a borrowing. Furthermore, as Bartens (1996, *in passim*) observes, both the affirmative and negative existentials of Uralic languages typically have nominal properties. As I later demonstrate in §7.1, mechanisms that are usually suggested as explanations for the development of the Moksha negative existential are the fusion of a negative marker and a copula-like verb or reanalysis.

7 The negative existential cycle in Moksha Mordvin

4 Negation in Moksha

The complexity of the Mordvin negation systems and their development have been addressed in several studies (for example, see Bartens 1999: 140–144; Keresztes 2011: 87–87; Hamari 2007; 2011; 2013), and I will therefore not provide a full account of negation in Moksha. The formation of verbal negation in Moksha is summarized in Table 7.1. Moksha is a pro-drop language and the person and number of the subject are expressed in the verbal suffixes. This means that the examples of both negative and affirmative constructions in Table 7.1 can be considered full clauses.

As can be seen in Table 7.1, the negation patterns of the present and second past tense indicative as well as the conditional and conditional-conjunctive moods are symmetric: The only difference between the affirmative and negative verb forms is the existence of the negative particle before the inflected predicate verb in the negative construction. The negation of all other verb forms is asymmetric: These forms are negated by negative auxiliaries followed by an invariant connegative form of the lexical verb, which means that the marking of finiteness appears in the negative marker instead of the lexical verb. (See Miestamo 2005 for a detailed study on symmetric and asymmetric negation.) However, the negative auxiliary *afəl-* of the desiderative and the conjunctive moods has most likely developed from a fusion of the particle *af* and the inflected form of the verb *ulə-* ‘be’ (for example, see Bartens 1999: 142).

In addition to the negative markers presented in Table 7.1, there are two negative suffixes: *-ftäřá-/ftäřä-* of the conditional and *-ftäřalə-/ftäřälə-* of the conditional-conjunctive mood (Klemm 1934: 392–393; Paasonen 1953: 012; Pall 1957: 221; Bartens 1999: 141). These suffixes are fusions of the negative particle *af* and the following auxiliary verbs: **täřa-* ‘try’ for the conditional and both **täřa-* ‘try’ and *ulə-* ‘be’ for the conditional-conjunctive (Bartens 1999: 129–137). The auxiliary constructions followed the connegatives of the lexical verbs and finally agglutinated with them. However, the suffixes are extremely rare in contemporary Moksha, which prefers constructions formed on the particle *af* and the affirmative form of the lexical verb.

According to the classification proposed by Veselinova (2015), Moksha belongs to the group of the Uralic languages that have a negative existential but no other special negators for non-verbal (or stative) predication. The negative particle *af* that occurs in verbal negation is used to negate ascriptive clauses, while the negative existential *aš* (with a longer variant *ajas*) occurs in existential and possessive clauses. In locative clauses, both are possible but with certain semantic differences (see §5.3). Table 7.2 illustrates the functions of the different negators

Arja Hamari

Table 7.1: The negation of verbal clauses in Moksha

| Mood | Tense | Negator | Example of a negative clause | Corresponding affirmative clause |
|-------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|--|--|
| Indicative | Present tense | particle <i>af</i> | <i>af mor-an</i> NEG sing-PRS.1SG 'I do not sing / I am not singing / I will not sing' | <i>mor-an</i> sing-PRS.1SG 'I sing / I am singing / I will sing' |
| | | a) auxiliary <i>iž-</i> | <i>iž-əní mora</i> NEG.PST-PST.1SG sing.CNG 'I did not sing' | <i>mora-ń</i> sing-PST.1SG 'I sang' |
| | First past tense | b) auxiliary <i>aš-</i> | <i>aš-əní mora</i> NEG.PST-PST.1SG sing.CNG 'I did not sing' | |
| | | particle <i>af</i> | <i>af mora-ləní</i> NEG sing-PST.1SG 'I didn't use to sing' | <i>mora-ləní</i> sing-PST.1SG 'I used to sing' |
| | Second past tense | particle <i>af</i> | <i>ta-t mora</i> NEG.IMP-2SG sing.CNG 'do not sing' | <i>mora-k</i> sing-IMP.2SG 'sing' |
| | Imperative | auxiliary <i>ta-</i> | <i>ta-z-at mora</i> NEG.IMP-OPT-2SG sing.CNG 'may you not sing' | <i>mora-z-at</i> sing-OPT-2SG 'may you sing' |
| Optative | | auxiliary <i>ta</i> | <i>afələ-ksələní mora</i> NEG-DES.1SG sing.CNG 'I didn't intend to sing' | <i>mora-ləksələní</i> sing-DES.1SG 'I intended to sing' |
| Desiderative | | auxiliary <i>afəl-</i> | <i>afələní mora</i> NEG.CONJ.1SG sing.CNG 'if I did not sing' | <i>mora-ləní</i> sing-CONJ.1SG 'if I sang' |
| Conjunctive | | auxiliary <i>afəl-</i> | <i>af mora-ńdäřá-n</i> NEG sing-COND-1SG 'if I do not sing' | <i>mora-ńdäřá-n</i> sing-COND-1SG 'if I sing' |
| Conditional | | particle <i>af</i> | <i>af mora-ńdäřálań</i> NEG sing-COND.CONJ.1SG 'if I hadn't sung' | <i>mora-ńdäřálań</i> sing-COND.CONJ.1SG 'if I had sung' |
| Conditional-conjunctive | | particle <i>af</i> | | |

7 The negative existential cycle in Moksha Mordvin

of the non-verbal predication in the present tense and Table 7.3 lists the functions of the negators in the past tense.

Table 7.2: The negation of non-verbal clauses in the present tense in Moksha.

| Non-verbal clause | Negator | Example of a negative clause | Corresponding affirmative clause |
|-------------------|----------------|--|---|
| Ascriptive | <i>af</i> | (mon) <i>af od-an</i> 1SG NEG young-PRS.1SG 'I am not young' | (mon) <i>od-an</i> 1SG young-PRS.1SG 'I am young' |
| Existential | a) <i>aš</i> | <i>pakša-sa aš traktor</i> field-INE NEG tractor 'there is no tractor in the field' | <i>pakša-sa ul-i traktor</i> field-INE be-PRS.3SG tractor 'there is a tractor in the field' |
| | b) <i>ajaš</i> | <i>pakša-sa ajaš traktor</i> field-INE NEG tractor 'there is no tractor in the field' | |
| Possessive | a) <i>aš</i> | <i>moń aš</i> 1SG.GEN NEG <i>cora-žä</i> son-POSS.1SG.SG 'I don't have a son' | <i>moń ul-i</i> 1SG.GEN be-PRS.3SG <i>cora-žä</i> son-POSS.1SG.SG 'I have a son' |
| | b) <i>ajaš</i> | <i>moń ajaš cora-žä</i> 1SG.GEN NEG son-POSS.1SG.SG 'I don't have a son' | |
| Locative | a) <i>af</i> | (mon) <i>af pakša-s-an</i> 1SG NEG field-INE-PRS.1SG 'I am not in the field' | (mon) <i>pakša-s-an</i> 1SG field-INE-PRS.1SG 'I am in the field' |
| | b) <i>aš</i> | (mon) <i>aš-an pakša-sa</i> 1SG NEG-PRS.1SG field-INE 'I am not in the field' | |

Finally, the negative particle *apak* is used to negate participles and converbs. As both affirmative and negative participles can occur in the predicate position, *apak* could also be regarded as a negator of non-verbal clauses. In this analysis, however, I will exclude these clauses because they are not prototypical stative expressions as the predicates have a verbal basis.

Arja Hamari

Table 7.3: The negation of non-verbal clauses in the past tense in Moksha.

| Non-verbal clause | Negator | Example of a negative clause | Corresponding affirmative clause |
|-------------------|--------------|--|---|
| Ascriptive | <i>af</i> | (mon) <i>af oda-ləń</i> 1SG NEG young-PST.1SG 'I was not young' | (mon) <i>oda-ləń</i> 1SG young-PST.1SG 'I was young' |
| Existential | <i>aš</i> | <i>pakša-sa ašə-l'</i> field-INE NEG-PST.3SG <i>traktər</i> tractor 'there was no tractor in the field' | <i>pakša-sa ul'-ś</i> field-INE be-PST.3SG <i>traktər</i> tractor 'there was a tractor in the field' |
| Possessive | <i>aš</i> | <i>moń ašə-l'</i> 1SG.GEN NEG-PST.3SG <i>ćora-źä</i> son-POSS.1SG.SG 'I didn't have a son' | <i>moń ul'-ś</i> 1SG.GEN be-PST.3SG <i>ćora-źä</i> son-POSS.1SG.SG 'I had a son' |
| Locative | a) <i>af</i> | (mon) <i>af pakša-sə-ləń</i> 1SG NEG field-INE-PST.1SG 'I was not in the field' | (mon) <i>pakša-sə-ləń</i> 1SG field-INE-PST.1SG 'I was in the field' |
| | b) <i>aš</i> | (mon) <i>ašə-ləń pakša-sa</i> 1SG NEG-PST.1SG field-INE 'I was not in the field' | |

Before moving on to the functions of *aš* and *ajaš*, it is necessary to clarify how predication is expressed in Moksha. As is presented in Table 7.2 and Table 7.3, the non-verbal predicates of ascriptive and locative clauses take the verbal personal suffixes and agree with the subject person and number. In the present tense, these suffixes are the normal personal endings, except for the third persons. The third person singular of non-verbal predication has no personal ending, whereas the third person plural takes the plural suffix *-t/-t'* of nouns instead of that of verbs.⁴

The situation for the past tense is slightly more complicated. In verbal predication, there are two past tense categories: the first past tense which is unmarked

⁴However, historically, the verbal suffixes of the third person forms can be traced to participial forms with the participle ending in *-i*. So the verb forms are, in fact, original nominal predicates with no person marking in the singular, and the plural ending in *-t/-t'* in the plural.

7 The negative existential cycle in Moksha Mordvin

(for instance, *mora-ń* ‘I sang’) and the second past tense which has a habitual or progressive reading (such as *mora-l̩əń* ‘I used to sing, I was singing’). However, non-verbal predication only takes the second past tense, and in this case, it is unmarked, that is, it is not habitual or progressive but a neutral past tense (for example, *odə-l̩əń* ‘I was young’).⁵ Table 7.4 presents the tense suffixes that are possible for non-verbal as compared to verbal predicates of Moksha.

Table 7.4: Non-verbal predication versus verbal predication in Moksha.

| Non-verbal predication of <i>od</i> ‘young’ | | | Verbal predication of <i>mora-</i> ‘sing’ | | |
|--|----------------|-------------------|--|------------------|-------------------|
| | Present tense | Second past tense | Present tense | First past tense | Second past tense |
| 1sg | <i>od-an</i> | <i>odə-l̩əń</i> | <i>mor-an</i> | <i>mora-ń</i> | <i>mora-l̩əń</i> |
| 2sg | <i>od-at</i> | <i>odə-l̩əť</i> | <i>mor-at</i> | <i>mora-t'</i> | <i>mora-l̩əť</i> |
| 3sg | <i>od</i> | <i>odə-l'</i> | <i>mora-j</i> | <i>mora-s'</i> | <i>mora-l'</i> |
| 1pl | <i>od-tama</i> | <i>odə-l̩əmä</i> | <i>mora-tama</i> | <i>mora-mä</i> | <i>mora-l̩əmä</i> |
| 2pl | <i>od-tada</i> | <i>odə-l̩ədä</i> | <i>mora-tada</i> | <i>mora-dä</i> | <i>mora-l̩ədä</i> |
| 3pl | <i>od-t</i> | <i>odə-lt</i> | <i>mora-jt'</i> | <i>mora-ſt'</i> | <i>mora-lt'</i> |

5 The negative existential *aš*

5.1 The general properties of *aš*

If we adopt the definition suggested by Veselinova (2013: 118–139), we can state that Moksha *aš* behaves similarly to a prototypical negative existential. First, as will be demonstrated, it is difficult to pinpoint a specific word class that *aš* belongs to because it has different inflectional properties in different functions. Second, *aš* is used to negate existence, possession and location, which are the most common contexts for negative existentials cross-linguistically. Third, *aš* appears as a pro-sentence and a short word for ‘no’, which are also frequent uses of negative existentials. Fourth, in existential and possessive clauses, *aš* replaces the affirmative existential rather than negates it.

In the following, the functional and semantic properties of *aš* are considered in the order that reflects the order of frequency of functions found in the negative existentials cross-linguistically (Veselinova 2013: 118–119). In §5.2, existential

⁵Historically, the second past tense endings are personal forms of the verb *ul̩ə-* ‘be’ that were attached to the predicate; this *ul̩ə-* ‘be’ was conjugated in the first past tense.

Arja Hamari

and possessive clauses are examined together, as their prototypical negative constructions resemble each other, while locative clauses are analyzed separately in §5.3 due to their different predicational properties. §5.4 presents the use of *aš* as a negative pro-sentence and a negative interjection. Finally, the occurrences of *aš* as a noun are considered in §5.5

5.2 Existential and possessive clauses

As the constructions of possessive clauses are rather similar to existential clauses, both clause types will be addressed in this section. I will first consider the affirmative constructions of these clause types and then focus on the negative forms.

In Moksha existential clauses, the subject of the sentence is in the indefinite nominative form and, being indefinite, it is necessarily in the third person (see Table 7.2). While the existential sentence may express the plain existence of the referent without further specifications of a location, a locative phrase can be present, as in (1). In the affirmative, the existential predicate is the third person form of the verb ‘be’, that is, (sg.) *uli*, (pl.) *ulijt*. (For more details, see Hamari 2007: 47–52.)

- (1) *Kuxńa-sa plita ul-i, no son ušńa-ma penga-sa.*
 kitchen-INE stove be-PRS.3SG but 3SG warn-INF firewood-INE
 ‘There is a stove in the kitchen, but it must be warmed with firewood.’
 [MokshEr-V.3/V.1/Moksha/Moksha/2002/16.txt]

In the possessive clauses, the possessor is often referred to by a noun or a pronoun in the genitive case.⁶ Furthermore, the subject has a possessive suffix that refers to the possessor; as the possessor can be concluded from the possessive suffix, the noun or pronoun can be dropped, as in (2). In the affirmative, the forms of the verb ‘be’ are used as predicates. (See, for example, Hamari 2007: 52–57.)

- (2) *Kudo-ńkä ul-i, žuvata-ńkä ul-ijt.*
 house-POSS.1PL be-PRS.3SG cattle-POSS.1PL be-PRS.3PL
 ‘We have a house, we have cattle.’ [MokshEr-V.3/V.1/Moksha/Moksha/2005/22.txt]

Both *aš* and *ajaš* can occur in the negation of existential and possessive clauses, although *aš* is far more common than *ajaš*. Moreover, according to Nadezhda

⁶However, the plural personal pronouns are ambiguous as to the nominative and the genitive case (for example, *śiń* is both 3PL.NOM and 3PL.GEN).

7 The negative existential cycle in Moksha Mordvin

Kabaeva (p.c.), *ajaš* is regarded as a colloquial form, whereas *aš* is in general use both in the spoken and in the literary language. However, as both variants appeared in the written data of the present study, I will consider both of them.

In the present tense, *aš* and *ajaš* can be described as invariant negative predicates because neither of them agrees with a plural subject – unlike the affirmative predicate based on the verb ‘be’ that occurs in (1) and (2). Table 7.2 shows the present tense existential and possessive clauses with a singular subject, whereas in (3) and (4), a plural subject occurs.

- (3) *Ajaš traktəR-t, šarijt' aš.*
 NEG tractor-PL wheel.PL NEG

‘There are no tractors, there are no wheels.’ [MokshEr-V.3/V.1/Moksha/Varia/C/1.txt]

- (4) a. *Moń aš čora-ńä.*
 1SG.GEN NEG son-POSS.1SG.PL
 ‘I don’t have sons.’ [Nadezhda Kabaeva, p.c.]
- b. *Moń ajaš čora-ńä.*
 1SG.GEN NEG son-POSS.1SG.PL
 ‘I don’t have sons.’ [Nadezhda Kabaeva, p.c.]

The plurality of the subject in existential clauses (such as 3) is expressed by the plural suffix *-t / -t'*, whereas plurality in possessive clauses (such as 4) is indicated by the possessive suffix, which is attached to the possessee. This only applies when the possessor is one of the singular persons, as these persons have separate possessive suffixes for a singular and a plural possessee (such as *čora-žä* son-POSS.1SG.SG ‘my son’; *čora-ńä* son-POSS.1SG.PL ‘my sons’), as in (4a) and (4b), respectively. When the possessor is in the plural, the number of the subject is not explicitly marked in the possessive suffixes (such as *čora-ńkä* son-POSS.1.PL.SG/PL ‘our son; our sons’). (5) and (6) exemplify the latter instances of possessive clauses; in both clauses, the possessive suffix is ambiguous with regards to the number of the possessee and that number must be deduced from the context.

- (5) *Da śiń pulə-snə-vək aš.*
 and 3PL.GEN tail-POSS.3PL.SG/PL-CLT NEG
 ‘And they do not have tails either.’ [MokshEr-V.3/V.1/Moksha/Moksha/2002/9.txt]

Arja Hamari

- (6) *Lomatť, kali ajaš tiń-gä šelma-ńtä?*
 person.PL Q NEG 2PL.GEN-CLT eye-POSS.2PL.SG/PL
 ‘People, don’t either of you have eyes?’ [MokshEr-V.3/V.1/Moksha/
 Mokshen_pravda/2004-9/28.txt]

The main difference between the variants *aš* and *ajaš* is that only *aš* can be used in the past tense. Moreover, unlike the present tense in which *aš* is invariant, it is inflected in the past tense; *aš* acquires the suffix of the second past tense as well as the agreement marker of the plural subject (sg. *ašə-l'* (NEG-PST.3SG); pl. *ašə-Lt'* (NEG-PST.3PL)). Examples of past tense existential and possessive clauses with a plural subject are presented in (7) and (8).

- (7) *pakśa-sa ašə-Lt' traktor-t*
 field-INE NEG-PST.3PL tractor-PL
 ‘there were no tractors in the field’ [Nadezhda Kabaeva, p.c.]
- (8) *moń ašə-Lt' cora-nä*
 1SG.GEN NEG-PST.3PL son-POSS.1SG.PL
 ‘I didn’t have sons.’ [Nadezhda Kabaeva, p.c.]

It should be noted that the negative existentials *aš* and *ajaš* are remarkably different from their affirmative equivalent in terms of their inflectional properties. As was illustrated in Tables 7.2 and 7.3, as well as in examples (1) and (2), existential and possessive clauses in Moksha have an affirmative existential *ul'i* that is actually the third person singular form of the verb *ul's-* ‘be’. The affirmative existential agrees with the number of the subject. In the present tense, the regular verbal third person plural form *ul'jɪt'* is used with a plural subject, whereas in the past tense, the first past tense forms (sg.) *ul's*, and (pl.) *ul'st'* are used – a tense form that is neither possible with a non-verbal predicate nor with the negative existential *aš*.

Finally, a special type of modal construction occurs where *aš* appears before an interrogative pronoun. These constructions denote the impossibility to perform certain actions. These actions are expressed by verbs that usually take the infinitive, as in (9).⁷

⁷It is important to emphasize that these are not cases of negative indefinite pronouns. The indefinite pronouns in Moksha are formed by attaching the suffix *-vək/-gək ~ -ga/-gä ~ -ka/-kä* to an interrogative pronoun. The resulting indefinite pronouns can be used either in an affirmative or a negative context (for example, *kosa* ‘where’: *kosavək* ‘somewhere, (not) anywhere, nowhere’).

7 The negative existential cycle in Moksha Mordvin

- (9) *Aš kosa, aš məžarda kńiga-nä luva-ms, [...]*

NEG where.INE NEG when book-DIM read-INF

‘There is no place and time to read a book.’ (Lit. ‘There is no where, there is no when to read a book.’) [MokshEr-V.3/V.1/Moksha/Moksha/2002/16.txt]

No detailed analysis has thus far been published on these constructions, but it seems that they should be regarded as a type of a functional extension of existential clauses. This is because they have affirmative equivalents that are formed with the regular existential predicate, the verb ‘be’, as in (10).

- (10) *Täni ul-i koda azə-ms: jumafksə-nkä oćuftə-Lt’.*

now be-PRS.3SG how say-INF loss-POSS.1PL big.PL-PST.3PL

‘Now it is possible to say: Our losses were great.’ (Lit. ‘Now there is how to say [...]’ [MokshEr-V.3/V.1/Moksha/Moksha/2003-9-10/11.txt]

5.3 Locative clauses

Moksha locative clauses require a locative phrase, as it is the predicate of the clause. The locative phrase acquires the endings of non-verbal predication, that is, the present or the second past tense as well as the marking of the subject person. The clause does not contain a copula or any other predicate item besides the locative phrase. Another feature that differentiates existential and locative expressions is that the subject of the locative clause is definite. This subject is either a personal pronoun or a noun with the definite nominative case suffix; nonetheless, the subject can be omitted because it is expressed in the personal ending of the locative predicate, as in (11):

- (11) *Nona ši-tńəń Mosku-sə-ləń.*

previous day-GEN.DEF.PL Moscow-INE-PST.1SG

‘During the previous days I was in Moscow.’ [V.1/Moksha/Moksha/2002/19.txt]

Negative clauses take either the particle *af* or the existential *aš*. When the particle *af* occurs, the predication is the same as in the affirmative equivalent: The conjugated locative phrase is the predicate of the clause, as in (12).

Arja Hamari

- (12) *Mäläft-k, cora-j, af kud-s-at / Ćebäřnasta*
 remember-IMP.2SG>3SG boy-VOC NEG house-INE-PRS.2SG nicely
pačkət!
 arrive.IMP.2SG
 ‘Remember, my son, you are not at home / Go [to the house] nicely!’ [V.1/
 Moksha/Varia/B/9.txt]

Tables 7.2 and 7.3 present locative clauses that may also be negated by *aš*. The semantic difference between the functions of the ascriptive negator *af* and the existential negator *aš* is identical to what appears between the functions of ascriptive and existential negators in Erzya (see Hamari 2007: 91); the ascriptive *af* implies that the referent is not at the location expressed in the clause but somewhere else, whereas *aš* negates the existence of the referent in the location without the assumption that the referent might be somewhere else (Nadezhda Kabaeva, p.c.). The difference can be captured by comparing examples (12) and (13). In (12) (retrieved from a poem), the listener is asked to approach a house respectfully because he is not at his own home but at a house that belongs to someone else. As a consequence, *af* is used in negation. By contrast, the listener in example (13) is asked whether or not he is home; the listener responds with a negative answer without implying further as to his location. For this reason, *aš* appears.

- (13) – *Vaña, ton kud-s-at? – Aš-an kud-sa, –*
 Vaňa 2SG house-INE-PRS.2SG NEG-PRS.1SG house-INE
atveča-s šä.
 answer-PST.3SG it
 ‘–Vaňa, are you at home? – I am not at home, – he answered.’
 [MokshEr-V.3/V.1/Moksha/Moksha/2002/32.txt]

In addition to the semantic difference, locative clauses that are negated with *af* and *aš* also display a morphosyntactic difference. With the ascriptive negator *af*, the locative phrase remains the non-verbal predicate, as the negative marker is an invariant particle. Nonetheless, the existential negator *aš* acquires the personal endings of the non-verbal conjugation in locative clauses – a property that this negator does not exhibit in existential clauses. As a consequence, *aš* could be regarded as the negative copula of the locative clause. The conjugations of *aš* in the present tense and in the second past tense are presented in Table 7.5 and I provide examples of the uses of the forms in (13) in the present tense and in (14) in the past tense, respectively.

7 The negative existential cycle in Moksha Mordvin

Table 7.5: The non-verbal conjugation of *aš* in locative clauses.

| | Present tense | Past tense |
|-----|----------------|-----------------|
| 1sg | <i>ašan</i> | <i>ašəl'ən</i> |
| 2sg | <i>ašat</i> | <i>ašəl'ət'</i> |
| 3sg | <i>aš</i> | <i>ašəl'</i> |
| 1pl | <i>ašətama</i> | <i>ašəl'əmä</i> |
| 2pl | <i>ašətada</i> | <i>ašəl'ədä</i> |
| 3pl | <i>ašət</i> | <i>ašəL't'</i> |

- (14) *Mon Mosku-sa vestə-vək ašə-lənī.*
 1SG Moscow-INE once-CLT NEG-PST.1SG

'I have never been to Moscow.' [MokshEr-V.3/V.1/Moksha/Moksha/2003-11-12/10.txt]

It is important to note that the conjugational properties of *aš* in locative clauses are non-verbal rather than verbal: In the present tense, the third person singular has no personal ending, whereas in the third person plural, the plural suffix of nouns (instead of verbs) occurs. Resembling non-verbal predicates, the second past tense is an unmarked tense in negative locative expressions, which means that it does not have the habitual or progressive meaning that it conveys in verbal clauses.

The longer variant *ajaš* is not used in locative clauses that occur in written texts and consequently, it does not have non-verbal conjugation. When used colloquially, however, *ajaš*, sometimes acquires the same personal suffixes as *aš* (Nadezhda Kabaeva, p.c.).

5.4 Negative pro-sentences

It is typologically common for negative existentials to become negative pro-sentences and to be used as general words for 'no' (Veselinova 2013: 127). In this respect, the Moksha *aš* is no exception. However, as I established in Hamari (2007: 270–271), the invariant Moksha negative markers, *af* and *aš* (~ *ajaš*), are in complementary distribution as negative pro-sentences or one-word answers. The particle *af* is selected for present tense verbal clauses or ascriptive clauses, whereas *aš* (~ *ajaš*) is normally used in contexts related to the existential, possessive and locative clauses. In addition, the variant *aš* is used in verbal clauses of the first past tense.

Arja Hamari

To illustrate the distribution of *af* and *aš*, (15) and (16) are cited as examples of the *af* used as a one-word answer to questions or commands involving a verbal clause in the present tense. In (17), on the other hand, *af* is used in a context of an ascriptive clause.

- (15) – *Suva-k, požalsta, pälə-n!* *Adä! – Af, af,*
 enter-IMP.2SG please side-POSS.1SG come.on NEG NEG
suv-śə-ms aš məžarda, – atkaza-s Koročkov.
 enter-FREQ-INF NEG when refuse-PST.3SG Koročkov
 ‘– Please, enter my place! Come on! – No, no, there is no time to enter, –
 Koročkov refused.’ [MokshEr-V.3/V.1/Moksha/Moksha/2002/3.txt]

- (16) – *S'kamə-t van-at?* – *Af, tosa taga ul-ijt' štiř-ńa-t,*
 alone-2SG watch-PRS.2SG NEG there yet be-PRS.3PL girl-DIM-PL
śiń-gä van-ijt'...
 3PL-CLT watch-PRS.3PL
 ‘– Are you watching [the calves] alone? – No, there are other girls; they
 are also watching.’ [MokshEr-V.3/V.1/Moksha/Varia/A/9.txt]

- (17) – *Toń tädä-ćä-vək, alä-ćä-vək Käšalə-ńńə-t?*
 2SG.GEN mother-POSS.2SG-CLT father-POSS.2SG-CLT Käšal-GEN.EXT-PL
 – *Af.*
 NEG
 ‘Are your mother and father residents of Käšal? – No.’ [MokshEr-V.3/
 V.1/Moksha/Moksha/2003-5-6/23.txt]

The existential *aš* (~ *qjaš*) is in turn found in existential, possessive and locative contexts (Hamari 2007: 270), as shown in (18), (19) and (20), respectively.

- (18) – *Aš mezevək, što-li?* – *Ajaš, ot'sä-j!*
 NEG anything Q-Q NEG uncle-voc
 ‘Isn’t there anything? – No, my uncle!’ [Hamari 2007: 270 < Paasonen &
 Ravila 1947: 888]

- (19) *Ul-ijt' lì tiń kodaməvək prava-ńtä? Šembə-n tiń*
 be-PRS.3PL Q 2PL.GEN any.kind.of right-POSS.2PL all-GEN 2PL.GEN
inksənt aťveč-an: aš.
 for.POSS.2PL answer-PRS.1SG NEG
 ‘Do you have rights of any kind? I shall answer for all of you: no.’
 [Hamari 2007: 270 < Mokša 1/1998: 126]

7 The negative existential cycle in Moksha Mordvin

- (20) “– *maksim-tsä* *kut-sa?*” – “*ajaš, ajaš, [...]*”
 Maksim-POSS.2SG house-INNESS NEG NEG
 ‘– Is your Maksim at home? – No, no, [...]’ [Hamari 2007: 270 < Paasonen & Ravila 1947: 894]

Finally, (21) and (22) are examples of the invariant *aš* when it is used as a negative one-word answer to questions in the first past tense.

- (21) – *Estəńberä Pŕavijə-n* *ćentra-s* *lotka-s* *vano-mdə*
 since.then intelligent-GEN centre-NOM.DEF.SG stop-PST.3SG look-INF
Moda-t *melgä?* [...]
 Earth-GEN.DEF.SG after
 – *Aš, ašəz* *lotka.*
 NEG NEG.PST.3SG stop.CNG
 ‘– Since then, the Centre of intelligence stopped watching over the Earth?
 – No, it did not stop.’ [MokshEr-V.3/V.1/Moksha/Moksha/2002/26.txt]

- (22) – *A toń* *koj-sə-t,* *mežəvək iż* *liśa?*
 but 2SG.GEN way-INNESS-POSS.2SG nothing NEG.PST.3SG go.CNG
 – *Moń* *koj-sə-n,* *aš, [...]*
 1SG.GEN way-INNESS-POSS.1SG NEG
 ‘– But in your opinion, nothing happened? – In my opinion, no, [...]’
 [MokshEr-V.3/V.1/Moksha/Moksha/2003-5-6/23.txt]

It is perfectly logical to use *aš* in answers to questions in which existential, possessive or locative clauses appear (18–20), because *aš* is the regular negator of these clause types. In contrast the usage of *aš* in verbal clauses in the past tense, such as (21–22), is not as logical because in verbal clauses, *aš* is always conjugated according to the subject (and possibly object) person of the clause. A possible explanation for this, could be that the use of *aš* as a one-word answer preceded the development of this marker into a negative auxiliary (Hamari 2007: 272–275). The invariant existential *aš* may have developed analogically to how the one-word negation *af* was used as a short word for ‘no’. After all, the use of the invariant *af* was restricted to the present and the second past tense as well as to certain moods. This may explain why speakers began to use the invariant *aš* elsewhere – including the first past tense where other option would have been a conjugated form of the negative auxiliary *iż-*. As argued in §7, the use of the invariant *aš* in one-word negations might be the key in understanding how the negative auxiliary *aš-* developed from the negative existential.

Arja Hamari

5.5 *Aš* as a noun

The variant *aš* (but not *ajas*) can be used as a lexical noun in its basic form or with further derivation (Hamari 2007: 268–270). Without derivation, *aš* has meanings such as ‘nothingness’ or ‘poverty’. It can also be inflected in different cases: In (23), *aš* is followed by the inessive case suffix. However, a more extensive study would be needed to clarify the extent of its inflectional potential.

- (23) [...] *kodama aš-sa erä-ijt' lomattnä!*
 what.kind.of poverty-INESS live-PRS.3PL person.NOM.DEF.PL
 ‘what poverty people live in!’ [MokshEr-V.3/V.1/Moksha/Moksha/
 2002/29.txt]

The derivational suffixes that can be attached to *aš* are *-ši*, which is used for abstract nouns (*ašši* ‘extreme poverty, need’) and the diminutive suffix *-ńä* (*ašəńä* ‘non-existence, smallness’) (for example, MWb: 73). Furthermore, as observed by Bartens (1996: 79), *ašu* ‘poor’ is derived from *aš* with the derivational suffix *-u* of adjectives (24). This adjective is used as a base for further derivations, such as *ašuši* ‘poverty’ and *ašusta* ‘poorly; in a poor way’.

- (24) [...] *ašu mokšə-ń šemjä-sta čora-ńä-ś ara-ś*
 poor Moksha-GEN family-ELAT boy-DIM-NOM.DEF.SG become-PST.3SG
 soda-f pisatel-ks, [...]
 know-PST.PTCP author-TRA
 ‘the little boy from a poor Moksha family became a well-know author’
 [MokshEr-V.3/V.1/Moksha/Moksha/2003-8/8.txt]

Finally, the form *ašajka* ‘not a thing, nothing’ (MRV: 51) is also derived from *aš* (25); It has another diminutive suffix, *-(aj)ka*.

- (25) *Čast-ška-da melä mol-t' toza i muj-at - ašajka.*
 hour-CMPR-ABL after go-PST.2SG there.ILL and find-PRS.2SG not.a.thing
 ‘After about an hour you went there and find – not a thing.’
 [MokshEr-V.3/V.1/Moksha/Moksha/2003-11-12/3.txt]

According to Bartens (1996: in passim), it is rather common for existentials to have nominal uses in the Uralic languages; Negative existentials often convey meanings such as ‘nothingness’, ‘smallness’, and ‘poverty’, while affirmative existentials denote ‘wealth’, ‘riches’, and ‘property’.

7 The negative existential cycle in Moksha Mordvin

6 The past tense auxiliary *aš-*

6.1 Comparison of the existential *aš* and auxiliary *aš-*

The Moksha auxiliary *aš-* is synchronically separate from the negative existential *aš*, as they have different functions, semantics and conjugational properties. The auxiliary *aš-* is used for the negation in verbal clauses in the first past tense. When *aš-* occurs in intransitive clauses as well as in transitive clauses with an indefinite object, it acquires the personal endings of the subjective conjugation. In other words, *aš-* agrees with the subject person and number as presented in Table 7.6. It can also take a personal ending of the objective conjugation in which case it additionally agrees with the definite object person and number (see the paradigms in Tables 7.9 and 7.10 of §6.2). The lexical verb of the negative construction in the past tense takes the connegative form. In Moksha, the connegative form is the stem of the verb.⁸

Table 7.6: The subjective conjugation of the first past tense negative forms of *mora*- ‘sing’

| | | |
|------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1SG | <i>ašəń</i> | <i>mora</i> |
| 2SG | <i>ašəť</i> | <i>mora</i> |
| 3SG | <i>ašəž</i> | <i>mora</i> |
| 1PL | <i>ašəmä</i> | <i>mora</i> |
| 2PL | <i>ašədă</i> | <i>mora</i> |
| 3PL | <i>ašəst'</i> | <i>mora</i> |

Examples (26) and (27) illustrate the use of the negative auxiliary *aš-* in the first past tense. In (26), the negative auxiliary takes the personal ending of the subjective conjugation, whereas (27) has the objective conjugation.

⁸There is some alternation in the stem vowel of the connegative. If the stem ends in *-a* or the palatal allophone *-ə* of the reduced vowel the stem vowel is usually preserved (for example, *pala*- ‘kiss’: *ašəń pala* ‘I did not kiss’; *pelə*- ‘be afraid’: *ašəń pelə* ‘I was not afraid’). However, the stem-final *-a* is sometimes omitted and the stem ends in a consonant (as in *ašəń pel* ‘I was not afraid’). On the other hand, when the stem vowel is the velar allophone *-ɔ̃* of the reduced vowel, it becomes *-a* (as in *udə*- ‘sleep’: *ašəń uda* ‘I did not sleep’). Finally, if the stem ends in the passive-reflexive derivational suffix *-və-*, the vowel is omitted (for example, *atkazavə*- ‘refuse, decline’: *ašəń atkazav* ‘I did not refuse’).

Arja Hamari

- (26) *Mes ašət̪ kocka lījā ki?*
 why NEG.PST.2SG choose.CNG another road
 ‘Why didn’t you choose another road?’ [MokshEr-V.3/V.1/Moksha/
 Moksha/2003-5-6/23.txt]
- (27) *Son ašədäz kada!*
 3SG NEG.PST.3SG>2PL leave.CNG
 ‘He did not leave you!’ [MokshEr-V.3/V.1/Moksha/Moksha/2005/33.txt]

To summarize, the auxiliary *aš-* and existential *aš* exhibit the following clausal differences in negation: (1) The auxiliary *aš-* only appears in verbal clauses in connection with the connegative form of the lexical verb, whereas the use of the existential *aš* is restricted to existential, possessive and locative non-verbal clauses in clausal negation; (2) The auxiliary *aš-* is only used in the past tense, whereas the existential *aš* expresses tense through its conjugation; (3) The auxiliary *aš-* is conjugated according to the past tense of either the subjective or the objective conjugation of verbs, whereas the existential *aš* is invariant in existential and possessive clauses in the present tense but acquires the suffixes of non-verbal predicates in the past tense as well as both present and past tenses of the locative clauses with definite subjects. Table 7.7 presents the functions and inflectional properties of the auxiliary and the existential in more detail.

6.2 A comparison of the auxiliaries *iž-* and *aš-*

Before discussing how the negative element *aš* received its new function, it is necessary to examine the relationship between the negative auxiliary *aš-* and its functional synonym, *iž-*. As was noted previously in this analysis, the auxiliary *iž-* must have had this function before *aš-*. Grammatical descriptions of Moksha generally consider these two auxiliaries synonymous and completely interchangeable. Nevertheless, to my knowledge, their relationship has not been examined in detail. If *aš-* were to compete or even gradually substitute *iž-* in past tense negative clauses, this would be reflected in their contemporary uses. In this section, I explore their relationship by analyzing the frequency of their occurrence in the MokshEr corpus.

The conjugational properties of the auxiliary *iž-* are identical to those of *aš-*. Similar to *aš-*, the auxiliary *iž-* is conjugated according to both subjective and objective conjugation and the personal endings are the same (see Tables 7.8–7.10). The connegative form of the lexical verb is also the same for both auxiliaries.

Both *aš-* and *iž-* appear in written contemporary Moksha in all personal forms of the subjective and objective conjugations. In addition, there are no differences

7 *The negative existential cycle in Moksha Mordvin*

Table 7.7: A comparison of the Moksha negative existential *aš* and the auxiliary *aš-*.

| | | <i>Aš</i> in existential and possessive clauses | <i>Aš</i> in locative clauses | Auxiliary <i>aš-</i> |
|---------------------------------|----------------------|---|---|--|
| 1. Clausal function | | Negative predicate of existential and possessive clauses. | Negative copula of locative clauses. | Negative auxiliary of a verbal clause. |
| 2. Tense | Present tense | Invariant: no overt tense marking. | Present tense personal suffixes of verbs, except in third person forms. | Not used in the present tense. |
| | Past tense | Second past tense only. | Second past tense only. | First past tense only. |
| 3. Subject encoding | Present tense | Invariant: no encoding of the subject person or number. | Subject person and number encoded by verbal suffixes, except in the third person forms. | Not used in present tense. |
| | Past tense | Encoding of a plural subject. | Subject person and number encoded by verbal suffixes of the second past tense. | Subject person and number encoded by verbal suffixes of the first past tense. |
| 4. Objective conjugation | | No objective conjugation. | No objective conjugation. | Both subjective and objective conjugation (object person and number encoded by verbal suffixes). |

Arja Hamari

as to the types of verbs they can occur with. Their interchangeability is further evidenced by the fact that both auxiliaries can be used within a single text and even within a single sentence, as in (28) and (29). In fact, as these types of sentences are rather frequent, this suggests that the alternation of the auxiliaries is at least partly determined by stylistic factors. In other words, the purpose of this alternation is to avoid repetition when several negative constructions occur.

- (28) *Da, vidə-nc azə-ms, kälə-n̄*
 yes truth-GEN.POSS.3SG.SG tell-INF language-GEN
šačə-ma-kasə-ma-sa tuftalnā, məžar-s
 be.born-NMLZ-grow-NMLZ-INESS reason.NOM.DEF.PL how.many-ILL
kodamə-vək učonajə-n̄di lac-räc ašəst̄ sodav,
 what.kind.of-CLT scholar-DAT well-in.order NEG.PST.3PL be.known.CNG
išt̄ muv.
 NEG.PST.3PL be.found.CNG

'Yes, to tell the truth, the reasons of the evolution of language have so far not been well known, not been discovered by any scholar.' [V.3/V.1/
 Moksha/Moksha/2003-x/1.txt]

- (29) *No karabəl-ś ašəz kulcənda, iž šarkşnə*
 but vessel-NOM.DEF.SG NEG.PST.3SG obey.CNG NEG.PST.3SG turn.CNG
af šej, af tov.
 NEG here.LAT NEG there.LAT
 'But the vessel didn't obey, didn't turn this way or that way.' [V.3/V.1/
 Moksha/Moksha/2002/26.txt]

The frequency of usage can also clarify the relationship of *aš-* and *iž-*. The fundamental assumption of the negative existential cycle is that in the intermediate stage B > C, the younger verbal negator that has developed from a negative existential gradually substitutes the older verbal negator. If we assume that there is competition between *aš-* and *iž-*, it should be possible to capture the current state of that competition by determining whether one is more common than the other in contemporary language.

Table 7.8 summarizes the frequency of occurrence of *aš-* and *iž-* in the subjective conjugation in the MokshEr corpus. The table provides the number as well as the percentage of occurrence of each personal form. As can be seen, the auxiliary *aš-* most commonly occurs with first and second person subjects, whereas *iž-* is slightly more common with third person subjects. As a tentative hypothesis, it could therefore be proposed that the younger auxiliary *aš-* has substituted the

7 The negative existential cycle in Moksha Mordvin

original *iž-* in non-third person forms faster than in third person forms. A possible explanation for this is that the third person forms are more frequent than the others and may have resisted the change more persistently. After all, past tense auxiliaries occur most often when the subject is in the third person, with the singular being more frequent than the plural. The number of occurrences of *aš-* is not far behind *iž-* even in the third person forms, as *aš-* appears in almost half of all the constructions.

Table 7.8: The subjective conjugation of *aš-* and *iž-* in the MokshEr corpus.

| <i>aš-</i> | | <i>iž-</i> | | Total | | |
|------------|---------------|------------|------|--------------|------|-----|
| 1SG | <i>ašən̄</i> | 175 | 82% | <i>ižən̄</i> | 39 | 18% |
| 2SG | <i>ašət̄</i> | 43 | 88% | <i>ižət̄</i> | 6 | 12% |
| 3SG | <i>ašəž</i> | 734 | 44% | <i>iž</i> | 921 | 56% |
| 1PL | <i>ašəmä</i> | 29 | 76% | <i>ižəmä</i> | 9 | 24% |
| 2PL | <i>ašədä</i> | 10 | 100% | <i>ižədä</i> | 0 | 0% |
| 3PL | <i>ašəst̄</i> | 202 | 45% | <i>ižt̄</i> | 244 | 55% |
| | | | | | 2412 | |

Indeed it can be argued that the number of the non-third person forms in this corpus is rather small and interpretations must therefore be made cautiously. This need for caution is even more essential when analyzing the relationship of *aš-* and *iž-* from the perspective of the objective conjugation. Table 7.9 presents the data of the past tense auxiliaries that occur with an object in the singular and Table 7.10 for those with a plural object. As the data are extremely scarce, the frequency of occurrences is displayed in terms of the number, not in percentages. As can be seen, the frequency of all forms of the objective conjugation is extremely low, except for the forms of the singular third person objects. Even so, there is a clear tendency for *aš-* to be more common than *iž-* throughout the paradigm. The only exception is the form with a third person plural subject and a first person plural object. This ratio, nonetheless, can be regarded as being unreliable, as only one example of *iž-* and no examples of *aš-* were discovered in this category.⁹

⁹As there are 6 person-number categories in Moksha, the combinations of subject and object person in the objective conjugation would theoretically render 36 different endings in each table, but in practice, the number is smaller. This is because some of the forms are impossible and because there is rather extensive syncretism in the forms. Note also that in the case of *aš-*,

Arja Hamari

Table 7.9: Objective conjugations of *aš-* vs. *iž-* in the MokshEr corpus (singular object).

| O → | 1SG | | 2SG | | 3SG | |
|------------|-----------------|------------|-----------------|------------|----------------|------------|
| S ↓ | <i>aš-</i> | <i>iž-</i> | <i>aš-</i> | <i>iž-</i> | <i>aš-</i> | <i>iž-</i> |
| 1SG | – | – | <i>ašijtəń</i> | 1 | <i>ižijtəń</i> | 0 |
| 2SG | <i>ašəmajt'</i> | 3 | <i>ižəmajt'</i> | 0 | – | – |
| 3SG | <i>ašəmań</i> | 8 | <i>ižəmań</i> | 1 | <i>ašəńzä</i> | 0 |
| | | | | | <i>ižəńzä</i> | 0 |
| | | | | | ~ <i>ašəž</i> | 4 |
| 1PL | – | – | <i>ašədä́ž</i> | 1 | <i>ižədä́ž</i> | 0 |
| 2PL | <i>ašəmaśt'</i> | 1 | <i>ižəmaśt'</i> | 0 | – | – |
| 3PL | <i>ašəmaž</i> | 6 | <i>ižəmaž</i> | 1 | <i>ašədä́ž</i> | 1 |
| | | | | | <i>ižədä́ž</i> | 0 |
| | | | | | <i>ašəž</i> | 66 |
| | | | | | <i>ižəž</i> | 4 |

Table 7.10: Objective conjugations of *aš-* vs. *iž-* in the MokshEr corpus (plural object).

| O → | 1PL | | 2PL | | 3PL | |
|------------|-----------------|------------|-----------------|------------|----------------|------------|
| S ↓ | <i>aš-</i> | <i>iž-</i> | <i>aš-</i> | <i>iž-</i> | <i>aš-</i> | <i>iž-</i> |
| 1SG | – | – | <i>ašədä́ž</i> | 0 | <i>ižədä́ž</i> | 0 |
| 2SG | <i>ašəmaśt'</i> | 1 | <i>ižəmaśt'</i> | 0 | – | – |
| 3SG | <i>ašəmaž</i> | 1 | <i>ižəmaž</i> | 1 | <i>ašədä́ž</i> | 1 |
| | | | | | <i>ižədä́ž</i> | 0 |
| 1PL | – | – | <i>ašədä́ž</i> | 0 | <i>ižədä́ž</i> | 0 |
| 2PL | <i>ašəmaśt'</i> | 0 | <i>ižəmaśt'</i> | 0 | – | – |
| 3PL | <i>ašəmaž</i> | 0 | <i>ižəmaž</i> | 1 | <i>ašədä́ž</i> | 1 |
| | | | | | <i>ižədä́ž</i> | 0 |
| | | | | | <i>ašəž</i> | 40 |
| | | | | | <i>ižəž</i> | 0 |

The frequencies of occurrence suggests there is in fact competition between the negative auxiliaries *aš-* and *iž-*. Even though the auxiliaries can be used interchangeably in the same contexts, *aš-* seems to be selected more often than *iž-*. This could indicate that a gradual substitution of the older auxiliary by the newer one – based on the negative existential – is in progress.

there are two possible endings for 3SG>3SG – one that is in accordance with the same form of *iž-* and another in which the final vowel has been dropped, making the form identical to that of 3PL>3SG and 3PL>3PL. (See Trosterud 1994 and Keresztes 1999 for more details on the objective conjugation in the Mordvin languages.)

7 The negative existential cycle in Moksha Mordvin

7 The development of Moksha *aš* and *aš-*

7.1 The negative existential *aš*

I mentioned in the introduction that the origin of the Moksha *aš* is uncertain. The same applies to the negative existential *araš* that occurs in the closest sister language, Erzya. The etymology of these two negative markers has been discussed in detail in earlier literature (see Hamari 2007: 107–113; 2013: 477–479), which is why I provide only a short summary on the development of the Moksha *aš* ~ *ajaš*. As I observed previously, the Moksha *aš* ~ *ajaš* and the Erzya *araš* most likely do not share an etymological connection. This means that both existentials have probably developed after the split of Proto-Mordvin. There is also no positive evidence of an earlier negative existential in the protolanguage. Regarding the origin of the Moksha *aš* ~ *ajaš*, two hypotheses have been proposed:

- 1) According to Klemm (1934: 388), *aš* could have originated from a combination of the negative particle in **a* and the Moksha verb *ašč:ə-* ~ *aš:ə-* ‘be, be situated’ (~ Erzya *ašte-* ‘id.’) that originally would have taken the connective suffix in *-k (**a-ašč:ə-k* > **ašk* > *aš*). The longer variant *ajaš* developed from a form in which /j/ was introduced to prevent hiatus (**a-j-aš* > *ajaš*).
- 2) According to Bartens (1996: 79), *aš* could have originally been a noun with meanings such as ‘non-existence’ or ‘poverty’. Bartens elaborates that the variant *ajaš* could have an emphasizing prefix *aj-*, which is also sometimes added to the negative particle *af* (> *ajaf*).

Klemm’s assumption would fit the outline of the negative existential cycle proposed by Croft (1991), but its etymological explanation is questionable. The negative particle *a* and its variant *aj* that occurs in the front of a verb with a word-initial vowel are only attested in Erzya, while the Moksha equivalent of the Erzya *a* is *af*. In other words, I am more inclined to agree with Bartens, although the noun *aš* ‘non-existence; poverty’ also lacks etymology. Nonetheless, considering the non-verbal conjugation and the use of *aš* as a noun, it is justified to assume that *aš* was not originally a verb but a nominal item.

7.2 The negative auxiliary *aš-*

Theories on the origin of the Moksha past tense auxiliary *aš-* have always taken into account its relationship to the negative existential *aš*. The traditional view (originally presented by Szinnyei 1884: 148) is that the auxiliary developed when verbal conjugation was introduced to the negative existential marker. However,

Arja Hamari

there are both semantic and functional problems with the assumption that a negative marker used primarily with the existential present tense would begin to be used as a past tense negative auxiliary in verbal predicates without acquiring other functions as a negator of verbal clauses. In Hamari (2007: 275; 2013: 480), I argue that the auxiliary *aš-* may actually have originated as a combination of the existential *aš* and the older negative auxiliary *iž-*. Thus, the development of the auxiliary *aš-* would represent an instance of the negative existential cycle where the negative existential begins to be used in verbal negation as a reinforcement for the regular verbal negator (cf. Croft 1991: 10–11).

It has been suggested that the negative existential marker *aš* could have originally been attached to the older negative auxiliary *iž-* for emphasis (as in 1SG **aš* + *ižəń* > **ašəžəń*¹⁰, 2SG **aš* + *ižəť* > **ašəžəť* etc.) (Hamari 2007: 273–275; 2013: 479–480). As the construction lost its emphatic force, it was analogically adapted to the conjugation of the auxiliary *iž-* by dropping the element *-əž-* (for example, 1SG **ašəžəń* > **ašəń*, 2SG **ašəžəť* > *ašəť*). The element *-əž-* has nonetheless been preserved in the first and second person forms of the subjective conjugation in the dialect of the Kovylkino district; Ščemerova (1972: 178) observes that this dialect has forms containing the element *-əž-* which is absent from other dialects (Kovylkino: 1SG *ašəžəń* ‘I did not’, 2SG *ašəžəť* ‘you did not’). These dialectal forms could be regarded as transparent relics of the fusion of the existential and the original past tense negative auxiliary.

Another important point is that although the first and second person forms as well as the third person plural form of the auxiliary *aš-* are the regular first past tense forms of lexical verbs (such as cf. 1SG PST *pala-ní* ‘I kissed’ ~ *ašə-ní* ‘I did not’), the third person singular is irregular (cf. 3SG *pala-s* ‘(s)he kissed’ ~ *ašə-z* ‘(s)he did not’). As the only verb that has a voiced palatalized sibilant as a third person singular marker is the negative auxiliary *iž-* (3SG *iž* ‘(s)he did not’), it can be argued that the fusion of the original existential and the auxiliary continues to be visible in the singular third- person form of the subjective conjugation of the auxiliary *aš-* (3SG *ašəz* < * *aš* + *iž*).

One question still remains: what were the circumstances that led to the agglutination of existential *aš* and the past tense negative auxiliary *iž-*? There are no traces of *aš* functioning to emphasize negation which, in my opinion, means that we could search for answers in the context of *aš* in the past tense meaning, that is, as a pro-sentence.

As discussed in §5.4, the Moksha invariant *aš* is used as a pro-sentence, as a one-word answer to a question when it contains a clause that is existential, pos-

¹⁰In Moksha, vowels other than *a* and *ä* are generally reduced in non-initial syllables and this means that the change *i* > *ə* in the construction is fully plausible.

7 *The negative existential cycle in Moksha Mordvin*

sessive or locative, but also when the question has a verbal predicate in the first past tense. This clause-initial position (30a) could have offered a possibility for an agglutination of the invariant *aš* and a following past tense auxiliary (30b), accompanied by the reduction of the vowel *i* in an unstressed position. The next step in this development would have been the agglutinated auxiliary form **aš-əž* adjusting to the conjugation of the older auxiliary *iž-*, and the disappearance of the element *-əž-* (30c). A final observation is that the invariant *aš* could also appear as a one-word answer with the new negative auxiliary *aš-* (30d). It is important to note that steps (30a), (30c) and (30d) are still possible in contemporary Moksha and even (30b) is possible in the Kovylkino dialect.

(30) Question:

– *mora-t'* *al'i aš?*

sing-PST.2SG or NEG

‘Did you sing or not?’

Answer:

a. – *aš, ižən̄ mora.*

NEG NEG.PST.1SG sing.CNG

‘No, I did not sing.’

>

b. – *aš-əžən̄ mora*

NEG-NEG.PST.1SG sing.CNG

‘I did not sing.’

>

c. – *ašən̄ mora.*

NEG.PST.1SG sing.CNG

‘I did not sing.’

>

d. – *aš, ašən̄ mora.*

NEG NEG.PST.1SG sing.CNG

‘No, I did not sing.’

Veselinova (2013: 127–133) observes that the process of negative existentials developing into a pro-sentence and then into a standard negator has also been observed in other languages.

Arja Hamari

7.3 Discussion

Moksha could be regarded as a language in Stage B of the negative existential cycle proposed by in Croft (1991) because it has separate negative markers for verbal negation and for the negation of existential clauses. According to Croft, the negative existential marker may be found to function in ways that previously were characteristic of some other negative markers. Thus, the negative existential begins to be used even in the negation of verbal clauses, and in time, this existential displaces the original negative marker of verbal clauses. When this type of displacement occurs, the negative existential becomes the only negative marker for verbal and existential clauses, and thus the cycle reaches the third stage, stage C. Croft's hypothesis is that the transition from stage B to C can proceed in the following ways:

- 1) “the negative existential may compete with the ordinary verbal negator, sometimes being used instead of it”
- 2) “the negative existential can reinforce the (presumably older) regular verbal negator”
- 3) “(there is) only gradual substitution of the negative existential for the verbal negator in only part of the verbal grammatical system”

(Croft 1991: 9–11)

The Moksha negative existential is not necessarily the result of an older negative marker of verbal clauses fusing with a positive existential, but the negative existential could also originally be a noun. Yet the further development of the negative existential displays characteristics of the cyclic development described by Croft, as the existential has penetrated the sphere of verbal negation by becoming a negative auxiliary of past tense verbal predicates. All in all, there are evident traces of all three means that Croft described. Thus, due to the use of the Moksha negative existential as a pro-sentence, the existential became used to possibly reinforce the older verbal negator (2) and subsequently a new verbal negator arose. The new negator that was based on the existential began competing with the ordinary negator and became the most frequently chosen option (1). Finally, the new negator has not supplanted the entire negation system, but this form is only used in one part of the verbal grammatical system (3): to negate past tense verbs.

Etymological evidence suggests that the time span of the evolution of the Moksha negative existential and its development into a negative auxiliary spans approximately one thousand years. As there is no cognate for the Moksha negative

7 *The negative existential cycle in Moksha Mordvin*

existential in the closest sister language, Erzya or in any other Uralic language, this negative existential cannot be dated beyond the division of Proto-Mordvin that began around the eighth century.

8 Conclusions

I have demonstrated that *aš* occurs in many negative constructions of Moksha and has varied inflectional properties in different clausal functions. It is invariant as a negative pro-sentence, and it is likewise invariant in present tense existential and possessive clauses, with the exception of taking the second past tense marker when necessary. In locative clauses *aš* is conjugated in the present and the second past tenses. As a noun, *aš* is subject to derivation and case inflection and finally, as a past tense negative auxiliary, *aš-* is exclusively conjugated in the first past tense and used only in verbal clauses.

There are many possible reasons for the negative existential *aš* developing different functions. It may have originally been a noun meaning ‘non-existence; poverty’ and acquired personal suffixes in the predicate position of non-verbal clauses, such as in existential and possessive expressions. It also became an invariant negative pro-sentence in contexts where the other one-word negator *af* could not appear. In this clause-initial position, *aš* may have agglutinated into the earlier negative auxiliary *iž-* and created its own past tense personal conjugation. Consequently, both *aš-* and *iž-* are used as past tense negative auxiliaries in contemporary Moksha. The higher frequency of *aš-* may indicate that it is gradually replacing the original auxiliary.

Finally, *aš* has a longer invariant form *ajaš* which is only found in present tense existential and possessive clauses as well as a negative word for ‘no’. Similarly, the particle *af* has the variant *ajaf*, which suggests the prefix *aj-* was originally most probably an emphasizing element.

Sources

Mokša = Мокша. 1998 (1).

Paasonen, Heikki & Paavo Ravila. 1947. *Mordwinische volksdichtung*. Vol. IV. Helsinki: Finno-Ugrian Society.

Arja Hamari

Acknowledgements

I would like to thank my native Moksha consultant, Nadezhda Kabaeva for her help in eliciting the example clauses in Tables 2 and 3 as well as some of the other examples. This article was prepared as a part of the project *The Descriptive Mordvin Grammar*, funded by Kone Foundation, and I would also like to express my gratitude to the foundation.

ISO codes

Erzya: myv

Moksha: mdf

Abbreviations

| | | | |
|------|-------------------|-------|-------------------|
| 1 | first person | INESS | inessive case |
| 2 | secont person | INF | infinitive |
| 3 | third person | LAT | lative case |
| ABL | ablative case | NEG | negative |
| CLT | clitic | NMLZ | nominalizer |
| CNG | connegative | NOM | nominative case |
| CMPR | comparative case | OPT | optative mood |
| COND | conditional mood | PL | plural |
| CONJ | conjunctive | POSS | possessive suffix |
| DEF | definite | PRS | present |
| DES | desiderative mood | PST | past |
| DIM | diminutive | PTCP | participle |
| ELAT | elative case | Q | question marker |
| EXT | extension | SG | singular |
| FREQ | frequentative | TRA | translative |
| GEN | genitive | VOC | vocative |
| ILL | illative case | | |
| IMP | imperative mood | | |

References

- Bartens, Raija. 1996. Die positive und negative Existentielle in den finnisch-ugrischen Sprachen. *Ural-Altaische Jahrbücher. Neue Folge* 14. 58–97.

7 The negative existential cycle in Mordvin

- Bartens, Raija. 1999. *Mordvalaiskielten rakenne ja kehitys* (Mémoires de la Société Finno-Ougrienne 232). Helsinki: Suomalais-Ugrilainen Seura.
- Comrie, Bernard. 1981. *Language universals and linguistic typology*. Oxford: Basil Blackwell.
- Croft, William. 1991. The evolution of negation. *Journal of Linguistics* 27(1). 1–27.
- Hamari, Arja. 2007. *The negation of stative relation clauses in the Mordvin languages* (Mémoires de la Société Finno-Ougrienne 254). Helsinki: Suomalais-Ugrilainen Seura.
- Hamari, Arja. 2011. The negation of stative relation clauses in the Mordvin, Mari and Permic languages. In Sándor Csúcs, Nóra Falk, Viktória Tóth & Gábor Zálicz (eds.), *Congressus XI Internationalis Fenno-ugristarum, Piliscsaba, 9.–14. VIII 2010. Pars VI: Dissertationes symposiorum ad linguisticam*, 250–257. Piliscsaba: Reguly Társaság.
- Hamari, Arja. 2013. Negation in the history of the Mordvin languages. In David Willis, Christopher Lucas & Anne Breitbarth (eds.), *The history of negation in the languages of Europe and the Mediterranean*. Vol. I: *Case studies*, 453–485. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Hamari, Arja & Niina Aasmäe. 2015. Negation in Erzya. In Matti Miestamo, Anne Tamm & Beáta Wagner-Nagy (eds.), *Negation in Uralic languages* (Typological Studies in Language 108), 293–323. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Honti, László. 1997. Die Negation im Uralischen III. *Linguistica Uralica* XXXIII(4). 241–252.
- Janhunen, Juha. 1982. On the structure of Proto-Uralic. *Finnisch-Ugrische Forschungen* 44. 23–42.
- Keresztes, László. 1999. *Development of Mordvin definite conjugation* (Mémoires de la Société Finno-Ougrienne 233). Helsinki: Suomalais-Ugrilainen Seura.
- Keresztes, László. 2011. *Bevezetés a mordvin nyelvészethez*. Debrecen: Debrecen University Press.
- Klemm, Antál. 1934. A mordvin tagadó és tiltó szerkezetek története. *Nyelvtudományi Közlemények* 48. 382–402.
- Miestamo, Matti. 2005. *Standard negation: The negation of declarative verbal main clauses in a typological perspective*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- MRV = Мокшень-руzonь валкс / Мокшанско-русский словарь. 1998. Б. А. Серебренников, А. П. Феоктистов & О. Е. Поляков (eds.). Москва: Русский язык, Дигора.
- MWb = H. Paasonens Mordwinisches Wörterbuch zusammengestellt von Kaino Heikkilä. 1990/1999. Vol. 1–6 (Lexica Societatis Fenno-Ugricæ XXIII). Helsinki: Suomalais-ugrilainen seura.

Arja Hamari

- Paasonen, Heikki. 1953. *Mordwinische Chrestomathie mit Glossar und grammatischem Abriss*. 2nd edn. (Hilfsmittel für das Studium der finnisch-ugrischen Sprachen IV). Helsinki: Suomalais-Ugrilainen Seura.
- Pall, Valdek. 1957. Negatsioonist mordva keeles. *Emakeele Seltsi Aastaraamat* III. 217–223.
- Ščemerova, V. S. 1972. К вопросу а-овой основе глагольного отрицания в мордовских языках. *Советское финно-угроведение* 8. 173–180.
- Sovijärvi, Antti & Reino Peltola. 1977. *Suomalais-ugrilainen tarkekirjoitus* (Helsingin yliopiston fonetiikan laitoksen julkaisuja = Publicationes Instituti Phoneticum Universitatis Helsingiensis 9). Helsinki: Helsingin yliopisto.
- Szinnyei, Jószef. 1884. Volt-e a magyar nyelvnek tagadó igeje? *Magyar Nyelvör* XIII. 145–152.
- Trosterud, Trond. 1994. Miksi mordvan objektkonjugaatio näyttää juuri sellaiselta kuin se näyttää? In Arto Moisio & Jaana Magnusson (eds.), *Volgalaiskielet muutoksessa: Volgalaiskielten symposiumi Turussa 1.–2.9.1993* (Turun yliopiston suomalaisen ja yleisen kielitieteen laitoksen julkaisuja 45), 74–86. Turku: Turun yliopisto.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2013. Negative existentials: A cross-linguistic study. *Italian Journal of Linguistics* 25(1). 107–145.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2015. Special negators in the Uralic languages: Synchrony, diachrony and interaction with standard negation. In Matti Miestamo, Anne Tamm & Beáta Wagner-Nagy (eds.), *Negation in Uralic languages* (Typological Studies in Language 108), 547–599. Amsterdam: Benjamins.

Chapter 8

Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese throughout history and across varieties

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam^a

^aThe Open University of Hong Kong

One of the oldest problems in Chinese linguistics is negation and currently there is no consensus on a theory for the distribution of negators. This article explores this issue from the perspective of Croft's Negative Existential Cycle (NEC) based on diachronic evidence and synchronic comparative data from four varieties of Chinese. The results show that the NEC is attested in Chinese throughout its history and across all varieties, and that different varieties can be positioned at different stages in the Cycle. The shared historical origin of the Mandarin *méi(yǒu)*, the Hong Kong Cantonese *mou5* and the Gaozhou Cantonese *mau5*, and their involvement in the NEC account for their semantic similarity in producing a non-existence reading as a standard negator. They also provide a new understanding of the nature of these negators and their present-day structural behaviour.

Keywords: varieties of Chinese, non-existence, perfectivity, standard negation

1 Introduction

Negation in Chinese, particularly Mandarin Chinese, has received considerable attention in the last half century. Researchers in the field are keenly interested in solving the puzzle regarding the distribution of two Mandarin negators *bù* ‘not’ and *méi(yǒu)* ‘not (have)’. The mainstream understanding thus far is that *méi(yǒu)* is a special negator for perfective sentences because they refer to terminated or finished situations, while *bù* is a ‘neutral/general’ negator that applies



Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

to all other conditions as the ‘elsewhere’ strategy as suggested in Li & Thompson 1981. However, there is little consensus on the reasons for this division of labour in Mandarin negation. This study offers a diachronic-comparative analysis of Chinese negation from the perspective of Croft’s Negative Existential Cycle (NEC). I argue that the standard negation in Chinese has a strong connection to its negative existential construction as suggested in Croft’s (1991) original proposal. Therefore, this analysis serves three purposes. Firstly, it provides a new understanding of the overall architecture of the Chinese negation system, where negators such as *méi(yǒu)* are not perfective negators but negators of existence. This conclusion is inspired by the NEC, which provides a model for the connection between standard negation and existential negation. Secondly, the diachronic study of Chinese negation offers further evidence for the attestation of the NEC as a diachronic model (see the work by Veselinova on Uralic, Slavonic and Polynesian languages). Based on the typological findings reported in Veselinova 2014, a system (such as Polynesian) may require as long as two thousand years to complete the entire NEC. For this reason, Chinese is a strong candidate for testing Croft’s NEC on actual diachronic data owing to the long history and extensive documentation of the Chinese language. Thirdly, this analysis constitutes a comparative study on four Chinese varieties: Beijing Mandarin, Taiwan Mandarin, Hong Kong Cantonese, and Gaozhou Cantonese.¹ The latter is a scarcely documented and un(der)-studied Cantonese variety spoken in Maoming, a south-western county in the Guangdong Province of China. The main objective of this analysis is to determine how the NEC can apply to various Chinese varieties and how different varieties display properties of different stages in the Cycle.²

The article proceeds as follows. §2 presents the key features of Chinese negation and §3 illustrates the relevance of the NEC to Chinese. Then §4 focuses on the situation in Mandarin by first introducing historical evidence that demonstrates the development in the expression of the negative existential from Old Chinese to Pre-modern Mandarin, and then accounts for the emergence of *méi(yǒu)* as the standard negator in present-day Mandarin. In §5, I examine the two Cantonese varieties and discuss the variation observed among the four Chinese va-

¹Glottocode from glottolog 3.0: Beijing Mandarin (Sino-Tibetan, Sinitic, [...] Northern Chinese, Mandarinic, Mandarin Chinese, Beijingic) [beij1234]

Taiwan Mandarin (Sino-Tibetan, Sinitic, [...] Northern Chinese, Mandarinic, Mandarin Chinese, Beijingic) [taib1240]

Hong Kong Cantonese (Sino-Tibetan, Sinitic, [...] Yue-Pinghua, Yue Chinese, Yuehai, Cantonese) [xian1255]

²All Mandarin examples have been romanised using Hanyu Pinyin, and all Cantonese examples with Jyutping. Tones are marked on the lexical items that are mentioned in the text and tables, but not in the examples.

8 Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese

rieties as well as the key implications of this comparative study. Finally, conclusions are presented in §6.

2 Background and methodology

2.1 The Chinese negation puzzle

This section presents the background of standard negation in the Chinese language. Standard negation is defined here as the construction that applies to the most basic verbal declarative main clause to reverse the truth value of the proposition that the clause expresses (Miestamo 2005). The marker used to perform such function is known as a ‘standard negator’, such as ‘does not’ in *Lucy does not swim*. Modern Mandarin has two standard negators, *bù* ‘not’ and *méi(yǒu)* ‘not (have)’, and both appear between the subject and the verb. Their distributional properties can be illustrated as follows.

In a simple verbal declarative clause without aspect-marking (henceforth ‘bare sentence’, which is also referred to as a ‘plain sentence’ in Wang 1965) such as the clause in example (1a), the default negative form is constructed by inserting *bù* ‘not’ immediately preceding the verb (1b). This reverses the meaning of what the proposition in the affirmative claims. In this case, it denies that the speaker buys books. I will refer to the negative form of bare sentences as the ‘bare negative’, for the absence of overt aspect-marking or any type of adverbial modification.

(1) Mandarin (Mandarinic, Sinitic)

- a. 我買書
 $wo\ mai\ shu$
I buy book
‘I buy books.’
- b. 我不買書
 $wo\ bu\ [mai\ shu]$
I not buy book
‘I do not buy books.’

The system becomes more complicated when aspect-marking is present. Examples (2-3) contain the negation pattern in Mandarin when the verb *mǎi* ‘to buy’ is marked with perfective and experiential aspect, respectively. The sentences (2b) and (3b) illustrate the unmarked strategy for negating the affirmative sentences in (2a) and (3a). In short, whenever the affirmative sentence is perfectly

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

marked either as perfective or experiential, *méiyōu* is used instead of *bù* (see examples 2d and 3c). One important difference between the negation of perfective sentences and that of experiential sentences is the co-occurrence constraint on the negator and the aspect marker – *méiyōu* can co-occur with the experiential marker *guo* (3b), but not with the perfective marker *le*, as shown in example (2c).

(2) Mandarin negation and perfective aspect

- a. 我買了書
wo mai-le shu
 I buy-PFV book
 ‘I bought books.’
- b. 我沒有買書
wo mei-you mai shu
 I not-have buy book
 ‘I did not buy books.’
- c. 我沒有買了書
**wo mei-you mai-le shu*
 I not-have buy-PFV book
 Intended: ‘I did not buy books.’
- d. 我不買了書
**wo bu mai-le shu*
 I not buy-PFV book
 Intended: ‘I did not buy books.’

(3) Mandarin negation and experiential aspect

- a. 我買過書
wo mai-guo shu
 I buy-EXP book
 ‘I have bought books (before).’
- b. 我沒有買過書
wo mei-you mai-guo shu
 I not-have buy-EXP book
 ‘I have not bought books (before).’
- c. 我不買過書
**wo bu mai-guo shu*
 I not buy-EXP book
 Intended: ‘I have not bought books (before).’

8 Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese

This is the Chinese negation puzzle. While this puzzle confirms that both *bù* and *méi(yǒu)* are standard negators in Mandarin, it also raises two issues. Firstly, Mandarin appears to have a neat system wherein the distribution of the negators is conditioned by the presence of aspect markers. Contrasting example (1) with (2-3), *bù* fails to perform its negator function when an affirmative sentence is aspect-marked; the only appropriate negator is *méi(yǒu)*. Huang 1988 suggested that *bù* cannot co-occur with perfective markers because *bù* must cliticise onto the verb first, but marking a non-event (an event already negated or denied) as completed or realised would result in semantic anomaly. In other words, the incompatibility is a matter of interpretation that stems from the narrow scope of negation. Ernst 1995 proposed that due to the unboundedness requirement of *bù* – meaning that *bù* has an intrinsic requirement to select for an unbounded situation as its complement – it is unacceptable in the presence of perfective markers. In short, a terminated or completed event would be incompatible with *bù*. Lin 2003 made a similar suggestion by stating that *bù* requires its complement to be a stative situation that does not require further energy input. Li 2007 in turn has adopted a feature-checking approach to account for negation-aspect compatibility. She proposes that both aspect markers and negators possess the same four atomic aspectual features, but different markers have different inherent values for these features, and their compatibility is a result of their feature compatibility.

The second issue concerns the intriguing connection between *méi(yǒu)* ‘not (have)’ and perfective aspect. As demonstrated in the examples above, *méi(yǒu)* can occur with the experiential marker *guo* (3b) but not with the perfective marker *le* as in example (2c). Wang 1965 is the first to propose that *yǒu* ‘have’ in *méi(yǒu)* and *le* are morphological alternants in complementary distribution, with the former appearing in negative contexts and the latter only in affirmatives. The morphological connection between *yǒu* and *le* has been challenged by Li & Thompson (1981: 434–438) as well as Li 2007, but the assumption that *yǒu* is an aspectual auxiliary (or a perfective auxiliary) has remained widely adopted in subsequent studies on Mandarin negation.

The position that negation has a close relationship with temporality is not new (see Zanuttini 2001 and Miestamo 2005), and the suggestion that aspect is the temporal system to which negation is connected in Chinese is exceedingly plausible as well, because aspect is the most prominently and overtly formalised temporal category in Chinese. Indeed, the same negation-aspect compatibility pattern is also identified in the two Cantonese varieties investigated in this paper – Hong Kong and Gaozhou Cantonese. Examples (4) to (9) adopt the sentences from example (1) and present the corresponding structures in the two Cantonese varieties.

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

(4) Hong Kong Cantonese

- a. 我買書
ngo mai syu
I buy book
'I buy books.'
- b. 我唔買書
ngo m [mai syu]
I not buy book
'I do not buy books.'

(5) Hong Kong Cantonese negation and perfective aspect

- a. 我買咗書
ngo mai-zo syu
I buy-PFV book
'I bought books.'
- b. 我冇買書
ngo mou mai syu
I not.have buy book
'I did not buy books.'
- c. 我冇買咗書
**ngo mou mai-zo syu*
I not.have buy-PFV book
Intended: 'I did not buy books.'
- d. 我唔買咗書
**ngo m mai-zo syu*
I not buy-PFV book
Intended: 'I did not buy books.'

(6) Hong Kong Cantonese negation and experiential aspect

- a. 我買過書
ngo mai-gwo syu
I buy-EXP book
'I have bought books (before).'
- b. 我冇買過書
ngo mou mai-gwo syu
I not.have buy-EXP book
'I have not bought books (before).'

8 Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese

c. 我唔買過書

**ngo m mai-gwo syu*

I not buy-EXP book

Intended: 'I have not bought books (before).'

(7) Gaozhou Cantonese

a. 我買書

ngo mai syu

I buy book

'I buy books.'

b. 我茅買書

ngo mau [mai syu]

I not buy book

'I do not buy books.'

(8) Gaozhou Cantonese negation and perfective aspect

a. 我買嚟書

ngo mai-de syu

I buy-PFV book

'I bought books.'

b. 我茅買書

ngo mau mai syu

I not buy book

'I did not buy books.'

c. 我茅買嚟書

**ngo mau mai-de syu*

I not buy-PFV book

('I did not buy books.')

(9) Gaozhou Cantonese negation and experiential aspect

a. 我買過書

ngo mai-gwo syu

I buy-EXP book

'I have bought books (before).'

b. 我茅買過書

ngo mau mai-gwo syu

I not buy-EXP book

'I have not bought books (before).'

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

The crucial difference between Gaozhou Cantonese and the other three varieties is that Gaozhou Cantonese has only one standard negator, *mau5* ‘not’. One might naturally assume that the aspectual sensitivity in negation has emerged with the presence of more than one standard negator. In other words, it is possible to interpret the aspectual sensitivity as a division of labour between the negators. The pattern in Gaozhou Cantonese (see examples 7-9) falsifies that assumption, and argues for a new understanding of the Chinese negation puzzle for a deeper-rooted motivation for this shared ‘specialisation’ of perfective negation among Mandarin *méi(yǒu)*, Hong Kong Cantonese *mou5*, and Gaozhou Cantonese *mau5*. The aim of this paper is to introduce a new perspective on this old puzzle by examining the nature of negators such as *méi(yǒu)* throughout history and across four Chinese varieties, based on Croft’s diachronic model of the Negative Existential Cycle. For the sake of an in-depth discussion on negators such as *méi(yǒu)*, the present analysis does not address the issues of *bù* and the compatibility between negation and imperfective aspect.

2.2 Methodology

The current study adopts a diachronic-comparative approach to examine Chinese negation. Two types of data are examined: acceptability judgments elicited from online questionnaires as well as a survey of historical corpora. Results from the online acceptability questionnaires provide the foundation for a synchronic cross-linguistic comparison between the four varieties of Chinese: Beijing Mandarin, Taiwan Mandarin, Hong Kong Cantonese and Gaozhou Cantonese. A total of 130 participants have been consulted.³ The results from the acceptability judgment questionnaires reveal the NEC stage in which each variety belongs to.

All data obtained from the online questionnaires are annotated on a four-level grammaticality scale. The levels are completely acceptable (✓), slightly marginal (?), very marginal (??), and completely unacceptable (*). This scale was created by first presenting the speakers of each variety a set of sentences and then requesting them to rate how acceptable those sentences were on a scale of 1 to 5, where 1 was completely unacceptable and 5 was completely acceptable. The set of sentences contained nine control sentences; five were well-formed structures, and four were ill-formed. The range of average scores that each group of

³The questionnaires were completed in 2016. A total of 130 speakers of Chinese participated: 42 speakers of Beijing Mandarin, 24 of Taiwan Mandarin, 52 of Hong Kong Cantonese and 19 of Gaozhou Cantonese. All participants were native speakers of the respective variety and were aged from 20 to 40 (except for Gaozhou Cantonese, which involves a few speakers in their 60s). All had lived in the relevant area for at least ten years and most of them have not resided elsewhere.

8 Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese

speakers gave for these control sentences set the threshold for completely acceptable (✓) sentences and completely unacceptable (*) sentences, respectively, whereas the median between these two boundaries defined the division point between slightly marginal (?)-sentences and very marginal (??)-sentences. This procedure generated a unique set of grammaticality ranges for each variety and they are presented in Table 8.1. The average of the ranges was 4.5-5.0 for (✓), 3.0-4.4 for (?), 1.6-2.9 for (??), and 1.0-1.5 for (*).

Table 8.1: Data from online questionnaire

| | ✓ | ? | ?? | * |
|-----|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| BM | 4.7-5.0 | 3.0-4.6 | 1.4-2.9 | 1.0-1.3 |
| TM | 4.5-5.0 | 3.0-4.4 | 1.6-2.9 | 1.0-1.5 |
| HKC | 4.4-5.0 | 3.0-4.3 | 1.6-2.9 | 1.0-1.5 |
| GZC | 4.4-5.0 | 3.2-4.3 | 2.0-3.1 | 1.0-1.9 |

The other data source consists of historical texts that are accessed from two Chinese text corpora – [Chinese Ancient Texts Database n.d.](#) and the Chinese Text Project [Sturgeon 2011](#). The historical data will provide evidence of the development of the Chinese negative existential expression and the connection between the negative existential and standard negation in various Chinese varieties.

3 The Negative-Existential Cycle in Mandarin Chinese

In Croft's (1991) article, Mandarin Chinese appears as one of the 33 languages that have displayed signs of the NEC. According to the classification proposed by Croft, Mandarin Chinese represents the transition Type B~C⁴, as he stated that:

in Mandarin Chinese it appears that the negative-existential *méi* is already beginning to employ the positive existential *yǒu* analogically, and moreover

⁴More precisely, Croft argued that Mandarin should have progressed “directly from Type A to Type C without an intervening Type B (a fused or irregular negative existential)” (1991: 23). As mentioned in his text, the transition from a highly compositional Type A (NEG EX) to the emergence of a special NEG.EX form in Type B is expected to involve phonological fusion. It is argued that this fusion is absent in Mandarin. Croft claimed that phonological fusion, is “inhibited” in isolating languages for some unknown reason (1991: 23). However, I argue later in this chapter that Hong Kong Cantonese serves as a counterexample to Croft's claim, a la Law 2014.

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

is proceeding to use *méi* plus *yǒu* as a verbal negator (i.e. resembling type C) in some contexts without any phonological fusion taking place (Croft 1991: 23)

As a diachronic model, Croft's NEC postulates a negation system that initially treats the existential predicate as a normal verb, as in Type A where the negator and the positive existential predicate are considered to be obligatory in a negative existential construction. The system then develops a special treatment for the negation of the existential predicate, the most prominent method of doing so is to lexicalise the negative form of the existential predicate, which is what occurs in Type B. As the negative existential has its own special realisation, the existential predicate becomes redundant in negative contexts and only appears in affirmative contexts. The NEC is driven by the presence or absence of the analogy between the existential predicate and the normal verb until the system reaches Type C. During this stage, the negative existential can expand to other domains of the grammar, when it can negate (most) normal verbs and serve as a standard negator and even as the general negator of the language. However, at the stage of Type C, the negative existential is polysemous in that it acts as both the negative existential predicate in negative existential contexts and the standard negator elsewhere, which explains the redundancy of the existential predicate in negative contexts as it was before (Croft 1991: 12). When the origin of the negator as a negative existential predicate is no longer apparent, the existential predicate is once again considered equal to other verbs. This syntactic analogy results in the negator and the existential predicate being obligatory once again, i.e. the system is moving back to Type A, and the transitional phase produces Type C~A. The predictions made by the NEC are summarised in Table 8.2 below.

The development from Type A to B to C that Croft 1991 proposed has been challenged by the typological data in Veselinova 2016 where she reveals a cross-linguistic tendency to adopt a special strategy for negating the existential. This suggests that Type B is the predominant system. Therefore, it is likely that Type B, not Type A, is the initial stage of the Cycle and the state that linguistic systems gravitates towards. Whether or not Veselinova is correct has no effect on the predictions for each stage described in Table 8.2 and thus I will still follow those predictions for the remainder of this paper.

Croft's classification is supported by data from Beijing and Taiwan Mandarin. These varieties of Mandarin use the verb *yǒu* 'to have' as an existential predicate, as shown in example (10a). The negator *bù* cannot be used to negate an existential construction as demonstrated in example 10c. In such examples, *méi* is the

8 Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese

Table 8.2: Stages of the NEC

| | Standard negation | Existential | Negative existential |
|-----|--|-------------|---|
| A | NEG | EX | NEG *(EX) |
| A~B | NEG | EX | NEG *(EX) and NEG.EX (*EX) with restricted distribution |
| B | NEG | EX | NEG.EX (*EX) |
| B~C | NEG and NEG.EX in restricted domains | | NEG.EX (*EX) |
| C | NEG = NEG.EX | EX | NEG (*EX) |
| C~A | NEG = NEG.EX | EX | NEG (EX) |

only legitimate negator, as in example (10b) where the existential predicate *yǒu* is optional.⁵

(10) Existential construction in Mandarin

- a. 教室裏有鉛筆
jiaoshi li you qianbi
 classroom inside have pencil
 'There are pencils in the classroom.'
- b. 教室裏沒(有)鉛筆
jiaoshi li mei(you) qianbi
 classroom inside not-have pencil
 'There are no pencils in the classroom.'
- c. 教室裏不有鉛筆
**jiaoshi li bu you qianbi*
 classroom inside not have pencil
 intended: 'There are no pencils in the classroom.'

The fact that *méi* alone can express negative existence indicates that it is the special form for the negative existential and that both Beijing and Taiwan Mandarin are at least in the Type B stage of the NEC. Furthermore, the acceptability

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

judgment survey results serve as evidence that both *bù* and *méi(yǒu)* can negate bare sentences, as demonstrated in example (11). This contradicts the suggestion raised by the Chinese negation puzzle, which was that *bù* is the default negator for bare sentences – simple verbal declaratives without any aspect-marking.

(11) Bare negatives in Mandarin

- a. State: 我(不/沒有)害怕老鼠

wo (bu / ?mei-you) haipa laoshu [Beijing Mandarin]

wo (bu / ?mei-you) haipa laoshu [Taiwan Mandarin]

I not / not-have fear rats

'I do/did not fear rats.'

- b. Activity: 我(不/沒)唱歌

wo (bu / ?mei) chang ge [Beijing Mandarin]

wo (bu / ?mei) chang ge [Taiwan Mandarin]

I not / not.have sing songs

'I do/did not sing.'

- c. Accomplishment: 我(不/沒)寫這封信

wo (?bu / ?mei) xie zhe feng xin [Beijing Mandarin]

wo (?bu / mei) xie zhe feng xin [Taiwan Mandarin]

I not / not.have write this CLF letter

'I do/did not write this letter.'

- d. Achievement: 我(不/沒有)贏比賽

wo (??bu / ?mei-you) ying bisai [Beijing Mandarin]

wo (??bu / ?mei-you) ying bisai [Taiwan Mandarin]

I not / not-have win race

'I do/did not win the race.'

⁵The existential predicate here is not the predicate for locative or ascriptive structures, and the negator for these two constructions is *bù* instead of *méi*. Thus, neither *bù* nor *méi* is a stative negator.

- (i) 我不是老師

wo bu shi laoshi

I not be teacher

'I am not a teacher.'

- (ii) 老師不在課室裡

laoshi bu zai keshi-li

teacher not be.at classroom-inside

'The teacher is not in the classroom.'

8 Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese

- e. Semelfactive: 我(不/沒)打嗝

wo (?*bu* / ?*mei*) *dage* [Beijing Mandarin]

wo (?*bu* / *mei*) *dage* [Taiwan Mandarin]

I not / not.have hiccup

'I do/did not hiccup.'

The acceptability of *bù* and *méi(yǒu)* depends on the situation type denoted by the predicate. The two forms are often only distinguished by their semantics because both *bù* and *méi(yǒu)* can negate bare sentences, while *méi(yǒu)* invariably denies the existence of the denoted situation, and *bù* expresses a lack of volition or habituality to actualise the situation. Table 8.3 provides a brief summary of the survey findings (see §2.2 for explanations on the grammaticality annotations).

Table 8.3: Negation of bare declaratives in Mandarin varieties

| | Beijing Mandarin | | Taiwan Mandarin | |
|----------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| | <i>bù</i> 'not' | <i>méi(yǒu)</i> 'not have' | <i>bù</i> 'not' | <i>méi(yǒu)</i> 'not have' |
| State [+psych] | ✓4.8 | ?3.4 | ✓4.9 | ?4.4 |
| State [-psych] | ✓5.0 | ??2.5 | ✓5.0 | ??2.4 |
| Activity | ✓4.8 | ?4.4 | ✓5.0 | ?4.3 |
| Accomplishment | ?4.1 | ?4.1 | ✓4.6 | ✓4.8 |
| Achievement | ??1.6 | ?4.4 | ??1.6 | ?4.4 |
| Semelfactive | ?3.9 | ?4.5 | ?4.0 | ✓4.7 |

The results presented in Table 8.3⁶ reveal that *méi(yǒu)*, the negative existential predicate in example (4b), is also a standard negator in Mandarin, particularly if we discount the incompleteness effect that has surfaced as general marginality in the Beijing Mandarin bare negatives with *méi(yǒu)*.⁷ These results also suggest that neither Beijing Mandarin nor Taiwan Mandarin represent Type C, the

⁶Table 8.3 reports the average score (and the corresponding level of acceptability) of the tested items for each predicate type. Each type includes two to four test items.

⁷Based on the judgment survey results presented in Table 8.3, most of the bare sentences that are negated by *méi(yǒu)* are considered slightly marginal (?), which could cast reasonable doubt on the status of *méi(yǒu)* as a standard negator in Mandarin. This can, in fact, be attributed to the 'incompleteness effect' in Chinese sentences without aspect marking or adverbial modification (Tsai 2008). As 'bare sentences' are, by definition, simple verbal declaratives without aspect marking or any modifiers, the negation of these sentences could generally be judged as slightly marginal. That should not affect our conclusion that *méi(yǒu)* is one of the standard negators in Mandarin, although this phenomenon does credit further investigation.

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

stage when the special form for the negative existential has developed into a general negator in the system. Firstly, the special form for the negative existential, *méi(yǒu)* ‘not have’, is not the only standard negator; *bù* ‘not’ is also a generally acceptable option for negating sentences that contain different classes of verbs. Secondly, the distribution of *méi(yǒu)* is not without restriction. Besides the issue of compatibility with different aspectual specification, *méi(yǒu)* has also been deemed unacceptable in bare sentences that contain non-psych stative predicates in both varieties of Mandarin, as shown in example (12).

- (12) Negation and non-psych state: 我(不/沒有) 知道這件事
wo (bu / ??mei-you) zhidao zhe jian shi [Beijing Mandarin]
*wo (bu / *mei-you) zhidao zhe jian shi* [Taiwan Mandarin]
I not / not-have know this CLF event
‘I do/did not know about this event.’

To summarise, *méi(yǒu)* ‘not have’ is a standard negator in both varieties of Mandarin but has not developed into a general negator that pervades the entire negation system; in other words, both Beijing and Taiwan Mandarin belong to the transition Type B~C as Croft 1991 has suggested. It should therefore be evident by now that the NEC is relevant to the Mandarin varieties as far as *méi(yǒu)* ‘not have’ is concerned. How this link between negation and existence (or more precisely, non-existence) emerged in the Chinese negation system remains unclear; §4 will offer some answers to this question.

4 From negative existential to standard negation

This section will examine eight sets of texts from the Old Chinese period to the Pre-Modern Chinese period. Historical linguists have yet to arrive at an unanimous consensus over the periodisation of the Chinese language, but there are two main criteria for the delineation of periods. They are phonological change and grammatical change. Based on existing proposals, e.g. Karlgren 1915, Norman 1988, Ohta 1988, Pan 1982, Peyraube 1988, Peyraube 1996, Wang 1958, I adopt the periodisation indicated in Table 8.4 for the current discussion. A detailed description of various possible periodisations is included in Appendix A.

These manuscripts have been selected for their sample of dialogues that offer a more accurate representation of the colloquial use of language.⁸ Table 8.5

⁸When considering the historical texts, two tacit issues are important. The first is that the language documented in the writings might not reflect the spoken colloquial form. This is a well-

8 Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese

Table 8.4: Periodisation of the Chinese language

| Language | Period |
|--|---|
| Old Chinese, a.k.a. Shanggu Hanyu | Shang to Han dynasty (ca. 1600 BC–AD 220) |
| Middle Chinese, a.k.a. Zhonggu Hanyu | Wei-Jin period to 10th c. AD (AD 220–960) |
| Pre-Modern Chinese, a.k.a. Jindai Hanyu | Song to Late Qing period (960–1842) |
| Modern Chinese, a.k.a. Xiandai Hanyu | Republican era to present (1911–present) |

provides basic information on these selected texts.⁹

Historical investigation of these texts addresses two issues. Firstly, since the contemporary Mandarin varieties both represent Type B~C in the NEC, we will determine whether the present expression of ‘not have’ has undergone any evolution through its history. Secondly, it reveals if there were other forms used to express negative existence in history and why the present form of the negative existential (such as *méi(yǒu)*) became the dominant one and developed further into a standard negator. To keep the discussion more focused, this section concentrates on the development in Mandarin and for that reason, all historical data will be transcribed in Hanyu Pinyin; §5 will extend the scope of this investigation

known challenge in historical linguistics, and it is particularly true in the study of historical Chinese linguistics because the Chinese logographic writing rarely provides phonological clues for the articulation of the characters. Hence, based on the historical record available, I adopt the traditional assumption that the written language reflects the spoken form to a certain extent, and that the choice of texts which include dialogues may bring the written language even closer to the speech at the time. The second issue concerns the potential regional variation involved across the texts that cover a long time period. Indeed, a major challenge for the present study, and for the research of historical linguistics in general, is to identify the exact regional variety represented in the texts. One problem is that the author of some texts remains unknown or there may be more than one. A case in point is *The Analects*, which is the collection of dialogues between Confucius and his students that was posthumously compiled by his followers, and it therefore has multiple authors whose identities are undetermined. Nonetheless, following Tai & Chan 1999, I assume that each period has a koine that is determined primarily by the location of the capital city of the time. Appendix B Table B1 presents the approximations of the regional variety that the respective text might represent.

⁹see Appendix B Table 8.14 for the number of words in each text.

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

Table 8.5: Historical texts investigated in this study

| Historical periods | Texts | Year of compilation | Genre |
|--------------------|---|--|---------------------|
| Old Chinese | 《論語》 The Analects | 480–350 BC Warring States period | Dialogue collection |
| | 《史記》 Shiji | 109–91 BC Western Han | History |
| Middle Chinese | 《三國志》 Records of the Three Kingdoms | AD 265–300 Wei-Jin period | History |
| | 《世說新語》 A New Account of the Tales of the World | 420–581 Southern & Northern dynasties | Short stories |
| Pre-Modern Chinese | 《太平廣記》 Taiping Guangji | 977–978 ^a Northern Song | Anthology |
| | 《朱子語類》 Zhuzi Yulei | 1270 Southern Song | Dialogue collection |
| Pre-Modern Chinese | 《西遊記》 Journey to the West | 1520–1580 Ming | Novel |
| | 《紅樓夢》 Dream of the Red Chamber | 1784 Qing | Novel |

^a *Taiping Guangji* was edited and published in AD 977 (Northern Song), but most of the stories in the collection were written during the time of the Tang dynasty (AD 618–907).

8 Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese

to the Cantonese varieties and explain the cross-linguistic variations across the four Chinese varieties examined in this analysis.

4.1 Evolution of the negative existential

As mentioned above, the verb ‘to have’ is the existential predicate in present-day Chinese (its form is *yǒu* in Beijing and Taiwan Mandarin, and *jau5* in the Cantonese varieties). Indeed, this verb has expressed existence since the Old Chinese period, as in (13):

- (13) ‘Have’ as an existential predicate

a. 天下有不順者，黃帝從而征之

tianxia you bu shun zhe, Huangdi conger zheng zhi
world have not obedient person Huangdi then fight PRO
'Where there are disobedient populations, Huangdi would fight them.' (《史記·五帝本紀》*Shiji* 109–91 BC)

b. 鄭人有賣鄭於秦

Zheng ren you mai Zheng yu Qin
Zheng people have sell Zheng to Qin
'There are people in Zheng who betray the country for Qin.' (《史記·秦本紀》*Shiji* 109–91 BC)

c. 有參軍見鼠白日行，以手板批殺之

you canjun jian shu bairi xing, yi shouban pi sha zhi
have officer see rat day walk with board hit kill PRO
'There was an officer who saw a rat walking in daytime, so he hit and killed it with a board.' (《世說新語》A New Account of the Tales of the World AD 420–581)

The first two examples originate from two different chapters of an Old Chinese history text, *Shiji*. In (13a), the verb ‘to have’ predicates over the nominal complement, *bú shùn zhě* ‘disobedient population’, and together they mean that disobedient people exist with a reference to the locative subject *tiānxià*, ‘the world’. This clause is therefore an existential construction that means ‘there exists disobedient population in the world’ (or literally ‘the world exists disobedient populations’). Example (13b) presents a similar case where ‘have’ is the predicate that means ‘to exist’ and it connects the entity that exists – people who betray the country, *Zhèng*, for another country, *Qín* – with the locative reference point, the *Zheng population*. Consequently, the meaning expressed is that within the population of *Zheng*, there are people who betray their own country for another, *Qin*.

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

The third example is extracted from a later text, *A New Account of the Tales of the World*, which is a collection of short stories completed during the Southern-Northern period (AD 420–581). The example contains the verb ‘have’ to express the existence of an officer who saw a rat during the daytime. This sentence has no locative reference, unlike the two previous examples. In fact, its structure is reminiscent of the specific indefinite structure in contemporary Chinese. Examples (14–15) below provide the translations of the first clause in example (13c) in modern Mandarin and Hong Kong Cantonese.

- (14) Modern Mandarin: 有一個士兵看見一隻老鼠大白天在街上跑來跑去
 $[you\ yi\ ge\ shibing] kanjian\ yi\ zhi\ laoshu\ dabaitian\ zai\ jie$
 have one CLF officer see one CLF rat big.morning be.at street
 $shang\ pao-lai-pao-qu$
 up run-come-run-go
 ‘An officer saw a rat running on the street in broad daylight.’
- (15) Hong Kong Cantonese: 有個士兵見到有隻老鼠日光日白喺條街度走黎走去
 $[jau\ go\ sibing] gin-dou\ jau\ zek\ lousyu\ jat-gwong-jat-baak\ hai$
 have CLF officer see-COMPL have CLF rat sun-light-sun-white be.at
 $tiu\ gaa\ dou\ zau-lai-zau-hui$
 CLF street LOC run-come-run-go
 ‘An officer saw a rat running on the street in broad daylight.’

The three examples in (13) show that ‘have’ has been an existential predicate since the earliest records.

As the verb ‘to have’ is an existential predicate, I will approach the issue of how the negation of existence was expressed by first identifying all the negative markers that can accompany the verb ‘to have’ and determine their respective developments. Historical records have revealed that at least twelve negative markers were available throughout the history of the Chinese language (Chappell & Peyraube 2016), but not all of them can appear with the existential predicate. Table 8.6 below reveals the possibility of various negator-existential predicate (NEG+yǒu ‘have’) pairings in terms of annotations, * = unattested, % = rarely attested, ✓ = commonly attested. Table 8.15 in Appendix B lists the exact number of occurrences for each [NEG+yǒu] pairing per text.

Based on the selected texts, 弗 fú and 蔑 miè never co-occurred with the existential predicate. Three others also rarely occurred with the existential predicate, namely 勿 wù, 匪 fěi and 毋 wú. The first two only appeared with the existential predicate less than ten times in the eight selected texts, and the last one, 毋

8 Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese

Table 8.6: [NEG + yǒu] pairings

| | [NEG + yǒu] | | [NEG + yǒu] |
|-------|-------------|-------|-------------|
| 勿 wù | % | 微 wēi | ✓ |
| 毋 wú | % | 蔑 miè | * |
| 弗 fú | * | 莫 mò | ✓ |
| 匪 fěi | % | 不 bù | ✓ |
| 非 fēi | ✓ | 無 wú | ✓ |
| 未 wèi | ✓ | 沒 méi | ✓ |

wú, only appeared with the existential predicate *yǒu* ‘have’ in one text – *Shiji* with twelve tokens (that is, 7% of the total NEG+HAVE tokens in the text). Excluding these five negative markers, the pattern that emerged is represented in Figure 8.1.¹⁰

The x-axis in Figure 8.1 represents the years, with 0 designating the year AD 1. The minus before some years replaces the abbreviation BC. Each line represents one form of realisation of NEG+HAVE and all of them have eight points, each of which marks the result from one of the eight texts selected for this study. The y-axis represents the proportion of each NEG+HAVE combination over the total number of NEG+HAVE occurrences in the text. For instance, 莫有 mò-have has occurred ten times in the third text, *Records of the Three Kingdoms* (AD 265–300), out of a total of 106 NEG+HAVE occurrences, hence the percentage shows 9.43% at the third point of the line. In another text produced later in history, a fourth text, *A New Account of the Tales of the World* (AD 420–581), which was produced later, only has nine occurrences of the form mò-have, but as there were only 40 tokens of NEG+HAVE in this text, the percentage marked at the fourth point of the same line is 22.5%.

The prominent pattern in Figure 8.1 is that many different NEG+HAVE combinations have been consistently attested across the eight texts, although the number of their occurrences were rather low. The forms *wéi*-have, *mò*-have, and *fēi*-have serve as examples of this. There are four particular NEG+HAVE combinations that have displayed more substantial changes over time: *wèi*-have (未有 *wèi*-yǒu), *bù*-have (不有 *bù*-yǒu), *wú*-have (無有 *wú*-yǒu), and *mei*-have (沒有 *mei*-yǒu), with the latter being the focus of this analysis. For clarity, these results are repeated in Figure 8.2 which uses the same design as Figure 8.1.

¹⁰In Figures 8.1 and 8.2, the numerals next to the Pinyin stand for tones: 1 refers to a high level tone, 2 to a rising tone, 3 to a dipping tone, and 4 to a falling tone.

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

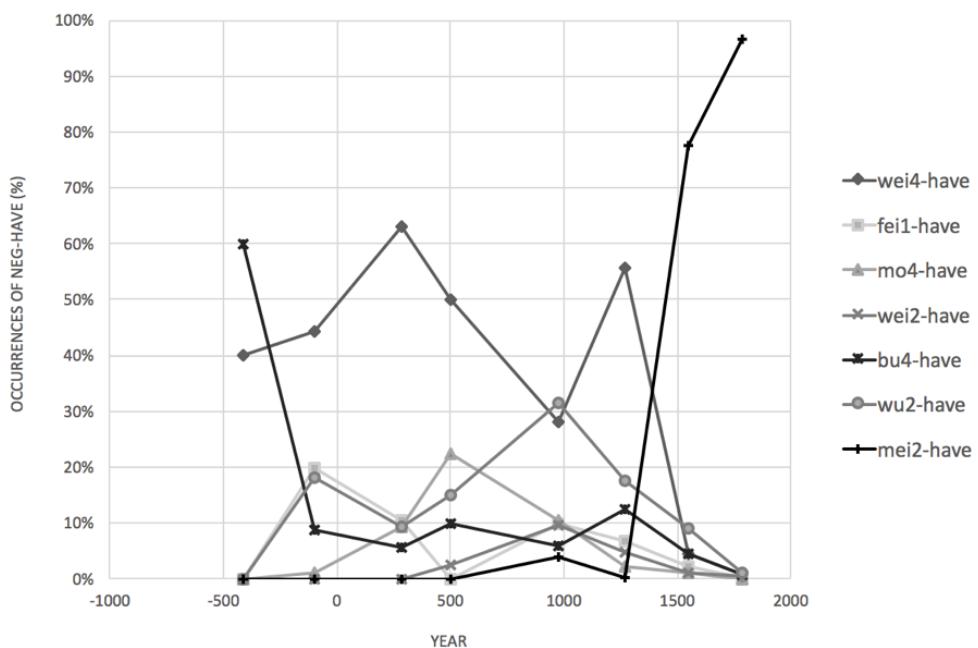


Figure 8.1: Percentage of NEG+HAVE realisations in historical texts (version 1).

Figure 8.2 reveals three important findings. Firstly, *bù*-have is the earliest realisation of NEG+HAVE combination in *The Analects* (BC 480–350), but appearances of this form diminished in approximately AD 1300. Secondly, *wú*-have emerged as a competing form of NEG+HAVE against *bù*-have, and its usage constantly increased until around AD 1300. The discovery that *bù* and *wú* have coexisted since the Old Chinese period concurs with the traditional understanding of the M-/P division of negation in Old Chinese (see Hashimoto 1985 and Zhang 2002 for more details). In brief, the issue of M-/P-negation division concerns the historical observation that Old Chinese had two groups of negators which were distinguishable by their initial consonant. One of these groups has an initial nasal, while the other has a plosive. The contemporary Chinese equivalent to this nasal-plosive (also referred to as the M-/P division) is arguably the North-South division of regional varieties. Evidence for this is the ‘not’ negator. The Northern varieties have a plosive ‘not’, such as the Beijing Mandarin *bù*, while the Southern varieties have a nasal ‘not’, such as the Hong Kong Cantonese *m4* and the Gaozhou Cantonese *mau5*; Table 8.7 presents additional information on the regional M-/

8 Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese

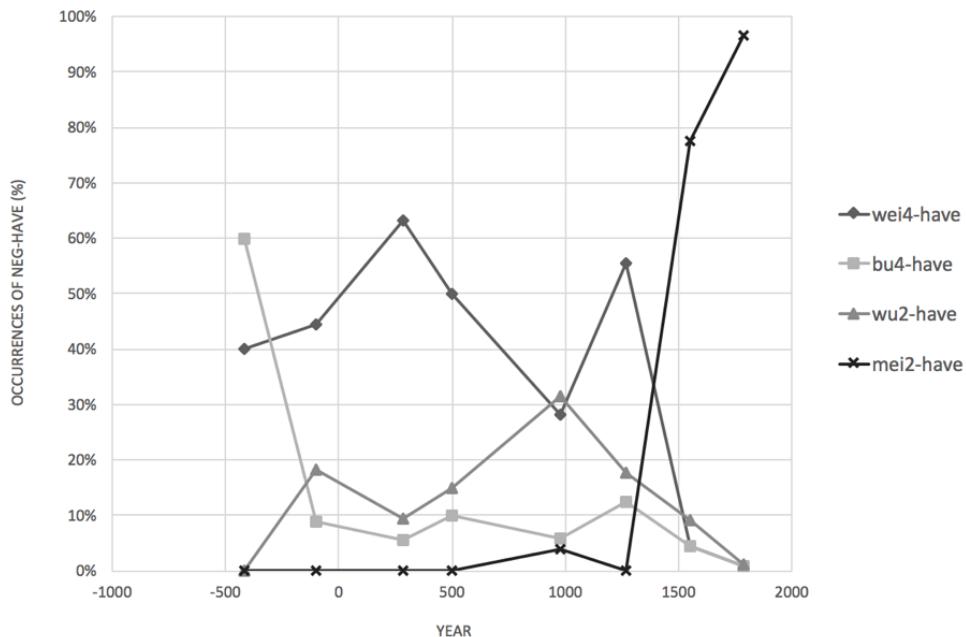


Figure 8.2: Percentage of NEG+HAVE realisations in historical texts (version 2).

P-division (adapted from Hashimoto 1985 and Zhang 2002).¹¹

Table 8.7 shows that what is referred to as the M-/P-division may not be as clear cut as it seems, and that instead of a rigid line, this ‘division’ should be conceived of as a continuum where gradual changes are evident, from the dominant M-form in the south to the non-nasal form in the north. A non-nasal, non-plosive F-form ‘not’ has also emerged between these two zones, as attested in Suzhou and Wenzhou.

Zhang (2002) suggests that the M/P division of negation has crucial consequences in the sense that M-negators across the varieties of Chinese follow Croft’s NEC and associate closely with non-existence, whereas this is not the case for the P-negators. According to Zhang’s analysis, the Chinese negation system belonged to Type B~C in its earliest oracle bone records, where *wú* acted

¹¹The phonological representation in Table 8.7 follows the IPA. The cities are arranged according to their geographical location from north to south, the labels N(orth) and S(outh) are determined by whether they are to the north or south of Chang Jiang (also known as the Yangtze River), which is the traditional means of defining the north-south divide in China.

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

Table 8.7: The M-/P-division in the negator of regional varieties

| | | 'not' | 'not have' |
|---|--------------|-------|---------------------|
| N | 瀋陽 Shenyang | pu | mei (iou) |
| N | 北京 Beijing | pu | mei (iou) |
| N | 濟南 Jinan | pu | mei (iou); mu (iou) |
| N | 西安 Xian | pu | mo iou; m iou |
| N | 合肥 Hefei | pə? | me; mu |
| S | 蘇州 Suzhou | fə? | m pɣ? |
| S | 南昌 Nanchang | pət | mau iu |
| S | 長沙 Changsha | pu | mau tɣ; mau |
| S | 溫州 Wenzhou | fu | nau < m- |
| S | 福州 Fuzhou | ŋ < m | mɔ |
| S | 廈門 Xiamen | m | bo < m- |
| S | 汕頭 Shantou | m | bo < m- |
| S | 梅縣 Meixian | m | mɔ |
| S | 廣州 Guangzhou | m | mou |

as both the special form for the negative existential and a verbal negator in some contexts, but as *wú* was not the only verbal negator, the system cannot be classified as Type C. In Later Old Chinese, the system might have evolved into Type A, where *wú* requires the presence of the verb *yǒu* ‘have’ to express negative existence. By Middle Chinese, the [*wú*-have DP] structure (that is, *wú* negating the existential predication of *yǒu* and its nominal complement) became more common and the use of *wú* and other derived forms such as 毛 *mau* prevailed particularly in the southern varieties. By the late Tang dynasty (ca. tenth century AD), the M-negators dominated the southern part of China, while the P-negators remained popular in the North. The key stages are summarised in Table 8.8 below.

Zhang proposed that in southern varieties such as Cantonese and Hakka, their ‘not’ negators were derived from their ‘not have’ negators which were once the general negator (see also Law 2014 which suggested that the Hong Kong Cantonese *mou5* ‘not.have’ was the product of *mou4* + *jau5* ‘not + have’). Another standard negator could have been invented for the sake of keeping the negation of the existential distinct from the negation of normal verbs as suggested by Veselinova (2016). I will return to Zhang’s analysis of the Cantonese negators in §5, but it is important to mention that Zhang has not explained how the Mandarin negation system evolved from the Old Chinese state to its present form, or

8 Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese

Table 8.8: Historical development in expression of the negative existential

| | Old Chinese Early | Later | Middle Chinese | Pre-Modern Chinese |
|-------|--------------------------------|--|--|-------------------------------|
| North | B~C m-negators as NEG.EX | B~C <i>wú</i> *(<i>have</i>) as NEG EX | A <i>wu</i> have DP | M- and P-negators co-exist |
| South | and verbal negator | | B <i>mou</i> (= <i>wu</i>) and other derived forms emerged | M-negators dominates |

in other words, how *méiyōu* emerged as the negative existential predicate and standard negator. It is significant that the sample texts featured in Figure 8.2 have no record of *méi*-have (or *méiyōu*) until AD 1300, and afterwards, *méiyōu* has become the predominant form to express the NEG+HAVE. The situation continues at present as well, as contemporary Mandarin has no other acceptable forms of NEG+HAVE. The emergence of *méiyōu* may seem rather sudden (Figure 8.2), but it is reasonable to postulate that this sudden appearance of *méiyōu* found in the texts only marked the beginning of the documentation of more colloquial speech and it is not the actual point where the strategy emerged. The late thirteenth century to the beginning of the fourteenth century marks the end of a long history of Han rule and the beginning of ‘foreign’ rule – the Yuan dynasty (AD 1271–1368). This was a period when the Mongolians ruled the entire nation. The issue at hand is to determine how *méiyōu* became the predominant form for NEG+HAVE, and how that resulted in its development into a standard negator in present-day Mandarin varieties.

4.2 Emergence of *méi(yōu)* as a negative existential and standard negator

Based on the historical texts (beyond the eight selected texts) in the Chinese Ancient Texts Database n.d. and Chinese Text Project, 没 *méi/mò* first appeared during the Pre-Qin era where it had three related meanings: to sink or submerge, to die, and the end of something, as illustrated in examples (16), (17), and (18), respectively. It is important to note that although these three readings of 没 *méi/mò* are archaic, they continue to be found in present-day Chinese, such as, in Mandarin

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

and Cantonese. When this lexical item is used to express its three meanings in Beijing and Taiwan Mandarin, its phonological realisation is *mò* (*mut6* in Hong Kong Cantonese). Whereas, when it functions as a standard negator, it is realised as *méi*. This function is not found in Cantonese but if it were, the phonological form would still be *mut6*. For ease of exposition, I follow the pronunciation in contemporary Mandarin when glossing the lexical uses of this word as *mò* and its negation uses as *méi* in the examples and in the text. An important point to note, however, is that in terms of sound change, *méi* did not develop from *mò* (Schuessler 2007: 390).

(16) *Mò* ‘to sink or submerge’

- a. 不臨深泉, 何以知沒溺之患
bu lin shen quan, hei yi zhi mo-ni-zhi huan
 not come deep stream how know submerge-drown-GEN danger
 ‘If one does not come close to a deep stream, how can one
 understands the danger of drowning?’ (《孔子家語》*Kongzi Jiayu* 206
 BC–AD 220)
- b. 可以步行水上不沒
keyi buxing shui shang bu mo
 can walk water above not sink
 ‘[He] can walk on water and won’t sink.’ (《抱朴子》*Baopuzi* AD
 300–343)
- c. 日月出沒其中
ri yue chu mo qi zhong
 sun moon out sink PRO within
 ‘The sun and moon appear there.’ (《藝文類聚》*Yiwen Leiju* AD 624)

The main verb of the subordinate clause that denotes the action of sinking in example (16b) is *mò*. The following example, (16c), is a quote from a later text, *Yiwen Leiju* – an encyclopedia compiled during the Tang dynasty (AD 624AD). This quote illustrates how the meaning ‘to sink/submerge’ has been extended to non-human entities, such as the sun and the moon (for instance, the sunset is depicted as the sun sinking or submerging). Crucially, *mò* appears with *nì* ‘drown’ in (16a) and together they mean that someone sank and drowned, which reflects the natural link between sinking and death: sinking or submerging leads to drowning, which results in death.

Indeed, *mò* also denotes ‘to be dead’ in the examples below:

(17) *Mò* ‘to be dead’

8 Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese

a. 父在, 觀其志; 父沒, 觀其行

fu zai, guan qi zhi; fu mo, guan qi xing
father live observe his will father die observe his conduct

‘While one’s father lives, observe his aspiration; when one’s father dies, observe his conduct.’ (《論語》*The Analects* BC 480–350)

b. 二親既沒, 所居齋寢

er qin ji mo, suo ju zhai qin
two parents already die PRO dwell alone sleep

‘With the death of the parents, [he] lived alone in [his] place (for mourning).’ (《顏氏家訓》*Yanshi Jiaxun* AD 420–581)

c. 生有顯功, 沒有美名

sheng you xian gong, mo you mei ming
live have remarkable feat dead have good name

‘[He] had remarkable achievements when he lived, and a good name after he died.’ (《藝文類聚》*Yiwen Leiju* AD 624)

Example (17a) is a clear case in point. The parallelism of the two sentences is deliberately used to highlight the contrast in content. The first clause in the first sentence is ‘when father lives’, and in the second sentence, the first clause expresses the opposite, ‘when father dies’, and the meaning of ‘to die’ is encoded by *mò*. At a glance, example (17c) appears to present a case of *mò yǒu* (also known as *méiyǒu*), where *yǒu* is the possessive predicate and 沒 *méi/mò* is the negator, but this would be a misinterpretation. Similar to example (17a), this sentence contains two clauses with parallel structure, expressing a contrastive meaning: the first clause states that the person in question (although pro-dropped) attains remarkable achievements when he lives, and the second clause contrasts that by stating what he possesses when he dies. In both clauses, the verb *yǒu* ‘have’ means ‘to possess/own’, and 没 *méi/mò* in the second clause means ‘dead’ (hence it is glossed as *mò*, not *méi*), the opposite of *shēng* ‘live’ in the first clause.

The third meaning of *mò* is ‘the end of something’, and this meaning, which existed at the same time as the other two, is an extension of the notion of death which we have seen in example (17). Just as the meaning of ‘to sink/submerge’ has been metaphorically extended to the sun (as in, the sunset) the concept of death being the end of the life can likewise be extended to non-human entities. The concept of death can be ‘the end’ in general and this is illustrated by the examples in (18) below.

(18) *Mò* ‘the end of something’

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

- a. 於夏十月，火既沒矣
 $yu\;xia\;shi\;yue,\;huo\;ji\;mo\;yi$
 in Summer tenth month fire already exhaust PRT
 'In Summer, October, when the fire has died down' (《孔子家語》Kongzi Jiayu 206BC–AD 220)
- b. 恐沒世不復見如此人
 $kong\;mo\;shi\;bu\;fu\;jian\;ruci\;ren$
 fear end world not again see such person
 'Fear that it won't be possible to find such person till end of the world' (《世說新語》A New Account of the Tales of the World AD 420–581)
- c. 立言不沒
 $li\;yan\;bu\;mo$
 establish word not end/extinguish
 'The words [one] established do not perish.' (《藝文類聚》Yiwen Leiju AD 624)

When *mò* denotes 'the end of something', it can be used as a verb (such as 'to end') or an adjective (such as 'final'). The former is illustrated by examples (18a) and (18c), and the latter by (18b). Once the meaning of *mò* has been semantically 'stretched' to mean 'death,' or even 'the end', both of which practically indicate that the entity in question ceases to exist, *mò* has become a natural candidate to express non-existence in general. Indeed, by the late thirteenth century, the negative existential function of 没 *méi* emerged (19), as did its use as a verbal negator (20). Xu (2003) presents an alternative position that the emergence of *méi* could be phonologically-driven. According to Xu, sound change occurred approximately during the tenth century AD making *wú* (*mou4* in Hong Kong Cantonese, which resembles the Middle Chinese realisation more closely) and *mò* almost indistinguishable phonetically. As a result, by the Song dynasty (AD 960–1279), *mò* and *wù* tended to be used interchangeably, and by around the fifteenth century, *méi/mò* has completely replaced *wú* as the negative existential (see Pan 2002 and Xu 2003). In fact, the semantic bleaching and sound change accounts fit rather well in terms of timing and the empirical evidence, and it is likely that both factors contributed and motivated the rise of *méi/mò* as the new negative existential predicate. This special form for the negative existential later developed into a standard negator in contemporary Mandarin varieties, confirming the NEC prediction. Schuessler (2007: 376–377, 517–518) mentions that two possible pathways have been proposed. On the one hand, Norman (1988: 126) suggests that *méi* (which was pronounced *muət* in Middle Chinese) could be a

8 Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese

variant of 勿 wú or 未 wèi, and that this variant was later fused with or influenced by *yǒu* ‘have’. On the other hand, Pulleyblank (1973: 121) proposes that the etymology of ‘not have’ originated from ‘submerge’. It began from the reconstructed form *ma, continued to 末 mò ‘the end of something’ and to 亡 wáng (*mong4* in Hong Kong Cantonese) ‘to die or be dead’, then to 無 wú (Hong Kong Cantonese *mou4*) ‘not or nothing’ or 莫 mò ‘not or don’t’, and finally to 没 mò/méi as ‘not have’. A thorough examination of which of the two factors played a more significant role in the historical development would, however, go beyond the scope of the present study.

(19) *Méi* as a negative existential

a. 一向都沒分別

*yixiang dou mei fenbie*along all **MEI** difference‘There’s no difference all along.’ (《朱子語類》*Zhuzi Yulei* AD 1270)

b. 將船撐至沒人煙處

*jiang chuan cheng zhi mei renyan chu*make boat punt till **MEI** people.smoke place‘[He] punted the boat to a place without people.’ (《西遊記》*Journey to the West* AD 1520–1580)

c. 沒人照顧

*mei ren zhaogu***MEI** people take.care‘There is no one to look after him.’ or ‘He has no one to look after him.’ (《儒林外史》*The Scholars* AD 1750)(20) *Méi* as verbal negator: 都沒理會了*dou mei lihui le*all **MEI** take.notice le‘[they] all didn’t take notice.’ (《朱子語類》*Zhuzi Yulei* AD 1270)

The negative existential predication and general verbal negation functions of *méi* emerged almost simultaneously. This is made evident by a text from the Song dynasty, *Zhuzi Yulei*, which is a collection of philosophical dialogues between *Zhuzi* and his students compiled in AD 1270. Example (19a) is extracted from this same text and is an instance of *méi* denoting the non-existence of an entity, *fēnbié* ‘difference’, although the locative reference that we have seen in the Old Chinese examples of *yǒu* ‘have’ (13a–13b) is absent. Example (20), on the

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

other hand, shows *méi* as a verbal negator because it denies that the event of ‘taking notice’ has occurred. It is important to note that the negative existential predicate and verbal negator *méiyōu* did not occur in the texts before the fourteenth century. In other words, the functions of *méi* as the negative existential predicate and as the verbal negator long predate the appearance of *méiyōu*. It was not until the Ming dynasty (AD 1368–1644) that the *méi-yǒu* ‘not-have’ combination first appeared as a negative existential expression as shown in (21). By the eighteenth century, *méiyōu* ‘not have’ combination began to function as a verbal negator. The first documented case of this was found in Dream of the Red Chamber (AD 1748), which is featured in example (22).

(21) *Méiyōu* as a negative existential

- a. 連宿處也沒有了

lian shu chu ye [mei you] le
even sleep place also [MEI have] LE

‘There isn’t even a place to stay now.’ or ‘[We] don’t have a place to stay.’ (《西遊記》*Journey to the West* AD1520–1580)

- b. 此處並沒有什麼蘭麝、明月、洲渚之類

ci chu bing [mei you] shenme lanshe mingyue zhou
this place really [MEI have] what fragrant.herbs bright.moon is
chu zhi lei
let that kind

‘There isn’t herbs, moon, islet or the likes [elements for poetry] here.’ (《紅樓夢》*Dream of the Red Chamber* AD 1748)

(22) *Méiyōu* as verbal negator:還沒有走到跟前

hai [mei-you zou-dao] genqian
still [not-have walk-COMPL] in.front

‘still have not walked to the front.’ (《紅樓夢》*Dream of the Red Chamber* AD 1748)

A world-renowned novel from the Ming dynasty, *Journey to the West*, contained many tokens of *méiyōu* that expressed negative existence such as the one in example (21a). But example (21a) also reveals the ambiguity involved in the expression. As subject pro-drop has been very common in Chinese, instances such as (21a) can be interpreted as ‘someone does not even have a place to stay’ or that ‘this place or there does not even have a place for people to stay’. If it is the former (when the subject is a human), then (21a) is a possessive structure

8 Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese

and *méiyōu* means ‘not possess’, but if the latter is true (when the sentence has a locative subject), then it is an existential construction, and *méiyōu* means ‘not exist’, as it does in the sentence in (21b). The ambiguity is significant to the development of *méiyōu* from a negative existential predicate to a verbal negator (and a standard negator). As *yōu* ‘have’ can be an existential predicate and a possessive predicate, it might have provided a stepping stone for *méi* to evolve from a negative existential predicate to a standard negator. Indeed, the verb *yōu* ‘have’ has been polysemous in expressing existence and possession ever since the Old Chinese period; its existential sense has been discussed in §4.1 and the examples below illustrate *yōu* ‘have’ as a possessive predicate.

(23) ‘Have’ as possessive predicate

- a. 秦王有虎狼之心

Qin wang you hu lang zhi xin
Qin emperor have tiger wolf GEN heart

‘The Emperor of Qin is full of ambition and calculation.’ (lit. ‘The Emperor of Qin has a heart like the tiger or wolf.’) (《史記·項羽本紀》*Shiji* 109–91 BC)

- b. 庾子躬有廢疾，甚知名

Yu Zigong you feiji, shen zhiming
Yu Zigong have disability quite well-known

‘Yu Zigong has physical disability which is quite well-known.’ (《世說新語》*A New Account of the Tales of the World* AD 420–581)

(23a) is an example of Old Chinese, where *yōu* ‘have’ is the main verb that predicates over the nominal complement, *hǔ láng zhī xīn* ‘ambition’ (literally, ‘the heart of the tiger or wolf’), and the subject *Qín wáng*, ‘King of Qin’, is the possessor. Likewise, in (23b), the subject (*Yù Zǐgōng*) possesses a physical disability, and the verb *yōu* denotes ‘to possess’.

To summarise, the development of Chinese negation began with a highly diverse situation where more than ten negative markers actively existed in the language, and among those negative markers, at least three were productive strategies to express negative existence:

Following Croft’s NEC classification, Old Chinese displayed signs of the Type A system with the second strategy (*bù-yōu*), the Type B system with the first strategy (*wú*), as well as the B~C (or even C~A) system with the third strategy (*wú-yōu*). In other words, because *wú* was only one of the Chinese verbal negators, it should be considered as Type B~C, but its presence with the existential

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

Table 8.9: Old Chinese negative existential expressions

| | |
|-----------|--|
| <i>wú</i> | can stand alone as a special form of the negative existential (Zhang 2002) |
| <i>bù</i> | can negate the existential predicate <i>yǒu</i> ‘have’ to express negative existence |
| <i>wú</i> | can combine with the existential predicate <i>yǒu</i> ‘have’ to express negative existence |

predicate in negative existential contexts resembles the C~A system, hence the ambiguity. These strategies for the negative existential continued to be competing alternatives in historical records until a ‘novel’ form, *méi*, emerged in the late thirteenth century AD. That form developed through a series of semantic extensions and bleaching from ‘sink’ to ‘dead’, and then became a form to express non-existence and general verbal negation. Therefore, *méi* initially was a special form for the negative existential and also basically a verbal negator (in other words, Type B~C).

While *méi* later became compatible with the existential predicate *yǒu* ‘have’ in negative existential contexts, *méi-yǒu*, similar to *wú-yǒu*, can be ambiguously interpreted as a sign of a B~C or C~A system. The sign of Type B~C is that *méi* and *bù* co-exist as standard negators in contemporary Mandarin, and the sign of Type C~A is that *méi* itself is both a negative existential predicate and a verbal negator. Its compatibility with *yǒu* ‘have’ could indicate that the system was moving on to the compositional Type A.

The historical development sketched in this section has important implications for the analysis of contemporary Mandarin negation. Firstly, the fact that *méi* predates *méiyǒu* in being a negative existential predicate and a verbal negator indicates that *méi* cannot be interpreted as a contracted form of *méiyǒu*. The optional presence of *yǒu* in present-day Mandarin varieties is not simply a matter of phonological fusion or reduction in the fact that *yǒu* can appear with *méi* in negative existential contexts and standard negation indicates that the existential content of *méi* may be bleached. This results in the presence of *yǒu* being acceptable and not semantically redundant; and its optionality shows that the semantic bleaching remains underway. Secondly, the development of *méi* from a negative existential predicate to verbal negation might explain why *yǒu* must be negated by *méi*, while other verbs can be negated by either *méi* or *bù*. The connection between *méi* and *yǒu* rests in their semantic connection, that is, existence. The next section will examine the negation system of two Cantonese varieties (Hong

8 Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese

Kong and Gaozhou Cantonese) from the perspective of the NEC. The result will not only highlight the cross-linguistic similarities and differences, but will also account for the ambiguous statuses of *wú-yǒu* and *méi-yǒu*.

5 Variation within Chinese

The connection that Croft identified between the NEC and Mandarin Chinese also exists in the Cantonese varieties of Chinese. The verb ‘to have’ is generally used as the existential predicate in Chinese varieties, but it has varying phonological forms in different varieties. Thus, the verb ‘to have’ is *yǒu* in Mainland and Taiwan Mandarin and *jau5* in Hong Kong and Gaozhou Cantonese. The existential constructions in the Cantonese varieties are illustrated in the examples below:

- (24) Hong Kong Cantonese (Yue Chinese, Sinitic)

- a. 課室度有鉛筆
fosat dou jau jyunbat
 classroom place have pencil
 ‘There are pencils in the classroom.’
- b. 課室度唔有鉛筆
^{*}*fosat dou m jau jyunbat*
 classroom place not have pencil
 ‘There aren’t pencils in the classroom.’
- c. 課室度有(*有)鉛筆
*fosat dou mou (*jau) jyunbat*
 classroom place not.have have pencil
 ‘There aren’t pencils in the classroom.’

- (25) Gaozhou Cantonese (Gaoyang Yue Chinese, Sinitic)

- a. 課室具¹²有鉛筆
fosat gui jau jinbat
 classroom that.place have pencil
 ‘There are pencils in the classroom.’

¹²The character is merely an approximation for the phonetic realisation of *gui3* because Cantonese generally lacks systematic orthography.

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

b. 課室具茅有鉛筆

fosat gui mau (jau) jinbat
 classroom that.place not have pencil
 'There aren't pencils in the classroom.'

Examples (24a) and (25a) above contain the existential construction in Hong Kong Cantonese and Gaozhou Cantonese in an affirmative context, respectively. Both varieties use the verb *jau5* 'to have' to express the existence of the entity denoted by its complement, which is a pencil, with reference to a location, such as a classroom. This affirmative structure is equivalent to the one found in the Mandarin varieties (12). However, the negative sentences in examples (24b) and (24c) as well as in example (25b) are notably different. Firstly, Hong Kong Cantonese has two standard negators, *m4* 'not' and *mou5* 'not.have'. These largely resemble *bù* and *méi(yǒu)* in Mandarin, but the Mandarin *yǒu* 'have' has the option to follow *méi* but *jau5* in Hong Kong Cantonese cannot co-occur with *mou5*. Examples (24b) and (24c) reveal that the only legitimate negator in Hong Kong Cantonese negative existential constructions is *mou5*, but even there the presence of the existential predicate *jau5* is strictly forbidden. In addition, Gaozhou Cantonese differs from the other three varieties in having only one standard negator *mau5* 'not'. Thus, the counterpart of Gaozhou Cantonese in example (28b) resembles the Mandarin structure except that the negator *mau5* is the only standard negator in the variety. In terms of classifying the Cantonese varieties into the NEC types, as the Hong Kong Cantonese *mou5* 'not.have' can express negative existence on its own, it can be regarded as a special form of negative existential, which means that Hong Kong Cantonese would be categorised at least as Type B. Hong Kong Cantonese *mou5* 'not.have' resembles Beijing and Taiwan Mandarin in that it can also be used as a standard negator even though this usage is subject to some restrictions, as shown in Table 8.10¹³ as well as in example (26), which involves a non-psych stative predicate. Therefore, Hong Kong Cantonese should be Type B~C, which is the same classification as the Mandarin varieties.

(26) Negation and a non-psych state: 我 (唔/冇) 知道呢件事

ngo (m/??mou) zidou li gin si
 I not/not-have know this CLF event

Intended: 'I do not know about this event.' 'I did not know about this event.'

¹³To recap, 'bare negatives' refer to the negative form of bare sentences with no overt aspect-marking or any type of adverbial modification.

8 Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese

Table 8.10: Bare negatives in Hong Kong Cantonese

| | <i>m4</i> 'not' | <i>mou5</i> 'not.have' |
|----------------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| State [+psych] | ✓ 4.6 | ?4.2 |
| State [-psych] | ✓ 4.6 | ??2.6 |
| Activity | ✓ 4.6 | ✓ 4.7 |
| Accomplishment | ?4.2 | ✓ 4.5 |
| Achievement | ??2.4 | ✓ 4.7 |
| Semelfactive | ?4.3 | ✓ 5.0 |

From the perspective of Croft's NEC, the three Chinese varieties that have two standard negators ('not' and 'not have'), namely, Beijing Mandarin, Taiwan Mandarin, and Hong Kong Cantonese, all represent Type B~C. This means that they have a special form for the expression of the negative existential, 'not have'. Gaozhou Cantonese is different from the four other Chinese varieties examined in this study because it only has one standard negator, *mau5*. Example (27) presents the standard negation in Gaozhou Cantonese, where *mau5* occurs in a preverbal position after the subject, similar to the other varieties. The acceptability of *mau5* with various situation types is illustrated in Table 8.11.

- (27) 我茅寫已封信
ngo mau se gei fung seon
 I not write this CLF letter
 'I don't write this letter.'

I argue that standard negation in Gaozhou Cantonese is an example of Type C~A in the NEC. Gaozhou Cantonese apparently lacks a special form for the negative existential, but at the same time, the presence of the existential predicate *jau5* 'have' is optional in negative existential contexts. This indicates that *mau5* can alone express negative existence and could be developing into a special form for the negative existential. Hence, it is possible to assume that Gaozhou Cantonese is Type A~B. However, according to Zhang (2002), while *wù* declined in use in the North during the Middle Chinese period, it became the predominant form for negative existence in the South and many phonologically derived forms emerged in the southern varieties. Zhang thus proposes that the M-negators could be the result of combining *wú* – once a standard negator developed from a negative existential – and the existential predicate *yǒu* (in Cantonese, *mou4*

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

Table 8.11: Bare negatives in Gaozhou Cantonese

| | <i>mau5</i> ‘not’ |
|----------------|----------------------|
| State [+psych] | ✓ 4.6 |
| State [-psych] | ✓ 4.7 |
| Activity | ✓ 4.6 |
| Accomplishment | ✓ 4.5 |
| Achievement | ?3.9 |
| Semelfactive | ✓ 4.6 |

and *jau5*). *Zhang* cites a great number of Cantonese varieties as examples of this historical development, including, *mou5* in standard Cantonese (Hong Kong Cantonese included) and *mau5* in Xinyi Cantonese. This latter example is crucial precisely because (i) Gaozhou, Xinyi, and Huazhou are the three county-level cities within Maoming, the southwestern county in Guangdong Province, and (ii) the negator, *mau5*, in the Xinyi variety is identical to that in Gaozhou Cantonese.

As far as Hong Kong Cantonese is concerned, *Zhang*’s discovery has been supported by *Law* (2014) where the phonological process involved is suggested to be as in Figure 8.3.

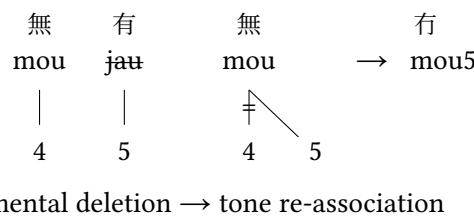


Figure 8.3: Hong Kong Cantonese (Yue Chinese, Sinitic): *mou5* < *mou4* + *jau5*

Law suggests that the marking of *mou5* involved two processes: first, the segmental information in the existential predicate *jau5* is deleted, then its tone (tone 5, the low-rising tone) is re-associated to the left, and replaced the original tone 4 of *mou4*. The result is *mou5*. Therefore, according to *Law*, wherever *mou5* appears, *jau5* is also present in the structure but phonologically silent (see *Yue* 2001 for an alternative account which argues that *mou5* is a product of *m4* + *jau5*; *m* provides the initial consonant and *jau5* provides the tone, and the vowel

8 Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese

is influenced by the consonant). Law's (2014) analysis is supported by the reconstruction results in Norman (1988) and Schuessler (2007). Norman (1988: 213) notes that many M-negators in Chinese southern dialects are developed from 無 *wù* and new negators are formed by the fusion of *wù* and *yǒu* (Hong Kong Cantonese *mou4* and *jau5* > *mou5*). Schuessler (2007: 518–519) further suggests that *wù* developed to express negative existence or the meaning of ‘not have’ in general (including negative possessive) during the Western Zhou period (1027–771 BC), and it later replaced all other forms with similar functions. Hence, 無 *wù* is most probably the source of the negative existential and standard negator *mou5* in contemporary Hong Kong Cantonese.

If Law's (2014) phonological analysis is well-founded and Zhang's observation on Xinyi Cantonese *mau5* is also applicable to Gaozhou Cantonese, they would carry two important implications. Firstly, the Gaozhou Cantonese *mau5* is also a standard negator that has developed from the negative existential, similar to the other three varieties – *méi(yǒu)* in Beijing and Taiwan Mandarin, and *mou5* in Hong Kong Cantonese. In that case, Gaozhou Cantonese should not belong to Type A~B, but is a typical example of Type C~A. As *mau5* alone can express negative existence, and acknowledging Zhang's account that *mau5* is derived from *mou4 + jau5* ‘not [=not.have] + have’, *mau5* itself is an example of a special form of the negative existential that has developed into a verbal negator. Indeed, the Gaozhou Cantonese data support this account: in terms of negation-viewpoint compatibility, *mau5* resembles *méi(yǒu)* and *mou5* in being able to appear with the experiential viewpoint *gwo3*. This would be unexpected if *mau5* ‘not’ should be patterned with the ‘not’ negator of the other varieties, such as *bù* and *m4*. The major difference between Gaozhou Cantonese and the other three Chinese varieties is that this derived verbal negator is not only a standard negator but also the general negator in the variety. Once the existential predicate *jau5* can once again appear with this derived negator (such as *mau5*) in negative existential contexts, it would indicate that the negation system in Gaozhou Cantonese has moved to a full cycle, that is, C~A; this is indeed the case as seen in example (25b). The second point concerns the difference between *méi(yǒu)* in the Mandarin varieties and *mou5* in Hong Kong Cantonese. As classified above, Hong Kong Cantonese and the Mandarin varieties all belong to Type B~C, but unlike its Mandarin counterpart, *mou5* cannot occur with *jau5* as illustrated in (24c). This restriction not only applies to negative existential structures (such as when *jau5* is an existential predicate), but occurs across the board – whenever *mou5* is present *jau5* must not, as shown in (28):

- (28) Hong Kong Cantonese (Yue Chinese, Sinitic) *jau5* ‘have’

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

- a. Existential negation: 課室度有(*有)鉛筆
*fosat dou mou (*jau) jyunbat*
 classroom place not.have have pencil
 'There aren't pencils in the classroom.'
- b. Possessive negation: 我有(*有)鉛筆
*ngo mou (*jau) jyunbat*
 I not have pencil
 'I do not have/own pencils.'
- c. Standard negation: 我有(*有)知道呢件事
*ngo mou (*jau) zidou li gin si*
 I not.have have know this CLF event
 'I did not know about this event.'

This would be expected if we follow the phonological account proposed by Law. The process applies indiscriminately to all syntactic structures precisely because *jau5* is phonologically merged with *mou4*. The Mandarin *méi*, on the other hand, did not undergo the same phonological fusion process. *Méi* developed into a negative existential predicate in Mandarin through a series of semantic change. These were from 'to sink/submerge' which leads to the natural result of drowning and death (hence 'to be dead') and later extended to mean 'the end of something' which could develop from the idea of death being the end of life, the meaning of 'end of something' or 'something being extinguished or perished' can easily develop into the idea of non-existence, i.e. negative existence. Veselinova 2013 identified three major sources in her typological study of negative existentials and these are summarised in Table 8.12 (adapted from Veselinova 2013: Table 7):

Table 8.12: Summary of the origins of negative existentials

| Sources | Number of languages |
|---|---------------------|
| (i) Univerbation of standard negator and another word | 17 (27.0%) |
| (ii) Lexical item with a negative content | 25 (39.7%) |
| (iii) Formally identical with SN (origin unknown) | 21 (33.3%) |

Following Veselinova 2013, the Old Chinese *wù* and the present-day Mandarin *méi* are examples of the second source of negative existentials because they are lexical items with a negative content – *wù* means 'absent' and *méi/mò* can mean

8 Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese

'dead', and both are common lexical sources for the negative existential in her typological study.¹⁴ In contrast, the evolution of *mou5* and *mau5* in the two Cantonese varieties belong to source (i) where the negative existential was derived from the former standard negator *mou4* (*wú* in Mandarin) and the existential predicate *jau5* 'have'. The fact that *méi* never contained a 'have' element made it possible to appear with the existential predicate *yǒu*. By comparison, since *mou5* itself has evolved from *mou4-jau5*, co-occurrences of *mou5* and *jau5* in present-day Hong Kong Cantonese are blocked due to their structural clash and semantic redundancy. Comparing between the two Cantonese varieties, the possible though optional appearance of *jau5* with *mau5* for negative existence and negative possession indicates that the semantics of *mau5* has been further bleached to the extent that its original meaning as a negative existential has been considerably weakened, whereas the sense of negative existence remains prominent in the *mou5* of Hong Kong Cantonese.

6 Conclusion

To summarise, this paper has based its arguments on historical evidence (from Old Chinese to Modern Mandarin and Cantonese) that Croft's (1991) Negative Existential Cycle, which postulates the connection between negation and the existential predicate as a source for the evolution of general verbal negators, is indeed attested in Chinese history and in various Chinese varieties to date. Thus, according to the NEC classification, Beijing and Taiwan Mandarin as well as Hong Kong Cantonese belong to the transition Type B~C where *méi* and *mou5*, respectively, are special forms of the negative existential which have extended their use to general verbal negation but have not been generalised to the whole grammatical system; *méi* and *mou5* co-exist with *bù* and *m4* as standard negators in Mandarin and Hong Kong Cantonese, respectively. Gaozhou Cantonese, unlike the others, has a general negator *mau5*, which this paper suggests, following Zhang 2002 and Law 2014, to have derived from *mou4* (once a special form for the negative existential) and the existential predicate *jau5*. Since Gaozhou Cantonese allows the existential predicate *jau5* 'have' to optionally appear with *mau5* even in negative existential contexts, I argue that Gaozhou Cantonese is an example of Type C~A, which means that *mau5* has had its existential content sufficiently bleached that it has become a normal verbal negator, and is therefore compatible

¹⁴Veselinova 2013 mentioned several common lexical origins for negative existential predicates: 'lack', 'absent', 'there is not', 'empty', and 'dead'.

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

with the existential predicate without creating redundancy or clashes. The historical development and the attestation of the NEC in the four Chinese varieties provide solid evidence for the strong connection of *méi* in Mandarin varieties, *mou5* in Hong Kong Cantonese, and *mau5* in Gaozhou Cantonese to the concept of (non-)existence. This connection to non-existence not only explains the interpretations that these negators generate in bare negatives, but also introduces a new understanding of the nature of these negators; they are not perfective negators but negators that assert non-existence.

Abbreviations

| | | | |
|-------|---------------------|-----|-------------------|
| CLF | classifier | LOC | locative |
| COMPL | completive aspect | PFV | perfective aspect |
| EXP | experiential aspect | PRO | pronoun |
| GEN | genitive | PRT | particle |

Acknowledgements

I would like to thank Ian Roberts, David Willis, Theresa Biberauer, the editors of the volume (Ljuba Veselinova and Arja Hamari), Stephen Matthews, Meichun Liu, and an anonymous reviewer for valuable comments on early versions of this work. My gratitude also extends to the audience at IX EACL International Conference, 20th International Conference on Yue Dialects, the NEC workshop in Stockholm, and IACL-25 for their interest and feedback. I am also grateful to all my language consultants from the four Chinese varieties for their generous support during the data-collection process.

Appendix A: Periodisation of the Chinese language

Table 8.13: Proposed periodisation of the Chinese language

8 Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese

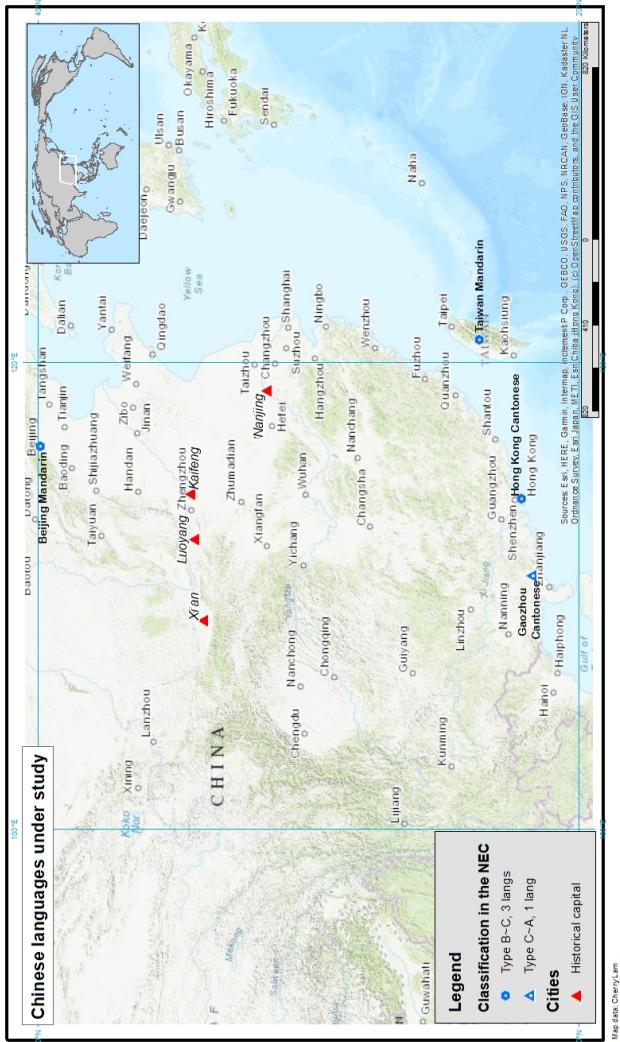


Figure 8.4: Location of the historic capital cities and four contemporary Chinese varieties examined (cf. Zhou 1995; Wan 1958)

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

Appendix B: Data on the historical texts selected

8 *Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese*

Table 8.14: Basic information on the selected texts

| Texts | | Year of compilation | Possible location of the koine represented | Total no. of words in text |
|-------|--|---------------------|--|----------------------------|
| I | 《論語》 The Analects | 480-350BC | Luoyang, Henan | 12 700 |
| II | 《史記》 Shiji | 109-91BC | Xi'an, Shaanxi | 526 500 |
| III | 《三國志》 Records of the Three Kingdoms | AD 265-300 | Luoyang, Henan | 350 833 |
| IV | 《世說新語》 A New Account of the Tales of the World | 420-581 | Nanjing, Jiangsu; Xi'an, Shaanxi | 68 967 |
| V | 《太平廣記》 Taiping Guangji | 977-978 | Kaifeng, Henan | 1 782 000 |
| VI | 《朱子語類》 Zhuzi Yulei | 1270 | Kaifeng, Henan | 1 973 905 |
| VII | 《西遊記》 Journey to the West | 1520-1580 | Nanjing, Jiangsu; Beijing | 589 137 |
| VIII | 《紅樓夢》 Dream of the Red Chamber | 1784 | Beijing | 731017 |

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

Table 8.15: Number of occurrences of different [NEG+yōu] ‘NEG-have’
in the texts

| Texts | 勿 <i>wù</i> | 毋 <i>wú</i> | 弗 <i>fú</i> | 匪 <i>fěi</i> | 未 <i>wèi</i> | 微 <i>wēi</i> | 蔑 <i>miè</i> | 莫 <i>mò</i> | 不 <i>bù</i> | 無 <i>wú</i> | 沒 <i>méi</i> | Total no. of [NEG+yōu] tokens |
|-------|----------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| I | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 0 | 5 |
| II | 0 | 12 | 0 | 1 | 34 | 76 | 0 | 0 | 2 | 15 | 31 | 171 |
| III | 2 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 11 | 67 | 0 | 0 | 10 | 6 | 10 | 106 |
| IV | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 20 | 1 | 0 | 9 | 4 | 6 | 40 |
| VI | 2 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 52 | 420 | 37 | 0 | 16 | 94 | 134 | 756 |
| VII | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 2 | 4 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 4 | 8 | 89 |
| VIII | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 7 | 5 | 0 | 0 | 7 | 9 | 830 |

8 Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese

References

- Chappell, Hilary & Alain Peyraube. 2016. A typological study of negation in Sinitic languages: Synchronic and diachronic views. In Sze-Wing Tang Pang-Hsin Ting Samuel Hung-Nin Cheung & Andy Chi-on Chin (eds.), *New horizons in the study of Chinese: dialectology, grammar, and philology—studies in honor of professor anne yue*, 483–534. Hong Kong: T.T. Ng Chinese Language Research Centre, Institute of Chinese Studies, The Chinese University of Hong Kong.
- Chinese Ancient Texts Database. N.d. Chant. Org. <http://www.chant.org/Database.aspx> (2017-02-15).
- Croft, William. 1991. The evolution of negation. *Journal of Linguistics* 27(1). 1–27.
- Ernst, Thomas. 1995. Negation in Mandarin Chinese. *Natural Language and Linguistic Theory* 13(4). 665–707.
- Hashimoto, J. Mantaro. 1985. 言語地理類型論 *yanyu dili leixing lun* [Theory of language typology]. Beijing: Peking University Press.
- Huang, Cheng-Teh James. 1988. Wǒ pǎo de kuài and Chinese Phrase Structure. *Language* 64(2). 274–311.
- Karlgren, Bernhard. 1915. *Études sur La phonologie chinoise* [studies of Chinese phonology]. Vol. 15 (Archives D'études Orientales). Upsala: Appelburg.
- Law, Paul. 2014. The negation mou5 in Guangdong Yue. *Journal of East Asian Linguistics* 23(3). 267–305.
- Li, Charles & Sandra Thompson. 1981. *Mandarin Chinese: A functional reference grammar*. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Li, Mei. 2007. *Negation in Chinese*. Shanghai: Shanghai Foreign Language Education Press.
- Lin, Jo-Wang. 2003. Aspectual selection and negation in Mandarin Chinese. *Linguistics* 41(3). 425–459.
- Miestamo, Matti. 2005. *Standard negation: The negation of declarative verbal main clauses in a typological perspective*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Norman, Jerry. 1988. *Chinese* (Cambridge Language Surveys). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Ohta, Tatsuo. 1988. *Chugokugo-shi tsuko* [A historical study of the Chinese language]. Tokyo: Hakutei-sha.
- Pan, Wuyun. 2002. On the etymology of Chinese negatives. *Zhongguo Yuwen* 4. 302–309.
- Pan, Yunzhong. 1982. *Hanyu yufashi gaiyao* [The history of Chinese grammar]. Zhengzhou, Henan: Zhong zhou Shuhua she.

Cherry Chit-Yu Lam

- Peyraube, Alain. 1988. *Syntaxe diachronique du chinois: Evolution des constructions Dative du XIV^e siècle av. J.-c. Au XVIII^e siècle*. Paris: Institut des Hautes Etudes Chinoises, Collège de France.
- Peyraube, Alain. 1996. Recent issues in Chinese historical syntax. In Cheng-Teh James Huang & Yen-hui Audrey Li (eds.), *New horizons in Chinese linguistics*, 161–213. Dordrecht: Kluwer Academic Publishers.
- Pulleyblank, Edwin G. 1973. Some new hypothesis concerning word families in Chinese. *Journal of Chinese Linguistics* 1(1). 111–125.
- Schuessler, Axel. 2007. *ABC etymological dictionary of old Chinese (ABC Chinese Dictionary Series)*. Honolulu: University of Hawai'i Press.
- Sturgeon, Donald. 2011. *Chinese Text Project*. <http://ctext.org> (2017-02-15).
- Tai, James H-Y & Marjorie K-M. Chan. 1999. Some reflections on the periodization of the Chinese language. In Alain Peyraube & Chaofen Sun (eds.), *Studies on Chinese historical syntax and morphology*, 223–239. Paris: Ecole des hautes études en sciences sociales.
- Tsai, Wei-Tien Dylan. 2008. Tense anchoring in Chinese. *Lingua* 118(5). 675–686.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2013. Negative existentials: A cross-linguistic study. *Italian Journal of Linguistics* 25(1). 107–145.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2014. The negative existential cycle revisited. *Linguistics* 52(6). 1327–1389.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2016. The negative existential cycle viewed through the lens of comparative data. In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change continued (Linguistics Today 227)*, 139–187. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Wan, Kuo-Ting. 1958. 中國歷史紀年表 *Zhongguo lishi jinianbiao [Chronology of Chinese history]*. Hong Kong: Commercial Press.
- Wang, Li. 1958. *Hanyu shigao [The history of Chinese]*. Vol. 3. Beijing: Kexue Chubanshe.
- Wang, William Shi-yuan. 1965. Two aspect markers in Mandarin. *Language* 41(3). 457–470.
- Xu, Shi-Yi. 2003. On the evolution of the negative mei and meiyou. *Journal of Huzhou Teachers College* 25(1). 1–6.
- Yue. 2001. 粵語的否定式：一個歷史的考察 *yueyude foudingshi: Yi ge lishide kaocha [Negation in Cantonese: A diachronic study]* (中國東南方言比較研究研討會 (The comparative study of the dialects in Southeast China conference)). Shanghai: Shanghai Normal University.
- Zanuttini, Raffaella. 2001. Sentential negation. In Mark Baltin & Chris Collins (eds.), *The handbook of contemporary syntactic theory*, 511–535. Oxford: Blackwell.

8 Croft's Cycle in Mandarin and Cantonese

- Zhang, Min. 2002. Shanggu zhonggu hanyu ji xiandai nanfang fangyan li de ‘fouding cunzai yanhuā quān’ [the Negative-existential cycle as manifested in Archaic Chinese, Middle Chinese, and the Modern Southern dialects]. In Anne Yue (ed.), *International Symposium on the historical aspect of the Chinese Language: Commemorating the Centennial Birthday of the Late Professor Li Fang-Kuei (Vol. II)*, 571–616. Seattle: University of Washington.
- Zhou, Jiarong. 1995. 中國歷史學習年表 *Zhongguo lishi xuexi nianbiao* [*Chronological chart of Chinese history for learners*]. 2nd edn. Hong Kong: Hong Kong Educational Publishing Co.

Chapter 9

Non-verbal negation markers and the Negative Existential Cycle in Bashkir and Kalmyk with some typological parallels

Vlada V. Baranova^a & Daria F. Mishchenko^b

^aNational Research University Higher School of Economics (NRU HSE), St Petersburg and Institute for Linguistic Studies, Russian Academy of Sciences (ILS RAS), St Petersburg ^bInstitute for Linguistic Studies, Russian Academy of Sciences (ILS RAS), St Petersburg and Museum of Anthropology and Ethnography (Kunstkamera), Russian Academy of Sciences (MAE RAS), St Petersburg

The Negative Existential Cycle presupposes involvement of negative existentials in a cyclical process whereby negative markers evolve. The aim of this paper is to show that negative markers used with noun phrases can also change their functions and, in particular, transform into verbal negators. As evidenced by Turkic languages, non-verbal negators can be used with future and some past forms as an alternative to verbal negators or instead of them. In Central Mongolic, a negative marker that was initially used as a negative existential first evolved into a nominal negation marker and then intruded into the verbal system, becoming a standard negation marker. At the same time, in Kalmyk an ascriptive negator competes with it as a verbal negator. It should be noted that similar phenomena are found cross-linguistically in genealogically different languages. At first, the markedness of the non-verbal negators contributes to their emphatic meaning in such uses, but their frequent co-occurrence with certain verbal forms can further result in them replacing a verbal negator and becoming the only negator used with these forms. Secondly, we aim to show that changes in a language system of negative markers do not necessarily close a cycle but sometimes shape a “tree”, where a new element shares functions with older elements of the system, launching a new “branch” of changes, independent of the main line.

Vlada V. Baranova & Daria F. Mishchenko

Keywords: Bashkir, future tense, Kalmyk, Mongolic languages, Negative Existential Cycle, non-verbal negators, Turkic languages

1 Introduction

1.1 General notes

As shown in Veselinova (2016), the Negative Existential Cycle (NEC) is rarely completed. Most of the sampled languages examined in her paper turned out to be at stages with variation. Even in cases when the system has already restructured completely, the former standard negation (SN) markers remain on the “periphery” of the syntax (“constructualized negation” in Payne 1985). In this paper, we argue that the scenario of the changes within the Negative Existential Cycle should include, along with negative existentials, other non-verbal negators. These are constituent negator for nouns, ascriptive negation and possessive negation markers defined further below. As demonstrated by Mongolic and Turkic languages, such markers can participate in the NEC as well, occupying their own functional niche in competition with other negators. The aim of this study is to reveal these functions and to explain what ensures stability of systems where different negators – both verbal and non-verbal – co-exist.

A special type of the use of non-verbal negative markers as SN is the intrusion of nominal negation. Payne (1985: 228) mentioned rare cases when the marker of sentential negation has nominal properties (see also Miestamo 2017). For instance, Nadëb (mbj, Makú) has a nominal negator dooh, which functions as a SN marker (Weir 1994: 294–295). At the same time, this grammaticalization path includes a category change and extending functions of the negation marker, so that it may acquire new properties.

Therefore, it is reasonable to say that we need to rethink the diachronic change of non-verbal negation based on Croft’s seminal article (1991) to include in the discussion some other types of inroads of non-verbal negation into the sphere of use of standard negation. Moreover, we will show that there can be two or more processes of incorporation of different types of non-standard negation into the verbal negation system, which can influence each other and do not form separate cycles. The intrusion of non-existential, non-verbal negation into the domain of SN develops in conformity with a previous process of the expansion of existential negation and *vice versa*.

9 Non-verbal negation markers and the NEC in Bashkir and Kalmyk

According to Payne's (1997) classification, there are six types of nominal predicates: proper inclusion, equation, attribution, location, existence and possession. The literature on negation mostly establishes a reduced distinction between adjectival, nominal and locative predicates only (see Dryer 2007). The classification that is most relevant to our purpose is that of Ljuba Veselinova (2015). According to Veselinova (2015: 550), negative counterparts for predication without a verbal predicate – i.e. negators different from SN – are used for ascriptive (negation of the sentences with a nominal or adjectival predicate conveying the meanings of class inclusion, quality or a temporary state), locative, existential and possessive negation.

To test our hypothesis on the involvement of different non-existential non-verbal negators in the development of verbal negation, we will draw upon data of several types. Thus, this article consists of two parts: in the first part, we present and analyse in detail the data of two Mongolic and Turkic languages, Bashkir (bak) and Kalmyk (xal), where non-verbal negative markers different from negative existentials intrude into the system of verbal negation. Being acquainted with these languages through long-term fieldwork, we hope to be able to comprehensively depict their systems of negators, as well as the more subtle aspects of their use. In the second part of the article, we discuss cases of some other languages of the world in which a similar phenomenon – intrusion of a non-verbal negative marker different from the existential negator into the system of verbal negation – is observed, and try to find regularities in the use of non-verbal negators as verbal negators. It should be noted that this phenomenon has not been examined before, and there are no systematic typological studies on this issue so far. Based on our fieldwork data and several descriptions of the attested phenomenon from grammars of other languages, we thus provide a first description and tentative analysis of this pattern.

Following the first, introductory section, in §2 the data on the use of non-verbal negative markers in Bashkir and closely related Turkic languages is presented. §3 treats the evolution of the ascriptive and existential negation markers of Kalmyk due to changes in the system of Mongolic negation. §4 offers an analysis of examples of the intrusion of non-verbal negative markers different from negative existentials into the system of verbal negation that we found in grammars of genealogically different languages, namely Bornean languages and Egyptian Arabic. In Section 5, we identify and discuss some cross-linguistic regularities regarding this intrusion.

The main conclusion of the article is that the negators normally used for nominal negation and other non-verbal non-existential negative markers, when used as verbal negators, are still associated with some more specific meanings (such

Vlada V. Baranova & Daria F. Mishchenko

as emphatic negation), which determines their predominant use with certain verbal forms, ensuring the stability of systems where verbal and non-verbal negative markers co-exist and do not replace each other.

1.2 Data and context

Bashkir belongs to the northern subgroup of the Kipchak branch of Turkic languages, and genetically it is closest to Tatar. The Bashkir people were first mentioned in the 10th century. Up to the 19th century they shared the same literary language, Volga Turki (Old Tatar, Old Bashkir), a regional variant of Turki, with the Tatars. Volga Turki used an alphabet that was based on Persian Arabic script. Spoken Volga Turki, however, had regional varieties specific to the different ethnic groups that used it. Starting from the 1920s, a literary Bashkir language formed. Initially, it continued to be written in an alphabet based on the Arabic script; this was revised in 1923. It was replaced with a Latin-based alphabet in 1930, and in 1940 an expanded Cyrillic alphabet was adopted, which has been used till the present day (Yuldashev 1981: 11–12).

Currently Bashkir is the co-official (together with Russian) language of the Republic of Bashkortostan in central Russia, west of the Urals. It is also spoken in neighbouring regions, with a total number of approximately 1,200,000 speakers. There are three major dialects: Southern, Eastern and North-western; the first two are very similar and have served as the basis for the literary language.

Bashkir field data was collected in Rahmetovo and Baimovo, two villages in the Abzelilovsky region of the Republic of Bashkortostan, in 2011–2016. It consists of the texts from the corpus of oral texts recorded, transcribed and glossed during the field trips, and elicited sentences collected by using questionnaires. As an additional source, texts from the Folklore Archive of Bashkir State University (http://lcpb.bashedu.ru/editions/efolk.php?go=folk_id.28) were used. In order to ensure compatibility, only those folklore texts recorded in the Abzelilovsky region were taken into account. In addition, some constructions and forms were retrieved from the Internet. Kalmyk or Oirat (spoken in the Republic of Kalmykia, Russian Federation) belongs to the Western branch of the Mongolic language family and has a total number of approximately 80,000 speakers. In the 17th century, Kalmyk Oirat split off from other Oirat dialects (as are spoken today in parts of Xinjiang and Inner Mongolia, China, the western part of Mongolia and Issyk Kyl province, Kyrgyzstan) and migrated into the current area of the steppe near the Volga River.

The major dialects of Kalmyk (Dörbet, Torghut and Buzava) are close to each other, except for small lexical variations. The standard language is mostly based

9 Non-verbal negation markers and the NEC in Bashkir and Kalmyk

on the Dörbet dialect. Kalmyk is an official second language in the Republic of Kalmykia.

Kalmyk field data was collected in the Ketchenerovsky region in the Republic of Kalmykia in 2006–2008 and 2014–2015. Data was collected via questionnaires and in the form of oral narratives, which have been compiled as a small corpus of Spoken Kalmyk in Toolbox (approximately 17,000 words). Other sources for Kalmyk are two online corpora and publications of several Written Oirat / Old Kalmyk texts. The relatively small Kalmyk National Corpus by A. Vankaeva (KNC, <http://web-corpora.net/KalmykCorpus>) consists of 800,000 words. The National Corpus of Kalmyk Language (NCKL, <http://kalmcorpora.ru>) comprises approximately 8 million words of various text types. Written Oirat is the language of historical documents written in the Todo bichig “Clear Script” in the 17th–19th centuries (see Rákos 2015), and the subset of such texts written in Kalmykia can be termed Old Kalmyk. Here we use three source collections originally written in Todo bichig script over the span of one century: letters of Ayuki Khan and his circle (1710–1714; Suseeva 2003), letters of Dunduk-Dashi Khan (1741–1761; Kokshaeva 2011), and letters from different correspondents to Isaac Jacob Schmidt, a missionary and translator of the Bible into Kalmyk in the early 1800s (Krueger & Service 2002).¹

Both Bashkir and Kalmyk have a complex morphology with a rich system of suffixes for both nouns and verbs. The morphology is agglutinative, using affixes, and there are a lot of periphrastic constructions consisting of auxiliary verbs and various participles and converbs to express TAME meanings. Complex verbs formed by a converb and head verb play an important role in expressing different, mostly aspectual, meanings. Syntactically, they are characterized by SOV word order.

2 Use of nominal negative markers with verbs in Turkic languages

2.1 General description of negation in Bashkir

There are two ways to express negation in Bashkir: morphologically and syntactically. Along with verbal suffixes, negation can be expressed by negative copulas,

¹We use transcriptions for our own data from texts and questionnaires, as well as for sentences from the online corpora. Examples from grammars and other publications are given in the author's or editor's transcription and with author's/editor's translations, while parsing and glosses are ours. We translate sources in Russian into English.

Vlada V. Baranova & Daria F. Mishchenko

that is, by auxiliaries performing a supportive function with non-verbal predicates (following Hengeveld 1992).² The SN marker in Bashkir is *-ma* (*-mä*):

- (1) Bashkir (questionnaires)³
 - a. *Kärim kitap uqə-j.*
Karim book read-IPFV
'Karim is reading a book.'
 - b. *Kärim kitap uqə-ma-j.*
Karim book read-NEG-IPFV
'Karim is not reading a book.'

If forming part of a derivational stem, the suffix *-ma* can be kept in a derived word, such as a deverbal noun (2):

- (2) Bashkir (questionnaires)

fakt-tar-ðəŋ döröθ bul-ma-w-ə
fact-PL-GEN truthful be-NEG-NMLZ-P.3
'unreliability of facts'

Along with the verbal suffix *-ma* (*-mä*), three are other verbal negative suffixes in Bashkir: a negative suffix of the so-called "potential" future (Dmitriev 1948: 148) participle *-maθ* (*-mäθ*) and a suffix of the negative converb of attendant circumstances *-majənsa* (*-mäjensä*). The suffixes *-maθ* and *-majənsa* have developed from a combination of the SN marker *-ma* with other suffixes and subsequent phonological changes. The former (*-maθ*) derives from *-ma* and the suffix of the "potential" future *-r*, which later underwent the phonological change *r → ð → θ* typical of Turkic languages (Dmitriev 1948: 149). The following pair of sentences illustrates the use of affirmative and negative "potential" future forms:

- (3) Bashkir (questionnaires)

² According to Hengeveld, strictly speaking, one can distinguish between two subclasses of such auxiliaries, copulas (in a narrower sense) and semi-copulas. The first ones are semantically empty, while the second ones are not, i.e. the difference between the subclasses consists in that "the semi-copula adds an element of meaning to the construction in which it occurs, whereas the copula does not" (1992: 35). In this vein Bashkir negative predators are actually semi-copulas. However, for the sake of brevity, we will call them copulas in a broader sense and gloss respectively, which is not an exceptional situation – even Hengeveld himself, "in a rather loose way" (1992: 32), calls auxiliaries of the both subclasses copulas throughout his book.

³ Unless otherwise mentioned, all examples from Bashkir present the authors' own data.

9 Non-verbal negation markers and the NEC in Bashkir and Kalmyk

- a. *Min Mäskäw-gä kit-er-gä ula-j-əm.*
I Moscow-DAT leave-POT-DAT think-PRS-1SG
'I think I will go to Moscow.'
- b. *Min Mäskäw-gä kit-mäθ-kä ula-j-əm.*
I Moscow-DAT leave-NEG.POT-DAT think-PRS-1SG
'I think I will not go to Moscow.'

The etymology of *-majənsa* is not so clear. Analysing forms in *-majənsa* as negative equivalents of the converb in *-yansa* (Dmitriev 1948: 188) is probably inappropriate, at least for data from Rahmetovo Bashkir. Indeed, *-majənsa* does not seem to paradigmatically or formally correspond to any affirmative form, and it is perhaps best considered as an independent converb marker expressing the absence of secondary action (as discussed in detail in Mishchenko 2011). This is seen in (4) and (5):

- (4) Bashkir (questionnaires)
Min däres-kä kil-de-m kitap-tä uqə-majənsa.
 I lesson-DAT come-PST-1SG book-ACC read-NEG.CVB.ATT
 'I came to the lesson without having read the book.'
- (5) Bashkir (questionnaires)
Qəð beje-mä-j / + beje-mäjensä malaj jərla-j.
 girl dance-NEG-PRS dance-NEG.CVB.ATT boy sing-PRS
 'The boy is singing, while the girl is not dancing.'

All this shows that the suffixes *-maθ* and *-majənsa* are not negative markers proper but rather cumulative markers expressing certain TAME meanings along with negation. They are strictly limited to some specific contexts and therefore do not bear on the focus of this article.

2.2 Non-verbal negation

The group of unbound morphemes expressing negation in Bashkir consists of the negative copulas *juq* and *tügel*.⁴ The first one is a negative existential predicate. The range of meanings it can express includes existential negation (6), negative

⁴In an unpublished report on fieldwork (Mishchenko 2011), it is argued that one should postulate two homonymous units *tügel* at the synchronic level, particle and copula, because of the differences in their syntactic functions. However, it is not the only possible interpretation; *tügel* can be regarded as a single polyfunctional negative marker as well. Here we will not touch upon this question and will regard *tügel* in all types of use as one and the same unit.

Vlada V. Baranova & Daria F. Mishchenko

“presentative” possession (in the sense of Hengeveld 1992), and “indefinite” possession (in the sense of Stassen 2009) (7), alongside negative non-presentative locative meanings (8). Paradigmatically, it is a negative equivalent of the affirmative existential copula *bar*.

- (6) Bashkir (questionnaires)

Aš-həw-ða öθtäl juq.
food-water-LOC table NEG.EX.COP
'There is no table in the kitchen.'

- (7) Bashkir (questionnaires)

Mineŋ mašina-m juq.
I.GEN car-POSS.1SG NEG.EX.COP
'I haven't got a car.'

- (8) Bashkir (questionnaires)

Mineŋ kitab-əm öθtäl-dä juq.
I.GEN book-POSS.1SG table-LOC NEG.EX.COP
'My book is not on the table.'

As shown in Mishchenko (2017), in the latter meaning *juq* competes with the second negative copula, *tügel*. The choice of a copula depends on the information structure of the clause. If a location is the topic, then the copula *juq* is used (9). If, by contrast, the topic is a localized object while the location is a comment, then the copula *tügel* will be chosen instead (10):

- (9) Bashkir (questionnaires)

Mineŋ keθä-m-dä täŋkä juq.
I.GEN pocket-POSS.1SG-LOC coin NEG.EX.COP
{– That coin I gave you, is it in your pocket? – No,} 'there is no coin in my pocket.'

- (10) Bashkir (Mishchenko 2017: 138)

Juq, min Räxmät-tä tügel.
NEG.EX.COP I Rahmetovo-LOC NEG.COP
{(Talking on a cell phone:) – Hello, where are you, are you in Rahmetovo?} '– No, I am not in Rahmetovo.'

One can find *tügel* connected with the expression of contrastive focus: for example, ‘Rahmetovo’ in (10) can be presented as that contrasting current location

9 Non-verbal negation markers and the NEC in Bashkir and Kalmyk

of the subject, as opposed to other possible locations.⁵ Since such contrasts are sometimes irrelevant (especially outside a wider context), the negators can be mutually interchangeable:

- (11) Bashkir (Mishchenko 2017: 138)

| | | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| <i>Min kisä-ge</i> | <i>šəltəra-t-qən-da</i> | <i>äsäj</i> | <i>eš-tä</i> | <i>tügel</i> |
| I | yesterday-ADJ | ring-CAUS-PTCP.PST-LOC | mother work-LOC | NEG.COP |
| <i>ine</i> | <i>/juq</i> | <i>ine.</i> | | |
| be.PST | NEG.EX.COP | be.PST | | |

‘Yesterday, when I phoned, my mom wasn’t at work.’

It is also interesting that the copula *juq* can be used for negating predicates referring to age, in which a regular negator is *tügel* (12). But this usage is only possible in a specific situation: when expressing a scalar meaning of unachieved age (13a). And even in this case, *tügel* is possible, as seen from (13b):

- (12) Bashkir (Mishchenko 2017: 138)

| | | | | | | | |
|--|-----------|------------|----------------|----------|------------|------------|------------|
| <i>Morat-qa</i> | <i>ös</i> | <i>jäš</i> | <i>tügel</i> , | <i>ä</i> | <i>bis</i> | <i>jäš</i> | <i>Ø</i> . |
| Murat-DAT | three | year | NEG.COP | but | five | year | COP |
| ‘Murat isn’t three, he is five years old.’ | | | | | | | |

- (13) Bashkir (Mishchenko 2017: 139)

- a. *Min Öfö-gä bar-yan-da un biš juq ine.*
I Ufa-DAT go-PTCP.PST-LOC ten five NEG.EX.COP be.PST
‘When I went off to Ufa, I wasn’t even 15 years old.’ (lit. I wasn’t 15 years old)
- b. *Min Öfö-gä bar-yan-da un biš tügel ine.*
I Ufa-DAT go-PTCP.PST-LOC ten five NEG.COP be.PST
‘When I went off to Ufa, I wasn’t even 15 years old.’ (lit. I wasn’t 15 years old)

The capability of *juq* to be used in such “scalar” contexts is understandable if one interprets reaching a certain age as its subsequent existence. Thus, the non-existence of the unachieved age is expressed by means of *juq*, as in (13a).

To return to existential contexts, it is important to note that the use of the negative existential depends on the tense and referential status of the NP in subject/object position. While *juq* is the only possibility when referring to the present (cf. (6)), with future time references only a verbal strategy with the verb *bul-* ‘to be’ and the standard negator can be used (14):

⁵As Ljuba Veselinova rightly notes, the same is true for its Turkish cognate *değil*.

Vlada V. Baranova & Daria F. Mishchenko

- (14) Bashkir (questionnaires)

Donja-la bal qort-o böötön bul-ma-jasaq.
world-LOC honey worm-POSS.3 whole BE-NEG-FUT
'Soon there will be no bees in the world.'

For past time references, both copula-based and verbal strategies are employed, depending on the communicative status of the NP in subject/object position:

- (15) Bashkir (questionnaires)

Mindä at juq ine.
I.LOC horse NEG.EX.COP be.PST
'I didn't have a horse.'

- (16) Bashkir (questionnaires)

Min awäl-da jäšä-gän-dä traktor-əm bul-ma-nə.
I village-LOC live-PTCP.PST-LOC tractor-POSS.1SG be-NEG-PST
'When I lived down in the country, I didn't have my tractor.'

In terms of the difference between sentences like (15) and those like (16), in sentences of the former type there is a generic NP in a subject position, while in sentences of the latter type the NP expressing a possessee is specific and definite.

Thus, in this respect Bashkir should be classified as a language of A B type in NEC (Veselinova 2016): the negative existential *juq* is used in the present tense (6) and the SN marker *-ma-* is used in the future (14), while in sentences with past reference both negators are possible, and the choice depends on the referential status of the subject, as seen in (15) and (16).

The main sphere of use of the negative copula *tügel* comprises sentences with a referential predicate, that is, a predicate based on terms (referring to expressions with a nominal head) and larger referential units (predications, propositions, clauses) (Hengeveld 1992: 77–91), such as (17):

- (17) Bashkir (questionnaires)

Min jað-əw-sə tügel / tügel-men.
I write-NMLZ-AG NEG.COP NEG.COP-1SG
'I am not a writer.'

Example (17) also illustrates the fact that, as distinct from *juq*, *tügel* can optionally agree with the subject in person and number. All the interviewed speakers considered forms of *tügel* bearing a suffix of person and number agreement to be grammatical, although they do not generate similar forms themselves.

9 Non-verbal negation markers and the NEC in Bashkir and Kalmyk

Other meanings of *tügel* include localization at a particular point on the time axis (for example, on a particular date, day of week, or at specific time of day) (18), inner states and states of environment (19), and “non-presentative” possession (Hengeveld 1992) or “definite” possessive (Stassen 2009) (20) meanings. The copula *tügel* also competes with *juq* when expressing a non-presentative locative meaning and a meaning of age, as was shown above. In present tense affirmative sentences of this type, there is a zero copula.

- (18) Bashkir (questionnaires)

ʃajələš kisä-gä tügel ine, ä joma kön-dö bul-də.
meeting yesterday-DAT NEG.COP be.PST but Friday day-ACC be-PST
'The meeting was not yesterday, but on Friday.'

- (19) Bashkir (questionnaires)

Uram-da həwəq tügel.
street-LOC cold NEG.COP
'It is not cold outside.'

- (20) Bashkir (questionnaires)

Bəl urən hineke tügel.
this place you.POSS NEG.COP
'This place isn't yours.'

Broadly stated, the distribution of negative copulas in the Bashkir non-verbal sentences can be formulated as follows: *juq* negates existence of a generic entity, while *tügel* negates identity between the object and a referential unit. This property of *tügel* manifests in non-sentential use as well. Apart from copulative use, *tügel* can be employed for constituent negation, as, for example, in (21):

- (21) Bashkir (questionnaires)

Min ður tügel alma aš-tə-m.
I big NEG.COP apple eat-PST-1SG
'I ate a small [lit. not big] apple.'

The scope of *tügel* following an NP can include only part of it, for example, an adverb, like *bik* ‘very’ in (22):

- (22) Bashkir (questionnaires)

bik=ük aqəllə tügel keše
very=same intelligent NEG.COP person
'not a very intelligent person'

Vlada V. Baranova & Daria F. Mishchenko

2.3 Negative copulas in verbal clauses

What is especially important for the purposes of this article is the capability of negative copulas to be used in some verbal clauses. In Bashkir, the existential copula *bar* is used with the so-called past participle (which in modern Bashkir can be the head of the main – or only – clause) to express experiential meaning (23) or some perfect meanings. As a negative equivalent of *bar*, *juq* is used in corresponding negative sentences (24):

- (23) Bashkir (questionnaires)

Min una osra-t-qan-əm bar.

I that.ACC get-CAUS-PTCP.PST-P.1SG there.is

{– Have you ever met my sister? –} ‘I have met her.’ (roughly ‘there is my having met her’)

- (24) Bashkir (questionnaires)

Unda ber qasan=da bul-yan-əm juq

that.LOC one when=EMPH be-PTCP.PST-1SG NEG.EX.COP

/?? *bul-ma-yan-əm.*

be-NEG-PTCP.PST-1SG

‘I have never been there.’

A similar situation is found in other Turkic languages; see examples from Tatar (tat) (25) and Uzbek (uzb) (26):

- (25) Tatar (Poppe 1961: 126)

Anə hich kür-gän-em jük.

that.ACC never see-PTCP.PST-1SG NEG.EX.COP

‘I have never seen him.’⁶

- (26) Uzbek (Sjoberg 1963: 123)

Men kor-gan-im yoq.

I see-PTCP.PST-1SG NEG.EX.COP

‘I didn’t see.’

Therefore, in this respect, Bashkir and the other Turkic languages in which negative existentials can be used in similar past tense constructions should be

⁶Here and throughout this section, examples borrowed from grammars are given with our glosses and original translation; the spelling and punctuation of the original are kept.

9 Non-verbal negation markers and the NEC in Bashkir and Kalmyk

classified as belonging to the B C type. Hence, Bashkir is situated simultaneously at stage A B and B C, depending on which part of its negation system is concerned.

However, it is not only the negative existential *jug* that intrudes into verbal negation. The non-verbal negator *tügel* participates in forming negative finite verbal clauses as well. Thus, in Bashkir, as an alternative to the regular verbal negation of future forms, nominal negation can be used; for example, see:

- (27) a. Bashkir (questionnaires)

Ul miŋä aqsa bir-mä-jäsäk.
that I.DAT money give-NEG-FUT
'He will not give me the money.'
- b. Bashkir (Say 2017: 349)

Ul miŋä aqsa bir-äṣäk tügel.
that I.DAT money give-FUT NEG.COP
'He will not give me the money.'

It is worth noting that the future form *-asak(-jäsäk)* is etymologically a participle (Dmitriev 1948: 152), even though in modern Bashkir it is used almost exclusively as a finite form and has lost the attributive use. The origin of this form thus explains its compatibility with the non-verbal negator *tügel*.

It seems that in Bashkir there is no semantic difference between the two variants, a future form negated by a SN marker or non-verbal negator. However, the situation is different in Turkish (tur). Here, future verbal forms that are negated by nominal negation are interpreted as expressing a kind of higher degree of confidence. Compare neutral (28a) with the SN marker and emphatic (28b) with a nominal negation marker:

- (28) Turkish (Ketrez 2012: 244)
 - a. *Size inan-ma-yacağ-im.*
you.DAT believe-NEG-FUT-1SG
'I will not believe you.'
 - b. *Size inan-acak degil-im.*
you.DAT believe-FUT NEG.COP-1SG
'Of course I will not believe you.'

A similar situation of use of nominal negation markers along with SN markers is found in many other Turkic languages, such as Tatar (Poppe 1961), Karachay-Balkar (krc) (Seegmiller 1996), extinct Chagatay (chg) (Bodrogligli 2001) and

Vlada V. Baranova & Daria F. Mishchenko

others. The grammatical descriptions available to us do not always provide a clear description of the difference between these two strategies of negating future forms, and sometimes it is not obvious whether a difference exists at all. However, if any semantic specifics of sentences with nominal negation are mentioned, it is emphatic prominence or a higher degree of speaker confidence that the situation will not take place. This fits well with the observation on the nature of non-verbal negators by Horn (1989). He notes that it is common for a non-verbal negation marker to be used in verbal clauses in pragmatically marked contexts, for example, for contrastive or metalinguistic negation (Horn 1989: 446, 451–452).

There are also related languages in which the nominal negation marker is used with past verbal forms. An example of this is Tatar where perfect meanings can be conveyed by combinations of a past participle with both existential (30) and nominal negation (31). Compatibility of a non-verbal negator with this form is evidently explained by the fact that even when heading a clause, it is still of a nominal origin. Unfortunately, we have no data on how exactly the two constructions are distributed, though the contrast of both to a verbal form with SN, which is aspectually neutral, is evident (see (29)).

- (29) Tatar (Poppe 1961: 69)

Men eślä-mä-gän-men.
I work-NEG-PTCP.PST-1SG
'I didn't work.'

- (30) Tatar (Poppe 1961: 126)

Anə hich kür-gän-em jük.
that.ACC never see-PTCP.PST-1SG NEG.EX.COP
'I have never seen him.'

- (31) Tatar (Poppe 1961: 126)

Jaślək uŋ-gan tügel.
crop grow-PTCP.PST NEG.EX.COP
'The crops haven't grown.'

2.4 Concluding remarks about nominal negation in Turkic languages

To sum up, the data of Turkic languages proves that nominal negation can intrude into verbal systems along with the negative existential, filling its own niche. Initially, its compatibility with certain verbal forms is explained by nominal – namely, participial – origin. At the synchronic level, when used with verbal forms, the nominal negation marker is associated with emphatic negation.

9 Non-verbal negation markers and the NEC in Bashkir and Kalmyk

3 Verbal and non-verbal Kalmyk negation

3.1 General description of negation in Kalmyk

This section starts with a short overview of negation markers in Kalmyk. Modern Kalmyk has six distinct markers to express negation: namely, the preverbal negative particle *esə*, the preverbal prohibitive particle *bičä* and the postverbal negation markers *uga* and *bišə*, which also have the respective contracted variants -*go* and -*šə*. For the emergence of these suffixes and the corresponding grammaticalization process, see Baranova (2018). There is an asymmetry in the morphosyntactic organization of positive and negated predicates in that most of the negated verb forms are participles and converbs, as opposed to the finite verbal suffixes that dominate positive sentences.

The section further contains a detailed description of the negative copula-like markers *uga* and *bišə* in non-verbal and verbal clauses. The preverbal prohibitive particle *bičä* is used with the different imperative forms of a verb, including all second person imperatives and the jussive form *-txa*.

- (32) Kalmyk (Oral Corpus)
- | | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------|--------------------|
| <i>eežə</i> , | <i>bičä</i> | <i>jumə ke-tn!</i> |
| grandmmother | NEG.IMP | thing do-IMP.PL |
| 'Grandma, don't do anything.' | | |

The preverbal particle *esə* is used mostly in subordinate clauses (see Baranova 2019).

- (33) Kalmyk (NCKL)
- | | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>oda deer-än</i> | <i>en šin oborudovani-gə</i> | <i>esə av-xla,</i> |
| now while-POSS.REFL | this new equipment-ACC | NEG take-CVB.SUC |
| <i>xöön-nj</i> | <i>öngär ir-š-go-bi-n^j</i> | <i>med-x kergtä</i> |
| after-POSS.3 | for.free come-PTCP.FUT-NEG-ACC-P.3 | know-PTCP.FUT must |
| 'While as of now [we] haven't received this new equipment, it is important to know that later on it won't come free of charge.' | | |

In what follows, we discuss the distribution of only two negators, *uga* and *bišə*, along with their contracted variants; the other two negators, being unable to negate declarative clauses, are excluded. Both *uga* and *bišə*, on the other hand, can function as SN markers. The negation marker *uga* is used in a rich variety of forms to express negation and fulfil different functions, including that of a nominal, existential and verbal negator. The negation marker *bišə* functions

Vlada V. Baranova & Daria F. Mishchenko

as an ascriptive negator (in the sense of Veselinova 2015) but also intrudes into verbal negation.

3.2 *Uga* and *bišə* as non-verbal negators

To understand the current function of the negation markers discussed in this section, it is useful to start with a historical note. The word *uga* derived from *ugwai* ‘(there is) not, none’, while the grammaticalization path of *bišə* includes the reanalysis of an element *bisi* / *bišə* ‘other’ > ‘other than’ > ‘not the one’ (Janhunen 2012: 250–251). The negation marker *uga* has some nominal properties in that it may take case marking in contexts in which it means ‘absent’, though such forms are not very frequent in Modern Kalmyk. In (34), the form *uga-bar* NEG.COP-INS may be translated as ‘with lack (of permission)’.

- (34) Kalmyk (Oral Corpus)

| | | | | |
|--|----------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>xörə-n</i> | <i>tavə-n</i> | <i>duuna-d</i> | <i>komendant-in</i> | <i>selvəg uga-bar</i> |
| 20-EXT | five-EXT | kilometer-DAT | commander-GEN | advise NEG.COP-INS |
| <i>madən-də</i> | <i>jov-dəg</i> | <i>alⁱ</i> | <i>uga</i> | <i>bää-sən</i> |
| 1PL-DAT | go-PTCP.HAB | where | NEG.COP | be-PTCP.PST |
| | | | | become-PROG-PRS |
| ‘Without the commander’s permission, we could not get out anywhere (more than) 25 kilometres.’ | | | | |

Both markers, *uga* and *bišə*, may function as constituent negators, as in the second part of (34) where *uga* is postposed to the word *alⁱ* ‘where/which’ and expresses the spatial reference ‘nowhere’. The negation marker *bišə* mostly occurs with words that express attributive or adverbial meaning. It should be noted that Kalmyk adjectives are morphologically similar to nouns. There are a few roots in Kalmyk that in combination with *bišə* can be used attributively, such as *sän* ‘good’ versus *sän bišə* ‘bad’.

In negative non-verbal sentences, both negation markers correlate with the copula verb *bää-nä* ‘BE-PRS’, carrying the verbal markers in existential affirmative clauses and locative predicates. In spoken Kalmyk, the copula verb *bää-nä* ‘BE-PRS’ is often omitted, as in (35):

- (35) Kalmyk (Oral Corpus)

| | | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------|
| <i>madn-də, un-är</i> | <i>temän uga,</i> | <i>mörə-n,</i> | <i>xöö-n,</i> | <i>bod-mala</i> |
| 1.PL-DAT | true-INS | camel | NEG.EX.COP | horse-EXT |
| | | | | sheep-EXT |

‘Honestly speaking, there are no camels (on our farms), (only) horses, sheep, cattle.’

9 Non-verbal negation markers and the NEC in Bashkir and Kalmyk

The negation marker *uga* occurs in non-verbal existential clauses.

- (36) Kalmyk (Oral Corpus)
- sän jumə-n uga*
good thing-EXT NEG.EX.COP
'There is nothing good.'

The negation marker *bišə* is functionally more diverse; it occurs in non-verbal sentences that negate a quality/attribute (37) or identity (38).

- (37) Kalmyk (Oral Corpus)
- donta biš-i*
crazy NEG-Q
'Isn't she crazy?'
- (38) Kalmyk (Oral Corpus)
- oda cag-tə uval uvel bišə*
now time-DAT winter winter NEG
'Nowadays the winter is not (a real) winter.'

Bišə can also be used to negate temporal localization (39).

- (39) Kalmyk (questionnaires)
- asx-na hotə dolan čas-la bišə*
evening-GEN meal seven hour-COM NEG
'The dinner is not at 7 o'clock (it will be at 8 p.m.).'

The negation marker *bišə* also occurs in the construction 'not only ... but also'; here it is an expletive or pleonastic negation (that is, a marker of negation without negative meaning, according to Horn (2010: 126)).

- (40) Kalmyk (Oral Corpus)
- terə bəncən gergə-nj bišə al' ezəvltə ol-žə av-čə*
that single wife-POSS.3 NEG.PRS or property find-CVB.IPFV take-EVID
'He has not only obtained his wife but also a kingdom.'

There is the context of locative predication where both negation markers occur. Example (41a) may be negated either by the existential negator *uga* or the negation marker *bišə*. The example (41b) with marker *uga* means that whatever is designated by the nominal in object position cannot be found under the table, so

Vlada V. Baranova & Daria F. Mishchenko

with a negative existential the object nominal receives a generic reading. In the variant in (41c) with the non-verbal negation marker *bišə*, 'the ball' is interpreted as specific and definite and it denies its particular location. Similar competition between a non-verbal negator and 'an existential negator that depends on focus can also be found in Slavonic languages (see Veselinova 2010: 197).

- (41) Kalmyk (questionnaires) (Baranova 2015: 14)

- a. *širä doorə mečik bää-nä*
table under ball be-PRS
'There is a / the ball under the table.' / 'The ball is under the table.'
- b. *mečik širä doorə uga*
ball table under NEG.EX.COP
'There is no ball under the table.'
- c. *mečik širä doorə bišə*
ball table under NEG.PRS
'The ball is not under the table.'

As for the formal properties of the negators *uga* and *bišə* in non-verbal clauses, negation markers function as a copula which stands at the end of the clause and may carry personal verbal affixes (i.e. as *bišə* in example (42)). It should be noted that regular predicative adjectives or nouns cannot take such suffixes.

- (42) Kalmyk (KNC)

- bi čon bišə-v*
1.SG.NOM wolf NEG-1SG
'I'm not a wolf.'

In a similar way, the negation marker *uga* may receive a personal marker. It also can take an indirect evidential marker =č (which cliticized from a former copula).

- (43) Kalmyk (Oral Corpus)

- xojr kövü-n xojr kükə-n däkčə tedn-ä žil-in küük-tə uga=č*
two boy-EXT two girl-EXT again 3PL-GEN year-GEN child-PL
NEG.COP=EVID

'There are 2 boys and 2 girls and it looks like there is no more children with that year (of birth).'

9 Non-verbal negation markers and the NEC in Bashkir and Kalmyk

It should be stressed again that the marker *uga* combines properties of a noun and a copula: when used in nominal negation, it may undergo nominal declination, while when used as a copula-like negation marker it combines with personal verbal affixes or the evidential clitic, which normally could be added to verbs.

Thus, to summarize, *bišə* functions as an ascriptive negator in non-verbal predictions, while *uga* in non-verbal clauses states the absolute absence of the predicated entities. In the next section, we examine these markers in the function of verbal negators.

3.3 Negative copulas in verbal clauses

The main focus of this article is the capability of negation markers which originated as non-verbal negation to be used in some verbal clauses. The existential negator *uga* has extended to verbal clauses with non-finite verbal forms, including the past participle ending in *-sən* (it occurs as a counterpart for a form of past tense ending in *-v* in affirmatives), an anterior converb ending in *-ad* (for remote past ending in *-la*) and some other, more rare forms. The combination of the non-finite form with the negative copula *uga* is the neutral and only way to negate past-referring forms.

- (44) Kalmyk (Oral Corpus)

däkčə zarv-də od-sən uga
again court-DAT go-PTCP.PST NEG.COP
'He hasn't gone to court again.'

- (45) Kalmyk (Oral Corpus)

a⁷madən tüü-n-də tas mu ke-väd uga-vidn
but 3.SG that-EXT-DAT very bad do-CVB.ANT NEG.COP-1PL
'But we did not do anything awfully bad to him.'

There are several ways to negate verbs with non-past time reference: the copula-like *bišə* and the negative affixes *-go* and *-šə*. *Bišə* occurs with two participles: the future participle ending in *-x* and the habitual participle ending in *-dəg*. The etymologically participial forms in Modern Kalmyk can be used predicatively but tend to co-occur with an affirmative affix or clitic *-n/mən* (derived from the old copula *mön*). Even with the future participle, *bišə* negates the present states. When *bišə* occurs in the verbal predication with a future participle or a habitual participle, it has a modal component of meaning (obligation or permission)

⁷Russian adversative conjunction.

Vlada V. Baranova & Daria F. Mishchenko

or leads to an emphatic expression. It should be noted that the negation marker *bišə* with the habitual participle and the future participle predominantly includes the affirmative affix *-n*, and the modal meaning may come from the combination of *-əm bišə*.

- (46) Kalmyk (KNC)

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------|---------|
| tednä | tuskar mart-x-mən | bišə |
| 3PL.GEN about | forget-PTCP.FUT-AFF | NEG.PRS |
| 'One should not forget about them.' | | |

- (47) Kalmyk (questionnaires)

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------|---------|
| sääñ | kövü-d tii-gd-əm | bišə! |
| good boy-PL | do.SO-PTCP.HAB-AFF | NEG.PRS |
| 'Good boys do not act like this!' | | |

Another way of expressing SN with a non-past time reference in Kalmyk is the use of contracted suffixes that emerged from shortening the full negation markers during the grammaticalization process. The affixes are mostly used interchangeably with the whole negation markers *uga* and *bišə*, but there is a tendency in the distribution.

The affix *-šə* is mostly used within the negated form of the future participle in *-x*, while the affix *-go* occurs with the habitual participle in *-dəg*, with the deverbal affix in *-l* or modal converb in *-l*, with the anterior converb in *-ad* and, most frequently, with the affix *-š* (Baranova 2018: 13), which is usually considered as a future participle allomorph with changing *x>š* before the negation marker *-go*. There is another understanding of an element *-š* before the negation marker as the deverbal affix (Brosig: in preparation). Interestingly, the future participle ending in *-x* with affix *-šə* expresses the negation of present tense (48), whereas the affix *-go* with the same participle, as in (49), has a more straightforward meaning in that it tends to negate a future event.

- (48) Kalmyk (Oral Corpus)

| | | |
|---|----------------------------------|--|
| nan-ta | xamdan unt-ča-x-šə | |
| 1.SG-ASSOC | together sleep-PROG-PTCP.FUT-NEG | |
| '(She) does not sleep together with me she is not laying on the bed now.' | | |

- (49) Kalmyk (Oral Corpus)

| | | | |
|---|-----------|------------------|---------------------|
| meklä-tä | us-ar | xotə ke-žə | bol-š-go |
| frog-ASSOC | water-INS | food do-CVB.IPFV | become-PTCP.FUT-NEG |
| '(She/he) cannot cook with water containing frogs.' | | | |

9 Non-verbal negation markers and the NEC in Bashkir and Kalmyk

The negation marker *-güi* or other contracted variants from the cognate *ügei* (Kalmyk *uga*) have intruded into verbal negation in all Central Mongolic languages, and it is also attested in some Southern Mongolic languages (Brosig 2015: 70–81), thus suggesting a development that already started in the Middle Mongol period. But the extension of the ascriptive negator *bišə* and its contracted form *-šə* into SN is only attested for Kalmyk/Oirat, Southern Mongolic Bonan (peh; Wu 2003) and Central/Southern Mongolic Eastern Shira Yughur (yuy; Nugteren 2003). In Bonan and Eastern Yughur, the marker *-ši* attaches to the future participle, too, but then negates future events. Only in Kalmyk/Oirat does the combination of the future participle plus *-šə* have present time reference. So, the first steps in the grammaticalization of the existential negator *ügei* took place in several related languages, including all of Central Mongolic, while the second variant (from *bišə*) developed only in Oirat/Eastern Yugur and Bonan, which as a Southern Mongolic language should only have participated in this innovation if at some historically indeterminate point in the past it was spoken many hundred kilometres north-west of its current position in the south-eastern Qinghai province of China. Thus, the non-compositional present tense meaning with the future participle developed only in Kalmyk/Oirat.

In Kalmyk, the marker *bišə* is less frequent than the negative copula *uga*, as shown in Table 9.1. The frequency of the negative affix *-šə*, in turn, is also lower than the affix *-go*.

Table 9.1: Frequency of *bišə* and *uga* and negation affixes in the written corpora.

| | <i>bišə</i> | <i>-šə</i> | <i>uga</i> | <i>-go</i> |
|------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| NCKL | 17321 (2156 ipm) | 18288 (2286 ipm) | 67649 (8456 ipm) | 42260 (5282 ipm) |
| KNC | 1771 (2213 ipm) | 970 (1212 ipm) | 6390 (7987 ipm) | 2330 (2912 ipm) |

Nevertheless, the less frequent negation marker also can be used in some verbal clauses. So, the frequency of use itself is not the sole determining factor for the expansion into the verbal domain. This nominal negator intruded into the verbal system along with the negative existential marker. Analogically to the contracted variant *-go* from *uga*, it developed into an affix which is now used as SN. This requires some comments about SN in Middle Mongolian and its diachronic development.

Vlada V. Baranova & Daria F. Mishchenko

3.4 The historical development of Mongolic and Old Kalmyk negation

Two different types of negatives in Mongolic languages are distinguished according to their position. Yu (1991: 3) called this the principle of “preverbal and postnominal” negativity marking in Mongolic. The original and (in terms of 13th-century synchronic morphology) non-derived verbal negators *ese* and *ülü* were used in Middle Mongolian (xng, 13th–15th centuries) and consistently placed before the predicate. Similarly, the prohibitive particles *bü* / *bütügei* (> Modern Kalmyk *bičä*) always preceded the imperative form of a verb. On the other hand, the nominal negators *ügei*, *busu* / *busi* and *üdü’ui* in Middle Mongolian were placed after the word that they negated. The main transformation of this negative system in Mongolic was the gradual replacement of the preverbal particles by the extension of the use of the existential negator *ügei* to verbal clauses (see esp. Yu 1991; Brosig 2015). This functional extension of *ügei* to verbal negation occurred with converbal and participial forms and is thus cross-linguistically typical for negative existentials intruding into the SN domain through their use with nominalized verbs, as stated by Veselinova (2016: 155).

The negation marker *ügei* took over SN. In terms of Croft’s model (1991), Central Mongolic languages including Kalmyk belong to type C, while in most other Mongolic languages an existential negation marker makes inroads into verbal negation (stage B C) (as summarized in Brosig 2015: 128. Thus, the SN marker in most modern Central Mongolic languages developed from existential negation. But in addition to this process of expansion of negative existential negation into verbal negation, another grammaticalization process has taken place that involves the simultaneous extension of the ascriptive negator *bišə* into SN. That will be examined in the rest of this section.

In “The Secret History of the Mongols” (13th century), there are the words *busu* and *buši* ‘other’, which Yu (1991: 134) states were just phonological variants, with a prevalence of *busu* in early MM texts. Most contemporary Mongolic languages have inherited some variants of the item *buši* > *biši*.

The grammaticalization of the element *busu* ‘other’ into a negator of nouns starts in late MM (from the 14th century). Yu (1991: 127) mentions that as a lexical word ‘other’ it precedes the NP, while as a negation marker *busu* always follows the NP. In postnominal position, *busu* negates nouns, as in example (50):

- (50) MM: Twelve deeds of the Buddha F40v (Bawden 1969: 49, 141 glossed by Brosig 2015: 105)
- | | | | | | | |
|----------|------|-----|---------------|---------|---------------|---------------|
| ene | mör | ber | jobalang-i | mayad | yar-ya-n | cida-qu |
| DEM.PROX | path | FOC | SUFFERING-ACC | CERTAIN | EXIT-CAUS-CVB | CAN-NPST.PTCP |

9 Non-verbal negation markers and the NEC in Bashkir and Kalmyk

mör busu bu-i

path ASC.NEG COP-PRS

‘This path is not the path that can save from suffering.’

In Old Written Kalmyk (17th–19th centuries), there was a negation marker *biši* and sometimes *bišai* (from MM *busu*). It was used in two ways: in some texts, *biši* functions as a constituent negator, while in others it is a copula in non-verbal sentences.

In the letters written by Kalmyks in Kalmyk to Isaac Jacob Schmidt, the missionary and Mongolist who lived among that people between 1804 and 1806 (Krueger & Service 2002), in particular, it functions as a constituent negator which always directly follows the negated noun (i.e. has scope only over it). In 19 out of 23 examples in these manuscripts, it occurs as part of the formula *erke biši* capriciousness NEG ‘inadvertently, at once, immediately, without fail’. So, this usage looks similar to other expressions with a comparable meaning with negation *ügei*, which are more common, including a construction that is very typical for mail: *udal ügei* take.time-VRBL NEG ‘without delay’ (Krueger & Service 2002: 57).

Apart from this construction, the negation marker *biši* occurred in non-verbal predication.

- (51) Old Written Kalmyk (Krueger & Service 2002: 27, Letter 9, lines 7–8)
ike sayin mör-in bišai bilei
 very good horse-GEN NEG.PRS be.PST
 ‘This is not [a sign] of a very good horse.’

In a stage of evolution that is probably subsequent to this stage, the negation marker *biši* occurs in verbal predication. In some less known manuscripts, such as the letters of Donduk-Dashi (1741–1761) (Kokshaeva 2011), there are some interesting cases of the use of *biši* with participles and other verbal forms.

- (52) Old Written Kalmyk (Kokshaeva 2011: 167)
ünen xudal-iyini labla-ji mede-kü biši
 true lie-POSS.3 specify-CVB.IPFV know-PTCP.FUT NEG.PRS
 ‘We do not know if it is true or false.’

The later manuscript “Legend about pilgrimage to Tibet Baaza-bakshi from Maloderbet” (from the late 19th or early 20th century) contains an example in which *biš* occurs with a past participle in -*gsan* (53), which more commonly was

Vlada V. Baranova & Daria F. Mishchenko

negated by *ügei* (54).⁸ The form *-gsan biš* is semantically rather different from *-gsan ügei*: it has an emphatic meaning with more broad scope and describes the negation of a presupposition, while the form *-gsan ügei* just negates an event designated by a verb; see (53) and (54):

- (53) Old Written Kalmyk ([Bembeev 2004](#): 103)

sedkil-d-e:n sana-qu-du maniyi-gi küün küči:r
heart-DAT-P.REFL think-PTCP.FUT-DAT 3PL-ACC man by.force
yabu-ulu-gsan biši
go-CAUS-PTCP.PST NEG

‘(Although I am suffering so much I always) remember in my heart that that it was not so that a person sent us by force.’

- (54) Old Written Kalmyk ([Bembeev 2004](#): 103)

beye-ni cu-ya:r šarrqu bol-o:d od-bai ge-be čigi
body-POSS.3 all-INS wound become-CVB.ANT go-PST say-PST conc
ükü-gsen ügei
die-PTCP.PST NEG.EX.COP

‘Although (our camels) went there becoming covered with wounds, they did not die.’

As shown in Sections 3.2–3.3, in Modern Kalmyk, the marker *biš* is used as both a verbal and non-verbal negator. Compared to closely related languages, it looks more frequent than in Khalkha Mongolian, where it is used mostly in nominal sentences ([Yu 1991](#): 123–125) or it is relatively seldom used as a verbal negator with participles ([Janhunen 2012](#): 251).

The last point of interest is the emergence of the affixes *-go* and especially *-šə* from *uga* and *bišə*. In the absence of reliable data, it is hard to identify the period when the development of the contracted form and its dissemination in spoken Oirat took place. In the Old Kalmyk texts of the 18th–19th centuries which we analysed, there are no negative affixes. Probably they were used in the spoken Kalmyk of that time. According to [Bembeev \(2004: 114\)](#), there is a trace of the use of negative affixes in a manuscript on the verge of the 20th century.

3.5 Concluding remarks about Kalmyk negation

To sum up, the Kalmyk data shows a co-existence of two negation markers functioning on a synchronic level, both in non-verbal clauses and in verbal predi-

⁸In modern Kalmyk, the form of the past participle ending in *-sən* normally occurs with the negation marker *uga* or its contracted version *-go*.

9 Non-verbal negation markers and the NEC in Bashkir and Kalmyk

cation with non-finite form. Both markers developed a contracted form which is restricted to verbal clauses. The evolution of an existential negation into the verbal negation is typical of the NEC, and the negation marker *ügei* follows the cline. At the same time, Kalmyk is arguably particularly suited for the discussion, because its other non-verbal negator, *bisə*, evolved into a SN marker as well.

The item *bišə* developed in Middle Mongolian from an adjective *busu / bisu* ‘other’ into a negator for non-verbal negation. Thus, in Old Written Kalmyk, the negation marker *bišə* is used as a constituent negation with nouns and in non-verbal sentences. Then, it occurs with participles, in particular with future participles and occasionally with a past participle. So, the negation marker *bišə* extends its function and intrudes into the verbal negation. It is frequent in Kalmyk (possibly more so than in other Central Mongolic languages); unlike in most of those other languages, there it has grammaticalized to the affix of SN -šə in parallel with the contraction of *ügei / uga* to -go.

4 Other cases of non-verbal negators developing into SN markers

4.1 General notes

The penultimate section of the paper deals with other possible types of evolution of nominal negation and its inroads into the domain of SN in some other, unrelated languages. As mentioned in §1, relatively little attention has been paid to the cross-linguistic description of non-verbal negation markers that have intruded into the verbal clause. The selection of cases was partly determined by the data available to the authors. Due to the limited number of sources, we focus on two aspects of the evolution of originally nominal negation to verbal negators: their use as emphatic negative markers and their compatibility with future verbal predicates.

§4.2 deals with emphatic negation as found in Bornean languages. §4.3 treats the asymmetric use of negators or, more precisely, cases when nominal negators “occupy” future tense negation, like in Bashkir (see §2 above), as exemplified by Egyptian Arabic.

Vlada V. Baranova & Daria F. Mishchenko

4.2 Bornean languages

According to Kroeger (2014), Bornean languages,⁹ especially Malayic Dayak and languages of the Northeast Borneo subgroup, distinguish rather consistently between nominal and non-nominal negation. That is, different negators are used for verbal and adjectival predicates on the one hand and nominal predicates on the other, as in the following examples from Malay (ind, zsm; Kroeger gives examples from Standard Malay and from Indonesian, labelling both of them as “Malay”):

- (55) Malay (Sneddon 1996: 195, cit. by Kroeger 2014: 1)

Mereka tidak menolong kami.

3PL NEG help 1PL.EXCL

‘They didn’t help us.’

- (56) Malay (Sudaryono 1993: 88, cit. by Kroeger 2014: 1)

Saya tidak lapar.

1SG NEG hungry

‘I am not hungry.’

- (57) Malay (Sneddon 1996: 195, cit. by Kroeger 2014: 1)

*Dia bukan /*tidak guru.*

3SG NEG NEG teacher

‘She isn’t a teacher.’

Thus, in Malay *tidak* is used with verbal (55) and adjectival (56) predicates, but it cannot be used with nominal predicates (57) – this function is fulfilled by *bukan*. The latter can also be used with verbs, but only if there is any emphatic meaning in the sentence, like in (58):

- (58) Malay (Asmah Hj. 1982: 145, cit. by Kroeger 2014: 1)

Dia bukan tidur tetapi ber-baring sahaja.

3SG NEG sleep but mid-lie.down only

‘He is not sleeping, but only lying down.’

The same is true for most Bornean languages: the nominal negation marker, which normally does not negate verbs and adjectives, can be used in verbal clauses to mark emphatic negation. Specific types of “emphatic” uses may include contrastive negation (59b), contradiction of a proposition that has been

⁹“Bornean languages” are a group of Austronesian languages clustered according to a geographic principle. These include languages spoken on Borneo (Kalimantan), an island divided between Malaysia, Indonesia and Brunei.

9 Non-verbal negation markers and the NEC in Bashkir and Kalmyk

asserted or could be assumed (60b), focus marking of an argument (61b), or just unspecified emphasis (62b). The (a) cases in each pair of examples illustrate the use of the correspondent negator for negating nominal predicates.

- (59) Mualang (mtd) (Tjia 2007: examples 9–102, 110, cit. by Kroeger 2014: 5)

- a. *Ia' ukay uma ku.*
that NEG rice.field 1SG
'That is not my rice field.'
- b. *Ku ukay pulay. Baru' ka' angkat.*
1SG NEG go.home just FUT go
'I am not going home; I am just about to leave.'

- (60) Kimaragang Dusun (kqr) (Kroeger 2014: 7–8)

- a. *Kada matagur, okon.ko' tidi ku ika!*
don't scold NEG mother 1SG.GEN 2SG.NOM
'Don't scold me, you are not my mother!'
- b. *Okon.ko' bobogon dialo ilot tanak yo dat maanakaw, suuon nogi.*
NEG beat.OV 3SG that child 3SG REL steal.hab order.OV PRT
'He doesn't beat that child of his who keeps on stealing, he actually orders / sends him (to steal)!'

- (61) Timugon Murut (tih) (example a in Brewis 1988: 10, cit. by Kroeger 2014: 8); (example b in Brewis et al. 2004: 612, cit. by Kroeger 2014: 8)

- a. *Sala'=ka lalaing ku io.*
NEG=PRT child 1SG.GEN 3SG.NOM
'He is not my child.'
- b. *Sala'=ka aku mangansak ra kaluu'.*
NEG=PRT 1SG.NOM cook ACC rice
'I didn't cook rice.'

- (62) Tatana' (txx) (Chan & Pekkanen 1989: 6, 44, cit. by Kroeger 2014: 11)

- a. *Loin ko disio baloi dino.*
NEG PRT his house that
'That house is not his.'
- b. *Loin ko idagang ku anak ku.*
NEG PRT be.sold 1SG.GEN child 1SG.GEN
'It's not like I'm selling my child.' (said during bride-price negotiations)'

Vlada V. Baranova & Daria F. Mishchenko

Interestingly, Bornean languages also provide an example of the nominal negator being used as a part of double negation (together with SN) conveying a positive meaning. In Begak-Ida'an (dbj), *(a)pon*¹⁰ serves as a SN marker (63). The nominal negator is *pangka*, a contracted form of *(a)pon* with a discourse particle *ka*¹¹ (64). In sentences with double negation like (65), both *(a)pon* and *pangka* are used, where *pangka* serves as the first negative marker with scope over the SN marker *(a)pon* as the second negator.

- (63) Begak-Ida'an (*Goudswaard 2005*: 300, cit. by *Kroeger 2014*: 15)

Siti apon mangan bakas.
Siti NEG eat wild.pig
'Siti does not eat pork.'

- (64) Begak-Ida'an (*Goudswaard 2005*: 304, cit. by *Kroeger 2014*: 15)

Ino pa asu matay, pon.ka¹² anak mo.
yonder PRT dog dead NEG child 2SG.GEN
'This is a dead dog hey, this is not your child.'¹³

- (65) Begak-Ida'an (*Goudswaard 2005*: 305, cit. by *Kroeger 2014*: 16)

aku pangka pon atow muli, aku atow, ...
1SG NEG NEG know return 1SG know
'It is not the case that I do not know how to go home, I do know.' (lit. I do not not know (how) to go home, I do know)

On the one hand, such use of nominal negation markers is just a logical extension of their emphatic use and/or their compatibility with focus markers. But at the same time, they demonstrate that nominal negators are considered by the speaker as an additional opportunity to express verbal negation when another means has already been employed. It seems that this opens the door for subsequent expansion of nominal negative markers into the verbal system.

¹⁰This occurs along with *(n)inga*', another SN marker. The author discusses the subtle differences between the two forms; however, they seem to be irrelevant for the purposes of the present study.

¹¹As *Goudswaard (2005: 304)* states, "The combination *pon ka* is most of the times pronounced as *pangka* rather than as *pon ka*: the vowel /o/ of *pon* being reduced to schwa."

¹³In the original work (*Goudswaard 2005*), this unit is written separately as two words, *pon ka*, according to its interpretation as a combination of the marker of sentential negation *(a)pon* with a discourse particle *ka*

¹³Kroger's translation of this sentence is not clear, but it is supposed to convey a general "emphatic" meaning, as in other cases.

9 Non-verbal negation markers and the NEC in Bashkir and Kalmyk

To sum up, according to the current information, in almost all the Bornean languages nominal negators can be used to negate verbal clauses.¹⁴ However, their use with verbal predicates is limited to pragmatically marked contexts. There is some parallelism with the Turkic data discussed in §2, where nominal markers can be used with some specific verbal forms along with SN markers, bringing emphatic meaning, and more broadly with typological observations on the development of negative markers, such as that by Horn (1989), which testifies to the tendency for non-verbal negators to be used in verbal clauses for contrastive and narrow focus negation.

4.3 Egyptian Arabic

Egyptian Arabic (arz) and particularly its Cairene dialect differ from Standard Arabic in several domains of grammar, including negation. In Egyptian Arabic, there is a negative particle *muš*, which negates the nouns and adjectives which it precedes. This item is a result of grammaticalization of a negative particle plus a word meaning ‘thing’. Wilmsen (2020) shows the broader context of negation *muš* in Arabic languages. It covers the meanings of negation of identification and attribution.

- (66) Egyptian Arabic (Ramazan Mamedshakhov, pers. commun.)

- a. *huwwa muš t'aalib huwwa farraaf*
3.SG NEG student 3.SG messenger
'He is not a student, he is a messenger.'
- b. *?il-beet=da muš kibir*
DEF-house=DEM NEG big
'This house is not big.'

Muš as used in (66b) is not an existential negator, for which Egyptian Arabic employs a circumflex or doubled negative markers on the locative word *fii* ‘in’, as in (67a). It differs from Standard Arabic, which uses a particle *laa* ‘no’, as in (67b) for existential negation, which is also used as a SN for present tense events (Gadalla 2000: 232).

- (67) Egyptian and Standard Arabic (Gadalla 2000: 234)

- a. *ma-fii-š riggaala fi-l-madiin-a*
NEG-in-NEG men in.the-city
'There are no men in the city.'

¹⁴Exceptions seem to be very few; Kroeger (2014) mentions Tombonuwo.

Vlada V. Baranova & Daria F. Mishchenko

- b. *laa rijaal-a fi-l-madiin-at-(i)*
 no men-ACC in.the.city-(GEN)
 ‘There are no men in the city.’

SN in Egyptian Arabic is expressed by the combination of the proclitic *ma-* and affix -š (it also can be treated as a circumflex / discontinuous morpheme; see [Gadalla 2000: 234](#)), as in (68a). This combination of negative markers occurs in the past and present, but the only way to express verbal negation in the future is via the nominal negator *muš*, which co-occurs with the finite form of the future tense,¹⁵ as in (68b):

- (68) Egyptian (Cairine) Arabic (Ramazan Mamedshakhov, pers. commun.)
- a. *ʔil-raagil=da ma=rga<a>᷑-ø-š*
 DEF-man=DEM NEG=return<PFV>return-3SG.M-NEG
 ‘This man did not return.’
 - b. *ʔil-raagil=da muš ha-ji-rga<a>᷑-Ø*
 DEF-man=DEM NEG FUT-3SG.M-return<IPFV>return-3SG.M
 ‘This man will not return.’

Other examples of the negator *miš* / *muš* as verbal negation in Egyptian Arabic can be found in [Wilmsen \(2020: 93–94\)](#). He states that *miš* / *muš* with a verb instead of *ma-* ... -š has pragmatic meanings, such as rhetorical or metalinguistic negation [Wilmsen \(2020: 94\)](#). Meanwhile, our data – as well as examples from Wilmsen’s paper itself – show that in some cases it is a quite neutral way of negating future events.

4.4 Discussion of the typological context

The use of nominal negation markers with verbal predicates can be conditioned pragmatically, as can be seen from the data of the Bornean languages, or grammatically, as in Egyptian Arabic. The reasons for the first type of use seem to be more understandable: if a language possesses several negative markers, one can expect that the use of a marker originally supposed to be used as a non-verbal negation marker in a new context will be pragmatically marked – and, indeed,

¹⁵It should be noted that future tense in Egyptian Arabic is made up of two elements: the preterite of the grammaticalized verb *raah* ‘to go’ together with a verb in the present tense: e.g. *raah jiktib* ‘(he) will write’.

9 Non-verbal negation markers and the NEC in Bashkir and Kalmyk

there are examples of this among the world's languages. In contrast, the possibility of grammatical motivation towards the use of nominal negation markers requires explanations. We suggest that one such explanation may be in the nature of certain grammatical meanings (and, consequently, forms) that makes them "predisposed" to become negators other than standard verbal negators. Cross-linguistically, the future tense is an outstanding category, often being weaker and grammaticalized later than past and present tense (Lindstedt 2001: 771), with its semantics close to modality (Bybee et al. 1994: 280). This possibly makes future forms the best candidates to combine with new negative markers which intrude from non-verbal forms to standard negation, but further research is necessary in order to prove or disprove this speculation.

It should be noted that the situation is different in Egyptian Arabic and Bashkir. In the latter, future verbal forms are the only grammatical context where nominal negators can be used along with verbal SN markers, and no semantic difference is observed. In the former, the nominal negator has established itself as the only grammatical means to form negative future forms. In both languages a nominal negator does not add an emphatic semantic component. Alongside the languages described in this paper, there are other examples of use of the non-verbal negation marker in the function of verbal negation with future tense. For instance, "the attributive negator *gənyi* has been grammaticalized as the SN negator for verbs with future and near-past time reference" in Kanuri (Veselinova 2016: 172). The traces of this pattern are also attested in a number of languages. However, a detailed description of the relation between non-verbal negators, their uses as focus markers and their subsequent uses as negators for the future tense still remains to be made.

One can expect that the markedness of the nominal negation marker will gradually wear out, it will expand its functional scope, and a new emphatic negative marker will arise (a well-known example of a similar semantic weakening of a negative marker is French *pas* in *ne ... pas*, which has come a long way from the emphatic to a neutral strategy of negation). However, no evidence of such a process is observed in any of the languages examined here, though a more thorough investigation of the diachronic sources is necessary to definitively conclude this.

5 Conclusion

In this paper we have discussed several issues related to Croft's Negative Existential Cycle. First, do the processes of change really occur cyclically, and if so, is there only one cycle? Second, what elements can be involved in it? Our initial data from Kalmyk and Bashkir bore evidence that changes taking place in

Vlada V. Baranova & Daria F. Mishchenko

a language system of negative markers do not necessarily close a cycle. The development of negation systems includes different new markers, where a newly introduced element shares functions with older elements of the system. Moreover, not only negative existentials but also other types of non-verbal negation can participate in this process.

One of the interesting points is a place taken by a new negation marker in the system of negation, as well as the relationship between nominal negators intruding into the verbal negation and negative existentials, which typically develop the function of SN in languages of the world. Observed cases show that there are different possibilities. For Kalmyk, we postulate an analogical evolution. The marker *bišə* develops from a marker in the non-verbal identity/ascriptive predication to assume the function of negation of verbal predication with participles and converbs in parallel with the development of the marker *ügei / uga*, which started this development earlier and underwent it in more Mongolic varieties. As for the Bornean languages and Egyptian Arabic, the intrusion of negative existentials into the domain of SN is not attested.

According to typological data, involvement of the non-verbal negative markers into the system of verbal negation can first exploit their markedness to express emphatic negation. It may be supposed that at the first step, they can be just another way to negate a verbal predicate, with an additional emphatic meaning, as compared to a neutral verbal negator. But their frequent co-occurrence with certain forms or high compatibility of the emphatic meaning with certain grammatical semantics can allow them to replace a verbal marker initially used with certain verbal forms and become the only way to negate them.

In particular, we have considered examples of the use of nominal negative markers with future forms, which seems to be a relatively frequent situation. Our sampled languages show different statuses of forms of nominal negation with future forms. In Bashkir and some other Turkic languages, the nominal negation competes with SN in the future tense. Egyptian Arabic displays a common way to negate an event in the future with the nominal negator *muš*. Thus, Egyptian Arabic should be classified as situated at a more advanced stage of the nominal negation's intrusion into the verbal system, as compared to Bashkir and other Turkic languages, where a similar phenomenon is found. We suggest that such an association of the future with noun negation is explained by specific properties of the future tense as a grammatical category.

9 Non-verbal negation markers and the NEC in Bashkir and Kalmyk

Abbreviations

| | | | |
|---------|---|---------|----------------------|
| 1, 2, 3 | 1, 2, 3 person | | |
| ACC | accusative | | |
| AFF | affirmative clitic | | |
| AG | agentive nominal | | |
| ANT | anterior | KNC | Kalmyk National |
| ASC | ascriptive (negation) | | Corpus |
| ASSOC | associative | LOC | locative |
| ATT | attendant circumstance | M | masculine |
| CAUS | causative | MID | middle voice |
| COM | comitative case | MM | Middle Mongolian |
| CONC | concessive | NCKL | National Corpus of |
| COP | copula | | Kalmyk Language |
| CVB | converb | NEC | Negative Existential |
| DAT | dative | | Cycle |
| DEF | definite | NEG | negation |
| DEM | demonstrative | NEG.COP | negative copula |
| EMPH | emphatic | NEG.EX | negative existential |
| EVID | evidential | NMLZ | nominizational |
| EX | existential | NOM | nominative |
| EXCL | exclusive | NPST | nonpast |
| EXT | extension (unstable consonant -n in nominative of some nouns which disappears in oblique cases) | OV | object voice |
| | | PFV | perfective |
| | | PL | plural |
| | | POSS | possessive |
| | | POT | potential |
| FUT | future | PROG | progressive aspect |
| GEN | genitive | PRS | present |
| HAB | habitualis | PRT | particle |
| INS | instrumental case | | |
| IPFV | imperfective form | | |
| IPM | instances per million words | | |

Vlada V. Baranova & Daria F. Mishchenko

| | | | |
|------|-----------------|-----|--------------------------|
| PST | past | SG | singular |
| PTCP | participle | SN | standard negation |
| Q | question marker | SOV | subject-object-verb word |
| REFL | reflexive | | order |
| REL | relative | TAM | tense, aspect, modality |
| REM | remote past | | |

Acknowledgements

We would like to thank the editors of this volume, Benjamin Brosig, and an anonymous reviewer for their valuable comments on earlier versions of this chapter, Ramazan Mamedshakhov and Sergey Klimenko for their help in interpreting the data of Arabic and Bornean, and our Bashkir and Kalmyk informants. This study was supported by the Russian Foundation for Basic Research, grant 16–34–01015 ‘Negation in Bashkir, Kalmyk and Nanai and its interaction with tense and aspect’.

References

- Asmah Hj., Omar. 1982. *Nahu Melayu mutakhir [Modern Malay Grammar]*. 2nd. Kuala Lumpur: Dewan Bahasa dan Pustaka.
- Baranova, Vlada V. 2015. Negation markers in Kalmyk. Moscow. <https://wp.hse.ru/data/2015/11/18/1082029038/24LNG2015.pdf>.
- Baranova, Vlada V. 2018. Kak voznykayut novye formy otricaniya v kalmyckom jazyke [On the origin of new negative forms in Kalmyk]. *Uralo-altayskiye issledovaniya* 2(29). 7–17.
- Baranova, Vlada V. 2019. The preverbal negation particle *essə* in Kalmyk: Historical development and typological context of negators in subordinate clause. *International Journal of Eurasian Linguistics* 1(1). 21–45.
- Bawden, C. R. 1969. Nicholas poppe (ed. And tr.): The twelve deeds of buddha: A mongolian version of the lalitavistara. (asiatische Forschungen, bd. 23.) 175pp., 65 plates. Wiesbaden: Otto harrasso-witz, 1967. Dm 24. *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 32(3). 635?637. DOI: [10.1017/S0041977X0009741X](https://doi.org/10.1017/S0041977X0009741X).
- Bembeev, Evgeny V. 2004. *Lingvisticheskoe opisanie pamyatnika starokalmytskoy (oyeratskoy) pismennosti: “Skazanie o khozhdennii v Tibetskuyu stranu Maloderbetovskogo Baaza-bakshi”* [Linguistic description of the Old Kalmyk (Oirat) writing: ‘Legend about pilgrimage to Tibet of Baaza-bakshi from Maloderbet’]. Moscow: Institute for Linguistic Studies RAS. (Doctoral dissertation).

9 Non-verbal negation markers and the NEC in Bashkir and Kalmyk

- Bodrogliglieti, András J. E. 2001. *A grammar of Chagatay* (Languages of the World, Materials 155). München: Lincom Europa.
- Brewis, Kielo A. 1988. *Learn to speak Timugon Murut: A series of 25 language lessons*. Kota Kinabalu: Sabah Museum & State Archives, Series C no. 1.
- Brewis, Richard, Philippa Silipah Majius & Kielo A. Brewis (eds.). 2004. *Kamus Murut Timugon–Melayu: Dengan ikhtisar etnografi [Timugon Murut – Malay dictionary: With ethnographic sketch]*. Kota Kinabalu: Kadazandusun Language Foundation.
- Brosig, Benjamin. 2015. Negation in Mongolic. *SUSA / Journal de la Société Finno-Ougrienne* 95. 67–136.
- Bybee, Joan, Revere Perkins & William Pagliuca. 1994. *The evolution of grammar: Tense, aspect, and modality in the languages of the world*. Chicago; London: University of Chicago.
- Chan, Phyllis D. & Inka Pekkanen. 1989. *Learn to speak Tatana': A series of twenty-five language learning lessons* (Sabah Museum series C 3). Kota Kinabalu: Sabah Museum & State Archives.
- Croft, William. 1991. The evolution of negation. *Journal of Linguistics* 27(1). 1–27.
- Dmitriev, Nikolay. 1948. *Grammatika bashkirskogo yazyka [A grammar of Bashkir]*. Moscow – Leningrad: AS USSR Press.
- Dryer, Matthew S. 2007. Clause types. In Timothy Shopen (ed.), *Clause structure (language typology and syntactic description)*, 2nd edn., vol. 1, 224–275. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Gadalla, Hassan A. H. 2000. *Comparative morphology of Standard and Egyptian Arabic*. München: Lincom Europa.
- Goudswaard, Nelleke. 2005. *The Begak (Ida'an) language of Sabah*. Utrecht: LOT: Netherlands Graduate School of Linguistics.
- Hengeveld, Kees. 1992. *Non-verbal predication*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Horn, Laurence R. 1989. *A natural history of negation*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Horn, Laurence R. 2010. *The expression of negation*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Janhunen, Juha. 2012. *Mongolian* (London Oriental and African language library 19). Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Ketrez, F. Nihan. 2012. *A student grammar of Turkish*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Kokshaeva, Nina O. 2011. *Yazykovye osobennosti epistolyarnogo naslediya kalmytskogo khana Dokduk-Dashi (seredina XVIII veka) [Linguistic features of epistolary archive by Kalmyk Khan Donduk-Dashi (mid-18th)]*. Elista: Gerel.

Vlada V. Baranova & Daria F. Mishchenko

- Kroeger, Paul. 2014. Nominal and emphatic negation in Borneo. In Peter Sercombe, Michael Boutin & Adrian Clynes (eds.), *Advances in research on linguistic and cultural practices in Borneo (a memorial to peter martin)*. Borneo research council. Pre-publication draft, 201–226. Pre-publication draft. http://www.gial.edu/wp-content/uploads/paul_kroeger/Kroeger-Borneo-neg-BRC-prepub.pdf (31 January, 2018). Phillips, Maine: Borneo Research Council.
- Krueger, John R. & Robert G. Service. 2002. *Kalmyk old-script documents of Isaac Jacob Schmidt 1800–1810. Todo Biciq texts, transcription, translation from the Moravian Archives at Herrnhut*. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz.
- Lindstedt, Jouko. 2001. Tense and aspect. In Martin Haspelmath, Ekkehard König, Wulf Oesterreicher & Wolfgang Raible (eds.), *Language typology and language universals: An international handbook*, 768–783. Berlin: Walter de Gruyter.
- Miestamo, Matti. 2017. Negation. In Alexandra Yu Aikhenvald & Robert M. W. Dixon (eds.), *The Cambridge Handbook of Linguistic Typology*, 405–439. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Mishchenko, Daria F. 2011. Otritsanie v bashkirskom yazyke [Negation in Bashkir]. Report on the work done during the field trip to the village of Rahmetovo, Abzellovsky region, Republic of Bashkortostan.
- Mishchenko, Daria F. 2017. Neglagolnye predlozheniya bashkrskogo yazyka i sposoby vyrazheniya otritsaniya v nikh [Non-verbal predication in Bashkir and the ways of its negation]. *Acta linguistica petropolitana. Transactions of the Institute for Linguistic Studies of Russian Academy of Sciences XIII*, 1. 110–146.
- Nugteren, Hans. 2003. Shira yughur. In Juha Janhunen (ed.), *The Mongolic languages*, 265–285. London – New York: Routledge.
- Payne, John R. 1985. *Negation*. Timothy Shopen (ed.). Vol. 1, Clause structure. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. 197–242.
- Payne, Thomas E. 1997. *Describing morphosyntax: A guide for field linguists*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Poppe, Nicholas. 1961. *Tatar manual. Descriptive grammar and texts with a Tatar-English glossary* (Uralic and Altaic Series 25). Bloomington: Indiana University.
- Rákos, Attila. 2015. *Synchronic and diachronic comparative analysis of the Oirad dialects*. Doktori disszertáció. Budapest: Eötvös Loránd University.
- Say, Sergey S. 2017. Lichno-chislovoe soglasovanie nezavisimykh glagolnykh skazuemykh v bashkirskom yazyke [Person and number agreement in Bashkir independent verbal clauses]. *Acta linguistica petropolitana. Transactions of the Institute for Linguistic Studies of Russian Academy of Sciences XIII*, 1. 308–352.
- Seegmiller, Steve. 1996. *Karachay* (Languages of the World, Materials 109). München – Newcastle: Lincom Europa.

9 Non-verbal negation markers and the NEC in Bashkir and Kalmyk

- Sjoberg, Andrée F. 1963. *Uzbek structural grammar* (Uralic and Altaic Series 18). Bloomington: Indiana University.
- Sneddon, James N. 1996. *Indonesian reference grammar*. St. Leonards, NSW: Allen & Unwin.
- Stassen, Leon. 2009. *Predicative possession [Oxford studies in typology and linguistic theory]*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Sudaryono. 1993. *Negasi dalam bahasa Indonesia: Suatu tinjauan sintaktik dan semantik*. Jakarta: Pusat Pembinaan dan Pengembangan Bahasa.
- Suseeva, Danara A. 2003. *Pisma Khana Ayuki i ego sovremennikov (1714–1724 gg.): Opyt lingvosotsiologicheskogo issledovaniya [Khan Ayuki and his contemporaries' letters (1714–1724): An essay in linguo-social study]*. Elista: Jangar.
- Tjia, Johnny. 2007. *A grammar of Mualang: An Ibanic language of Western Kalimantan, Indonesia*. Leiden: LOT (Netherlands Graduate School of Linguistics).
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2010. Standard and special negators in the Slavonic languages: Synchrony and diachrony. In Björn Hansen & Jasmina Grković-Major (eds.), *Diachronic syntax of the Slavonic languages*, 197–210. Vienna: Sagner.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2015. Special negators in the Uralic languages: Synchrony, diachrony and interaction with standard negation. In Matti Miestamo, Anne Tamm & Beáta Wagner-Nagy (eds.), *Negation in Uralic languages* (Typological Studies in Language 108), 547–599. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2016. The negative existential cycle viewed through the lens of comparative data. In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change continued* (Linguistics Today 227), 139–187. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Weir, E. M. Helen. 1994. Nadëb. In Peter Kahrel & René Berg (eds.), *Typological studies in negation*, 291–323. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Wilmsen, David. 2020. *Extensions and commonalities of negative existential cycles in Arabic*. This volume.
- Wu, Hugjiltu. 2003. Bonan. In Juha Janhunen (ed.), *The Mongolic languages*, 325–345. London & New York: Routledge.
- Yu, Wonsoo. 1991. *A study of Mongolian negation*. Bloomington: Indiana University, Department of Central Eurasian studies. () .
- Yuldashev, Akhnef A. 1981. *Grammatika sovremennoho bashkirskogo literaturnogo jazyka [A grammar of the modern Standard Bashkir]*. Moscow: Nauka.

Chapter 10

Integration of the negative existential into the standard negation system: The case of Nanaic languages

Sofia Oskolskaya^a & Natalia Stoynova^{b,c}

^aInstitute for Linguistic Studies, RAS ^bRussian Language Institute, RAS ^cNRU Higher School of Economics

The paper deals with the use of negative existentials in the system of standard negation in different Nanaic varieties (a sub-group of Tungusic languages). Three different types of integration of negative existentials into standard negation constructions are discussed: 1) “converb + negative existential”; 2) “present/past indicative finite verb + negative existential”; 3) a series of constructions in which the negative existential functions as a pleonastic negative marker. While the first construction is attested in almost all Nanaic varieties, the others are less widespread. For each construction under discussion we propose a possible grammaticalization path. All the constructions refer to stage B>C in Croft’s cycle. We argue that in some aspects the first construction goes beyond Croft’s cycle.

Keywords: negative existentials, standard negation, Tungusic languages, Nanai, Ulch, grammaticalization

1 Introduction

The paper deals with the use of negative existentials in the system of standard negation in different “Nanaic” varieties, a sub-group within the Tungusic family, including Nanai and some other closely related varieties (see Map 10.1).

According to Veselinova (2013: 107), negative existentials (NegEx) are special markers used in negative existential predications like “There are no mice in the



Sofia Oskolskaya & Natalia Stoynova

basement,” while standard negation (SN) is a negation of declarative sentences with an overt verb predicate (see Miestamo 2005: 39–45).

In Nanaic, the negative existential can function as an element of some standard negation constructions. These standard negation constructions vary across Nanaic languages. The most widespread one is a past tense construction, illustrated in (1):

- (1) Naikhin Nanai

n'oani naj sore-e-wa-ni xāle=dā ičə-m=dā
 3SG human fight-PRS-ACC-3SG when=EMPH see-CVB.SIM.SG=EMPH
aba-ni
 NEG.EX-3SG

‘He has never seen people fighting.’ (Avrorin 1986: 154, text)

As shown in (1), it consists of the simultaneous converb¹ of the lexical verb (*ičə-m* ‘seeing’) and the negative existential (*aba*). An optional element of the construction is the particle *=dA*. It has an emphatic meaning in its proper use (see Avrorin 1961: 264), but within the SN-construction the import of its meaning seems to be lessened.

This construction is attested in most Nanaic varieties, and it reveals notable differences in different varieties. Its possible diachronic development seems to be non-trivial. We include some comparative data on this construction, which can shed light on its grammaticalization from the NegEx-construction.

¹The “simultaneous converb” is one of the central non-finite verb forms. In its main use, it refers to an event that is simultaneous with the event of the main clause (i).

- (i) Naikhin Nanai

ele-se-māri ičə-ži-či
 stand-IPFV-CVB.SIM.PL see-RES.PRS-3PL
 ‘They are standing and watching.’

Outside the negative construction with *aba*, this converb has no negative meaning. The negative converb is derived with a negative suffix *-(r)A* and a negative particle *əm* (see example (ii) below), which is different from the SN-construction with *aba* presented in example (1). Negative forms of converbs are not discussed in the article.

- (ii) Naikhin Nanai

Mi bičə-wə əm niru-ə-mi akpan-go-xam-bi.
 1SG letter-ACC NEG write-CNG-CVB.SIM.SG lie.down-REP-PST-1SG
 ‘I went to sleep without writing a letter (I did not write a letter and went to sleep).’
 (elicitation)

10 Integration of the negative existential into the standard negation system

In some of the Nanaic varieties, other SN-constructions with negative existentials are also attested. These cases basically agree with the expected cross-linguistic patterns of NegEx-evolution.

The paper is organized as follows. §2 gives some background information on the Nanaic sub-group. In §3, we present the data and methodology of the study. §4 describes the standard negation systems and negative existentials attested in Nanaic languages. In §5, we provide analysis of the most widespread SN-construction with the negative existential (see example 1), based on the comparative data of different Nanaic varieties. In §6, we discuss other, less frequent constructions. Finally, §7 contains a brief summary.

2 Nanaic varieties within the Tungusic family

According to the classification of Tungusic languages in Doerfer (1978), they form a Central-Western Tungusic subgroup comprising Nanai (iso-code gld), Ulch (iso-code ulc), Orok (iso-code oaa) and Hezhe (also known as Kili, glottocode kile1243).² It constitutes the Central Tungusic group together with the Central-Eastern Tungusic languages: Oroch (iso-code oac) and Udihe (iso-code ude).

The general name “Nanaic languages” in a broad sense includes Nanai, Ulch, Orok and, in some classifications, also Hezhe. These varieties are spoken in the Russian Far East and in the North East of China. In the paper, we discuss the Amur Nanai dialects: Naikhin and Dzhuen (the Middle Amur sub-group), Sikachi-Aljan (the Upper Amur sub-group), Gorin (the Lower Amur sub-group), Bikin Nanai and Kur-Urmi (which are also sometimes attributed as Nanai dialects), and the Hezhe and Ulch languages (see Map 10.1).

Hezhe and Bikin Nanai are nearly extinct, while Amur Nanai dialects as well as Kur-Urmi are endangered; furthermore, Ulch is severely endangered. See Gerasimova (2002); Sumbatova & Gusev (2016) and Kalinina & Oskolskaya (2016) on the current sociolinguistic situation.

Besides the Central Tungusic languages there are the Manchu-Jurchen and Northern branches (see Map 10.2). The Manchu-Jurchen branch comprises Jurchen (iso-code juc), Manchu (iso-code mnc) and Xibe (iso-code sjo). The Northern branch comprises Even (iso-code eve), Evenki (iso-code evn), Negidal (iso-

²The genetic affiliation of Hezhe is a question of many debates, because this variety shares different linguistic features with different Tungusic groups, so that it can refer to the Nanaic, Udiheic, Manchu-Jurchen and Northern (which includes Even, Evenki and Negidal) branches, according to different classifications; see Hölzl (2017). As Hezhe has some features common with the Nanaic varieties, we decided to include some basic information on negation in Hezhe in our research.

Sofia Oskolskaya & Natalia Stoynova

code neg) and Oroqen (iso-code orh). Data of the Manchu-Jurchen and Northern branches are not discussed in the paper.

3 Data and methodology

Our data come from different sources. The information on Hezhe, Bikin Nanai and Kur-Urmi is taken from grammar descriptions and published texts ([Zhang et al. 1989](#) and [Zhang 2013](#) for Hezhe, [Petrova 1967](#) and [Tsumagari 2009](#) for Orok, [Sem 1976](#) for Bikin Nanai, and [Sunik 1958](#) for Kur-Urmi). The data on Naikhin, Sikachi-Aljan, Dzhuuen and Gorin dialects, as well as the Ulch data, were collected during our fieldtrips to the Russian Far East in 2015–2017. Some information was received through elicitation tasks of several types: 1) We asked speakers to translate Russian negative sentences into their native languages (Nanai or Ulch). 2) Then we asked them to judge some sentences in their own language, which we constructed ourselves, using the negative form we were interested in. 3) We also asked speakers to estimate negative forms derived from various verbal lexemes, to give a pair of sentences with the negative form and to explain their meanings.

(2) Examples of the elicitation tasks:

a. Researcher

(in Russian): How do you say “He didn’t write a letter”?

Speaker (in Naikhin Nanai):

N'oani bičxə-wə əčiə niru-ə-ni.
3SG letter-ACC NEG.PST write-CNG-3SG

b. Researcher: Is it a correct Nanai sentence:

N'oani bičxə-wə niru-mi aba.
3SG letter-ACC write-CVB.SIM.SG NEG.EX

Speaker (in Russian):

Yes, you can say it this way.

c. Researcher: Is it a correct Nanai expression:

niru-m=də aba?
write-CVB.SIM.SG=EMPH NEG.EX

Speaker: Yes, it is.

Researcher: Could you give an example with this expression? What does it mean?

Speaker:

10 *Integration of the negative existential into the standard negation system*

N'oani bičxə-wə niru-m=də aba.
3SG letter-ACC write-CVB.SIM.SG=EMPH NEG.EX

Speaker: It means 'He didn't write a letter at all.'

Some parts of our research were based on the Nanai and Ulch text collections, consisting of our own field records (different Amur dialects, Ulch), Ulch texts collected by V. Gusev, S. Toldova, E. Kalinina and N. Sumbatova in 2007–2010 in Ulchsky District (Khabarovsk Krai, Russia), and Nanai and Ulch published texts from [Avrorin \(1986\)](#) and [Sunik \(1985\)](#).

4 Standard and existential negation in Nanaic

4.1 Standard negators

The majority of modern negative forms and analytic constructions attested in Nanaic varieties go back to a construction with the dedicated negative verb *ə- and the non-finite form of the lexical verb, marked with the connegative suffix -(r)A.³ Within the Nanaic subgroup, this construction is attested in its initial form only in Orok (3).⁴

- (3) Orok

 - a. *tari nari e-si-ni yennnee*
that man NEG.AUX-PRS-3SG go.CNG
'He doesn't go.' (**Tsumagari 2009**: 13)
 - b. *tari nari ec-ci-ni yennnee*
that man NEG.AUX-PST-3SG go.CNG
'He didn't go.' (**Tsumagari 2009**: 13)

In (3), the negative verb **ə-* takes the finite form (with reference to the present in (3a) and the past in (3b)), marked with person-number inflection, and the lexical verb ‘to go’ takes the uninflected connegative form.

³The suffix -(r)A is assumed to be etymologically related to one of the TAM-suffixes and to the marker of the non-simultaneous converb. It is described as the “aorist suffix” in the proto-Tungusic reconstruction by Benzing (1955: 124 ff., 146). In the modern Nanaic varieties, these three types of use can be strictly distinguished by their phonological form and syntactic properties. This explains why they can be regarded as three different markers.

⁴Analytic constructions with the negative verb are more widespread in Northern Tungusic languages. For a more general picture of standard negation in Tungusic languages, see, e.g., Höztl (2015).

Sofia Oskolskaya & Natalia Stoynova

In all other varieties the negative verb *ə- has undergone a further development. Different frozen TAM-forms of *ə- have been grammaticalized to a range of negative particles. Synthetic negative verb forms attested in Nanaic also go back to the analytic construction with *ə-.

The resulting inventories of standard negators in Nanaic languages are quite rich and heterogeneous. In this Section, we focus on the present and past tense negative paradigm, since the constructions with NegEx, which are discussed in detail in the paper, belong exactly to these domains. The data on the main past tense negators, except those containing negative existentials, are summarized in Table 10.1. The constructions with NegEx markers are discussed separately in §5.

The first negative construction with reference to the past contains the special past negative particle əčiə and the connegative form of the lexical verb. The particle əčiə goes back to the past tense form of the negative verb *ə-; cf. (4) from Naikhin Nanai:

- (4) Naikhin Nanai

| | | | |
|------|---------------------|-------------|---------------------|
| əži | agža-o-so, | əčiə | bu-də-ni=əmdə |
| PROH | believe-IMP-IMP.2PL | NEG.PST.COP | die-CONNEX-3SG=QUOT |

'Don't believe him, he has not died.' (text, Naikhin, our field data)

Unlike in (3b) from Orok, in (4) the former past tense form of the negative verb is frozen; it does not take person-number markers, they (optionally) attach to the connegative form of the lexical verb.

The second past tense form is synthetic. Here, the connegative and the past tense form of the negative verb constitute synchronically a single verb form; cf. (5):

- (5) Kur-Urmi

| | | | |
|---------------|--------|---------------------|-------------------|
| ... kera-du-i | bajə | bi-wə-n=xaj | sa-o-rā-čin ... |
| edge-DAT-1SG | person | be.PRS-ACC-3SG=what | know-IMPS-CNG-PST |

'It was unknown that there are people who live nearby.' (Sunik 1958: 145, text)

A structurally similar synthetic form is used with reference to the present (6). It goes back to the combination of the connegative and the present tense form of the negative verb.

- (6) Ulch

| | | |
|----------|----------|------------------|
| uj=də | tj-wa | sā-ra-sj |
| who=EMPH | this-ACC | know-CNG-NEG.PRS |

'Nobody knows it.' (text, Bulava, our field data)

10 *Integration of the negative existential into the standard negation system*

Table 10.1: Inventory of standard negators in Nanaic languages.

| | Naikhin Nanai | Gorin Nanai | Bikin Nanai | Sikachi- Aljan | Kur-Urmi Hezhe Ulch | Orok |
|--|------------------|--------------------------|----------------|-------------------|---------------------|----------------|
| PRESENT | | | | | | |
| synthetic form e.g., <i>sā-ra-sj</i> know-CNG-NEG.PRS | yes | yes | yes | yes | yes | no |
| negative verb + V-CNG e.g., <i>e-si-ni yennee</i> NEG.AUX-PRS-3SG go.CNG | no | no | no | no | no | yes |
| PAST | | | | | | |
| əčia(I) V-CNG e.g., <i>əčia bu-də-ni</i> NEG.PST.COP die-CNG-3SG | yes | yes (‘not no yet’) | marginal | yes | no | (‘not yet’) no |
| synthetic form e.g., <i>sa-o-rū-čin</i> know-IMPS-CNG-PST | yes | yes | no | yes | yes | no |
| negative verb + V-CNG e.g., <i>ec-ci-ni yennee</i> NEG.AUX-PST-3SG go.CNG | no | no | no | no | no | yes |

Sofia Oskolskaya & Natalia Stoynova

Outside the present and past paradigms, some other negative forms and constructions are used. Most of these also contain elements that go back to the former negative verb. For instance, in Amur Nanai varieties, there is the negative particle *əm*. It is the negative verb, frozen in a form of its simultaneous con-verb. In modern Amur Nanai, it is used as a component of analytic negative non-indicative forms with the auxiliaries *ta-* ‘do’ and *bi-* ‘be’:

- (7) Naikhin Nanai
mī əm ənə-rə bi-mčə-i
 1SG NEG go-CNG be-SBJV-1SG
 ‘I would not go.’ (elicitation)

4.2 Negative existentials

The most widespread negative existential in Nanaic varieties is *aba* (the majority of Amur varieties, Bikin Nanai, Kur-Urmi). Other negators are attested in Ulch (*kəwə*), Gorin Nanai (*kəukə*), Orok *ana* and Hezhe (*anči*); see Table 10.1. *Kəukə* and *kəwə* are cognates, while *aba*, *ana*, *anči* and *kəukə* (*kəwə*) are not related to each other. All these negators have very similar behavior in NegEx-functions in all the varieties.

Table 10.2: Negative existentials in Nanaic varieties

| | NegEx-marker | use in SN-constructions |
|---|--------------|-------------------------|
| Amur Nanai (except Gorin), Bikin Nanai, Kur-Urmi | <i>aba</i> | yes |
| Gorin Nanai | <i>kəukə</i> | no |
| Ulch | <i>kəwə</i> | yes |
| Orok | <i>ana</i> | no |
| Hezhe | <i>anči</i> | ? ⁵ |

The range of their uses is wider than the existential proper; however, it basically agrees with cross-linguistic generalizations on negative existentials. Table 10.3 illustrates the list of functions of *aba* in Naikhin Nanai. The list is based on the cross-linguistic study on negative existentials by Veselinova (2013). The further description in this section is also based on the Naikhin data. In the other

⁵Zhang (2013) includes examples in which the NegEx-marker is used in the prohibitive construction. However, we do not have enough data for a detailed discussion.

10 Integration of the negative existential into the standard negation system

varieties under discussion, the picture is similar. In Ulch and Gorin Nanai, in which the word *aba* is absent (see Table 10.2), the word *kəwə* (*kəukə*) has the same range of uses and the same structural properties, as *aba*. We do not have enough information about the use of negative existentials in Orok and Hezhe.

Structurally, *aba* is an item of a mixed nature. In many ways it behaves as a morphologically reduced noun. The syntactic structure of the NegEx-construction is similar to the structure of the possessive noun phrase. *Aba* occupies the position after the subject-noun and agrees with it in person and number, as well as the head-noun referring to a possessee; cf.:

- (8) Naikhin Nanai

mədur-səl aba-či \approx *mədur-səl xasar-či*
 dragon-PL NEG.EX-3PL \approx dragon-PL wing-3PL

'Dragons do not exist.' (lit. 'the absence of dragons') \approx 'wings of dragons'
 (elicitation)

In NegEx contexts, *aba* takes person-number markers according to the person-number of the subject of non-existence in most of the varieties. The person-number marker is optional for the 3SG context. See [Oskolskaya & Stoyanova \(2015\)](#) for more detail on *aba* in Amur Nanai dialects.

5 The construction CVB.SIM + NegEx in different Nanaic varieties

In this section, we discuss in detail a past tense standard negation construction, consisting of the negative existential and a converbial form of the lexical verb. This SN-construction with NegEx is the most widespread in Nanaic varieties. For each particular variety (Sections 5.1-5.4), we give information on its status within the past negative paradigm and on its competition with other past negators. We also describe some formal properties of this construction with a special focus on the degree of its formal cohesion: the presence/absence of the person-number inflection on the NegEx, the number marking of the converb, and the presence/absence of the emphatic particle. In §5.5 we compare the data from different Nanaic varieties and formulate a hypothesis on the evolution path of the construction under investigation.

5.1 Naikhin Nanai (the Middle Amur sub-group of dialects)

In the Naikhin dialect of Nanai, the default way to express standard negation with a reference to the past is the past negative particle *əčiə* together with a verbal

Sofia Oskolskaya & Natalia Stoyanova

Table 10.3: Functions of *aba* in Naikhin Nanai: A typological profile
(based on Veselinova 2013: 118–119)

| function name | short description | aba |
|--|--|---|
| neg.ex | Negation of existence | yes |
| neg.loc | Negation of location | yes |
| neg.poss | Negation of possession | yes |
| no | The negative existential is also used as a short answer ‘no’ | yes |
| pro-sentence | The word used has the same propositional content as the preceding proposition (V or not?) | ?yes |
| disappear | The negative existential is related to ‘disappear’ | (yes), <i>abana-</i> ‘to disappear’ |
| – the derivate from <i>aba</i> | | |
| absent, away, gone used with any of these senses | The negative existential is also no | |
| lack | The negative existential also has the sense ‘lack’ | no |
| dead | The negative existential also has the sense ‘dead’ | no |
| destroy | The negative existential also has the sense ‘destroy’ | no |
| nothing | The negative existential also has the sense ‘nothing’ | no |
| none | The negative existential is also a negative indefinite pronoun | no |
| without | Use of the negative existential as a pre-/postposition meaning ‘without’ or as a privative marker | no |
| neg.emphatic | The use of the negative existential produces an emphatic statement | no |
| not_noun | Use of negative existentials as a negator for nominal constituents | no |
| not_be | The negative existential is a general negative copula | ? (negative existentials can function as a negative copula among other items) |
| co-occurs with ‘be’ restricted + classification | The negative existential may be used to negate the copula verb There are different negative existentials depending on the semantic properties of the noun phrase: animate, human, age | no |

10 Integration of the negative existential into the standard negation system

form with the connegative suffix $-(r)A$; see example (4). The standard negation construction with the negative existential *aba*, which is of interest in this section, is also attested (see example 1). In Avrorin's grammar of "Standard Nanai" (based mostly on the Naikhin variety), it is mentioned briefly as one of very marginal past tense negative constructions (1961: 108).

Our consultants allowed its use in special contexts such as an emphatic one: 'he did not do it at all.' However, there are no examples of CVB.SIM + NegEx construction in our texts collected since 2007. In the texts collected by Beljdy & Bulgakova (2012) in 1980–2006, only one occurrence is attested. In the texts collected by Avrorin (1986) in the middle of the 20th century, we found few occurrences (13 uses).

Generally, a reduced form of the converb (*-m*) is used in all the sources. Sometimes it is palatalized as *-m'*. The allomorph *-mi* occasionally occurs as well. The suffix *-m/-m'/-mi* is used irrespective of number, which is not typical for the use of the simultaneous converb in its main function (i.e., as the head of a dependent clause). Thus, one can assume that this converb has been grammaticalized to a special unchangeable form which is specific for this negative construction. However, the plural converb form with *-mAr* (or reduced *-mAr*) is still allowed by some speakers in the case of the plural subject; cf. (9):

- (9) Naikhin Nanai
buə žobo-mar(i)(=da) *aba-(pu)*
 1PL work-CVB.SIM.PL=EMPH NEG.EX-1PL
 'We didn't work.' (elicitation)

In the texts, all 13 examples refer to a singular subject and have the *-m/-mi* converb form. Among them, only one example has a full form with *-mi*.

The particle *=da* is optional. However, most of the examples attested in texts (except for two) contain this particle. Interestingly, modern speakers of Naikhin Nanai, which do not use the construction actively, interpret the particle *=da* during elicitation as a proper emphatic particle rather than as a neutral part of the construction as it is in other Nanaic varieties where this construction is common (e.g., in Sikachi-Aljan dialect):

- (10) Naikhin Nanai
n'oani songo-m=da *aba*
 3SG cry-CVB.SIM.SG=EMPH NEG.EX
 'She didn't cry at all!' (elicitation)

Sofia Oskolskaya & Natalia Stoynova

The negation marker *aba* can agree with the subject in person and number. But this agreement is optional, see example (10), in which the 3SG marker *-ni* is omitted): in the texts, person-number affixes are omitted in all three attested examples with 1st and 2nd person subject and in two examples (out of ten) with 3rd person subject.

In the data elicited from modern speakers, it is quite difficult to determine factors that influence the choice of the CVB.SIM + NegEx construction instead of the *əčiə*-construction, which is a more common negator. In his grammar *Avrorin* (1961: 108) postulates “a slight modal component” in the semantics of the CVB.SIM + NegEx construction. Avrorin’s text data give the impression that the construction in question is (or was) likely to be used in perfect contexts (e.g., in the experiential meaning (11)⁶ or in the case when the result of a negated action is still important for the point under consideration (12)). Note that there is no affirmative perfect form and no other dedicated negative perfect form in Naikhin Nanai.

- (11) Naikhin Nanai

n'oani naj sore-e-wa-ni xāle=dā ičə-m=dā
 3SG person fight-PRS-ACC-3SG when=EMPH see-CVB.SIM.SG=EMPH
aba-ni
 NEG.EX-3SG

‘He has never seen fighting people before (lit. he is absent while seeing fighting people).’ (*Avrorin* 1986: 154, text)

- (12) Naikhin Nanai

əži-ni sənə-m=dā *aba*
 husband-3SG wake.up-CVB.SIM.SG=EMPH NEG.EX

‘Her husband hasn’t woken up (lit. her husband is absent while waking up).’ (*Avrorin* 1986: 209, text)

The verbs, attested in texts in a CVB.SIM + NegEx construction, are states, as in (11), atelic processes, and achievements, as in (12), which is important for further discussion (see §5.5).

Therefore, it seems that initially the *əčiə*-construction and the CVB.SIM + NegEx construction were distributed as the most common negator with a past tense reference (the *əčiə*-construction) and a special perfect negator (the CVB.SIM +

⁶The experiential meaning is indicated by the use of an adverb *xāle=dā* ‘never.’ As Nanai lacks a special affirmative perfect form, the context is the only evidence for the perfect use of the form in question.

10 Integration of the negative existential into the standard negation system

NegEx construction). Nowadays, Nanai speakers gradually shift into Russian. In this sociolinguistic situation, the more marginal CVB.SIM + NegEx construction is used rather scarcely. If CVB.SIM + NegEx is a perfect negator, then the small number of its uses in Avrorin's texts (collected before the language shift) is not surprising either: these are narratives, mostly legends and folktales, in which perfect contexts are very rare.

5.2 Sikachi-Aljan Nanai (the Upper Amur sub-group of dialects)

In the Sikachi-Aljan dialect of Nanai (at least in the data from one speaker who was asked), the construction CVB.SIM + NEGEx is a neutral means of past negation. An alternative construction with *ačia* (cf. Naikhin Nanai) is accepted in elicitation tasks, but it is not used in practice.

Our data on Sikachi-Aljan are very poor and come mostly from elicitation received from one speaker. According to these data, the construction CVB.SIM + NEGEx basically has the same morphosyntactic features as in Naikhin Nanai: 1) the non-palatalized reduced singular converb suffix *-m* is the preferred one, but other variants (plural *-mAr*, palatalized *-m'/-mAr'*, full markers *-mi/-mari*) are also accepted, 2) the emphatic particle *=dA* as well as person-number markers on *aba* can be omitted but usually they are not; cf. the only available text example:

- (13) Sikachi-Aljan Nanai
- | | | | |
|------------|----------------------|--------|---------------------------|
| golžon=də | ewača-mar=da | aba, | sea-go-j=da |
| stove=EMPH | fire-CVB.SIM.PL=EMPH | NEG.EX | eat-CVB.PURP-REFL.SG=EMPH |
| xaj=də | ul'si-mar=da | aba | |
| what=EMPH | boil-CVB.SIM.PL=EMPH | NEG.EX | |
- '{There is nobody at home}, (the sister) has not fired the stove, she has not cooked dinner.' (text, Sikachi-Aljan, our field data)

5.3 Kur-Urmi

Our data for Kur-Urmi come from a short grammatical sketch and seven texts published in Sunik (1958). Although these data are obviously not enough to get a complete picture of the use of *aba*, it is possible to make some observations.

The construction CVB.SIM + NegEx is one of the basic past tense standard negators in Kur-Urmi:

- (14) Kur-Urmi

Sofia Oskolskaya & Natalia Stoynova

| | | |
|---|----------------------|---------------|
| <i>ē-wa=da</i> | <i>wā-m=da</i> | <i>aba-ni</i> |
| what-ACC=EMPH | kill-CVB.SIM.SG=EMPH | NEG.EX-3SG |
| 'He didn't catch anything.' (Sunik 1958 : 134, text) | | |

Alternative means of past negation include a synthetic past tense form (see example 5) and the analytic construction with the negative particle *əčə*, like the construction in example (4).

There are also other past tense negative constructions with *aba* similar to the construction in question but with the present/past indicative form instead of the *mi*-converb. They will be discussed in §6.3.

In the texts ([Sunik 1958](#), ca. 9700 words), 20 uses of SN-markers with a reference to the past were found in total. According to these preliminary data, the construction CVB.SIM + NegEx seems to be the main past tense negative form: it occurs eight times with a diverse range of verbs (*wā-* 'to kill,' *ičə-* 'to see,' *mədələ-* 'to match a bride,' *nōdace-* 'to spread out,' *xarxe-* 'to twist,' *mora-* 'to cry,' *m'ækora-* 'to bow'). The synthetic negative form occurred six times; however, four of them are passives of two particular verbs: *sa-* 'know' and *ičə-* 'see' (cf. example (5) above). The construction with the indicative past tense form + *aba* was attested four times (also one use with the present tense form was found). No text examples of the analytic construction with *əčə* mentioned by O. P. Sunik in the grammatical sketch are attested in texts. See Table 10.4.

Table 10.4: Kur-Urmi: SN-constructions with reference to the past in the texts ([Sunik 1958](#))

| | N of uses |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| CVB.SIM + NegEx | 8 |
| PST + NegEx | 5 |
| synthetic negative form | 6 (restricted to two verbs) |
| əčə-construction | n/a |

The construction in question has the same structure as in Amur Nanai: it consists of the simultaneous converb, the particle *=da* and the negative existential *aba*. The simultaneous converb on the whole may have different suffixes for singular and plural subjects: *-mi* and *-mari*. However, as Sunik points out, the suffix *-mi* often occurs with plural subjects also ([Sunik 1958](#): 95). For the past negative construction, Sunik gives the reduced converb suffix *-m* for all forms irrespective of number (cf. *tāči-m=də aba-su* sit-CVB.SIM.SG=EMPH NEG.EX-2PL 'you didn't sit').

10 Integration of the negative existential into the standard negation system

All the text examples have singular subjects. So, we do not know whether the plural form *-mAr(i)* can be used in this construction in Kur-Urmi.

In seven text examples (out of eight), the reduced form of the converb *-m* and the emphatic particle *=dA* are attested. The only one example with the full suffix form *-mi* does not contain *=dA*:

- (15) Kur-Urmi
mədələ-mi *aba-i*
 ask.in.marriage-CVB.SIM.SG NEG.EX-1SG
 'I didn't ask (her) in marriage.' (*Sunik 1958*: 127, text)

The person-number marking of the negative existential is optional; it is attested in seven out of eight examples. One occurrence refers to the 1SG subject (example 15). All the other occurrences, including the one without a person marking, refer to 3SG subjects.

5.4 Ulch

In Ulch, the negative existential marker is *kəwə*. The standard negation construction under consideration is V-*m(i)/mər(i)(=də)* *kəwə-(PERS)*:

- (16) Ulch
tatoči-xa, tara jkzamjin-ti ηənə-m=də *kəwə-ni*
 study-PST then exam-DIR go-CVB.SIM.SG=EMPH NEG.EX-3SG
 'She studied, but she did not go to pass the exam.' (text, Bulava, our field data)

This construction is used as the most common past tense negator in a wide range of contexts, while other constructions expressing standard negation with reference to the past are quite numerous but much less frequent; cf. Table 10.5.⁷

The emphatic particle *=dA* is optional. In our text sample, it is attested in 55% of uses (47 uses).

The negative existential *kəwə* in SN-construction optionally takes person-number markers. In the grammatical sketch by *Petrova (1936*: 65), the following distribution is outlined: the person-number marker is used for 1st and 2nd person, and it is not used for 3rd person. Data from contemporary texts, presented in Table 10.6,

⁷The data sample used for Ulch consists of oral texts that we collected in 2017 (about 4600 words) and by V. Gusev, S. Toldova, L. Kalinina and N. Sumbatova in 2007–2010 in Ulchsky District (Khabarovsk Krai, Russia, about 11,000 words).

Sofia Oskolskaya & Natalia Stoynova

Table 10.5: Ulch: the inventory of past tense negators (frequency in texts)

| negator | N of uses (%) | semantic nuances |
|--------------------------|---------------|------------------|
| CVB.SIM(=də) <i>kəwə</i> | 86 (78%) | neutral |
| əčəl V-NEG | 10 (9%) | 'not yet' |
| V-PST <i>kəwə</i> | 6 (5%) | emphatic |
| əŋdə V-NEG | 5 (5%) | emphatic |
| other markers | 3 (3%) | |
| total amount | 110 (100%) | |

show the following picture: a) the person-number marker is optional for all persons and numbers, b) it is more probable for 1st (or non-3rd) person contexts,⁸ and c) it is less probable for 3SG contexts.

Table 10.6: Ulch: Person-number markers on *kəwə* in SN-construction

| <i>kəwə</i> -PERS.NUM | <i>kəwə</i> | 2-tailed exact Fisher test |
|-----------------------|-------------|----------------------------|
| 1SG | 16 | 9 |
| 1PL | 6 | 0 |
| 3PL | 7 | 8 |
| 3SG | 14 | 26 |

1st person vs. 3rd person: significant, p=0.0066
 3sg vs. other: significant, p=0.0169

In the majority of uses, the form of the converb is reduced (-*m*, -*mAr*, not -*mi*, -*mArī*), but this is a general feature of Ulch converbs.

The converb tends to be used in the singular form (-*m*) both in singular and plural contexts. However, uses of the plural form (-*mər*) are also attested (in plural contexts). The choice of the plural versus the singular form of the converb in plural contexts correlates with the presence versus absence of the plural number marker on *kəwə*. Table 10.7 shows the text data for uses with reference to the plural subject (the correlation is statistically significant, two-tailed exact Fisher-test, p=0.0139):

Therefore, the plurality of the subject tends to be marked in the construction only once, either on the converb or on the negative existential, but not on both components.

⁸We do not have any 2nd person context in our sample.

10 Integration of the negative existential into the standard negation system

Table 10.7: Ulch: CVB.SIM + NegEx with plural subjects: The singular vs. plural form of the converb

| | CVB.PL (-mAr) | CVB.SG (-m) |
|-----------------------|---------------|-------------|
| <i>kəwə</i> unmarked | 5 | 3 |
| <i>kəwə</i> -PERS.NUM | 1 | 12 |

5.5 CVB.SIM + NegEx past tense negative construction and its grammaticalization across Nanaic varieties

A summary on formal features of CVB.SIM + NegEx in different Nanaic varieties is given in Table 10.8.

We can make the following observations on the basis of these comparative data:

1. The CVB.SIM + NegEx construction has a different status within the SN-system in different varieties. In some of them, it is the neutral preferred one; in others it is rare and tends to be used in specific contexts. Our synchronic data seem to reflect different stages of the diachronic process of the integration of NegEx into the SN-system:

- (17) degree of integration into SN system (low ↔ high)
 (Gorin, Dzhuen, Hezhe) – Naikhin – Kur-Urmi – Sikachi-Aljan, Ulch

2. An overt person-number marking of NegEx is attested in all varieties under consideration, though it is optional. Thus, the NegEx retains its morphosyntactic status, being used as part of the SN-construction, and it does not change into a frozen item. The most regular rules of omission are attested in Ulch, where CVB.SIM + NegEx is a default past tense negator (i.e., where it is the most integrated into the sn-system).⁹
3. The emphatic particle =dA can be estimated to be a full part of the construction for all varieties, except for Ulch. Maybe this is one of the factors that enable its full grammaticalization into a default past tense negator in Ulch. In all the other varieties, an additional step is expected to take place for the complete grammaticalization process, namely, the desemantization of =dA (or otherwise the loss of this particle in the negative construction).

⁹In fact, we also need more accurate comparative data on the possibility of omission of person-number markers in NegEx-proper uses for each variety.

Sofia Oskolskaya & Natalia Stoynova

Table 10.8: CVB.SIM + NegEx past tense negative construction across
Nanai varieties

| | Kur-Urmi | Sikachi-Aljan | Naikhin | Ulch |
|--|--|---|---|---|
| CVB.SIM + NegEx past tense negotors in competition with CVB.SIM + NegEx negative existential use of plural converb suffix -mAr(i) | one of the preferred past tense negotors ččä V-CNG, V-PST NegEx, synthetic form aba not attested, the para- digm is given with singular -mi | preferred past tense negotor (ččä V-CNG) aba allowed, but singular -mi occurs more often | rare, mostly in perfect contexts ččiä V-CNG, synthetic form aba allowed, but singular -mi occurs more often | preferred past tense negotor ččä V-CNG, V-PST NegEx, ččä V-CNG kawə allowed, but singular -mi occurs more often |
| occurs more often use of emphatic particle =dA person-number marking of negative existential | optional, =dA is omitted rarely optional, omitted rarely | optional, =dA is omitted rarely optional, omitted rarely | optional, =dA is omitted rarely optional, omitted rarely | optional, =dA is omitted in half of the occurrences optional, rarely omitted for 1st person subjects, preferably omitted for 3SG subjects |

10 Integration of the negative existential into the standard negation system

4. The converb tends to be used in the frozen singular form in spite of the subject number in all varieties in question. It is evidence of some degree of grammaticalization.¹⁰

We can propose the following considerations on the grammaticalization path of the CVB.SIM + NegEx construction. On one hand, these data can be analyzed in terms of the so-called Croft's cycle. Croft (1991) proposed a cyclical model of the evolution of standard negation markers from negative existentials, based on synchronic cross-linguistic data. This cycle comprises three stages, which are presented in Table 10.9:

Table 10.9: Negative-existential cycle (Croft 1991)

| | existential negative predication | standard negative predication |
|--------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| type A | SN marker | SN marker |
| type B | negative existential | SN marker |
| type C | negative existential | negative existential ¹¹ |

These types are not equally frequent in the languages of the world: according to Veselinova (2016: 147), type C is poorly represented in comparison to types A and B. Moreover, a lot of languages display stages with variation of types A > B, B > C and C > A, and stages with variation can be diachronically stable (see Veselinova 2016: 158).

The Nanaic data display a transition from type B to type C. Similar cases are described by Croft as a “gradual substitution ... in only part of the verbal grammatical system” (1991: 10) (here the past tense form). However, our data do not make it clear whether this construction has really substituted a past standard negation construction or if it functions in a different way and takes a special place in the negation system, which has nothing in common with a potential process of substitution.

A possible hypothesis is that this construction emerges as a counterpart to an affirmative imperfective construction with the verb *bi-* ‘to be’, attested in the majority of Nanaic varieties; cf.:

¹⁰In fact, the use of the singular form of the converb in plural contexts is also sporadically attested outside this construction.

¹¹Type A implies the use of one construction for both existential and negative predictions, while in type C existential negative and standard negative predictions are expressed by different constructions containing the same negative existential.

Sofia Oskolskaya & Natalia Stoynova

- (18) Naikhin Nanai
- | | | | |
|---|--------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| <i>xon'</i> =da | <i>nūči-du-i</i> | <i>xupi-məri</i> | <i>bi-či-pu</i> |
| how=EMPH | little-DAT-REFL.SG | play-CVB.SIM.PL | be-PST-1PL |
| 'We used to play when we were young.' (elicitation) | | | |

The parallel between these two constructions is evident:

- (19) the symmetry of literal readings:
 'to be V-ing' or VS 'to be absent V-ing'

- (20) structural symmetry:
 CVB.SIM *bi-* 'X exists while V-ing'
 CVB.SIM(=dA) *aba* 'X does not exist while V-ing'

However, they can be considered as real counterparts only at some previous stage of grammaticalization, not on a synchronic level. The first difference between the affirmative construction and the negative one is aspectual. The function of the affirmative construction CVB.SIM *bi-* is imperfective: it marks habitual or progressive events (18). The negative construction CVB.SIM(=dA) *aba*, in contrast to the affirmative one, has no special imperfective semantic nuances in any of the Nanaic varieties (see the discussion and examples in Sections 5.1–5.4). It can refer to both perfective and imperfective events.¹²

One more difference is that the negative construction is restricted to a single TAM-form, while the affirmative one can be used in various tense and mood forms (in the past and present tense forms, in the imperative, etc.).

Moreover, the only negative form, CVB.SIM(=dA) *aba*, which refers to the past, is structurally equivalent with the affirmative present tense form, not the past tense one, as expected. In the affirmative construction, TAM is consistently expressed by the corresponding form of the existential verb *bi-* 'be'. The negative existential *aba*- in the negative past tense construction CVB.SIM(=dA) *aba* formally corresponds to the present tense form *bii-*, not to the past tense form *biči-* (5.5). If the negative construction were parallel with the affirmative one, one would expect the present tense form of NegEx (*aba*) not in past contexts, but in present ones (a)–(b), and in past contexts, the past tense form of the NegEx (*aba biči-*) would be expected (c)–(d). The last form is not really attested in the construction at all.

- (21) Naikhin Nanai

¹²Neutralization of aspectual distinctions is common under negation, see Miestamo (2005).

10 Integration of the negative existential into the standard negation system

- a. *xupi-mər=də* *aba-pu*
 play-CVB.SIM.PL=EMPH NEG.EX-1PL
 ‘we did not play’ (expected: *‘we are not playing’)
- b. *xupi-məri* *bi-i-pu*
 play-CVB.SIM.PL be-PRS-1PL
 ‘we are playing / we play regularly’ (elicitation)
- c. **xupi-mər=də* *aba bi-či-pu*
 play-CVB.SIM.PL=EMPH NEG.EX be-PST-1PL
 expected: *‘we were not playing’
- d. *xupi-məri* *bi-či-pu*
 play-CVB.SIM.PL be-PST-1PL
 ‘we were playing / we played regularly’ (elicitation)

The asymmetry between the affirmative construction and the negative one is shown schematically in Table 10.10.

Table 10.10: The negative CVB.SIM + NegEx vs. the affirmative CVB.SIM + ‘be’

| | affirm | neg |
|-----------|----------------|-------------------|
| ‘present’ | CVB.SIM be-PRS | ⁻¹³ |
| ‘past’ | CVB.SIM be-PST | CVB.SIM NegEx-PRS |

So, for the negative construction we have to postulate the reinterpretation from present to past.¹⁴ The possible way of such a semantic shift is via perfect contexts, which are intermediate between present ones and past ones. The most affected verb classes are probably states and atelic processes with the reading ‘entry to state / process’ in the past tense form. While used in the perfect context, the past tense form of such a verb has a meaning which is pragmatically very close to that of the present tense form (‘he has seen’ ≈ ‘he can see now’, ‘he has cried out’ ≈ ‘he is crying now’). The same is true under negation (‘he has not seen’ ≈ ‘he cannot see now’, ‘he has not cried out’ ≈ ‘he is not crying now’). This provides an opportunity for a semantic shift of the CVB.SIM + NegEx construction. Hypothetically, at first, through the implication, the present tense ‘he cannot see, he is not crying now’ undergoes reinterpretation as a past tense form in the perfect

¹³In the present tense, a standard negator is used, see §4.1.

¹⁴Similar developments are observed in Bantu languages; see Nurse (2008: 148).

Sofia Oskolskaya & Natalia Stoynova

context: ‘he has not seen, he has not cried out’; here it is being generalized to all past tense contexts. Another verb class that probably triggers the shift from the present tense to past tense readings is that of achievements. The momentary event cannot have a proper progressive reading in the present tense. While affirmatives are likely to take the prospective reading in this case (‘he wake.up.PRS’ > ‘he is about to wake up’), the perfect reading is a more natural option for negatives (‘he wake.up.NEG.PRS’ > ‘he has not waken up’); cf. the reconstruction of the shift for the verb ‘to see,’ as in (11) above, and for the verb ‘to wake up,’ as in (12).

- (22) ‘he cannot see now’ > ‘he has not seen’ > ‘he did not see’
 #‘he is not waking up’ > ‘he has not waken up’ > ‘he did not wake up’

The predisposition to perfect contexts and the range of verbs attested in Naikhin Nanai, in which the CVB.SIM + NegEx construction has the most restricted usage, supports the idea of such a shift. For more detail on the hypothesis, see Oskolskaya & Stoyanova (2017).

If it is true and the CVB.SIM + NegEx construction emerges as a counterpart to some affirmative construction and subsequently loses connection with it, then it differs from examples of the B>C type, described in Croft (1991). In accordance with the logic of Croft’s cycle, it does not fulfill any gap in the SN-system, because it does not substitute an existing part of the negation system; see the discussion of similar cases attested in some Slavic and Polynesian languages in Veselinova (2014; 2016).

6 Other SN-constructions with negative existentials

6.1 Bikin Nanai

The picture attested in Bikin Nanai differs radically from the picture described in Section 5 for the other Nanaic varieties. The past tense construction CVB.SIM + NegEx is completely absent in this variety. However, the negative existential *aba* is involved in the SN-domain even more than in other varieties.

The data on this nearly extinct dialect are very restricted; the short description below follows the sketch (Sem 1976) and reflects the data of a couple of texts from the same book.

The negative existential *aba* is used in Bikin Nanai as a pleonastic element with all verbal negation forms, except prohibitives, as shown in (23):

10 *Integration of the negative existential into the standard negation system*

- (23) Bikin Nanai

xuə=də ab čik-s'i
 plank.bed=EMPH NEG.EX fit-PRS.NEG

'(He) does not fit in the plank-bed!' (Sem 1976: text 2)

In SN-constructions, *aba* behaves as a frozen form (i.e., as a particle): a) it takes no inflection markers, and b) it induces no morphological/syntactic changes in the initial negation construction. In SN-use, it can have a reduced form *ab*, as in (23) above.

According to Sem (1976), *aba* is optional with synthetic negation forms (such as in (23)), and it is an obligatory part of analytic forms with auxiliaries *bi-* 'be' (24) and *oda-* 'do, become' (25). However, both in synthetic forms and in analytic ones, *aba* is not the only negator, but a pleonastic one; cf. the same affix PRS.NEG in (24) and (25).

- (24) Bikin Nanai

Bi āba ənə-ə-si bi-mcə-i.
 1sg NEG.EX go-CNG-NEG.PRS be-SBJV-1SG

'I would not go.' (Sem 1976: 76)

- (25) Bikin Nanai

āba ənə-ə-s'i oda-žam-b'i
 NEG.EX go-CNG-NEG.PRS do-FUT-1SG

'I won't go.' (Sem 1976: 76)

Possible preconditions for a more intensive expansion of *aba* in Bikin Nanai in comparison to other Nanaic varieties are shown in the following.

1. In Bikin Nanai, *aba* reveals morphological reduction already in NegEx-function. Unlike its equivalents in other varieties, the Bikin Nanai marker completely loses person-number markers, not only in SN-construction but also as a negative existential proper (Sem 1976: 51); cf. (26) and (8):¹⁵

- (26) Bikin Nanai

xədun=də aba
 wind=EMPH NEG.EX

'There is no wind.' (Sem 1976: 51)

¹⁵In Amur Nanai, the person-number marker is optional in this context (see above). In Bikin Nanai, it never occurs.

Sofia Oskolskaya & Natalia Stoynova

2. The second explanation is related to the fact that Bikin Nanai lacks one of the main SN-markers used in Amur varieties (i.e., the particle *əm*; see §4). The Amur Nanai analytic forms with *əm* and the Bikin Nanai analytic forms with *aba* are quite similar, both structurally and paradigmatically, though they are not completely parallel with each other (cf. (24) from Bikin Nanai and (7) from Amur Nanai). Thus, we can say that *aba* in Bikin Nanai in some sense takes the vacant place of the absent *əm* and fulfills a paradigmatic gap in the system.

In Croft's (1991) classification, the Bikin Nanai negation system would be an example of the intermediate type B>C: reinforcement. The additional negative item *aba* in Bikin Nanai "reinforces" the existing standard negative construction. From this point of view, it can also be considered in terms of Jespersen's well-known double negation cycle (Jespersen 1917; van der Auwera 2009; 2010).¹⁶ Synthetic forms (with optional *aba*) and analytic ones (with obligatory *aba*) present two different intermediate stages of the cycle:

- (27) *neg1 – neg1+(neg2) – neg1+neg2 – (neg1)+neg2 – neg2*
 synthetic forms analytic forms

This reinforcing function is probably obtained by the negative existential via its use as a no-answer; see §3 (i.e., the double negative constructions *aba + V.NEG* go back to such structures as 'No, X does not V').

We can hypothesize the following grammaticalization path. At first, *aba* comes to the analytic sub-paradigm of the SN-system—probably supported by the analogy with Amur Nanai *əm*-constructions in the course of the language contact. Then the process of *aba*-integration also affects synthetic SN-forms—due to the analogy with analytic ones. This likely diachronic sequence is exactly reflected in the position within Jespersen's cycle: the older analytic *aba*-forms are already obligatory and the younger synthetic ones are still optional; see also van der Auwera et al. 2021 [this volume] on the intertwining of cyclical processes.

¹⁶ *Aba* in this case is hardly just a negator like English *No* (cf. English sentence "No, I would not go."), because it takes an internal syntactic position; cf. example (24), where *aba* goes after the subject, and example (iii), where *aba* is in the beginning of the sentence:

- (iii) Bikin Nanai
 Āba, fiktə-s ilə d'id-ə-can.
 no child-2sc here come-CNG-NEG.PST
 'No, your child did not come here' (Sem 1976: 52)

10 Integration of the negative existential into the standard negation system

6.2 Ulch

In Ulch, two marginal standard negation constructions with the negative existential (*kəwə*) are used together with the main CVB.SIM + NegEx construction (cf. §5.4). They are not mentioned in the short surveys of Ulch grammar by Petrova (1936) and Sunik (1985). However, they are attested (in relatively few cases) both in texts collected by Sunik (1960–1970s) and in our sample of modern texts. The first construction is used with reference to the present or future, and its structure is “the present tense affirmative form (+ the emphatic =*dA*) + the negative existential *kəwə*. The second one is used with reference to the past, and it is structurally parallel with the first one: “PST + (=*dA*) + *kəwə*; cf. below:

- (28) Ulch

nat mimbə tunč-i-n=də kəwə
3PL 1SG.ACC touch-PRS-3SG=EMPH NEG.EX

‘{There are lots of animals here.} However they will not attack me!’ (text, Bulava, our field data) – PRS + *kəwə*

- (29) Ulch

uj=də pansa-xa-n=də kəwə nambat
who=EMPH ask-PST-3SG=EMPH NEG.EX 3PL.ACC

‘Nobody asked them!’ (text, Bulava, our field data) – PST + *kəwə*

The uses of both constructions illustrated in (28) and (29) seem to be more emphatic than the uses of default present/past tense negators¹⁷ (~ ‘even not V,’ ‘still not V’). However, we do not have enough data to describe their semantics in detail.

The existential *kəwə* is used in the constructions without any person-number marking.

These two constructions (at least on a synchronic level) can be described as symmetric negators in Miestamo’s terms (2005): “affirmative + NegEx.” It is very atypical for standard negation systems in Nanaic languages (as well as other Tungusic languages): most of the forms are asymmetric.

6.3 Kur-Urmi

Kur-Urmi also displays two standard negation constructions with the basic present or past tense form + the negative existential (*aba*):

¹⁷These are CVB.SIM + *kəwə* for the past and the synthetic form V-CNG-PRS.NEG-PERS for the present; see Sections 4 and 5.4.

Sofia Oskolskaya & Natalia Stoynova

- (30) Kur-Urmi

ēma fud’im-nə-ni wa-i-t=da aba
 what beauty-ACC-3SG kill-PRS-3PL=EMPH NEG.EX
 ‘They aren’t killing any girl.’ (*Sunik 1958*: 141, text)

These constructions are not mentioned in the grammatical sketch by *Sunik (1958)*. On the basis of five examples found in the texts, we can assume that the negative existential *aba* cannot take person-number markers, unlike *aba* in the construction cvb.sim + *aba*. Person-number markers may be attached to the main verb (see example (30)).

All available text examples comprise the emphatic particle =*dA*. The past tense construction and the present tense one are structurally symmetric to each other.

6.4 Naikhin Nanai

In the texts (*Avrorin 1986*), we also found one example in which *aba* is used together with an affirmative finite verb, forming a standard negation construction:

- (31) Naikhin Nanai

žōk-či močo-go-j aba
 house-DIR come-REP-PRS NEG.EX
 ‘I won’t come back home.’ (*Avrorin 1986*: 192, text)

This construction is similar to the Ulch and Kur-Urmi constructions described in Sections 6.2 and 6.3.

The impression is that in Naikhin Nanai, this construction (if it exists at all) is much more marginal in comparison to Ulch and Kur-Urmi. It is notable that: a) it is attested only once in our quite large text sample, and b) it is not mentioned in the very detailed grammar by Avrorin.

6.5 Summary: Possible paths of grammaticalization

As was shown in this section, *aba* and *kəwə* can be used in the standard negation system beyond the CVB.SIM + NegEx construction in Kur-Urmi, Bikin and Naikhin dialects and Ulch. The case of Bikin differs from the other ones, and it was discussed in detail in §6.1. Kur-Urmi and Ulch display similar constructions: the affirmative finite verb form + NegEx. One occasional example of such a construction is also attested in Naikhin Nanai. For an overview of these constructions, see Table 10.10; for their geographical distribution, see Map ??.

The diachronic development of such constructions presumably implies a reinterpretation of a rhetorical question-answer or self-correction structure:

10 Integration of the negative existential into the standard negation system

(32) Ulch (= 28)

nat mimba tunč-i-n=də(?) kəwə
3PL 1SG.ACC touch-PRS-3SG=EMPH NEG.EX

lit. ‘Will they attack me? No.’ or: ‘They will (probably) attack me... No.’

Such a path of evolution implies that the negative existential does not enter into the SN-system directly, but through the use in the no-answer or pro-sentence function (the same assumption was proposed for Bikin Nanai above, for Sino-Russian pidgin in Veselinova 2016: 155–156, for Palenquero, a Spanish-based creole, in Croft 1991: 21, who cites Schwegler 1988, and for Swahili varieties in Bernander et al. 2021 [this volume]).

The hypothesis is supported by Ulch data. All Ulch constructions of this type occur in emphatic contexts, and this agrees with the hypothesis on the origin from some rhetorical structure. In Kur-Urmi, these constructions seem to be used in neutral contexts (however, there are too few text examples available to make confident conclusions).

7 Summary and concluding remarks

Table 10.11 presents a brief overview of negative existentials across Nanaic varieties.

Negative existentials attested in Nanaic varieties are lexically different (*aba*, *kəwə*, *kəukə*, *anči*, *ana*) but structurally similar (they all behave syntactically as reduced nouns, such as ‘absence, no-existence’). Some of them reveal similar patterns of evolution into standard negators. The following options are attested:

- (a) negative existentials with only proper uses: Hezhe (see, however, footnote 3 in §1), Orok, Gorin Nanai, Dzhuen Nanai;
- (b) negative existentials which are integrated into one standard negation construction: Naikhin Nanai, Sikachi-Aljan Nanai;
- (c) negative existentials which form several standard negation constructions: Kur-Urmi, Ulch;
- (d) negative existentials, which are used consistently in the whole standard negation system: Bikin Nanai.

See the scale of integration of negative existentials into the SN-system in (7):

Sofia Oskolskaya & Natalia Stoynova

Table 10.11: Negative existentials in standard negation systems across Nanaic varieties

| variety | NegEx | CVB.SIM + NegEx past tense SN-construction | other SN-constructions with NegEx |
|--|--------------|--|---|
| Hezhe | <i>anči</i> | n/a | n/a |
| Orok | <i>ana</i> | n/a | n/a |
| Dzhuuen | <i>aba</i> | n/a | n/a |
| Nanai (Amur) | | | |
| Gorin | <i>kəukə</i> | n/a | n/a |
| Nanai (Amur) | | | |
| Bikin | <i>aba</i> | n/a | attested in all SN-constructions: |
| Nanai | | | <i>(ab) NEG.PST,</i> |
| <i>(ab) NEG.PRS,</i> <i>ab NEG.PRS o-/bi-</i> | | | |
| Naikhin | <i>aba</i> | marginal, perfect contexts | (PRS <i>aba</i>) |
| Nanai (Amur) | | | |
| Sikachi-Aljan | <i>aba</i> | default past tense | n/a |
| Nanai (Amur) | | SN-negator | |
| Kur-Urmi | <i>aba</i> | one of the main past tense SN-negators | PST/PRS <i>aba</i> |
| Ulch | <i>kəwə</i> | default past tense SN-negator | PST/PRS <i>kəwə</i> |

10 Integration of the negative existential into the standard negation system

- (33) Hezhe, Orok, Gorin Nanai, Dzhuuen Nanai – Naikhin Nanai, Sikachi-Aljan Nanai – Kur-Urmi, Ulch–Bikin Nanai

All the patterns b)–d) present the intermediate type B > C of Croft’s cycle of NegEx-evolution (1991): that is, no systems with a total replacement of “old” SN-markers with “new” NegEx-markers (type C) are attested across Nanaic varieties. The pattern d) (Bikin Nanai) placed on the right edge of the scale (7) is not the case either. This system presents the reinforcement subtype of B > C: though NegEx is attested across the whole SN-paradigm, it does not replace the old SN-markers, being used together with them within one and the same SN-construction. This result fits well in cross-linguistic generalizations, as proposed in Veselinova (2016). According to Veselinova’s data, the intermediate type B > C is well attested in the languages of the world: 14.9% in the worldwide sample and 26.7% in the sample of Uralic languages, which are geographically and structurally close to Tungusic. In contrast, type C is twice as rare: 7.9% in the world-wide sample (only attested in Dravidian and Polynesian); see Veselinova (2016: 150).

The SN-constructions with the negative existential attested in Nanaic varieties are of three types:

- (a) The cross-Nanaic type construction CVB.SIM + NegEx. It is attested in four out of eight varieties (Naikhin Nanai, Sikachi-Aljan Nanai, Ulch, and Kur-Urmi). They reveal different degrees of expansion of this construction, from a very marginal one (Naikhin Nanai) up to the default one (Ulch, Sikachi-Aljan Nanai). According to our assumption, the negative existential is involved in this construction directly from its proper uses and overall preserves its initial morphosyntactic properties ('X did not V' is lit. 'the absence of X while doing V'). Originally, it could function as a negative counterpart to the imperfective affirmative construction with the verb 'to be' (lit. 'X is present while doing V').
- (b) The Ulchaic-type construction PRS/PST + NegEx. It is used in only two varieties (in Ulch and in Kur-Urmi, also sporadically attested in Naikhin Nanai). There is no clear evidence of its diachronic development. One of the possible assumptions is that this construction goes back to the rhetorical question-answer or self-correction structure ('Does he V?! – Oh no!'; 'He does V... Oh, no!'). In this case, the negative existential is integrated into the SN-system not directly but via an intermediate stage of the no-answer or the pro-sentence.

Sofia Oskolskaya & Natalia Stoyanova

- (c) The Bikin-type series of constructions, which is specific to Bikin Nanai. In this dialect, the negative existential is used in the whole negative paradigm. In this case, the negative existential completely loses the initial morphosyntactic structure and semantics in the SN-function and becomes a bleached, frozen and phonetically reduced particle.

In (34), we present a scale that shows the degree of expansion of the negative existential into the domain of standard negation for each type of the constructions under consideration.

- (34) (NegEx proper) – CVB.SIM + NegEx – PRS/PST + NegEx – Bikin-type constructions

Patterns in the evolution of NegEx show variation which also reveals a slight correlation with the current geographic distribution of Nanaic varieties (see Map 10.1). The construction CVB.SIM + NegEx is attested in neighboring Kur-Urmi, Sikachi-Aljan and Naikhin varieties, as well as in Ulch. The absence of such a construction in Dzhuuen and Gorin corresponds to the hypotheses on the origin of populations speaking these dialects. The Gorin population is supposed to have come from Siberia along the Bureya and Amgun Rivers, Maltseva (2019: 135). The area of Bolon Lake where the Dzhuuen population lives used to be a contact area of the Siberian and Amur Tungusic peoples; see Maltseva (2019). The origin of the Dzhuuen and Gorin Nanai speakers could influence the grammar structure of their varieties. It might also explain the absence of the construction CVB.SIM + NegEx in Dzhuuen and Gorin.

Thus, we observed the use of negative existentials in the system of standard negation in different Nanaic varieties: Ulch, Amur Nanai dialects, Bikin Nanai and Kur-Urmi. Three different types of integration of negative existentials into standard negation constructions have been discussed: 1) The cross-Nanaic type construction “converb + negative existential,” 2) the Ulchaic-type construction “present/past indicative finite verb + negative existential,” and c) the Bikin-type series of constructions in which the negative existential functions as a pleonastic negative marker.

We proposed possible grammaticalization paths of the constructions in question. All the constructions refer to the same stage (B > C in Croft’s cycle), which is cross-linguistically very widespread. At the same time, these constructions, all attested within a very small genetic group, demonstrate very different ways of reaching this stage. The most interesting case is the first, converbial construction. We argue that this construction in some aspects goes beyond Croft’s cycle.

10 Integration of the negative existential into the standard negation system

According to our hypothesis, it integrates into the SN system “legally,” being a counterpart to an affirmative imperfective construction with the existential verb. Later, it loses the initial connection to the affirmative construction and changes its tense-aspect properties. Other constructions with use of a NegEx marker in a SN system could evolve with the reinterpretation of rhetorical questions and no-answer structures.

Abbreviations

| | | | |
|--------|--|------|-------------------|
| 1,2,3 | 1 st , 2 nd , 3 rd person | NUM | numeral |
| ACC | accusative | PERS | personal |
| CNG | connegative | PL | plural |
| COP | copula | PROH | prohibitive |
| CVB | converb | PRS | present |
| DAT | dative | PST | past |
| DECAUS | decausative | PURP | purposive |
| DIR | directional | QUOT | quotative |
| EMPH | emphatic | REFL | reflexive |
| EX | existential | REP | repetitive |
| FUT | future | SBJV | subjunctive |
| IMP | imperative | SG | singular |
| IMPS | impersonal | SIM | simultaneous |
| NEG.EX | negative existential | SN | standard negation |
| NEG | negative | v | verb |

Language index

| | | | |
|-------|----------------------|---------|-----------|
| Ulch | (iso) ulc | Jurche | (iso) juc |
| Nanai | (iso) gld | Manchu | (iso) mnc |
| Orok | (iso) oaa | Xibe | (iso) sjö |
| Kili | (glottolog) kile1243 | Even | (iso) eve |
| Oroch | (iso) oac | Evenki | (iso) evn |
| Udihe | (iso) ude | Negidal | (iso) neg |
| | | Oroqen | (iso) orh |

Sofia Oskolskaya & Natalia Stoynova

Coordinates for dialects from GoogleMaps

| | | | |
|---------------|-------------------|----------|-------------------|
| Naikhin | 49.2796, 136.4759 | Gorin | 51.2910, 136.5909 |
| Sikachi-Aljan | 48.7515, 135.6474 | Bikin | 46.5398, 135.3583 |
| Dzhuen | 49.8538, 136.2503 | Kur-Urmi | 48.7996, 134.2543 |

Acknowledgements

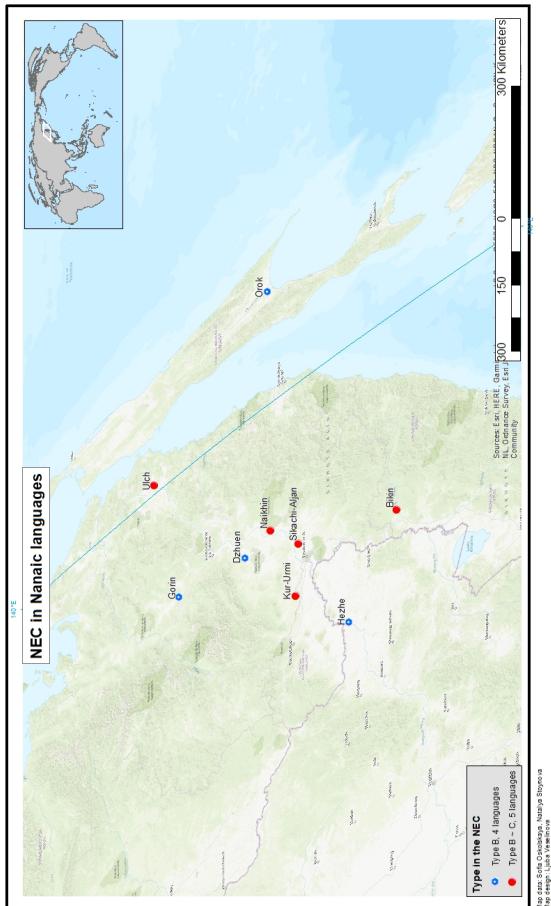
The research was funded by the Russian Foundation for Basic Research as part of research project 16–34–01015-OGN. We are grateful to Ljuba Veselinova and Arja Hamari for their valuable comments to the first versions of the paper. All mistakes are ours.

Appendix

References

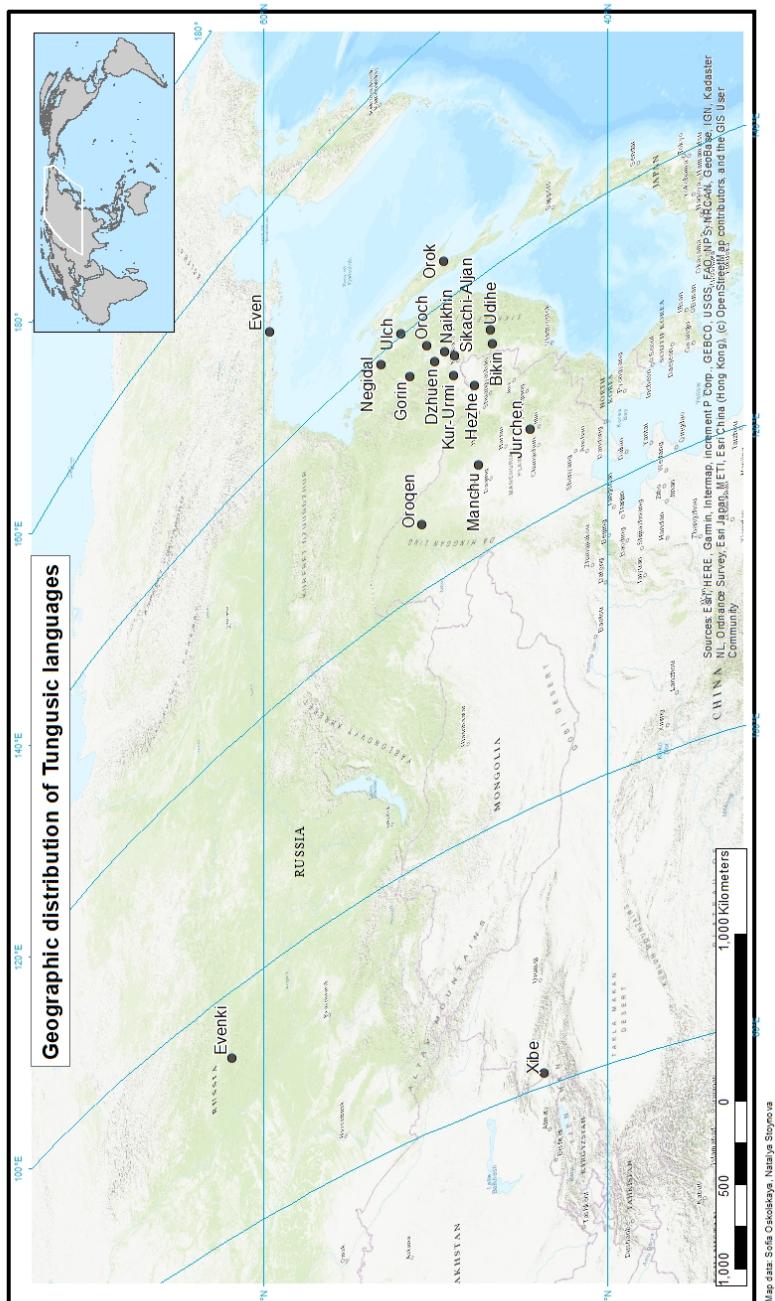
- Avrorin, Valentin A. 1961. *Grammatika nanajskogo jazyka [Nanai grammar]*. Vol. 2. M: Nauka.
- Avrorin, Valentin A. 1986. *Materialy po nanajskomu jazyku I folkloru [Materials on the Nanai language and folklore]*. Leningrad: Nauka.
- Beljdy, Raisa A. & Tatiana D. Bulgakova. 2012. *Nanajskije skazki [Nanai folktales]*. Norderstedt: Verlag der Kulturstiftung Sibirien, SEC Publications.
- Benzing, Johannes. 1955. *Die tungusischen Sprachen: Versuch einer vergleichenden Grammatik*. Mainz: Akademie der Wissenschaften und der Literatur.
- Bernander, Rasmus, Maud Devos & Hannah Gibson. 2021. The negative existential cycle in Bantu. In Ljuba Veselinova & Arja Hamari (eds.), *The Negative Existential Cycle*, 3–56. Berlin: Language Science Press. DOI: [??](#).
- Croft, William. 1991. The evolution of negation. *Journal of Linguistics* 27(1). 1–27.
- Doerfer, Gerhard. 1978. Classification problems of Tungus. In M. Weiers (ed.), *Beiträge zur nordasiatischen Kulturgeschichte*, 1–26. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz.
- Gerasimova, Anna N. 2002. Nanajskij i ul'čskij jazyki v Rossii: Sravnitel'naja xarakteristika sociolingvističeskoy situacii [Nanai and Ulch in Russia: Comparative characteristics of the sociolinguistic situation]. *Jazyki korennyx narodov Sibiri* 12. 246–257.
- Hölzl, Andreas. 2015. A typology of negation in Tungusic. *Studies in Language* 39(1). 118–159.

10 *Integration of the negative existential into the standard negation system*



Map 10.1: Nanaic languages

Sofia Oskolskaya & Natalia Stoyanova



Map 10.2: Geographic location of the Tungusic varieties (compiled by E. Koile)

10 Integration of the negative existential into the standard negation system

- Hölzl, Andreas. 2017. *Kilen: Synchronic and diachronic profile of a mixed language*. A talk given at 24th LIPP Symposium “Language in Contact. Yesterday – Today – Tomorrow,” München, June 21-23, 2017.
- Jespersen, Otto. 1917. *Negation in English and other languages*. København: A. F. Høst.
- Kalinina, Elena J. & Sofia A. Oskolskaya. 2016. Nanajskij jazyk. [Nanai]. In Vida J. Mixal’čenko (ed.), *Jazyk i obščestvo. ènciklopedija [Language and society. An encyclopaedia]*, 293–296. Moscow: Azbukovnik.
- Maltseva, Olga V. 2019. “Taiga” and “River” components in the Nanai socio-tribal organization at Lake Bolon, the Lower Amur. *Archaeology, Ethnology & Anthropology of Eurasia* 47(2). 131–139.
- Miestamo, Matti. 2005. *Standard negation: The negation of declarative verbal main clauses in a typological perspective*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Nurse, Derek. 2008. *Tense and aspect in Bantu*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Oskolskaya, Sofia A. & Natalia M. Stoynova. 2015. Evoljucija pokazatelja ekzistencijalnogo otricanija v nanajskom jazyke [The evolution of negative existential in Nanai]. *Ural-Altaic Studies* 1(24). 59–76.
- Oskolskaya, Sofia A. & Natalia M. Stoynova. 2017. Two scenarios of integration of negative existential into the standard negation system: The case of Nanai “aba”. (Paper presented at International workshop ”The Negative Existential Cycle from a historical-comparative perspective. Stockholm, 4–5 May 2017).
- Petrova, Taisia I. 1936. *Ul'českij dialekt Nanajskogo jazyka [The Ulch dialect of Nanai]*. M: Uchpedgiz.
- Petrova, Taisia I. 1967. *Jazyk orokov (Uiljta) [The language of Oroks (Uilta)]*. Leningrad: Nauka.
- Schwegler, Armin. 1988. Word-order changes in predicate negation strategies in Romance languages. *Diachronica* 5(1–2). 21–58.
- Sem, Lidia I. 1976. *Očerki dialektov nanajskogo jazyka. Bikinskij dialect [Sketches on Nanai dialects. The Bikin dialect]*. Leningrad: Nauka.
- Sumbatova, Nina R. & Valentin J. Gusev. 2016. Ul'českij jazyk [Ulch]. In Vida J. Mixal’čenko (ed.), *Jazyk i obščestvo. Ènciklopedija [Language and society. An Encyclopaedia]*, 513–515. Moscow: Azbukovnik.
- Sunik, Orest P. 1958. *Kur-urmijskij dialekt. Issledovanija i materialy po nanajskomu jazyku [The Kur-Urmi dialect: Explorations and materials on the Nanai language]*. Leningrad: Nauka.
- Sunik, Orest P. 1985. *Ul'českij jazyk. Issledovanija i materialy [The Ulch language: Explorations and materials]*. Leningrad: Nauka.
- Tsumagari, Toshiro. 2009. Grammatical outline of Uilta. *Journal of the Graduate School of Letters* 4. 1–21.

Sofia Oskolskaya & Natalia Stoynova

- van der Auwera, Johan. 2009. The Jespersen cycles. In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change* (Linguistics Today 146), 35–71. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- van der Auwera, Johan. 2010. On the diachrony of negation. In Laurence R. Horn (ed.), *The expression of negation*, 73–109. Berlin: De Gruyter Mouton.
- van der Auwera, Johan, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen. 2021. Intertwining the negative cycles. In Ljuba Veselinova & Arja Hamari (eds.), *The Negative Existential Cycle*, 555–594. Berlin: Language Science Press. DOI: ??.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2013. Negative existentials: A cross-linguistic study. *Italian Journal of Linguistics* 25(1). 107–145.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2014. The negative existential cycle revisited. *Linguistics* 52(6). 1327–1389.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2016. The negative existential cycle viewed through the lens of comparative data. In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change continued* (Linguistics Today 227), 139–187. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Zhang, Paiyu. 2013. *The Kilen language of Manchuria*. University of Hong Kong, Hong Kong. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Zhang, Yanchang, Xi Zhang & Shuyan Dai. 1989. *The Hezhen language*. Changchun: Jilin University Press.

Part III

Other Parts of the World

Chapter 11

Privation & Negation: Semantic change in the negative domains of three Australian (Pama-Nyungan) languages

Joshua Phillips^a

^aYale University

On the basis of comparative data in three Pama-Nyungan subfamilies (Thura-Yura, Yolju Matha and Arandic), this chapter brings comparative data from the Aboriginal languages of Australia to bear on the Negative Existential Cycle (NEC, see Croft 1991, Veselinova this volume a.o.). I propose a formal semantic analysis of the Cycle, where the, a grammatical category described in many Australian languages (e.g. Dixon 2002), is taken to realise the semantics of a negative existential. Diachronically, I show that erstwhile privatives generalise into sentential negators: an instantiation of the NEC.

Keywords: negation, privatives, existentials, semantic change, Australian languages, quantification

1 Introduction

This chapter brings the observations of the “negative existential cycle” (see Croft 1991, Veselinova 2013; 2016, this volume among others) to bear in the context of the Aboriginal languages of Australia. The Australian language ecology is a fertile area for comparative typological work, given its striking linguistic diversity and small, non-sedentary, frequently exogamous populations (Bowern 2010). Some 90% ($N \approx 290$) of the languages spoken on the Australian mainland have been reconstructed to the Pama-Nyungan family (see also O’Grady et al. 1966; Wurm 1972; Bowern & Atkinson 2012), with a common ancestor spoken in Northern Australia almost 6,000 years before present (Bouckaert et al. 2018).



Joshua Phillips. 2021. Privation & Negation: Semantic change in the negative domains of three Australian (Pama-Nyungan) languages. In Ljuba Veselinova & Arja Hamari (eds.), *The Negative Existential Cycle*, 419–457. Berlin: Language Science Press. DOI: ??

Joshua Phillips

Taking the negative domains of three Pama-Nyungan subgroups as an empirical testing ground, this chapter describes the relationship between so-called “standard” (SN) and “existential” negation in an investigation of predictions made by a postulated cyclic change: the Negative Existential Cycle (NEC). Here, explicit markers of existential negation¹ emerge (stage *A* → *B*), encroach into the semantic domain of an erstwhile general negative marker (stage *B* → *C*), and finally displace the latter, becoming a standard negation marker without the formal or functional features of an existential negator (stage *C* → *A*; see Croft 1991; Veselinova 2016 a.o.) The Pama-Nyungan data provided here give further evidence for the cross-linguistic validity of the NEC, although, we will also see evidence of contact-induced change in the negative domains of some languages which are not clearly captured by the Cycle.

This chapter is organised as follows: §2 provides an overview of typological generalisations that can be made of negation marking in Australian languages with particular attention paid to the semantics of the category of the so-called “privative case.” §3 investigates evidence of change, replacement and renewal of negative markers in the Thura-Yura language group of South Australia. §4 compares the negative domains of three Yolju languages, particularly evidence of expansion in the domain of privative marking in a number of varieties. §5 describes standard negation in Upper Arrernte, situating arguments made elsewhere in the literature (particularly Henderson 2013) that, in this language (and related Arandic varieties), synchronic SN strategies are a result of reanalysis of an erstwhile nominal suffix. Ultimately, a primary upshot of this comparative work trades on an insight, only briefly discussed in work on the NEC (e.g. Croft 1991: 17), that this process (at least insofar as it is actualised in these Australian languages) can largely be understood and predicted with reference to existing work on semantic change (sc. diachronic developments in the meaning of a given lexical item) and work that formally seeks to generalise over grammaticalisation pathways and cycles (e.g. Deo 2015a,b; 2018).² This is discussed in §6.

¹For the purposes of this paper, similarly to others in the current volume, “existential negation” is understood as a linguistic strategy for predicated the *absence* of some entity at a certain location (adapting from Criessels’ (2014: 2) typology of existential constructions, consonant with the approach taken in Veselinova 2013: 139. McNally also points out the relevance of “noncanonical sentence types”, distinguished syntactically or lexically, serving to “introduce the presence or existence of some individual(s)” (2016: 210). See also Freeze 1992 for an analysis that explicitly relates existential to LOCATIVE and POSSESSIVE predications.

²See also the distinction drawn between “functional” and “formal” cycles as applied to the Jespersen’s cycle in Ahern & Clark (2017).

11 Semantic change in three Australian languages

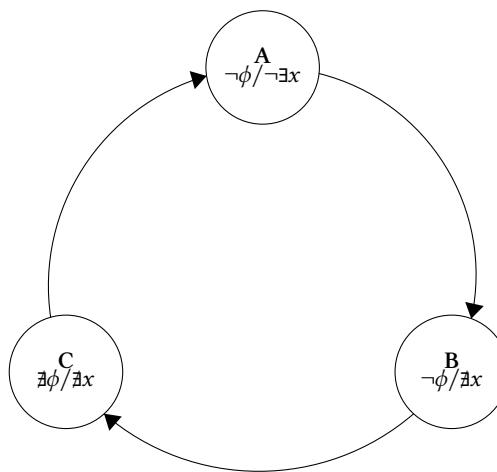


Figure 11.1: The “Negative Existential cycle” – a typology of standard & existential negation according to the analyticity of these markers (Croft 1991, see also Veselinova 2016.) Standard negators \neg are used to negate both verbal ϕ and existential \exists predicates in stage A, a suppletive “negative existential” \exists arises in stage B and this marker comes to mark standard negation in stage C. “Transitional” stages are assumed to occur between each of the labelled stages.

2 Negation & Australia: a typological snapshot

Strategies that natural languages deploy to mark negation have long attracted the attention of philosophers and linguists (see Horn 1989 for a comprehensive investigation of these questions). More recent work (e.g. Miestamo 2005 a.o.) seeks to propose a typology for the behavior of “standard negation” marking strategies across a sample of world languages (including 40 Australian varieties.) *Standard negation* (SN) is understood as those language-specific mechanisms whose function is the inversion of the truth value of a proposition associated with a given (declarative) clause. Drawing a distinction between SN and “special negation” is warranted in view of the empirical fact that many languages have distinct formal mechanisms for the negation of nonverbal (e.g. copular, existential) predication, imperatives and other types of “subclausal” negation (Miestamo 2007; Horn & Wansing 2017; Veselinova 2013; van der Auwera & Lejeune 2005).

Some 300 Australian languages have been reconstructed to a single family, Pama-Nyungan, spoken across Australia except for some regions in the north of the continent. The most recent common ancestor of these languages is estimated to have been spoken roughly five to six thousand years BP (a similar timedepth

Joshua Phillips

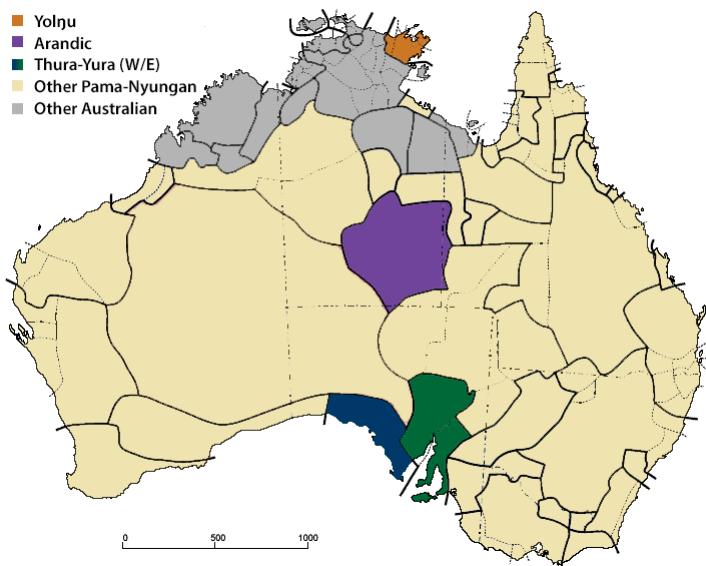


Figure 11.2: Subgrouping of Australian languages. Pama-Nyungan family is tan, with Yolŋu subgroup given in ochre, Arandic in purple and Thura-Yura in blue (Western/Nangga varieties) and green (Eastern varieties.) Map adapted from Dixon (2002: xxviii), colourised by author.

to Indo-European, see Bouckaert et al. 2018: 742). Many of these languages remain underdescribed, and consequently, typological and comparative work detailing the expression of negation across Australian languages is underdeveloped. Exceptions to this include Dixon 2002 and Phillips (forthcoming), surveys that have turned up some generalisations about the formal and functional expression of negation in these languages. Based on the insights of these works, we might divide the “negative semantic space” so to distinguish four macro-categories of negator: (1) negative imperatives/prohibitives, (2) clausal/standard negators and (3) nominal negators, including specialised negative existentials and a commonly occurring “privative” category, and (4) negative interjections. There is a substantial amount of variation in the formal exponence of each of these functions, some varieties distinguishing all four categories (e.g. Bidjara [bym]), some with a single syncretic marker for all four (e.g. Dyirbal [dbl], according to Dixon 2002: 84–table 3.3).

An exceptionful (but otherwise fairly robust) formal tendency across Australian languages is for clausal negation to be marked with a particle pre-verbally and for privative case to be encoded as a nominal suffix. We will explore the implications of this generalisation and its exceptions below. The remainder of this

11 Semantic change in three Australian languages

section constitutes a brief survey the exponence of negation strategies in Australian languages, partially summarising insights from Phillips (forthcoming).

2.1 “Standard” negation

This section briefly provides some generalisations about clausal negation strategies in Australian languages. For a more comprehensive discussion of exceptions and significant interactions between SN and other aspects of the verbal complex in Australian languages, the reader is referred to Phillips (forthcoming).

Dixon (2002: 82) claims that “almost every Australian language marks ‘not’ by a non-inflecting particle which goes before the verb.” He notes that this generalisation extends also to the most synthetic non-Pama-Nyungan languages spoken in the north of the continent. Negation in the Arandic subgroup of Pama-Nyungan, which provides a major exception to this formal generalisation, and is particularly relevant for current purposes, is discussed in more detail in §5. The data from Ngiyambaa ([wyb] Pama-Nyungan: Wiradhuric) below clearly demonstrate this generalisation with the preverbal SN particle *wanya:y*, which has scope over the entire sentence in (1a) and just the second predicate in (1b).

- (1) Preverbal standard negation in Ngiyambaa (Donaldson 1980: 239)
 - a. *Wanya:y yingala:-dhi=dju-na girimiyi-la.*
NEG same-CIRC=1.NOM=3.ABS wake.PST-THEN
‘It wasn’t because of that I woke her then.’
 - b. *Yingala:-dhi=dju-na wanya:y girimiyi-la.*
same-CIRC=1.NOM=3.ABS NEG wake.PST-THEN
‘Because of that I didn’t wake her then.’

2.2 The “privative case” and existential predication

The privative case (PRIV) is a very robustly attested category in Australian languages.³ Broadly speaking, it predicates the absence of some property denoted by the noun that it associates with, although the precise semantic domain associated with this category varies considerably across languages (cf. arguments for the predicative status of negative existential markers in Veselinova 2013: 139). In Nyangumarta ([nna] Pama-Nyungan: Marrngu), for example, *-majirri* ‘priv’ can be used to predicate absence (i.e. as a negative existential, see (2a)). Muruwari

³Morphological cases with similar semantics are referred to as *abessive* and/or *caritive* in other literatures (e.g. for Uralic in Hamari 2011; 2015; Tamm 2015). “Privative” is ubiquitous in Australian language description and will be used here throughout.

Joshua Phillips

([zmu] Pama-Nyungan: SE) similarly makes use of a form *-kil~til~-tjil*, shown in (2b-c).⁴ PRIV case markers are frequently antonymous to another case suffix, frequently occurring in Australian languages, usually glossed as the comitative (COMIT), proprietive (PROP) or ‘having’ case. Uses of this marker are given in (3). The apparent synonymy of (2b) and (3b) show the antonymous relation between comitative and privative predication.

(2) Negative existential function of PRIV

a. Nyangumarta

- mungka-majirri karru-majirri-pa paru-majirri jungka jakun*
tree-PRIV stream-PRIV-CONJ spinifex-PRIV ground only
'There were no tree, creeks, or spinifex; only the ground (in that country.)' (Sharp 2004: 140)

b. Muruwari

- palanj mathan-kil*
nothing stick-PRIV
'(There are no) sticks [...nothing]' (Oates 1988: 77)

c. Muruwari

- ngapa-kil-pu-n*
water-PRIV-3sg-NMLZR
'He has no water.' (lit. 'he-waterless') (Oates 1988: 78)

(3) Existential function of COMIT

a. Muruwari

- thuu kuya-yita wartu*
much fish-COMIT hole.ABS
'The river has a lot of fish in it.' (=There's a lot of fish in the river) (Oates 1988: 73)

b. Muruwari

- wala mathan-pira*
NEG limb-COMIT
'(There are) no sticks.' (Oates 1988: 74)

Australian languages have a number of strategies to express existential and non-existence (absence) predictions. (2a) shows the Nyangumarta privative marker functioning as an existential negator: it predicates the absence of trees, streams

⁴Oates (1988: 77) describes this suffix as the ABESSIVE: “the opposite of the comitative in that it signifies ‘lacking’ or ‘being without’ some person or thing.” She glosses it throughout as ‘lacking’.

11 *Semantic change in three Australian languages*

and spinifex (a culturally important tussock grass) of a particular location. Additionally, *contra* a prediction made by Croft (1991: 19), there are many Australian languages for which it is the case that “an existential sentence [can] consist solely of the noun phrase whose existence is predicated.” An example of bare NP existential predication is also given in (2a), where the existence of *jungka* ‘[bare] ground’ is predicated.⁵ These facts immediately present a challenge to the (formal) negative existential cycle as formulated: if existence predicates are frequently verbless, there is no way to formally distinguish between stages A and C on the basis of synchronic data. I know of no Australian language with a *reserved* existential verb; like copular clauses, existence predictions appear to frequently make use of a stance or motion verb (most frequently one that primarily means ‘sit’ or ‘lie’ and often polysemous with ‘stay, live’), or are otherwise verbless.⁶

Relevantly for current purposes, the semantics of the privative suffix can be instructively captured by adapting existing analyses of existential propositions (e.g. Francez 2007; McNally 2011). These analyses generally characterise existential predication as containing obligatorily that thing whose existence is being predicated (the PIVOT) and some restriction (perhaps locative) on its existence (the CODA; see Francez 2007). Adapting Francez’s analysis would mean treating privative noun phrases as generalised quantifiers of nonexistence. This is consonant with Croft’s (1991: 18) observation about the privileged status of existential predication (as a logical quantifier as opposed to the one-place predicates of other stative verbs), which forms the basis for a functionalist explanation of the “constant renewal” of negative existentials at stage B of the NEC (see also Veselinova 2016: 173). A truth-conditional analysis of one privative-marked noun from (2a) is provided in (4) below; each step is spelled out in prose.

- (4) a. *mungka-majirri*
tree-PRIV

b. $\text{no} = \lambda P_{(e,t)} \lambda Q_{(e,t)}. P \cap Q = \emptyset$ (e.g. Barwise & Cooper 1981: 169)

The function **no** takes two properties P, Q and returns a “true” if there is nothing in the domain which is in the intersection of those two sets.

⁵Such constructions have also been reported elsewhere in the literature, e.g. for Māori [mao] where ““existence” statements have no copula or existence verbs” (Bauer 1993: 78, cited by Chung & Ladusaw 2004 a.o). Similarly, sign languages tend to allow bare-NP existential predication (see de Weert 2016: 26ff on Flemish and Finnish sign languages.). Even Marra [mec] (a language cited in Croft 1991: 14) appears to permit bare NP existentials, if Heath’s (1981: 364) translations are to be trusted.

⁶Notable, however, is the fact that these stance/motion verbs often lend particular semantic nuances to the copular and existential predictions in which they participate (see e.g. Wilkinson 1991: 610–611).

Joshua Phillips

- c. $\llbracket \text{mungka-majirri} \rrbracket = \lambda P_{\langle e,t \rangle} [\text{no}(\lambda x[\text{Tree}(x)], P)]$
 The privative-marked NP *mungka-majirri* ‘tree-PRIV’ is a generalised quantifier: it states that there exists nothing in the domain in the intersection of the set of trees ($\lambda x.\text{Tree}(x)$) and some other property that is provided by the context of utterance (sc. Francez’s *contextual domain* d_α (2011: 1838)).
- d. $\llbracket \text{mungka-majirri} \rrbracket^c = \text{no}(\lambda x[\text{Tree}(x)], \lambda y[\text{loc}(st_c, y)])$
 In the absence of an explicit/linguistically-encoded “coda” (i.e. locus/restrictor) for the privative (i.e. a “subject” NP of whom the privative-property is being predicated), the context of utterance provides an additional restriction as the second argument to **no**. This restriction may take the form of a function that returns a set of things related to some spatiotemporal parameters indicated by context [viz. the contextually salient place and time being predicated about, some particular “country” in the past according to Sharp’s translation].
 $d_{st_c} = \lambda y_e.R(\text{'that country'}, y)$

If we treat privative marking on NPs as a type of negative existential predicate, a consequence of the NEC is the prediction that these markers ought to eventually generalise, displacing an erstwhile standard negator (i.e. PRIV markers will participate in the NEC.) Phonological identity between privatives and SN is indeed well-attested in Australia (e.g. Bardi [bcj] (Bowern 2012) and Warrongo [wrg] (Tsunoda 2011).) In these languages, negative existential/privative predication may be syntactically distinguished from standard clausal negation by placing the general NEG particle post-nominally instead of preverbally (see 5, 6a–b below.) A possible example of a postnominal existential negator acquiring the function of clause-initial standard negator is found in Wirangu ([wgu] Pama-Nyungan: Thura-Yura). This case is described in §3 below along with a discussion of its potential import for theories of the NEC.

- (5) Negation in Warrongo ([wgu] Pama-Nyungan: Maric)
- a. Sentential negation with initial *nyawa* ‘NEG’
 $nyawa\ ngaya\ balga-lgo\ banjo-lgo.$
 NEG 1sg.ERG hit-PURP ask-PURP
 ‘I will not hit [him]. [I] will ask [him].’ (Tsunoda 2011: 363)
 - b. Existential negation with postnominal *nyawa* ‘NEG’
 $nyawa,\ yarro\ walwa\ yamba.\ yori\ nyawa,\ gajarra\ nyawa$
 NEG this bad country kangaroo NEG possum NEG

11 Semantic change in three Australian languages

worriba *nyawa, barrbira nyawa, jagay* *nyawa*
 sugarbag.bee NEG echinda NEG sand.goanna NEG

‘No, this country is no good. There are no kangaroos, no possums, no bees, no echidnas, no sand goannas [in my country].’
 (Tsunoda 2011: 661)

3 Thura-Yura: change & renewal in the negative domain

Thura-Yura is a Pama-Nyungan language family, with nine documented varieties historically centered on and around the South Australian coast. The Western varieties of these languages abut the Wati (Western Desert) family. Figure 11.3 describes the familial relations of the described Thura-Yura languages whereas Table 11.1 compares their negative lexica (including a possible reconstruction.) Examples of Wirangu negative predication are given in (6) below.⁷

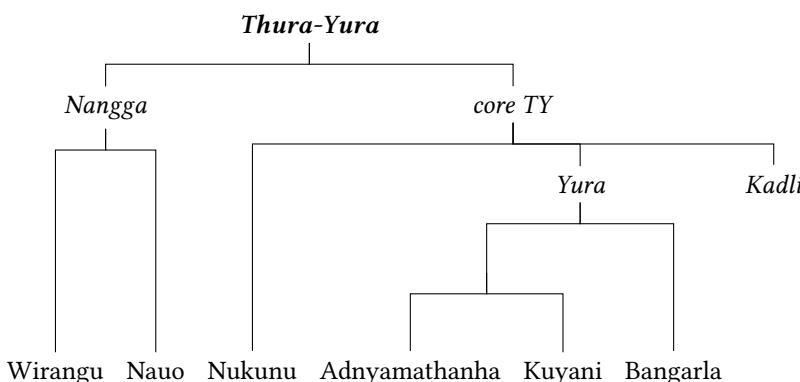


Figure 11.3: A selection of the internal structure of the Thura-Yura family (spoken in South Australia) following Simpson & Hercus 2004: 183.

Table 11.1 shows (colour-coded) four of the negative-associated lexical items in the Thura-Yura family, each of which will be discussed here. It allows for a probable reconstruction of a standard negator (or nominal negator) **maka* and/or SN **guda* in the ancestral language. Of Wirangu [wgu], Hercus (1999: 57) claims that privative morpheme *-yudu* has entered the language as a borrowing from the Kokata language, a Western Desert dialect spoken in neighbouring territories

⁷Note that (Hercus 1999: 57) describes a number of other markers with negative import in her Thura-Yura grammar (including two other lesser-used privatives, which she regards as older. Cf. Veselinova’s (2016: 173) “constant renewal of the negative existentials.”

Joshua Phillips

Table 11.1: Reported partitions in the negative semantic space (data adapted from Hercus 1999; 1992; Schürmann 1844; Hercus & Simpson 1996; Black 1917.) Colouring reflects hypothesised cognacy of lexical items across Thura-Yura. Dashed arrows represent borrowings from neighbouring languages, full arrows semantic (functional) change.

| | (WATI) | NEG.EX/PRIV | SN | 'cannot'/'not yet' |
|-------------------------------------|--------|----------------|-------------|--------------------|
| Wirangu [wgu] | | -yudu -maga | -maga | guda |
| Nauo [nwo] | | ? | makka | |
| Bangarla [bjb] | | -maga | makka | kutta |
| Adnyamathanha [adt] Kuyani [gvy] | | pari- | (g)uda | - |
| Nukunu [nnv] | | -wakanha | | |
| proto-TY | | | *maka/*guda | |
| <i>DIYARI? ([dif] Karnic)_-</i> | | | | |

to the North ([ktd] Pama-Nyungan: Wati). -yudu has largely displaced -maga as the form of the privative. The recruitment of a distinctive privative form (from lexical resources of a neighbouring, unrelated language) may well be taken as evidence of pressure for the privileged marking of negative existentials that is taken to motivate the beginning of the NEC (sc. stage transition A → B).

(6) Examples of Wirangu negation strategies (from Hercus 1999)

a. **maga** SN

Warlba marnaardu-nга maga wina-rn!

wind big-LOC NEG go-PRES

'(I am) not going out in a gale!' (142)

b. **-maga** privative

Nganha gidya-maga.

1sg child-PRIV

'I haven't got any children.' (57)

c. **-yudu** privative ("most commonly used")

Nganha barnda-yudu.

1sg money-PRIV

'I haven't got any money.' (57)

11 *Semantic change in three Australian languages*d. ***guda* SN (modalised)**

Ngadhu guda wangga-rn.

1sg.ERG NEG.IRR speak-PRES

'I can't talk (about this; it's too embarrassing.)'

(143)

Similarly, Adnyamathanha [adt] and Kuyani [gvy] have recruited *pari-* as a negative existential/predicator of absence (Hercus 1999: 141). This may also be a borrowing from the Karnic lanugages that abut Eastern Thura-Yura (e.g. Diyari [dif] *pani* 'PRIV', (Austin 2011, C. Bowern p.c.).⁸ *maga* retains its function as the primary standard negator particle in Wirangu (and Bangarla [bjb]), whereas *guda* (the standard negator in Adnyamathanha and Kuyani), is restricted to a subset of negative meanings 'cannot' and 'not yet' (note that, particularly in northern Australia, the form of negative marking is often conditioned by speaker mood/reality status, see Miestamo 2005: 225, Phillips forthcoming.)

A potential cognate in the southern Thura-Yura (Kadli) language, Kaurna [zku] (not represented in Figure 11.3 for a lack of available data) *wakka-* is found (possibly fossilised) in lexical items *wakkarendi* 'err, stray, be lost', *wakkariapendi*, 'forget, not think of, leave behind', *wakkariburka* 'ignorant person, simpleton' (Schürmann & Teichelmann 1840: II–52).⁹ All three of these words appear to be analysable; *wakka-* contributing some notion of emptiness, characteristic of an erstwhile nominal negator/privative category.¹⁰

There are insufficient available data to adjudicate between competing hypotheses that (a) **guda* has been largely displaced by erstwhile nominal negator *maga* in Wirangu or (b) *guda* has replaced **maka* in Adnyamathanha/Kuyani. Nevertheless, an analysis informed by the insights of the NEC favours and supports (a).

Under such an analysis, Wirangu – the Thura-Yura outlier – provides a particularly clear example of a language, the negator forms of which are transitioning

⁸This remains to be demonstrated, but *pari-* may otherwise be cognate with Wirangu *bal-* 'die', elsewhere described as a lexical source for negators (Veselinova 2013, van Gelderen 2021 [this volume]). An argument potentially in favour of this is found in a possibility of an example of lexical renewal likely born of euphemism; Adnyamantha *inta-* 'die' appears to be cognate with Wirangu *inda-* 'spill'.

⁹Note attested stems in *pia-rendi* 'scattered, stray', *pia-riappendi* 'scatter, disperse', *burka* 'adult, man' (Schürmann & Teichelmann 1840: II–4,38).

¹⁰Data for Kaurna (and other extinct varieties) is scarce, effectively limited to the lexicon published by nineteenth-century missionaries, Schürmann & Teichelmann (1840). A possible reflex of **guda* is found in items like *kudmunna* 'ignorant, not knowing' (II–12). Other negative lexical items reported here are *yakko* which appears to function as a SN marker and *-tinna* which is given as the most frequent form of 'without' (i.e. the privative.)

Joshua Phillips

through the NEC. The erstwhile negative existential *-maga* has entered the domain of standard, clausal negation, adopting the morphosyntactic properties of a preverbal negative (stage *B* → *C*), and triggering the recruitment of a new privative marker from the lexical resources of a neighbouring language *-yudu* which is now in competition with the old marker (stage *A* → *B*). The ostensible simultaneity of these changes also provides further evidence for competition between functional and formal pressures for generalisation and recruitment (sc. Veselinova’s “constant renewal of the negative existential” (2016: 173)).

Additionally, if the directionality of change described here is indeed on the right track, Wirangu can be shown to resist classification into any unique NEC “stage”, transitional or “cardinal” (in which case the NEC as described in previous work does not represent a complete linguistic typology for negative existential marking strategies.)

4 The Yolŋu negative domain

The Yolŋu languages, a Pama-Nyungan grouping of at least six dialect clusters (roughly coterminous with sociocultural groupings) are spoken through Eastern Arnhem Land (in the far north of the continent) by some 12,000 Aboriginal inhabitants (see Wilkinson 1991: 18ff, Bowern 2009). Yolŋu are strictly exogamous – each cultural group (clan) being associated with a distinct dialect, a situation that has led to a significant amount of stable linguistic variation (and undetermined internal classification, see Schebeck 2001, Bowern & Atkinson 2012: 836).

This section compares the negation systems of three distinct Yolŋu varieties: Djambarrpuyŋu [djr], Ritharrŋu [rit] and Wangurri [dhg] in view of making inferences about change in marking strategies over time. A pattern not dissimilar to that observed in Thura-Yura is shown. The key findings are tabulated in Table 11.2 below. The final subsection (§4.4) comprises a discussion of privative case semantics with particular reference to Yolŋu.

4.1 Djambarrpuyŋu

Djambarrpuyŋu [djr] appears to provide an example of Croft’s *B* ~ *C* transitional-stage language. Wilkinson (1991: 356) describes the coexistence of two markers: *yaka* ‘NEG’ and *bäyŋu* ‘NEG.QUANT’ (negative quantifier): claiming that “both occur as propositional negators,” demonstrated in the data in (7) below, from Wilkinson (1991).

11 Semantic change in three Australian languages

Table 11.2: Partitioning of the negative space in some Yolŋu languages. ‘PROH’ negates imperatives. ‘PRIV’ is taken to denote a suffix of the type described above. ‘NEG.EX’ (Wilkinson’s NEG.QUANT) are independent words that appear to quantify over the NP which they precede.

| | PROH | SN | NEG.EX | PRIV |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|--|----------------------------|----------------|
| Djambarrpuŋyu [djr] | <i>yaka</i> | <i>yaka bäyŋu</i> | <i>bäyŋu</i> | <i>-miriw</i> |
| Ritharrŋu [rit] | <i>yaka</i> | -'may' | <i>yakanu</i> | <i>-miriw</i> |
| Wangurri [dhg] | <i>yaka ŋangawul bayanu</i> | ? <i>yaka ŋangawul ?bayanu</i> | <i>ŋangawul bayanu</i> | <i>-nharra</i> |

- (7) a. *yaka* as (full) clausal negator

yaka *ŋayi dhu ga* *ŋutha-n* *ŋandi-wal* *bäpa-wal*

NEG 3sg FUT IPFV.I grow.I mother-OBL father-OBL

‘They don’t grow up with (their) mother and father.’

(Wilkinson 1991: 691)

- b. *yaka* as negator in copular construction

yaka *dhuwali* *ŋatha*, *dhuwali* *ŋula* *nhä-n* *dhuwali* *botjin*

NEG MED food MED INDEF what-SEQ that poison

‘That isn’t food, that’s something else, that’s poisonous.’

(Wilkinson 1991: 560)

- c. *yaka* as negator in possessive construction

warrakan limurrŋu *yaka* *dhuwal*

animal 1pl.INCL.DAT NEG PROX

‘This meat isn’t ours/for us.’ (author’s fieldwork; AW20190505)

- d. *bäyŋu* as clausal negator

bäyŋu *ŋarra gäthur* *ŋorra-nha* *manyamak-ku-nha* *munhawu*

NEG.QUANT 1sg today lie-IV good-TR-IV night

‘I didn’t sleep well last night.’(Wilkinson 1991: 357)

The distributional difference between these two markers is twofold. According to Wilkinson, *yaka* is ungrammatical in quantificational contexts and that *bäyŋu* does not appear in imperative (i.e. prohibitive) contexts. It seems, then, likely, that in Djambarrpuŋyu, *bäyŋu*, an erstwhile negative existential has begun to

Joshua Phillips

encroach further into the negation space, entering into competition with *yaka*. *bäyŋu*, with reflexes in other Yolŋu languages, derives from (fairly productive) verbal root *bäy-* ‘leave’.¹¹ Examples of negative existential uses of *bäyŋu* are given in (8) and prohibitive uses of *yaka* in (9).

- (8) Djambarrpuŋu negative quantification
 - a. (**yaka*)***bäyŋu*** *ŋarra-ku gi ŋorri ŋula dhiyal wäŋa-ŋur-nydja*
 *NEG/NEG.QUANT 1sg-DAT IV LIE:IV INDEF PROX.LOC place-LOC-FOC
 ‘I don’t have any here.’ (lit. ‘at this place lie (are) none of mine’)
 (Wilkinson 1991: 691)
 - b. *bili* (#*yaka*)***bäyŋu*** *limurruŋ dhuwal bawarran*
 because #NEG/NEG.QUANT 1d.INCL.DAT PROX animal
 Intended reading: ‘Because there’s no meat for us.’
 (Wilkinson 1991: 560, infelicity judgment AW20190505, cf. 7c)
- (9) Djambarrpuŋu imperative negation (prohibitive, see also §4.4)
*yaka(/*bäyŋu) waj!*
 NEG(/*NEG.QUANT) talk.II
 ‘Don’t talk!’ (Wilkinson 1991: 360)

There are multiple arguments for a reconstruction of **yaka* to proto-Yolŋu. First, the fact that it is reported as a negative particle in all Yolŋu languages (Schebeck 2001: 31).

Secondly, possible lexical cognates are reported in likely sisters to Yolŋu in the Western Pama-Nyungan subfamily (a monophyletic branch reconstructed in Bowern 2012: 838). Sharp (2004: 226) and O’Grady (1963: 67) both report a Nyangumarta ([nna] W. Pama-Nyungan: Marrngu) verb -*yaka-* meaning ‘leave, quit’. McKelson (1974: 35) additionally gives *yaga* as an alternative (potentially emphatic) negative particle in Mangala ([MEM] Marrngu). It is very possible that these Marrngu verbs are cognate with the Yolŋu negator, despite Marrngu and Yolŋu having been distantly separated for centuries. Dixon (2002: 85) lists other potential cognates to negative *yaka* from a number of other dispersed Pama-Nyungan languages.

Thirdly, the generalisations of the NEC as formulated by Croft (1991) and Veselinova (2016) a.o. provide a principled typological basis through which an erstwhile negative existential construction arises in a language and begins to encroach upon the functional domain of a standard (clausal) negator (transitional

¹¹Note also that *-Thi* ‘INCH’ derives absence-associated change-of-state readings: *bäy-thi* ‘be left over/behind’; *bäyŋu-thi* ‘be/have none, pass away, die’ (Wilkinson 1991: 378).

11 Semantic change in three Australian languages

stage *B* ~ *C*). If this diachronic analysis is on track it may have implications for our understanding of the characteristics of stage *B* ~ *C*: negative imperatives (prohibitives) being one of the last “holdouts” for an erstwhile SN marker that is threatened by competition from a negative existential or quantifier. Dixon’s typology (2002: 84) indeed entails an implicational relationship: if there is formal syncretism between privative and prohibitive marking, then these will be syncretic with the SN marker as well. Gumbaynggir ([kgs] Pama-Nyungan: South-east; Eades 1979) and Nyawaygi ([nyt] Pama-Nyungan: Dyirbalic; Dixon 1983) are given as examples of a languages for which the prohibitive patterns distinctly from all other negative functions (a datum which is a potential indicator of a language in NEC stage *B* ~ *C*). The Ritharrju data presented in §4.2 below raise a potential counterexample.

4.2 Ritharrju

The facts outlined in Heath’s (1980) description of Ritharrju [rit] diverge in a number of significant ways from the Djambarrpuynu situation described above. Further, they appear to pose a potential problem for the generality/predictive power of the NEC as formulated.¹² While a form *bayju* has been retained in the language (glossed as ‘nothing’), there is an additional suffixal form -’may’ used as the “basic” (Heath 1980: 101) general negator alongside *yaka* (the latter form is the standard means of forming prohibitives in Ritharrju, shown in (11)).

- (10) Standard and copular negative suffixation of -?may? in Ritharrju
 - a. *wäni-na-’may’ napu*
go-PST-NEG 1pl.EXCL
'We didn't go.'
 - b. *munanya-’may’ rra*
white.fellow-NEG 1sg
'I'm not white.' (Heath 1980: 101)
- (11) Prohibitive formation with *yaka* in Ritharrju
yaka nhe bangurl’-yu-ru
 NEG 2sg return-them-FUT
 'Don't come back!' (Heath 1980: 76)

Existential negation, however, is introduced by the complex form *yaka-ŋu* (shown in (12) below). This form is clearly related to the Djambarrpuynu SN

¹²Data provided from Heath (1980) has been standardised to an Australianist (Yolju) orthography from his original IPA transcription.

Joshua Phillips

particle described above, with archaic Yolŋu suffix *-ŋu* (described as an “adjective ⇒ substantive” derivation by Schebeck 2001: 34, see also Wilkinson 1991: 174ff, Heath 1980: 24.) Heath glosses *yakaju* as a particle meaning ‘absent’ (1980: 102).¹³ Recalling the possible lexical sources of pan-Yolŋu form (Table 11.2 supra) **yaka* discussed in the foregoing section, this is an appropriate translation.

(12) Existential negation with *yakaju* in Ritharrŋu

- a. *yakaju ɳay dhäŋgu*
NEG.EX 3sg meat
‘There’s no meat.’ (Heath 1980: 102)
- b. *yakaju ɳay (yan'ɳara)*
NEG.EX 3sg (here)
‘He isn’t here.’ (Heath 1980: 102)

While it may be tempting to relate *bäyŋu*, as found in other Yolŋu languages, to a possibly lenited form ‘-may’, as Heath (1980: 102) points out, it is much more likely to be a borrowing from the geographically neighbouring language Ngandi [nid], an unrelated, non-Pama-Nyungan language also spoken in south-eastern Arnhem for which -?may is a fusional negative-cum-present tense suffix. Given the structure of the negative domain in Ritharrŋu (i.e. the use of ‘-may’ in (zero-)copular clauses (10a) and its apparent unavailability to quantification-al/existential predication) provides support for the borrowing account, which is considerably more parsimonious than an account by which the syntax, semantics, phonology and perhaps morphology of *bäyŋu* were radically reorganised into a SN suffix. If this is indeed the case, it provides counterevidence to the hypothesised unidirectionality of the NEC (e.g. Veselinova 2016: 146) given that an innovative *standard negator* has been recruited into Ritharrŋu’s negative space, whereas the so-called “special negators” have retained an older form (Figure 11.4).

Whatever the providence of ‘-may’, this is the marker of standard clausal negation whereas existential negation appears to be obligatorily marked by *yakaju*. Incidentally, on the basis of the limited data presented here, Ritharrŋu, a language closely related to Djambarrpuŋyu, might synchronically be described as

¹³Note that Heath also points out that stance predicates with copular/existential readings can also receive negative marking as in (12') below.

(12b') *nhien-a-'may' ɳay yan'-ɳarra*
sit.PRES-NEG 3sg here
‘He isn’t (sitting) there.’ (Heath 1980: 102)

11 Semantic change in three Australian languages

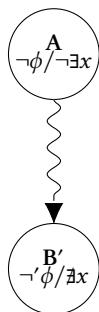


Figure 11.4: Not predicted by the NEC, Ritharrju appears to have recruited an innovative clausal negator \neg' into negative space. This is likely to be an effect of extended contact with an unrelated non-PN language (Ngandi [nid]).

a stage *B* language *per* the negative existential typology described in this volume, although such a description plasters over the likely diachronic trajectory of Ritharrju negative marking.

4.3 Wangurri

Finally, negation in **Wangurri** [dhg], a northern Yolŋu dialect, appears to make use of an additional particle with the semantics of a general negator, *ŋangawul* in addition to *yaka* and *bayanu*. McLellan (1992: 195) claims that *ŋangawul* and *bayanu* can be used in all negative contexts and that *yaka* cannot be used as a “negative quantifier.” These data are exemplified in (13) below, all adapted from McLellan (1992).

- (13) a. Negative existential use of *ŋangawul*
gulitj-ma ŋangawul-nha ŋanapilingura ŋapa-ŋa gayŋa nyena
 true-DP NEG-DP 1pl.EXCL:LOC back-LOC IPFV.IV sit.IV
 ‘No true ones at our backs are living (i.e. descendants.)’ (246)
- b. Clausal negation use of *ŋangawul*
ga ŋangawul ŋaya barpuru nhawun yunhuŋ yolŋu-wuŋ ŋäku
 and NEG 1sg recently like that.ABL person-ABL hear.IV
dhäwu
 story
 ‘I didn’t recently hear the story about that person.’ (136)
- c. Negative imperative with *yaka*

Joshua Phillips

Yaka dhayu nyaipi'-murru garruwa
NEG this white.person-PERL speak.IMP
 ‘Don’t talk through white (language)!’ (195)

- d. Negative imperative with *ŋangawul/bayaŋu*

ŋangawul/bayaŋu nyaipi'-murru-m garrun,
NEG/NEG white.person-PERL-DM speak.NEU¹⁴
bayaŋu/ŋangawul!
NEG/NEG

‘Don’t talk through white (language), no!’ (195)

- e. Potential ambiguity between standard and negative existential readings with *ŋangawul*

ŋangawul-nha nya rakaran nhangul
NEG-DM 3sg tell.PFV 3sg.ALL

- (i) ‘I told him nothing.’ (≈ ‘There is no thing such that I told him that thing.’)
 (ii) ‘I didn’t tell him’ (≈ ‘It’s not the case that I told him [that thing.]’) (196)

The Wangurri data show competition between three separate markers and provide a series of interesting insights and questions in view of predictions the NEC would make. The domain of *bayaŋu* (cognate with *bäyŋu* as described above) has further expanded into the prohibitive domain, behaviour that, taken in isolation, may suggest that this marker has moved further along the cycle drawing Wangurri further towards a C-type system (characterised by the availability of ambiguous readings shown in 13e).

Nangawul appears to be an innovation, it has an unclear etymology and stands in no obvious relation to a potential cognate in any related or borrowing from any neighbouring language. Given its wholesale entry into the negative domain – that is, this lexical item’s ability to negate verbal clauses, existential clauses and imperatives, it is unlikely that the grammaticalisation of this item taken in isolation can be marshalled as evidence of the NEC. Further research on Northern Yolŋu has the potential to shed light on the change in available readings associated with *ŋangawul*, but until that point, our best hypothesis may be one of lexical replacement, where *ŋangawul* analogistically replicates the domain of

¹⁴It is unclear whether the difference in verb inflection between *yaka-* and *ŋangawul-/bayaŋu-* prohibitive is categorical. If it is, this may be construed as additional evidence that the use of *ŋangawul/bayaŋu* for prohibitive formation is a more recent innovation (and consequently does not trigger the relatively infrequent imperative inflection.)

11 Semantic change in three Australian languages

the (likely older) negator *bayanu*, whose emergence in Yolŋu was described in §4.1.

The manifestation of the NEC in Yolŋu is further nuanced below, when we consider additional competition from privative morphology in these languages.

4.4 The privative in Yolŋu

All Yolŋu languages make regular use of a *privative* suffix ‘PRIV’. For most languages, the phonological form of this marker is *-miriw* (see Table 11.2). The only exceptions to this are found in Dhanu-Djanju ([dhg], including Wangurri), for which the form is *-nharra* (Schebeck 2001: 34) and Yan-nharju [jay] *-nharraŋu* (C. Bowern, p.c.). This latter form may be cognate with the Warluwarra [wrb] and Bularnu [yil] (Pama-Nyungan: Warluwaric) privative *-nharra(yu)*. Warluwaric is given by Bowern & Atkinson (2012) as the most likely closest sister node to Yolŋu in Western Pama-Nyungan. If this is the case, then ***nha-* can be reconstructed as a wh-particle to these subgroups’ most recent common ancestor (cf. Breen n.d.: 576). It is used as the basic root wh-words and indefinites (e.g. *nhä*[dhg]; *nhangulari*[yil] ‘what, something’) in Yolŋu and Warluwaric. *yarraba* shows up in Bularnu in some contexts as a word for ‘nothing’ (Breen n.d.: 626, 690) – the univerbation of ***nha* and ***(y)arra* into some type of negative indefinite is therefore a possible source for the *-nhärra* privative.¹⁵

The etymology for *-miriw* is unclear (although it possibly stands in some relation to *midiku*(?) ‘bad’[rit], ‘rubbish (incl. a sororal kinship relation)’_{[DJR]/[GUF]} and appearing in words like *midik-uma* ‘make.badly’ *midik-irri* ‘go.badly’, *noy-midiku’yu* ‘feel-sad’ etc.) In view of the facts above, we have reason to reconstruct a proto-Yolŋu privative **-nharra*, replaced by innovative *-miriw* in the bulk of contemporary (viz. non-Northern) varieties.

In §2.2 above, we saw a potential semantics for canonical uses of privative marking. This semantics, which understands the privative as a quantifier that predicates nonexistence of the NP in its scope, restricted to a domain that is provided elsewhere in the discourse, suitably captures nonexistence, absence, and non-possession readings of privative NPs. This semantics for the “canonical privative”, however, papers over the significant degree of semantic variation in markers described as “privatives” in the Australianist descriptive tradition. Djambarrpuynu *-miriw* appears felicitous in the broad range of contexts shown in (14) below.

¹⁵Further support for this etymology comes from Wakaya ([wga] Warluwaric) *-nhawerru* ‘PRIV’ (Brammall 1991: 36). *-werru* is the Wakaya proprietary marker (<Proto-Warluwaric **-warra* ‘PROP’); consequently, *-nha-* seems to have acquired some type of negative semantics.

Joshua Phillips

- (14) A broad range of meanings available to Djambarrpuyŋu [djr] *-miriw* 'PRIV'
- miriw* predicating non-possession
*weyin muka ŋarra dhuwal nhinana-ny yothu-**miriw***
 long okay 1sg PROX sit.III-FOC child-**PRIV**
 'for a long time I lived here without children' (*Wilkinson 1991*: 445)
 - Privative use of *-miriw*; synonymous with *bäyŋu* 'NEG.EX'
*yolŋu-ny gan nhinan warraŋul bala'-**miriw**, bäyŋu*
 people-PROM IPFV.IV sit.IV outside house-**PRIV** NEG.**QUANT**
bala'
 house
 'People used to live outside without houses, there were no houses.'
 (*Wilkinson 1991*: 443)
 - Negative existential use of *-miriw*
*bili yätjkurr ŋunha wäŋa warralŋur-nydja gapu-**miriw***
 because bad DIST land NAME-FOC water-**PRIV**
 '...because the place is bad. (It's) without water.' (= there's no water)
 (*Wilkinson 1991*: 443)
 - miriw* predicating the absence of a de-verbal property
*majutji ŋorra-nha-**miriw** ŋunhayi wäŋa*
 eye lie-IV-**PRIV** DIST.LOC place
 'It's impossible to sleep at that place.' (*Wilkinson 1991*: 448)
 - Privation of a de-verbal relation
*luka-nha-**miriw** ŋayi nunhi dharpa-ny*
 eat-IV-**PRIV** 3sg TEXD tree-PROM
 'That tree is not edible.' (*Wilkinson 1991*: 446)
 - Privation of an eventive de-verbal relation
*djamarrkuli-y' marrtji lakaram badatju-na-**miriw***
 children-ERG go.I speak.I make.mistake-IV-**PRIV**
 'The children were speaking without making mistakes.' (*Wilkinson 1991*: 449)
 - miriw* in a subordinate clause: privation of a de-verbal property/disposition
*...ga yolŋu-wal-nha ŋuri-kal-nha wäŋa nhä-nha-**miriw**-wal-nha*
 and person-OBL-SEQ ANAPH-OBL-SEQ place see-IV-**PRIV**-OBL-SEQ
miltjiri-wal-a
 blind-OBL-SEQ
 '...and to the person who cannot see the place, the blind.' (*Wilkinson*

11 Semantic change in three Australian languages

1991: 448)

- h. Negative predication (locative) **Context:** A response to the question ‘is it inside?’

*yaka, djinawa'-miriw*NEG, inside-**PRIV**

‘No, it isn’t inside.’ (Wilkinson 1991: 445)

- i. Prohibitive use

*luka-nha-miriw-nha dhuwali-yi-ny dhuljuju-n ηatha*eat-IV-**PRIV-SEQ** there-ANAPH-PROM assigned-SEQ food

‘Don’t eat it, that food is for someone else.’ (Wilkinson 1991: 446)

The data in (14) are extremely relevant for current purposes. It shows how the semantic domain of the **PRIV**, a lexical item with the semantics of canonical negative existential, has expanded (such uses of **PRIV** are reportedly ungrammatical in other varieties, including Yan-nhangu [jay], Claire Bowern, p.c.). Whereas these markers are generally thought of as quantifying over a domain of individuals (a-c) above, the remaining examples (d-i) all show *-miriw* ranging over a domain of *eventualities*. Morphologically, *-miriw* is suffixed to a verbal root in the fourth inflection *-Ø~na~nya~nha* ‘IV’, ostensibly the strategy for deriving eventive nominals from verbal predicates (sc. nominalisation, see Lowe 1996: 103). In (g), for example, *-miriw* seems to actually scope over an eventive nominal whose semantics derive from an entire VP: ‘the person such that that person engages in no event of ‘seeing places’.¹⁶ Similarly, (h) appears to mark the absence of a co-location relation between two objects. This verbless sentence gets its negative force from the privative suffix. Our common conceptions of privative marking certainly do not predict this function.¹⁷

¹⁶ Provisionally adapting the formalism from page 423 such that *-miriw* is able to range over D_e , the domain of eventualities (here I use $\xi, \eta \in \mathcal{E}$ as variables of eventualities), the meaning of *yolju wäja nhänha-miriw* person place see.IV-**PRIV** ‘person who doesn’t see places’ might be translated as follows:

$$[\![yolju wäja nhänha-miriw]\!] = \mathbf{no}(\lambda \xi_e.\mathbf{see}(\mathbf{place})(\xi), \lambda \eta_e.\mathbf{char}(\delta_{\text{person}}, \eta))$$

That is, the intersection between the set of *eventualities of seeing places* and the contextual domain of eventualities $\mathbf{char}(\delta_{\text{person}}, \eta)$ – perhaps those that might be predicated of/taken to be characteristic of the disposition of a (blind) person (δ_{person}) – is empty.

Note that the apparent introduction of a modal component in (14d–i) can be easily accommodated by Francez’s (2007) formalism as the contextual retrieval of a relation ($\mathcal{R} = \mathbf{char}$) that retrieves information about the disposition of the pivot.

¹⁷ Note however, that Tamm (n.d.; 2015) reports the parallel use of abessive suffixes and a preverbal negator in Estonian. She suggests a difference between the two strategies that is anchored

Joshua Phillips

Also notable is the use of privative constructions in forming prohibitives, shown in (14i). Wilkinson (1991: 446) notes that here, privative-marked eventive NPs express “a complete negative predication...stronger, less polite than regular imperatives.” This strategy indeed seems analogous to English utterances of the type “no smoking” and “no eating”, which indeed do carry imperative force and are constructed in a manner that appears to quantify over “smoking” and “eating” events in the utterance context.

This subsection has marshalled data about an evident expansion in the semantic domain of the privative marker in Djambarrpuyu; from predicated *absence* of “things” to predicated the *nonactualisation* of *events* in a given context. This consequently points to the apparent generalisation of a lexical item out of the semantic space of traditional “negative existentials” into functions that are normally associated with standard (or other special types of) negation. The following section on Arrernte negation will investigate an ostensibly similar phenomenon further along the cycle; one that has rendered these languages outliers with respect to typological generalisations about negation strategies in Australian languages. This section should shed further light on the “bleaching/generalisation” pathways of special negators.

5 Arandic: the nominal status of negated verbals

Along with a number of other Arandic varieties, Mparntwe (Alice Springs) Arrernte ([aer] Pama-Nyungan: Arandic) is spoken in the Central Australian desert. It is one of several of Australian languages that marks negation with a verbal suffix, fused into the verbal complex and diverging from the broad characterisation of Australian languages deploying preverbal SN marking made at the beginning of this chapter. According to Wilkins (1989: 71), this negation suffix -(t)yekenhe~tyange¹⁸ “replace[s] tense [marking]” in this language; that is, the main verb of a negated clause carries none of the tense/mood/aspect information that it does in a positive Arrernte clause. An inflection-bearing auxiliary from the “existential-positional” class (predicates with stance or motion semantics which are grammaticalised in copular and existential constructions), is then optionally introduced

in some shade of modal meaning (i.e. “a presupposition about a plan, a standard or an expectation considering a normal state of affairs”). See §6 (note 26) for more.

¹⁸The form of this suffix is given as -ety(e)=akenhe~-etayng in Henderson 2013. I have not changed the orthography in example sentences cited here, rather opting to replicate the orthographic forms and glossing decisions of each author. The sole exception to this is standardisation to Leipzig glossing conventions and Henderson’s VN_(1/2) to NEG.

11 *Semantic change in three Australian languages*

to encode this information as shown in (15a). (15b) gives an example of temporal information (viz. pastness) being (presumably) supplied by the nonlinguistic context.

- (15) Upper Arrernte ([aer] Pama-Nyungan: Arandic)

- a. *Anwerne-k-artweye mape-le pmere kurn-ile-tyekenhe ne-ke.*
1pl-DAT-custodian PL-ERG country bad-CAUS-NEG be-PST
'Our ancestors didn't (ever) hurt the country.' (Wilkins 1989: 235)
- b. *Kweye, the ng-enhe aw-etye=akenhe.*
oops 1sg.ERG 2sg.ACC hear-NEG
'Sorry, I didn't hear you.' (Henderson 2013: 412)

Wilkins (1989: 235, fn 17) suggests that the negative suffix is historically derivable from "the nominalising suffix -(n)tye", to which a possibly erstwhile negative form *kenhe*,¹⁹ with reflexes in other Arandic varieties, attaches (see also Yallop 1977: 275). Support for this semi-complete univerbation is found in the fact that a number of formatives can be inserted at the boundary between the negative inflections two postulated components (see Wilkins 1989: 378ff), shown in (16). Seizing on this argumentation, Henderson (2013: 411–426) goes to some lengths to demonstrate the nominal status of verbal roots inflected with *-etye-akenhe*; some of these arguments are rehearsed here in view of better understanding the diachrony of Arrernte negation, although the reader is referred to his work for more evidence in favour of this analysis.

- (16) The status of negative inflection in Eastern/Central varieties of Arrernte [aer]

- a. En(do)cliticisation of adverbial particles in the verbal negator
Re=atherre untyem-eke~untyeme an-err-eme
3d.NOM facing.away-DAT=RED sit-d-PRES
angk-err-etye«arlke»akenhe.
speak-RECP-NEG«also»
'The two of them are sitting down and not talking to each other.'
(Henderson 2013: 417)

¹⁹A particle *kenhe* is also reported by Wilkins (1989: 372) which is glossed as BUT and indeed appears to have the syntax of a coordinator. While the semantics may contain some element of negative/subtractive meaning, it is unclear what relation this particle bears to the verbal negator (including questions about possible directionality of semantic change or whether this is merely an example of homonymy.) In related Arandic language Kaytetye [gbb], this form is translated as 'might' (Kaytetye people 2012: 424).

Joshua Phillips

- b. Apparent ergative suffixation in cases of secondary predication (obligatory *iff* the main predicate is transitive)

Re il-eke arlkw-etye=akenhe-ele.
 3sg.ERG cook-PST eat-NEG-ERG
 ‘S/he cooked without eating.’ ([Henderson 2013](#): 418)
- c. Negated verb form taking nominal negator

Angk-etye=akenhe-kwenye; irnterre anthurre angk-eke.
 speak-NEG-NomNEG intensely INTENS speak-PST
 ‘(She) wasn’t *not* talking; she was talking a lot.’ ([Henderson 2013](#): 416)

The sentences in (16) suggest some convincing arguments for the emergence of a standard negation strategy out of an erstwhile special nominal negator. (a) provides formal evidence of the complex status of *-tyekenhe*: a set of adverbial particles (including *=arlke* ‘also’, *=nthurre* ‘really’, *=ante* ‘only’ etc.) appear to be able to intervene between the “nominalising formative” *-etye* and the “negating formative” *=akenhe*. It should be noted that cross-linguistically, this appears to be a set of (adverbial) operators that associate with focus (e.g. [Jackendoff 1972](#); [Rooth 1985](#)). According to [Wilkins \(1989: 381\)](#), the locus of insertion of these particles indeed has scopal implications, compare *(ayenge) arlkwe-tyekenhe=ante* ‘(I) only didn’t eat’ and *(ayenge) arlkwe-ty<u>ante>kenhe* ‘(I) didn’t only eat’.²⁰

Ex. (16b) shows the negated verb receiving ergative marking when participating in secondary predication alongside a transitive verb. In this sense, the negated verb again behaves morphosyntactically identically to nominals (and unlike positive verb forms).

Interestingly, (16c) shows a verb form with negative marking occurring with the privative²¹ *-kwenye* in what is likely an example of metalinguistic negation (see e.g. [Horn & Wansing 2017: 19](#) for a discussion of this phenomenon). Further work remains to be done on this topic, but this provides striking evidence for both the (semi-)nominal status of the negated verb and the renewal of a special nominal negator in Arrernte. Additionally, [Veselinova \(2016: 171\)](#) points out that nominalisation of lexical verbs is a component of the most common cross-linguistic ‘pathway whereby negative existentials break into the domain of SN (i.e. *B → C*, see also §6 for further discussion).

²⁰A complete analysis of this phenomenon is outside the scope of this paper, although assuming a standard semantics for *only* (e.g. [Horn 1969](#)), the correct truth conditions can be derived by understanding *=ante* as taking wider scope over the negated predicate in the first case (“not eating” is the only thing I did), whereas it scopes narrowly in the second case (“eating” is the only thing I didn’t do).

²¹*-kwenye* is glossed by both [Henderson 2013](#); [Wilkins 1989](#) as a “Nominal Negator” ‘NNEG’, although at least [Wilkins 1989: 158](#) treats this term as synonymous with ‘PRIV’.

11 Semantic change in three Australian languages

Data for related Arandic languages is sparse, it is therefore not possible at this time to reliably reconstruct the trajectory of negative marking in the Eastern and Central dialects reported on here. Nevertheless, Katetye, the sole Arandic outlier (see Hale 1962; Koch 2004), is also reported to make use of a suffix *-wanenye* to negate “actions” and to mark privative relations (Kaytetye 2012: 826). That verbal suffixation, a standard negation strategy otherwise atypical of Australian languages (I am aware of no Pama-Nyungan outside of Arandic that makes use of a similar strategy),²² is found at both ends of this subgroup, suggests a scenario in which privative markers came to displace other strategies of standard negation relatively early in its history. If this analysis is on track, then we can infer that the Arandic languages have undergone a full cycle of the NEC, and that, in view of the renewal of the privative form (*-kwenye*) described in various Upper Arrernte varieties above (a likely characteristic of stage *B*), we can further postulate the recommencement of the cycle.²³ This diachronic trajectory is summarised in Figure 11.5. Consequently, it appears that the generalisation of a nominal negator in Arandic seems to have effected a wholesale restructuring

²²Note however that (some) Wati varieties (including Pitjantjatjara [pj]) express standard negation by way of a nominalised verbal predicate (note that the nominaliser *-nytja* is also phonologically very similar to the Arandic nominaliser described above) and postverbal negator *wiya*, pointing to a similar trajectory (Sasha Wilmoth, *pers. comm.*) This negator *wiya* is also used in privative constructions.

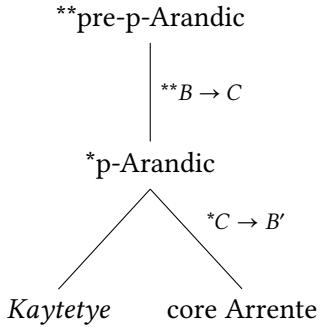
- (i) a. *wiya* + nominalisation for sentential negation in Yangunytjatjara [kdd]
ngayulu kati-nytja wiya, Anti-lu kati-ngu
 1sg.ERG take-NMLZR NEG Andy-ERG take-PRES
 ‘I didn’t take it. Andy took it.’ (Goddard 1983: 244)
- b. *wiya* + noun for negative existential in Yangunytjatjara
mitjini wiya-nga panya, iriti...
 medicine NEG-LOC ANAPH long ago
 ‘(That was) in the old days, you know, when there was no medicine.’
 (Goddard 1983: 39)

²³Note that a possible implication of this is the instantiation of a direct *C → B'* stage where a language with homophonous standard and existential negation directly recruits a new existential negator into the system. Given the tendency in Australian languages towards existential predication by bare NP (contra Croft 1991) or stance verb, discussed in §2.2 supra, this may be expected.

An alternative analysis, informed by the NEC, may involve treating the “nominalising element” in Arandic negative suffixes as a (further) grammaticalised existential. Note for example the plausible phonological similarity between “existential-positional” verbs *-ne-* ‘sit’, *-nte-* ‘lie’ and the Kaytetye and Mpwarnte Arrernte nominalising elements *-nge*, *-tye*. Far from determined, such an analysis bears further research: a full diachronic account of Arandic verbal derivation is out of the scope of the current work.

Joshua Phillips

of standard negation strategies and, consequently, the negative domain in these languages.²⁴



- i) By hypothesis, preproto-Arandic conforms with ‘standard average Australian’ preverbal SN strategies with a distinct post-nominal privative (***kenhe*) **B**
- ii) In proto-Arandic (most recent ancestor to documented varieties), nominalisation plus privative suffix is repurposed as a productive negative strategy **C**
 - This strategy has likely been retained in Kaytetye [gbb]
- iii) A new nominal negator (*-kwenye*) emerges in core Arrernte varieties **B'**
 - Currently, there is insufficient evidence for an intermediating **A'** stage in Arrernte.

Figure 11.5: Summary of reconstructed changes in the Arandic negative domain in terms of NEC stages (*A*, *B*, *C*)

6 Discussion

The data presented above demonstrate a robust, grammaticalised sensitivity to a distinction between “standard” clausal negation and the negative existential predication (i.e. predictions of absence) in three distinct subgroups of Pama-Nyungan. We have also seen evidence of an ostensible diachronic tendency to flatten this distinction, as the conditions of use for negative existentials appear to relax, at which point they encroach into the domain of an erstwhile verbal negator (e.g. *Yolju*). By hypothesis, it is these two processes that underpin the NEC as described. This section attempts to situate the NEC – as it appears to

²⁴I make no particular claim about the form of these markers, although by hypothesis, the form of the privative in some common preproto-Arandic ancestor is a reflex of present day Arandic *=kenhe*.

11 Semantic change in three Australian languages

have been instantiated in these Australian languages – in the context of broader work on the cyclical nature of meaning change.

6.1 Semantic change and grammaticalisation pathways

The notion of “grammaticalisation” – that process whereby grammatical categories arise in languages by way of the recruitment and reanalysis of lexical content – is one that has attracted a good deal of functional typological work (e.g. Bybee et al. 1994; Bybee & Dahl 1989; Traugott 1980; Dahl 1985; Heine & Kuteva 2003 a.o.). Of particular importance is the finding that, cross-linguistically, these grammatical categories evolve along diachronic pathways that appear to be constrained and unidirectional. This observation is the explicandum at the heart of contemporary work on meaning change and one that is of significant importance for our understanding of semantics and language change. In recent years, bringing formal tools for describing the “interpretation of functional expressions” to bear on these questions has been fruitful (see Deo 2015a for a detailed overview of this enterprise).

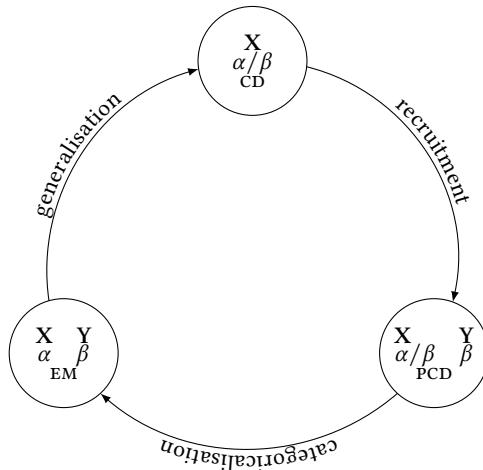


Figure 11.6: The structural properties of cyclical meaning change as formulated by Deo (2015b) a.o.) A marker (form) X is ambiguous between two readings α, β at the context-dependent stage (CD), a marker Y is recruited to encode β at the partially context-dependent stage (PCD), whereupon it categoricalises, such that X can no longer be used to encode β : now the distinction between the two meanings is explicitly marked (EM). Eventually, the domain of use for Y generalises at which point Y is now ambiguous between α, β (CD').

Deo (2015b) provides a framework to understand the general structure of – and motivating forces behind – a cyclical change. This is shown in Figure 11.6 (as

Joshua Phillips

will be discussed below, note that this diagram is not isomorphoric to the one in NEC diagrammatisation in Figure 11.1).

Insofar as the NEC is concerned, Deo's "context dependent" (CD) stage corresponds to Croft's "relatively unstable" stage C (i.e. that state of a language where negative existential markers are identical to the standard negator). Croft (1991: 19) claims that the motivation for this stage is the idea that "[for] predication in general, existential predication is analogous to a verbal predication." His suggestion that "the analogy is strengthened if there is formal parallelism" underpins formal pressure to innovate an existential predicate, returning the system to stage A. Additionally, as has been shown elsewhere (e.g. 13e above), stage C negative predictions can be ambiguous between the two readings; another likely source of functional pressure for the recruitment of new strategies.

The discussions of Yolju and Arandic above have provided some evidence for the trajectory of negative existential/privative marking as they generalise, encroaching into the functional domain of an erstwhile standard negator (transitions from *A/B* into stage *C*). For example, as shown, while privative marking initially appears to be restricted to absence predictions of individuals, they seem to gradually become available to eventive nominals. Strong evidence of this was provided from Arrernte, where all negative predicates have the syntax of non-derived nominal predictions, at the expense of inflection of tense, mood and aspect categories. Additionally, on the basis of comparative evidence, Djambar-rpuynu *bäyyu* shows signs of having been a negative quantifier that now has acquired the general semantics of a verbal negator (8–9) supra. The following subsection further motivates this generalisation phenomenon.

6.2 Generalisation: & the notion of "indexicality" & expanding domains

The expansion of the domain of the negative existential construction predicted by the NEC (*B* → *C*) can be understood as a diachronic *generalisation* in its semantics. Generalisation refers to that stage in a grammaticalisation cycle where "[a functional expression] is diachronically reanalyzed as instantiating a broader, more general functional expression at a later stage...involv[ing] a systematic expansion in the domain of application [for that expression]" (Deo 2015a: 187). The treatment of the privative given above, for example, has shown how, in multiple language groups, the domain of this marker has expanded. Broadly speaking, whereas at an initial state, PRIV seems to quantify over a domain of properties of individuals, it comes to quantify over properties of eventualities and, in some instances, further generalises to quantify over propositions (sc. properties

11 *Semantic change in three Australian languages*

of worlds; the domain of modals, and possibly, negative operators, see Horn & Wansing 2017: 34ff.) Importantly, even if restrictions on the type of the sets is relaxed, the *relation* (*no*) that is taken to hold between the sets being quantified over is identical (i.e. $\text{no} =_{\text{def}} \lambda P_{\langle\sigma,t\rangle} \lambda Q_{\langle\sigma,t\rangle}. P \cap Q = \emptyset$).²⁵ ²⁶

In a 2018 paper, Deo suggests that grammaticalisation trajectories in general are characterisable by the loss of (*discretionary*) *indexical content* (e.g. Perry 2012: 68ff). That is, reanalysed forms lose their dependence on context for retrieving discourse reference.²⁷ Deo appeals to this notion in describing grammaticalisation pathways in which (distal) demonstratives gradually lose their indexical force to become markers of definiteness, specificity and eventually noun class markers (see also Greenberg 1978; de Mulder & Carlier 2011; Stevens 2007: 61). The progressive to imperfective shift can also be fruitfully understood as the relaxation of a requirement, peculiar to the progressive aspect, for a specific, discourse salient reference interval that relies on pragmatics (\approx discretionary content provided by some construal of “speaker demonstration”) for evaluation. The newly emergent “imperfective” does not have this indexical/context-dependent content.

An interesting parallel in terms of thinking about the recruitment of formal mechanisms for existential predication is the observation that existential *there* in English is homonymous with deictic *there* (a discretionally indexical par excellence). This is suggestive of some functional connection between existential propositions and notions of indexicality as described above (and indeed, formal similarities between locative/existential predications have been observed elsewhere). Francez’s 2007 treatment of existential predications, adapted in (2c)

²⁵Hamari (2011) gives evidence of a possible similar expansion of the functions available to Uralic abessive suffixes. It is hoped that beginnings of a treatment proposed here may provide momentum towards reconsidering the “differences...in semantics [between the nominal and verbal abessives.]” (79). Kiefer (2015: 609) observes that the Hungarian cognate does attach to verbal bases but is restricted to transitive stems with eventive semantics. This is an observation with potential implications for future work on the grammaticalisation pathway for privative marking.

²⁶Similarly, Tamm (2015: 416) observes that “abessive negation” in Estonian is a strategy that (unlike the distribution of cognates elsewhere in Uralic) also permits of clausal-type negative (SN-like) uses and carries a “presupposition of an intention [to instantiate the abessive-marked predicate.]” In view of potential modal analyses of negators mentioned here, the emergence of this reading is extremely interesting.

²⁷Perry’s (2012: 68ff) 2×2 typology of indexicals contrast those that: (A) depend on notions of (i) “wide” vs. (ii) “narrow” context to designate and (B) on the basis of context, either designate (i) “automatically” or otherwise (ii) require appeal to “speaker intentions”. Those indexical items that require appeal to speaker intention are “discretionary” indexicals (cf. Kaplan’s “true demonstratives”, see Braun 2017 for a general discussion of this literature.)

Joshua Phillips

above, crucially makes reference to their context dependence (formally represented as a contextual parameter d_α). This captures the intuition that the utterance of an existential proposition relies on wide construals of context for domain restriction and evaluation: that is, the proposition *there are no sticks* cannot be evaluated without reference to the speaker’s intentions: the contextual parameters of utterance (most likely (but not necessarily) those spatiotemporal conditions under which it was uttered).

Nevertheless, d_α can also be supplied by way of a “coda” – i.e. that (optional) phrase that, rather than relying on speaker intentions (the defining property of a *discretionary indexical*), *explicitly* restricts the domain of an existential predication. Examples are given for Djambarrpuyuŋ in (18), where the “coda” is underlined.

(17) Privatives in Djambarrpuyuŋ: CODA underlined

- a. *Gapuwiyak guya-miriw*
PLACE fish-PRIV
‘There are no fish in Gapuwiyak. / Gapuwiyak is fishless.’
- b. *Bäyŋu guya Gapuwiyak (gulun-ŋur)*
NEG.EX fish PLACE waterhole-LOC
‘There are no fish in Gapuwiyak.’

The availability of coda phrases additionally provides a syntactic location for the subject in the “eventive-privative” sentences that have been described above. In (18), the privative phrase predicates that *events* of a particular type (viz. that event described by the privative-marked verb form) are not characteristic of whichever entity (18a) or location (18b) is specified in the coda position.

(18) “Eventive-privatives” in Djambarrpuyuŋ: CODA underlined

- a. *lukanha-miriw ŋunhi dharpany*
eat.NMLZR-PRIV TEXD tree.FOC
‘That tree is not eaten/edible.’
- b. *bäyŋun dhalakarr marrtjinyara-w*
NEG.EX.FOC space move.NMLZR-DAT
‘There’s no space to move≈there’s no moving in the space.’

Finally, these markers generalise to the point that they are entirely context-independent and serve, effectively, as truth-functional operators (i.e. standard/

11 Semantic change in three Australian languages

sentential negators, inverting the truth value of their prejacent (sc. that proposition that they modify.)²⁸ Djambarrpuynu *bäyŋu* and the apparent trajectory of Arrernte standard negator *-tyekenhe*, described in §5 are likely examples of the (near-)complete instantiation of this pathway. Table 11.3 spells out this hypothesised trajectory, where the transition from NEC stage *B* to *C* can be understood as a generalisation in the domain over which the relevant marker is able to quantify.

Table 11.3: Change in the domain over which a marker with negative meaning quantifies
 $(P_{\langle \sigma, t \rangle} \cap Q_{\langle \sigma, t \rangle} = \emptyset)$

| NEC Stage | Function | Domain | Type |
|------------|--------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>B</i> | PRIVATIVE | Properties of individuals | $\langle e, t \rangle$ |
| <i>B~C</i> | EVENTIVE PRIVATIVE | Properties of events | $\langle \varepsilon, t \rangle$ |
| <i>C</i> | (STANDARD) NEGATOR | Propositions | $\langle s, t \rangle$ |

6.3 Conclusion

This chapter has provided diachronically- and comparatively-informed discussion of change and variation in the negative domain from three geographically distant and temporally deep subgroups of the Pama-Nyungan family of Australian languages. Each of these case studies suggests nuances and provides further insights into the formulation of the Negative Existential Cycle as discussed in the work of Croft (1991) and Veselinova (2016 a.o). Of particular interest is the relationship between the privative case – which I have argued represents the morphologisation of a negative existential predicate – and standard negation.

The discussion of Thura-Yura (§3) shows a likely trajectory where a privative suffix appears to have become a preverbal standard negator *maga*. In Wirangu, this appears to have created the conditions for the recruitment-by-borrowing of lexical material from an unrelated neighbouring language as a new privative.

The section on Yolŋu (§4) shows competition and structured variation between two markers, *yaka* and *bäyŋu* – the latter previously having been restricted to “negative quantifier” functions. Additionally, we have seen comparative evidence

²⁸Although, as mentioned above, a unified formal account might treat standard negation as a modal operator where the domain of the negative form is reanalysed. A full defense of this perspective is outside the scope of this chapter.

Joshua Phillips

that suggests that the privative marker *-miriw* has expanded out of its traditional domain, to the extent that it is now showing signs of also being in competition with preverbal negative particles. Conversely, the Ritharrju data show how a distinct negative suffix '*may*' appears to have been borrowed from a neighbouring language; a finding not predicted by (unidirectional) accounts of the NEC.

Finally, §5 provided a discussion of SN strategy of negative suffixation in Arrernte verbs, typologically unusual for Australian languages. We recapitulated several morphosyntactic arguments that negated clauses in Arrernte are actually derived (de-verbal) nominal predicates. In view of the peculiarity of this system, this fact of Arrernte appears to provide strong evidence in favour of a trajectory where the standard negation strategy in this language is an erstwhile privative (negative existential) marker *-tye-kenhe* that has completely displaced an older form (and then triggered the recruitment of a new special negator for negative existential predication *-kwenye*).

The negative domains of Australian languages provide an opportunity to nuance our understanding of the NEC, and perhaps grammaticalisation paths more generally. In view of how robustly Australian languages draw a formal distinction between clausal negation (overwhelmingly with a pre-verbal particle) and absence predictions (overwhelmingly with a nominal suffix), deviations from this tendency are likely indicators of systemic formal and functional change in the negative domain. To the extent that a diachronic relationship can be drawn between the lexical material used to encode each of these categories, semantic change can likely be inferred from deviations from this pattern. Furthermore, in view of the strikingly distinct morphosyntactic properties of pre-verbal particles and nominal suffixes, the displacement of standard negation markers by negative existentials (esp. privatives) calls for an account of this "functional" cycle, one that foregrounds the possibility of semantic reanalysis and meaning similarity between these categories: indeed as has been suggested in the foregoing discussion, there is good reason to conceive of a subset relation between existential and standard negation.

Acknowledgements

My thanks to Claire Bowern and her Pama-Nyungan lab for fruitful discussion on this topic (NSF 1423711) as well as to Ljuba Veselinova for insights and assistance at the planning stage of this contribution. Additional thanks to Albert Waniny-marr for Djambarrpuynu [djr] judgments. All errors and omissions remain my own.

11 *Semantic change in three Australian languages***Language index**

| | |
|-----|---|
| adt | Adnyamathanha (Pama-Nyungan: Thura-Yura) |
| aer | Upper Arrernte (Pama-Nyungan: Arandic) |
| bcj | Bardi (Pama-Nyungan: Nyulnyulan) |
| bjb | Barngarla (Pama-Nyungan: Thura-Yura) |
| bym | Bidjara (Pama-Nyungan: Maric) |
| dbl | Dyirbal (Pama-Nyungan: Dyirbalic) |
| dhg | Wangurri (Pama-Nyungan: Yolŋu (Dhaŋu)) |
| dif | Diyari (Pama-Nyungan: Karnic) |
| djr | Djambarrpuŋu (Pama-Nyungan: Yolŋu (Dhuwal)) |
| gbb | Kaytetye (Pama-Nyungan: Arandic) |
| guf | Gupapuyŋu (Pama-Nyungan: Yolŋu (Dhuwal)) |
| gvy | Kuyani (Pama-Nyungan: Thura-Yura) |
| jay | Yan-nhanju (Pama-Nyungan: Yolŋu (Nhanju)) |
| kgs | Gumbaynggir (Pama-Nyungan: Southeast NSW) |
| ktd | Kokata (Pama-Nyungan: Wati) |
| mao | Maori (Polynesian; New Zealand) |
| mec | Marra (?Arnhem: Marran) |
| mem | Mangala (Pama-Nyungan: Marrngu) |
| nid | Marra (?Arnhem: East) |
| nna | Nyangumarta (Pama-Nyungan: Marrngu) |
| nnv | Nukunu (Pama-Nyungan: Thura-Yura) |
| nwo | Nauo (Pama-Nyungan: Thura-Yura) |
| nyt | Nyawaygi (Pama-Nyungan: Dyirbalic) |
| rit | Ritharrŋu (Pama-Nyungan: Yolŋu (Yaku)) |
| wga | Wakaya (Pama-Nyungan: Warluwaric) |
| wgu | Wirangu (Pama-Nyungan: Thura-Yura) |
| wrb | Warluwarra (Pama-Nyungan: Warluwaric) |
| wrg | Warrongo (Pama-Nyungan: Maric) |
| wyb | Ngiyambaa (Pama-Nyungan: Wiradhuric) |
| yil | Bularnu (Pama-Nyungan: Warluwaric) |
| zku | Kaurna (Pama-Nyungan: Thura-Yura) |
| zmu | Muruwari (Pama-Nyungan: Southeast NSW) |

Joshua Phillips

Abbreviations

| | | | | |
|--------|-----------------------------|--------|----------------------------------|--|
| 1 | first person | | | |
| 2 | second person | | | |
| 3 | third person | | | |
| ABS | absolutive case | OBL | oblique | |
| ANAPH | anaphoric | PERL | perative | |
| COMIT | comitative | PL | plural | |
| DAT | dative | PRIV | privative | |
| DIST | distal (demonstrative) | PROH | prohibitive | |
| DP | discourse particle | PROX | proximal | |
| ERG | ergative case | PROM | (demonstrative) | |
| EXCL | exclusive | NEG.EX | prominence marker (≈ focus) | |
| FOC | focus | PROP | negative existential/ quantifier | |
| FUT | future | PRES | propriete case | |
| INCH | inchoative | PST | present tense | |
| INCL | inclusive | QUANT | past tense | |
| INDF | indefinite | RECP | quantifier | |
| INFL | inflection (verbal) | REDUP | reciprocal | |
| INTENS | intensifier | SEQ | reduplicant | |
| IPFV | imperfective (aspect) | SN | sequential | |
| LOC | locative | | standard negation/ | |
| MED | medial (demonstrative) | | negator | |
| NEG | negator | | | |
| NMLZR | nominaliser (derivation) | | | |
| NOM | nominative case | | | |
| NP | noun phrase | | | |

References

- Ahern, Christopher & Robin Clark. 2017. Conflict, cheap talk and Jespersen's cycle. *Semantics and Pragmatics* 10(11). 1–40.
- Austin, Peter K. 2011. *A grammar of Diyari, South Australia*. 2nd edn. London: SOAS.
- Barwise, Jon & Robin Cooper. 1981. Generalized quantifiers and natural language. *Linguistics and Philosophy* 4(2). 159–219.
- Bauer, W. 1993. *Maori*. London: Routledge.

11 *Semantic change in three Australian languages*

- Black, J. M. 1917. Vocabularies of three South Australian native languages: Wirrung, Narrinyeri and Wongaidya. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Australia* 65(i, 25 July). 1–8.
- Bouckaert, Remco R., Claire Bowern & Quentin D. Atkinson. 2018. The origin and expansion of Pama-Nyungan languages across Australia. *Nature Ecology and Evolution* 2. 741–749.
- Bowern, Claire. 2009. *Conjugation class stability: Charting the history of conjugation classes in yolŋu languages*. Paper presented at the 19th International Conference on Historical Linguistics. Nijmegen.
- Bowern, Claire. 2010. Correlates of language change in hunter-gatherer and other ‘small’ languages. *Language and Linguistics Compass* 4. 665–679.
- Bowern, Claire. 2012. *A grammar of Bardi*. Georg Bossong, Bernard Comrie & Matthew Dryer (eds.). Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Bowern, Claire L & Quentin Atkinson. 2012. Computational phylogenetics and the internal structure of Pama-Nyungan. *Language* 88. 817–845.
- Brammall, Daniel. 1991. *A comparative grammar of Warluwaric*. Canberra. (honours thesis).
- Braun, David. 2017. *Indexicals*. Edward N Zalta (ed.). Summer 201. Standford: Center for the Study of Language & Information (CSLI).
- Breen, J G. N.d. Bularnu grammar and dictionary. Manuscript.
- Bybee, Joan & Östen Dahl. 1989. The creation of tense and aspect systems in the languages of the world. *Studies in Language* 13. 51–103.
- Bybee, Joan, Revere Perkins & William Pagliuca. 1994. *The evolution of grammar: Tense, aspect, and modality in the languages of the world*. Chicago; London: University of Chicago.
- Chung, Sandra & William A Ladusaw. 2004. *Restriction and saturation*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
- Creissels, Denis. 2014. *Existential predication in typological perspective*. Unpublished manuscript, University of Lyon. <http://www.deniscreissels.fr/public/Creissels-Exist.Pred.pdf>.
- Croft, William. 1991. The evolution of negation. *Journal of Linguistics* 27(1). 1–27.
- Dahl, Östen. 1985. *Tense and aspect systems*. Oxford: Blackwell.
- de Mulder, Walter & Anne Carlier. 2011. The grammaticalization of definite articles. In Bernd Heine & Heiko Narrog (eds.), *The Oxford handbook of grammaticalization*, 522–534. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Deo, Ashwini. 2015a. Diachronic semantics. *Annual Review of Linguistics* 1. 179–197.

Joshua Phillips

- Deo, Ashwini. 2015b. The semantic and pragmatic underpinnings of grammaticalization paths: The progressive to imperfective shift. *Semantics and Pragmatics* 8. 1–52.
- Deo, Ashwini. 2018. *Fine-tuning the progression of grammaticalization paths*. Paper presented at Meaning iin Flux workshop, Yale University, 12–14 October, 2018. New Haven.
- de Weert, Danny. 2016. Existential sentences in Flemish sign language and Finnish sign language. *Suomen Kielitieteellinen Yhdistys Journal of Linguistics* 29. 7–38.
- Dixon, Robert M. W. 1983. Nyawaygi. In Robert M. W. Dixon & Barry J Blake (eds.), *The handbook of Australian languages*, vol. 3, 430–522. Canberra: The Australian National University Press.
- Dixon, Robert M. W. 2002. *Australian languages: Their nature and development* (Cambridge language surveys). New York: Cambridge University Press. 734.
- Donaldson, Tamsin. 1980. *Ngiyambaa: The language of the Wangaaybuwan* (Cambridge Studies in Linguistics 29). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Eades, Diana. 1979. Gumbaynggir. In Robert M. W. Dixon & Barry J Blake (eds.), *The handbook of Australian languages*, vol. 1, 244–361. Canberra: The Australian National University Press.
- Francez, Itamar. 2007. *Existential propositions*. Stanford University. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Freeze, Ray. 1992. Existentials and other locatives. *Language* 68(3). 553–595.
- Goddard, Cliff. 1983. *A semantically-oriented grammar of the Yankunytjatjara dialect of the Western Desert Language*. ANU. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Greenberg, Joseph H. 1978. How does a language acquire gender markers? In Joseph H Greenberg (ed.), *Universals of human language*, vol. 3: Word Structure, 47–82. Stanford: Stanford University Press.
- Hale, Kenneth. 1962. Internal relationships in Arandic of Central Australia. In Arthur Capell (ed.), *Some linguistic types in Australia (Handbook of Australian languages part 2)* (Oceania Linguistics Monographs), 171–83. Sydney: University of Sydney.
- Hamari, Arja. 2011. The abessive in the Permic languages. *Suomalais-Ugrilaisen Seuran Aikakauskirja (Journal of the Finno-Ugric Society)* 93. 37–84.
- Hamari, Arja. 2015. Negation in Komi. In Matti Miestamo, Anne Tamm & Beáta Wagner-Nagy (eds.), *Negation in Uralic languages*, 238–263. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Heath, Jeffrey. 1980. *Basic materials in Ritharngu: Grammar, texts and dictionary* (Pacific Linguistics B - Monographs). Canberra: Australian National University.

11 *Semantic change in three Australian languages*

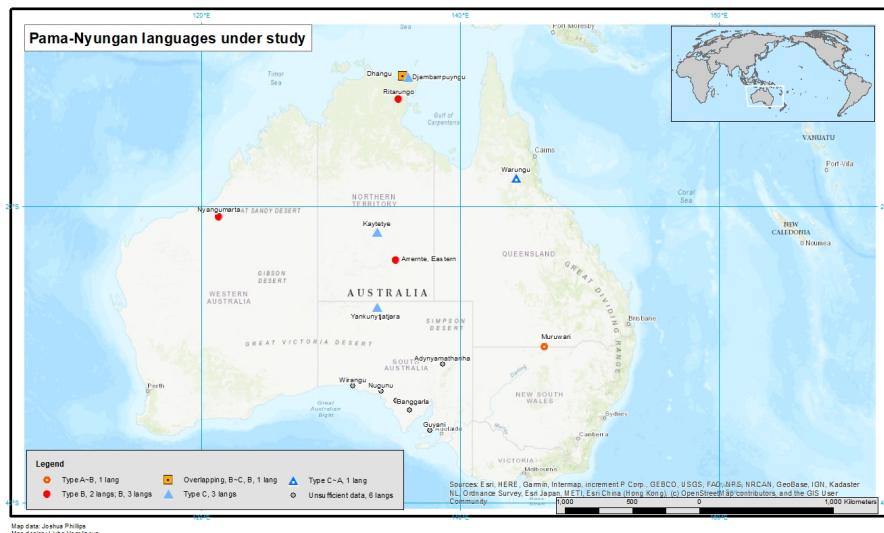
- Heath, Jeffrey. 1981. *Basic materials in Mara: Grammar, texts and dictionary* (Pacific Linguistics B - Monographs). Canberra: Australian National University.
- Heine, Bernd & Tania Kuteva. 2003. On contact-induced grammaticalization. *Studies in Language* 27. 529–572.
- Henderson, John. 2013. *Topics in Eastern and Central Arrernte grammar* (Outstanding grammars from Australia). Munich: LINCOM.
- Hercus, Luise Anna. 1992. *A Nukunu dictionary*. Canberra: s.n.
- Hercus, Luise Anna. 1999. *A grammar of the Wirangu language from the west coast of South Australia*. Canberra: Pacific Linguistics.
- Hercus, Luise Anna & Jane Simpson. 1996. Wirangu, Western Desert and Thura-Yura. In Canberra: Australian Linguistics Institute.
- Horn, Laurence. 1969. A presuppositional analysis of *only* and *even*. In *Proceedings of CLS*, 98–107. Chicago: Chicago Linguistics Society.
- Horn, Laurence R. 1989. *A natural history of negation*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Horn, Laurence R. & Heinrich Wansing. 2017. Negation. In Edward N. Zalta (ed.), *The Stanford encyclopedia of philosophy*, Spring 2017. Stanford: CSLI. <https://plato.stanford.edu/archives/spr2020/entries/negation/>.
- Jackendoff, Ray. 1972. *Semantic interpretation in generative grammar*. Cambridge, Massachusetts & London, England: MIT Press. 400.
- Kaytetye people. 2012. *Kaytetye to English dictionary*. Myfany Turpin & Alison Ross (eds.). Alice Springs: IAD Press.
- Kiefer, Ferenc. 2015. The privative derivational suffix in Hungarian: A new account. In Matti Miestamo, Anne Tamm & Beáta Wagner-Nagy (eds.), *Negation in uralic languages*, 601–614. Amsterdam & New York: John Benjamins.
- Koch, Harold. 2004. The Arandic subgroup of Australian languages. In Claire Bowern & Harold Koch (eds.), *Australian languages: Classification and the comparative method*, chap. 6, 127–150. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Lowe, Beulah M. 1996. *Grammar lessons in Gupapuyju*. Darwin: Yolŋu Studies, CDU.
- McKelson, Kevin. 1974. *Studies in Mañala*. s.l.: s.n.
- McLellan, Marilyn. 1992. *A study of the Wangurri language*. Sydney. (Doctoral dissertation).
- McNally, Louise. 2011. Existential sentences. In von Heusinger, Claudia Maienborn & Paul Portner (eds.), *Semantics: an international handbook of natural language meaning*, vol. 2, 1829–1848. Berlin: de Gruyter.
- McNally, Louise. 2016. Existential sentences crosslinguistically: Variations in form and meaning. *Annual Review of Linguistics* 2. 211–231.

Joshua Phillips

- Miestamo, Matti. 2005. *Standard negation: The negation of declarative verbal main clauses in a typological perspective*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Miestamo, Matti. 2007. Negation: An overview of typological research. *Language and Linguistics Compass* 1(5). 552–570.
- O’Grady, Geoffrey N. 1963. *Nyangumarta grammar*. (Doctoral dissertation).
- O’Grady, Geoffrey N., C. F. Voegelin & F. M. Voegelin. 1966. Languages of the world: Indo-Pacific fascicle six. *Anthropological Linguistics* 8(2). 1–197. <http://www.jstor.org/stable/30029431>.
- Oates, Lynette F. 1988. *The Muruwari language*. Canberra: Pacific Linguistics.
- Perry, John. 2012. *Reference and reflexivity*. 2nd edn. Stanford, CA: Centre for the Study of Language & Information.
- Phillips, Josh. to appear 2021. Negation. In Claire Bowern (ed.), *The Oxford handbook of Australian languages*, no pages. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Rooth, Mats. 1985. *Association with focus*. University of Massachusetts, Amherst. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Schebeck, Bernhard. 2001. *Dialect and social groupings in Northeast Arnhem Land [sic]* (LINCOM Studies in Australian Languages). München: LINCOM.
- Schürmann, C W. 1844. *A vocabulary of the Parnkalla language, spoken by the natives inhabiting the western shores of Spencer’s Gulf [Facsimile]*. Adelaide: Libraries Board of South Australia.
- Schürmann, C. W. & C. G. Teichelmann. 1840. *Outlines of a grammar, vocabulary and phraseology of the Aboriginal language of South Australia, spoken by the natives in and for some distance around Adelaide*. Adelaide: By the authors, at the native location.
- Sharp, Janet. 2004. *Nyangumarta: A language of the Pilbara region of Western Australia*. Canberra: Pacific Linguistics.
- Simpson, Jane & Luise Anna Hercus. 2004. Thura-Yura as subgroup. In Claire Bowern & Harold Koch (eds.), *Australian languages: Classification and the comparative method*, chap. 8, 179–206. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Stevens, Jon. 2007. *The Old English demonstrative: A synchronic and diachronic investigation*. Cleveland. (MA thesis).
- Tamm, Anne. 2015. Negation in Estonian. In Matti Miestamo, Anne Tamm & Beáta Wagner-Nagy (eds.), *Negation in Uralic languages* (Typological Studies in Language 108), 399–431. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Tamm, Anne. N.d. Cross-categorical abessive in Estonian. In 89–90. Helsinki.
- Traugott, Elizabeth Closs. 1980. Meaning-change in the development of grammatical markers. *Language Sciences* 2(1). 44–61.
- Tsunoda, Tasaku. 2011. *A grammar of Warrongo*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.

11 Semantic change in three Australian languages

- van der Auwera, Johan & Ludo Lejeune. 2005. The prohibitive. In Martin Haspelmath, Matthew Dryer, David Gil & Bernard Comrie (eds.), *World atlas of linguistic structures*, 290–293. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- van Gelderen, Elly. 2021. The Negative Existential and Other Cycles: Jespersen, Givón, and the Copula Cycle. In Ljuba Veselinova & Arja Hamari (eds.), *The Negative Existential Cycle*, 531–553. Berlin: Language Science Press. DOI: [??](#).
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2013. Negative existentials: A cross-linguistic study. *Italian Journal of Linguistics* 25(1). 107–145.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2016. The negative existential cycle viewed through the lens of comparative data. In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change continued* (Linguistics Today 227), 139–187. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Wilkins, David P. 1989. *Mparntwe Arrernte (Aranda): Studies in the structure and semantics of grammar*. Australian National University. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Wilkinson, Melanie P. 1991. *Djambarrpuynu: A Yolŋu variety of Northern Australia*. University of Sydney. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Wurm, Stephen Adolphe. 1972. *Languages of Australia and Tasmania*. The Hague: Mouton.
- Yallop, Colin. 1977. *Alyawarra: An Aboriginal language of Central Australia*. Canberra: Australian Institute of Aboriginal Studies.



Map 11.7: NEC in Pama-Nyungan

Chapter 12

Negation in Tacana (Amazonian Bolivia): synchronic description and diachronic reconstruction

Antoine Guillaume^a

^aLaboratoire Dynamique du Langage (CNRS \& Université Lumière Lyon 2)

The goal of this paper is to provide, for the first time, a synchronic description and diachronic reconstruction of negation in Tacana, a critically endangered language of the small Takanan family in the Amazonian lowlands of Bolivia and Peru. One significant contribution of the paper is the reconstruction, for a standard negation marker, of an etymology (stand-alone negation word ‘no’) and type of Jespersen Cycle (from the right of the verb to the left of the verb) that are not commonly reported in general studies on negation. The proposed reconstruction also contributes to current studies on the interactions between standard negation and the Negative Existential Cycle (the general theme of the volume) in arguing that the Tacana stand-alone negation word ‘no’ originated in a negative existential predicate. In so doing, the paper adds to the diachronic literature on languages where a negative existential breaks into the verbal domain through a stand-alone negation stage.

Keywords: Takanan languages, negation, Jesperson Cycle, Negative Existential Cycle

1 Introduction

Tacana is one of the five extant languages of the small Takanan family from the Amazonian lowlands of Bolivia and Peru (together with Araona, Cavineña, Ese Ejja, and Reyesano). The language is critically endangered, being only spoken by a few dozens of essentially elderly people, and basically undescribed, except in the form of a tagmemic grammar (Ottaviano & de Ottaviano 1965; 1967).



Antoine Guillaume. 2021. Negation in Tacana (Amazonian Bolivia): synchronic description and diachronic reconstruction. In Ljuba Veselinova & Arja Hamari (eds.), *The Negative Existential Cycle*, 459–491. Berlin: Language Science Press. DOI: ??

Antoine Guillaume

This paper is the first study of negation in this language. It is mostly based on a corpus of firsthand data (texts and elicitations) from the Tumupasa dialect that I collected during four months of fieldwork conducted on four field trips between 2009 and 2013. The data are complemented by second hand materials published by the Summer Institute of Linguistics, consisting of a number of texts (de Ottaviano 1980) and sentences that illustrate their dictionary entries (Ottaviano & de Ottaviano 1989). Ultimately, some data from the mid-XIXth century are also presented in the section on diachrony (Lafone Quevedo 1902). Note that no controlled elicitation with native speakers was conducted specifically on the topic of negation, which means that the study relies exclusively on my own interpretation of the available corpus.

The goals of this paper are twofold: (1) to provide a detailed description of a wide range of negation constructions in Tacana and (2) to attempt a historical reconstruction of some of the negation markers and patterns. One significant contribution to the field of diachronic typologies of negation is the reconstruction for one of the Standard Negation (hereafter SN) markers of an etymology (stand-alone negation word ‘no’) and type of Jespersen Cycle (from the right of the verb to the left of the verb), which are not commonly reported in general studies on negation. The proposed reconstruction also contributes to the current studies on the interactions between SN and the Negative Existential Cycle (the general theme of the volume) in arguing that the Tacana stand-alone negation word ‘no’ originated in a negative existential predicate. In doing so, the paper adds to the diachronic literature on languages where a negative existential breaks into the verbal domain through a stand-alone negation stage (Croft 1991: 10, 13–14; Veselinova 2013: 127ff; 2016: 155–156).

In the literature, the grammaticalization of stand-alone negation words (also known as “absolute negators,” “pro-sentence words no!,” “negative replies to polarity questions,” “short answers no!,” “negative interjections,” etc.) as SN markers through a reinforcement/strengthening process (Jespersen Cycle) is well documented. The phenomenon is attested, for instance, in languages such as Brazilian Portuguese, Caribbean Spanish dialects, northern Italian dialects, Dutch, Afrikaans, Swedish and Sino-Russian (see, among others, Schwegler 1988; van der Auwera 2009: 49; Veselinova 2013: 127ff; 2016: 155–156). As illustrated, for instance, in Brazilian Portuguese (1), a word meaning ‘no,’ originally used outside of a negative clause (stage 2), ends up replacing the original SN marker inside of the clause (stage 5).

- (1) Brazilian Portuguese (evolutionary path based on discussion in Creissels 2006: 149–150)

12 Negation in Tacana (Amazonian Bolivia)

- stage 1 *Não sei.*
- stage 2 *Não sei, (não!)*
- stage 3 *Não sei não.*
- stage 4 *(Não) sei não.*
- stage 5 *Sei não.*

In all these languages, however, the cycle operates from the left of the verb to the right of the verb, in other words from a preverbal to postverbal SN marker. In Tacana, as I argue here, the same type of etymology and grammaticalization pathway holds, but the direction of the cycle is the opposite. Here, a postverbal SN marker is in the process of being replaced by a negative stand-alone word in preverbal position. This results in the phenomenon called a Jespersen Cycle “in reverse” by van der Auwera & Vossen (2016) and Vossen (2016); according to these authors, it appears to be common in South American languages.

The paper is organized in two main parts. The first part is descriptive, with a short introduction on Tacana clause structure and verbal predication (§2) and a presentation of six negation constructions: (1) Standard Negation (SN), which applies, by definition, to declarative main clauses with a finite verb predicate (Miestamo 2005) (§3) but also, in Tacana, to non-verbal clauses expressing equation, proper inclusion, attribution relations (§4) and (in rare cases) existence or location (§5); (2) negation of existential/locative adjective predicates; (3) negation of declarative clauses with a non-finite predicate with two subtypes (§6); (4) non-clausal stand-alone negation (§7); (5) non-clausal constituent negation with two subtypes (§7); and (6) negation of command (hortative and imperative) clauses with two subtypes (§8).¹ A summary table of all the constructions is provided in section §9. The second part of the paper is diachronic, engaging in a reconstruction of the declarative clause negation markers and patterns: SN and negation of declarative clauses with a non-finite predicate (§10). A summary and a conclusion are provided in §11.

2 Basic facts on Tacana clause structure and verbal predication

Main clauses in Tacana consist of an obligatory predicate² and optional arguments and/or obliques and/or adjuncts. When overtly expressed, the arguments,

¹Essentially, two other types of negation are not discussed in the paper: negation of indefinites and quantifiers and negation in dependent clauses.

²Note that the term “predicate” used here does not make reference to any participant of the clause.

Antoine Guillaume

whether NPs or pronouns, display a (split)³ ergative case-marking system, as illustrated in (2a), with an ergative marked A NP and absolutive (unmarked) O NP, and (2b), with an absolutive (unmarked) S NP.⁴

(2) transitive and intransitive declarative main clauses

- | O | A | V |
|---|-------------------|------------------------|
| a. <i>Jiawe =da id'eti biwa=ja</i> | | <i>y-abu-ta-(a)ni.</i> |
| now =PTC sun | spider_monkey=ERG | IPFV-carry-3A-IPFV.SIT |
| 'Ahora lo está cargando el marimono.' so007 | | |
| 'Now the spider monkey is carrying the sun.' | | |
| S | | V |
| b. <i>Biwa =da kema [tsakwa echa=su]</i> | | <i>bade-ti-a.</i> |
| spider_monkey =PTC 1SG.DAT | mapajo(tree) | branch=LOC hang-GO-PST |
| 'Mi marimono se colgó en gajo de mapajo.' (elicited) | | |
| 'The spider monkey (that I shot) went to hang on the branch of a mapajo (<i>Ceiba pentandra</i>) tree.' | | |

The arguments, especially when expressed by NPs, do not have strict ordering restrictions and can appear in any position in the clause depending on their discourse-pragmatic status. Pronominal arguments, on the other hand, tend to occur either in first position in the clause (when contrastive) or second position (when referring to continuing topics).

Verbal main clauses can be headed by two types of predicates without semantic differences: a finite verb predicate, where the verb takes the inflectional morphology, as illustrated in (2), and a non-finite verb predicate, where the verb does not take the inflectional morphology, which is optionally carried by a generic auxiliary (light verb). Both types are illustrated in (3) with the same verb root *tutua* 'spill,' used in the finite verb construction in the first clause and in the non-finite verb construction in the second.

³The case system is conditioned by the type of referent: strictly ergative with 1SG/2SG pronouns, optionally ergative with 3SG pronouns and NPs, and neutral with all non-singular pronouns (Guillaume 2016; forthcoming).

⁴The Tacana consonant phonemes are *p, b, t, d* [d], *d'* [d̪/t̪/d̪̪], *dh* [ð], *ts* [tʂ], *ch* [tç], *s* [s], *sh* [ç], *k, kw* [kʷ], *r* [r], *m, n, j* [h], *w* [w/β] and *y* [j]. The vowel phonemes are *a, e, i* [i/j] and *u* [ʊ/w]. Stress falls on the 3rd mora (i.e., vowel or semi-vowel [j] or [w]) counting from the left). Note that the illustrative examples include the free translation in local Bolivian Spanish that was given by the native speakers who helped me transcribe and translate the texts. The codes that follow the translation lines (e.g., so007) correspond to the place of the example in my (Toolbox) database. Unless explicitly specified, the examples come from texts.

12 Negation in Tacana (Amazonian Bolivia)

- (3) *Dapia =da etse beu se e-tutua. E-jemi-tsua =da etse beu*
 there =PTC 1DU PTC fish FUT-spill FUT-take_out-go.up =PTC 1DU PTC
tutua =da etse y-a.
 spill =PTC 1DU FUT-do
 ‘Ahí ya lo vamos a vaciar los peces. Lo vamos a alzar (la trampa para
 peces) entre los dos y lo vamos a vaciar.’ em044–045
 ‘There we are going to spill the fishes (on the ground). We are going to
 lift (the fish trap) up and then spill them (on the ground).’

There is no difference in (at least propositional) meaning between finite verb constructions and non-finite verb constructions. The reasons motivating the use of one construction or the other is not fully understood yet, although it might have to do with the discourse status of the event or some specific discourse genres.⁵

Finally, both types of predicates do not have any impact on the way the arguments are expressed. When negated, however, they require distinct constructions. The construction used to negate finite verbal main clauses is also used to negate a number of non-verbal clauses. It will be called Standard Negation (SN) and discussed first, as it applies to verbal clauses (§3) and non-verbal clauses (§4 and §5). The construction used to negate non-finite verbal main clauses will be discussed in a separate section (§6).

3 Negation of declarative clauses with a finite verb predicate (Standard Negation)

In clauses with a finite verb predicate, the lexical verb stem, with or without derivational morphology, directly and obligatorily bears the inflectional morphology (basically TAM and 3rd person indexation), as illustrated in (2a,b) above, in the first clause of (3) and (4a,b), and in Table 12.1 below, which shows the morphological structure of the predicate. In the examples and the Table, the inflectional affixes are in bold and underlined.

- (4) transitive and intransitive main clauses with a finite verbal predicate

⁵I noticed, for instance, that non-finite verb constructions are often used when an event is repeated, as is the case in two consecutive sentences from the same text in (4). I also found that non-finite verb constructions are used more often in informal style and hardly ever in elicited material.

Antoine Guillaume

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| A | O | V |
|---|---|---|
- a. *Dapia =da etse beu se e-tutua.*
 there =PTC 1DU PTC fish FUT-spill
 ‘Ahí ya lo vamos a vaciar los peces.’ em044
 ‘There we are going spill the fish (on the ground).’
- | | |
|---|---|
| V | S |
|---|---|
- b. *Beu =pa ja-mesia-ti-(i)dha jida dejá, mawi*
 PTC =REP MID-let_go_of-MID-REM.PST that man almendrillo
echa=jenetia.
 branch=ABL
 ‘Ya dice se largó del gajo del alamendrillo.’ ch083
 ‘He let go of himself from the almendrillo branch.’

Table 12.1: Morphological structure of verbal predicates

| | |
|----------|---|
| -3 | <u>TAM</u> |
| -2 | valency change |
| -1 | compounded/incorporated noun |
| 0 | verb root |
| +1 | compounded/incorporated verb |
| +2 | valency change |
| +3 | “adverbial-like” |
| +4 | <u>3rd person indexation</u> |
| +5 | <u>temporal distance -iti-</u> |
| +6 | “back” <u>-iba-</u> |
| +7 | “adverbial-like” |
| +8 | <u>iterative</u> |
| +9 | reiterative <u>-yu</u> |

Negation of declarative (and interrogative) main clauses containing a finite verb predicate is realized through a discontinuous embracing construction involving two particles: the preverbal independent ***aimue*** [ajmwe] ~ [ajmwe]⁶ and the postverbal enclitic =***mawe*** [maße] (with a variant =*mue* [mue] ~ [mwe]). The construction is illustrated in (5a) with a transitive predicate, and in (5b) with an intransitive clause.

⁶As will be seen later, *aimue* is a contracted variant of *aimawe* [ajmaße] which shows up in some examples of the SN construction when applied to non-verbal clauses.

12 Negation in Tacana (Amazonian Bolivia)

- O A V
- (5) a. *Aimue ejije=kwana yama e-shanapa-eni-(i)nia=mawe.*
 NEG jungle=PL 1SG.ERG IPFV-know-WELL-IPFV.SIT.1/2=NEG
 'Ya no conozco estos montes bien.' ch132
 'I don't know these jungles well anymore.'
- S V
- b. *Aimue =da ema e-siapati-yu=mue.*
 NEG =PTC 1SG FUT-come_back-ITER=NEG
 'Ya no voy a regresar.' na191
 'I'm not going to come back again anymore.'

The preverbal particle *aimue* is phonologically stressed and syntactically free, occurring anywhere before the verb. It is often the first word of the clause, as in (5a,b); see also (7a,b) further below. But this is not an absolute requirement, as in (6a,b), where *aimue* is preceded by several clausal constituents. The exact motivations for placing *aimue* in different positions before the verb remain to be investigated.

- A
- (6) a. *Jade, [ye=base=ja] =mu aimue, sai-da*
 let's_see this=DEPR=ERG =CONTR NEG well-ASF
 V
y-a-ta-(a)ni=mawe.
 IPFV-affect-3A-IPFV.SIT=NEG
 'A ver, este no lo hace bien.' bu092
 'Let's see, this damned one doesn't do it well.'
- S
- b. *[Piada deja] =pa, [mesa, d'aki=neje], aimue sai-da*
 one man =REP 3SG.GEN brother_in_law=ASSC NEG well-ASF
 V
jadusuti-(i)na=mawe.
 get_along-HAB.PST=NEG
 'Un hombre, dice, que con su cuñado no se llevaba bien.' ch003
 'There were a man and his brother-in-law who did not get along well.'

The postverbal particle *=mawe*, by contrast, is a phonologically unstressed enclitic with a rigid position. It can only attach to the verb. If the verb of the negated clause is followed by one or more clausal constituents, *=mawe* necessarily remains on the verb, as in (7a,b).

Antoine Guillaume

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| | V | A |
|--|---|---|
- (7) a. *Aimue e-juseute-ta=mawe, beni=ja.*
 NEG FUT-fell-3A=NEG wind=ERG
 ‘No los va tumbar el viento.’ bu072
 ‘The wind will not fell (the trees).’
- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| | V | S |
|--|---|---|
- b. *Bute-ke! Aimue =da e-kwinana=mawe, dukei.*
 go_down-IMP NEG =PTC FUT-go_out=NEG deer
 ‘¡Bájate! No va salir el venado.’ du018
 ‘Go down! The deer will not go out.’

In my corpus, very few examples of negation of interrogative clauses can be found. The ones that are available, such as (8), suggest nevertheless that they are negated by means of the same pattern as in declarative clauses.

- (8) *Jukwajasu =da aimue dasu e-nubi-an=mawe [yawi tipa=su]?*
 why =PTC NEG then IPFV-enter-IPFV.SIT=NEG water bottom=LOC
 ‘¿Porque pues no entra debajo de agua?’ bo080
 ‘Why does it (the caiman) not go underneath the water?’

In the available corpus, *aimue* is never omitted. As for *=mawe*, I found a couple of examples where it is left out, as in (9) and (10), which suggests that *=mawe* might not be obligatory. It is reminded that no controlled elicitation with native speakers was conducted on negation constructions.

- (9) [*Ena dume=su*] *aimue e-nubi-ti-ani.*
 stream inside=LOC NEG IPFV-enter-GO-IPFV.SIT
 ‘No entra dentro del agua.’ bo081
 ‘(The caiman) does not enter into the water.’
- (10) *Aimue e-kwina-yu.*
 NEG PST-arrive-ITER
 ‘No llegó.’ ch037
 ‘He didn’t arrive.’

From the perspective of Miestamo’s (2005; 2007) typology of negative constructions, the Tacana negative construction under discussion is symmetric. Apart from the addition of the negative markers, there do not appear to be any obvious morphosyntactic differences, with the same argument-coding system (split ergative case-marking and constituent order flexibility) and same morphological possibilities on the verbal predicate (derivational and inflectional).

12 Negation in Tacana (Amazonian Bolivia)

4 Negation of non-verbal clauses (1): equation, proper inclusion, attribution

The SN construction is also used for negating non-verbal clauses. The negation of equation, proper inclusion and attribution clauses is discussed in this section. The negation of existential and locative predication is discussed in the next.

In affirmative equation, proper inclusion and attribution clauses, the predicate consists of an NP or an adjective optionally followed by the inflected copula verb *pu* ‘be,’ as illustrated in (11a-d). The S NP is expressed like the S NP of any other intransitive verbal clauses, being optional and, when expressed, not subject to any ordering restrictions.

- (11) a. proper inclusion (with copula)
 S NP COP
 [Tueda edeje] [a'una dejá] pu-iná.
 that youngster bear man be-HAB.PST
 ‘Ese joven era joven (lit. hombre) oso.’ au004a
 ‘That youngster was a bear-man.’
- b. equation (without copula)
 S NP
 [Mike ebakepuna] [kema kwara].
 2SG.GEN daughter 1SG.GEN mother
 ‘Tu hija es mi madre.’ au155
 ‘Your daughter is my mother.’
- c. attribution (with copula)
 S ADJ COP
 Id'eti =di tuche-da e-pu-eti.
 sun =PTC strong-ASF IPFV-be-IPFV.STAND
 ‘El sol también estaba fuerte.’ lp078
 ‘The sun was very hot (lit. strong).’
- d. attribution (without copula)
 S ADJ
 Te =mu ai-da beju...
 garden =CONTR grande-ASF PTC
 ‘Ahora el chaco es grande...’ gu054
 ‘The garden is big...’

When negated, these non-verbal clauses require the SN construction through the discontinuous embracing construction with the predicate-preposed independent ***aimue*** and the predicate-postposed enclitic **=mawe**, as illustrated in (12).

Antoine Guillaume

Both have the same properties as when applied to clauses with a finite verb: ordering flexibility for *aimue*, as long as it appears before the predicated NP or predicative adjective; strict position for =*mawe*, directly attached to the copula verb (if present) or to the predicated NP or predicative adjective (if the copula is absent). As can be seen in (12a), the predicate-preposed negation marker can show up in a longer (more conservative) form *aimawe* [ajmaße]. As for =*mawe*, I have too few examples of SN applied to non-verbal clauses to know if it displays the shorter variant =*mue* found in SN applied to verbal clauses.

- (12) a. proper inclusion (with copula)

S NP COP

[*Tueda edeje*] ***aimawe*** [*kristianu eni*] *pu-in-a=mawe*.

that child NEG person real be-HAB.PST=NEG

‘Ese joven no era humano.’ au003

‘That youngster was not a human. lit. ’That youngster is not a real person’

- b. equation (without copula)

S NP

Aimue =jia maida [*ye dej-a*] [*kema y-awe*]=***mawe***?

NEG =DUBIT PTC this man 1SG.GEN NPF-husband=NEG

‘¿No es mi marido este hombre?’ (Ottaviano & de Ottaviano 1989: 4)

‘Is this man not my husband?’

- c. attribution (with copula)

S ADJ COP

[*Kea tata*] =*mu* ***aimue sai-da*** *pu-in-a=mawe*.

1SG.GEN father =CONTR NEG well-ASF be-HAB.PST=NEG

‘Mi papá no era tan bueno (renegaba / pegaba).’ ps058

‘My father wasn’t nice.’

- d. attribution (without copula)

ADJ S

Aimue sai-da=mawe [*mike e-bakwa*].

NEG well-ASF=NEG 2SG.GEN NPF-child

‘No es bueno tu hijo.’ au222

‘Your child is not nice.’

Note finally that I do not have examples in the whole corpus where =*mawe* (or *aimawe* ~ *aimue* for that matter) are omitted. More research is, however, needed to confirm whether this is also a possibility, as in clauses with finite verbs, especially since I have very few examples of negation of non-verbal clauses in the current dataset.

5 Negation of non-verbal clauses (2): existential/locative predication

There is no clear formal distinction between existential and locative clauses, whether affirmative or negative. In affirmative existential and locative clauses, the predicate is normally one of four posture verbs, either *ani* ‘sit’ (13a-e), *neti* ‘stand’ (14), *sa* ‘lie’ (15) or *bade* ‘hang’ (16); less commonly, the predicate can also be the (copula) verb *pu* ‘be’ (see below). In this function, the posture verbs are inflected but with severe restrictions, with only a few possible TAM affixes: a prefix *e-/y-* ‘EXIST/LOC’, the habitual past *-ina* ‘HAB.PST’ and the complex past tense *-iti-a* ‘TDM-PST’. A locative oblique (or, for that matter, another type of oblique) can be present with no rigid position in the clause. With a dative oblique, the same construction yields the semantics of possessive predication, as seen in (13e), with the possessor encoded by the 3SG dative pronoun *mesa*.

- (13) positive: posture verb ‘sit’

- | | | | |
|----|---|-------------------|--|
| | LOC V | S | |
| a. | <i>... dapia y-ani</i> | <i>dhududu.</i> | |
| | there | EXIST/LOC-sit | capybara |
| | '(En los lagos grandes,) ahí hay capihuara.' mc004 | | |
| | 'There (in the big lakes,) there are capybaras (lit. sitting).' au164 | | |
| | LOC LOC | V | |
| b. | <i>Chue [enabaki maje=su]</i> | <i>y-ani.</i> | |
| | there | stream border=LOC | EXIST/LOC-sit |
| | 'Allá está (mi mamá) en la banda del arroyo.' | | |
| | '(My mother) is there (lit. sitting) on the other side of the river.' | | |
| | S | V | LOC |
| c. | <i>[Beinte familia] ani-(i)na Napashi=su [da mara=su].</i> | | |
| | twenty | family | sit-HAB.PST Napashi=LOC that time=LOC |
| | 'Veinte familia había en Napashi en ese año.' | | |
| | 'There were twenty families (lit. sitting) in Napashi at that time.' | | |
| | S | V | COMIT |
| d. | <i>[Piada deja] ani-(i)na [mesa e-wane=sa kvara=neje].</i> | | |
| | one | man | sit-HAB.PST 3SG.GEN NPF-wife=GEN mother=ASSC |
| | 'Había un hombre que vivía junto a su suegra.' | | |
| | 'There was a man who was living with his mother-in-law.' | | |

Antoine Guillaume

- S DAT V
- e. *Ebakwa=chidi mesa y-ani.*
 child=DIM 3SG.DAT EXIST/LOC-sit
 ‘Tenía dice su hijito.’ ye020
 ‘He had a small child.’ [lit. a small child was sitting to him]
- (14) positive: posture verb ‘stand’
 S V LOC
Dukei=base e-neti *ena=su* *e-(ja-)id'i-ti-neti.*
 deer=DEPR EXIST/LOC-stand stream=LOC IPFV-MID-drink-MID-IPFV.STAND
 ‘Ahí está el venado dentro del agua, está tomando.’ hv027
 ‘There is a deer /the deer is standing in the water and drinking (standing).’
- (15) positive: posture verb ‘lie’
 LOC S V
Ue dukei e-sa.
 here deer EXIST/LOC-lie
 ‘Aquí hay un venado echado.’ du051
 ‘Here, there is a deer (lying).’
- (16) positive: posture verb ‘hang’
 V LOC
[Piada semana] =pa beu e-bade *[rara dume=su].*
 one week =REP PTC EXIST/LOC-hang hole inside=LOC
 ‘Así dice (el tigre) estuvo una semana dentro de la cueva.’ bu056
 ‘(The jaguar) was (hanging) inside of the hole during a whole week.’

Instead of a posture verb, the predicate of an existential and locative clause can apparently also be the verb *pu* ‘be,’ discussed in its copula use in the preceding section. This is suggested by a couple of examples found in the corpus, such as those in (17a) (existential) and (17b) (locative).

- (17) positive: verb ‘be’
- S V
- a. *Juishu beju pu-iti-a.*
 judgment PTC be-TDM-PST
 ‘Había juicio.’ (in064_ott; *de Ottaviano 1980*: 62)
 ‘There was a judgment.’
- S LOC V
- b. *Tueda escuela=su pu-in-a.*
 3SG school=LOC be-HAB.PST
 ‘El estaba en la escuela.’ na205

12 Negation in Tacana (Amazonian Bolivia)

'He was in the school.'

When negated, existential and locative clauses display two possible patterns. The first, illustrated in (18) and very scarcely attested in the corpus, is through the same discontinuous embracing SN construction with the preverbal independent *aimue* and the postverbal enclitic =*mawe*. This first pattern is illustrated with the posture verb *ani* 'sit' in (18a) and (18b) and with the copula verb *pu* 'be' in (18c). Note that due to a lack of sufficient examples, I am unable to say if the pattern is attested with the other posture verbs, 'stand', 'lie' and 'hang', and if *aimue* and/or =*mawe* display the variants they have in SN when applied to other clause types (*aimawe* [ajmaße], =*mue* [mue] ~ [mwe]).

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| | S | V |
|--|---|---|
- (18) a. [Da *tiempo*] ***aimue*** *sapato ani-ina=mawe*.
 that time NEG shoe sit-HAB.PST=NEG
 ‘En ese tiempo no había zapato.’ ci024
 ‘At that time, there were no shoes.’
- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| | V | S |
|--|---|---|
- b. ***Aimue*** *ani-iti-a=mawe* *Rurrenabaque*.
 NEG sit-TDM-PST=NEG Rurrenabaque
 ‘(En los tiempos antiguos), no había Rurrenabaque.’ tu002_ott,
 (de Ottaviano 1980: 8)
 ‘(In the old days) Rurrenabaque did not exist.’
- | | | | |
|--|-----|---|---|
| | LOC | S | V |
|--|-----|---|---|
- c. *Upia =mu =da aimue ejude ekene pu-iti-a=mawe*.
 here =CONTR =PTC NEG village first be-TDM-PST=NEG
 ‘Aquí no había nada/pueblo / no era pueblo todavía.’ hi020
 ‘Here at first there was no village.’

The second pattern, illustrated in (19a-e) and found in many examples in the corpus, consists of *aimawe* [ajmaße] or variant *aimue* [ajmue] ~ [ajmwe] used alone with a predicative function, with or without the inflected copula verb *pu* 'be.' In this use, I analyze *aimawe/aimue* as a lexical negative existential/locative adjective in an attributive clause construction, as described in §4. In the examples provided below, one can see negation of existence in (19a), (19b) and (19c), negation of location in (19d) and negation of possession in (19e) (possessor encoded by the 3SG dative pronoun *mesa*).

Antoine Guillaume

- | | | ADJ | COP | S |
|---------|---|-----|-----|-----|
| (19) a. | [<i>Biawa tiempo</i>] =mu =da aimue pu-iti-a ejude=kwana. old time =CONTR =PTC nonexistent be-TDM-PST village=PL 'En tiempos antiguos no habían pueblos.' tu001_ott 'In the old days, there were no villages.' [lit. villages were nonexistent] | S | ADJ | |
| b. | <i>Kwati</i> =mu aimue =tsu'u. firewood =CONTR nonexistent =STILL 'La leña todavía no hay.' ci104 'There is no firewood yet.' [lit. firewood was nonexistent] | ADJ | S | ADJ |
| c. | Aimue beu se. Aimue beu. nonexistent PTC fish nonexistent PTC 'Ya no hay pescado, ya no hay.' em075 'There were no fish. There were no (fish).' [lit. fish were nonexistent] | S | ADJ | LOC |
| d. | <i>Ema</i> =mu aimawe beu [<i>kema tawi-jude=su</i>]. 1SG =CONTR nonexistent PTC 1SG.GEN sleep-PLACE=LOC '(Me buscaron ya) yo no estaba en mi cama.' du101 '(They searched for me but) I wasn't in my bed.' [lit. I was nonexistent in my bed] | ADJ | DAT | S |
| e. | Aimue mesa aicha... nonexistent 3SG.DAT meat 'No tenía carne...' ye006 'He didn't have meat.' [lit. the meat was nonexistent to him] | | | |

6 Negation of declarative non-finite verbal main clauses

We now turn to the negation of main clauses with a non-finite verbal predicate. As noted in §3, main clauses with a non-finite verbal predicate express the same propositional content as those with a finite verbal predicate, but here the predicate has a different structure. The lexical verb stem, with or without derivational morphology, does not directly bear the inflectional morphology. The inflectional affixes (the same ones used in finite verb constructions and listed in Table 12.1 (i.e., TAM and 3rd person indexation)) are either carried by a generic auxiliary (light

12 Negation in Tacana (Amazonian Bolivia)

verb), which in this construction is specifically used for this (inflection-carrying) purpose or, more commonly, altogether absent.

The examples in (20a,b), based on the same transitive and intransitive verb stems *tutua* ‘spill’ and *ja-mesia-ti* ‘let go of oneself’ used in finite verb constructions in (4a,b), illustrate non-finite verb constructions with inflections carried by a generic auxiliary.

- (20) transitive and intransitive declarative main clauses with a non-finite verb and an overt auxiliary

- | | | | |
|----|--|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| | V | A | AUX |
| | [tu?twa] | | |
| a. | <i>E-jemi-tsua</i> | =da etse, beu tutua | =da etse <i>y-a</i> . |
| | FUT-remove-go_up | =PTC 1DU PTC spill | =PTC 1DU FUT-do |
| | 'Lo vamos a alzar (la trampa para peces) entre los dos y lo vamos a vaciar.' em045 | | |
| | 'We are going to lift (the fish trap) up and spill them (the fishes) (on the ground).' | | |
| | V | S | AUX |
| | [ha?mesjati] | | |
| b. | <i>Beu, ja-mesia-ti</i> | ema pu-aná . | |
| | PTC MID-let_go_of-MID 1SG | be-REC.PST | |
| | 'Ya me largué.' lp033 | | |
| | 'Then I let go of myself.' | | |

As one can see, there are two auxiliaries, the use of which depends on the transitivity of the predicate: *a* ‘do’ when the predicate is transitive (20a) and *pu* ‘be’ when the predicate is intransitive (20b). The auxiliaries are etymologically related, respectively, to the independent transitive lexical verbs *a* ‘affect, make, do (tr.), say (tr.)’ illustrated in (21a), and the intransitive verb *pu* ‘be/exist, be located, do (itr.), say (itr.)’ which can serve, among other things, as the copula predicate in equation, proper inclusion and attribution clauses (§4) and (less commonly) the predicate of existential/locative clauses (§5), as illustrated in (21b) (repeated).

- (21) a. *Upia [mike ete], ekwanaju y-a.*
 here 2SG.GEN house 1PL.EXCL FUT-do
 'Aquí te lo vamos a hacer tu casa.' au313
 'Here we are going to build your house.'

Antoine Guillaume

- b. *Tueda escuela=su pu-iná.*
 3SG school=LOC be-HAB.PST
 ‘Él estaba en la escuela.’ na205
 ‘He was in the school.’

In the non-finite verb constructions, the auxiliary must follow the lexical verb, whether contiguously or not; in (20a,b), for instance, the auxiliary is not contiguous with the lexical verb, being separated from it by a pronoun in both examples, and also by a particle in (20a). As for the lexical verb in this construction, whether the auxiliary is present or not, it receives a specific intonation contour, with a non-phonological prosodic glottal stop [?] in 1st syllable coda position (see phonological inventory in footnote 4) and apparently a different stress pattern.⁷

As stated above, the inflection-carrying auxiliary is not compulsory, and in fact it is left out most of the time; in this situation, the TAM and identity of 3rd person subjects have to be recovered from the context. This is illustrated with the transitive and intransitive verb stems *nubi-ame* ‘make enter’ in (22a) and *pue-yu* ‘come again/back’ in (22b).

- (22) transitive and intransitive declarative main clauses with a non-finite verb and no overt auxiliary

| | | |
|------------|---|---|
| O | A | V |
| [nu?bjame] | | |

- a. *Beu etseju gringo=ja beu, cuarto=su nubi-ame.*
 PTC 1DU.EXCL gringo=ERG PTC room=LOC enter-CAUS
 ‘Ya a nosotros el gringo al cuarto nos metió e hizo entrar.’ tm057
 ‘The gringo made us enter into the room.’

| | |
|----------|---|
| S | V |
| [pwe?ju] | |

- b. *Pero, [mesa emetse] =mu, ekene pue-yu.*
 but 3SG.GEN owner =CONTR first come-ITER
 ‘Pero su dueño primero se vino.’ ha017
 ‘But his owner came first.’

At the level of the clause, predicates with a non-finite verb and predicates with a finite verb do not require different clausal constructions: the argument-coding system remains the same, with an identical split ergative case-marking system and the same constituent order flexibility.

⁷See footnote 4 for on the stress system in Tacana.

12 Negation in Tacana (Amazonian Bolivia)

However, when it comes to negation, clauses with a non-finite verbal predicate are negated differently from clauses with a finite verbal predicate; the SN construction is not used for their negation. Here, two additional negation constructions are available, both of which only involve a single negation marker, which occurs before the verb. The form of the marker is what distinguishes the constructions, with all other properties being identical. In the first construction, the negation marker is the independent morpheme *aimue* (as in SN) while in the second it is the proclitic *mué=* (segmentally identical to one of the variants of =*mawe* in SN). Unlike in SN, here the lexical verb (or the inflection-carrying auxiliary, if expressed) is never followed or accompanied by a second negation marker.

The negative construction with *aimue* is illustrated in (23a,b) with an overt auxiliary and (24a–c) with no overt auxiliary. In both cases, examples of both transitive and intransitive clauses are provided. Note that unlike in the affirmative counterpart, the lexical verb does not receive a specific intonational contour (glottal stop in 1st syllable coda position), whether marked by *aimue*, as illustrated here, or *mué=*, as illustrated further below.

(23) negative clauses with *aimue* and auxiliary

V AUX

- a. *Biame* *aimue =da dia a-ta-iná.*
 on_the_contrary NEG =PTC eat do-3A-HAB.PST
 ‘Pero no lo comió.’ qu004
 ‘But (the jaguar) would not eat it.’
- V AUX
- b. *Aimue beu, kwinana-yu pu-idha.*
 NEG PTC emerge-ITER be-REM.PST
 ‘Ya no salió más.’ qu033
 ‘He didn’t leave again.’

(24) negative clauses with *aimue* without auxiliary

A O V

- a. *Aimue yama d'aki ba.*
 NEG 1SG.ERG brother_in_law see
 ‘No le he visto al cuñado.’ ch028
 ‘I didn’t see my brother-in-law.’
- S V
- b. *Aimue, ema kwinana-puda.*
 NEG 1SG go_out-FAST
 ‘No he salido rápido.’ ch152

Antoine Guillaume

‘I didn’t go out fast.’

V

- c. *Enekita =pa aimue beu ja-tibi-ti.*
 really =REP NEG PTC MID-detach-MID
 ‘En verdad dice que no se soltó.’ ch082
 ‘Really, (the vine) didn’t break.’

The behavior of *aimue* here is the same as that of *aimue* in SN, being phonologically stressed and free to occur in any position as long as it is before the predicate.

The negative construction with ***mué=*** is illustrated in (25) with an overt auxiliary and (26a–c), with no overt auxiliary.

- (25) negative clause with ***mué=*** and auxiliary

- | | | |
|--|----------------------------|-------------|
| V | AUX | O |
| <i>Mué=pa teje-ti-yu a-ta-idha</i> | [<i>jida mesa ewane</i>] | <i>beu.</i> |
| NEG=REP find-GO-ITER do-3A-REM.PST | that 3SG.GEN | wife PTC |
| ‘Dice que no lo ha ido hallar ese su mujer.’ os043 | | |
| ‘He didn’t find his wife.’ | | |

- (26) negative clauses with ***mué=*** without auxiliary

- | | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| A | V | |
| [mwéshánapa] | | |
| a. | <i>Yama =mu mué=shanapa</i> [...] | [<i>mesa ebakwa manu-iti-a.</i>] |
| | 1SG.ERG =CONTR NEG=know | 3SG.GEN child die-TDM-PST |
| ‘Yo no me he dado cuenta que ha muerto su hijo.’ su130 | | |
| ‘I didn’t realize that his child had died.’ | | |

- | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|--|
| O | V | |
| [mwéemahéutsu] | | |
| b. | <i>Mué=ema jeutsu.</i> | |
| | NEG=1SG respond | |
| ‘No me contestó.’ ch033 | | |
| ‘He did not answer me.’ | | |

- | | | |
|--|--|--|
| | V | |
| [mwé:manu] | | |
| c. | <i>... rusu-ta-idha doctor=ja. Mué=manu.</i> | |
| | sew-3A-REM.PST doctor=ERG NEG=die | |
| ‘Se lo costuró el doctor (el cuero de su cabeza). No ha muerto.’ | | |
| ti041-42 | | |
| ‘The doctor stitched (the scalp of his head). He hasn’t died.’ | | |

12 Negation in Tacana (Amazonian Bolivia)

As one can see from these examples, *mué=*, like *aimue*, does not have a specific position as long as it occurs before the predicate. It can attach to the predicate, as in (26a,c) or to any preverbal host, as in (25) and (26b); note that in (25), *mué=* attaches to a second position clitic, the reportative *=pa*. The two markers *mué=* and *aimue* only differ in their prosodic status, *mué=* being prosodically dependent while *aimue* has prosodic independence. Note that phonological words formed by *mué=* and its following host have a peculiar stress pattern where stress falls on *mué=*, as can be seen in the phonetic transcriptions in (26b–c).⁸

From a functional perspective, it is not fully clear what motivates the use of *aimue* versus *mué=*, although it is likely that they differ in encoding different degrees of emphasis; if so, the longer form, *aimue*, is the more emphatic of the two.

From the perspective of Miestamo's (2005; 2007) typology of negative constructions, negation of clauses with non-finite verbs, like the SN, is symmetrical, as it does not result in any obvious morphosyntactic differences. The argument-coding system and the morphological possibilities on the verbal predicate remain the same. The only difference that was noted is, in relation to the lexical verb, the absence of the prosodic glottal stop [?] in 1st syllable coda position, which is otherwise characteristic of the lexical verb in affirmative non-finite verb constructions.

7 Non-clausal negation

In this section, I describe two types of non-clausal negation: stand-alone negation and constituent negation. Stand-alone negation is realized by way of *aimawe* or *mawe*, whether negation consists in answering a polar question, as in (27), or rectifying a false statement, as in (28) and (29).

(27) response to a polar question

| | | |
|------------|--|---------------------|
| Authority: | <i>Corregidor=ja =mi, e-kisaba-me-ta-ani</i> | <i>apa =mi</i> |
| judge=ERG | =2SG IPFV-ask-CAUS-3A-IPFV.SIT | if =2SG |
| | <i>acompañña a-kwa, misha,</i> | <i>Semana_Santa</i> |
| | accompany do-POT church_service | Holy_Week |

⁸As already mentioned in footnote 4, the rule in Tacanan is that stress falls on the 3rd mora (i.e., vowel or semi-vowel [j] or [w]) counting from the left. Evidence that the normal rule does not apply here can be seen in (26c), where one should obtain [mwemánu] and not [mwé:manu].

Antoine Guillaume

misha=su, awa mawe?

church_service=LOC Q no

‘El corregidor te hace preguntar si puedes acompañar les a la misa de Semana Santa o no?’ su026

‘The corregidor asks whether or not you could accompany them to the Holy Week Mass.’

Sub-prefect: ***Mawe!*** *Aimue =da ema e-puti=mawe.*

no NEG =PTC 1SG FUT-go=NEG

‘No, no voy a ir.’ su028

(‘Do you want to go to Mass with us?’) ‘No! I won’t go!’

- (28) rectification of a false statement

Mother: *Manuame-pe-ta-kwa tse ekwana.*

kill-COMPL-3A-POT MAYBE 1PL

‘;(Tu padre) nos puede matar a toditos!’ au064

‘(Your father) can kill us all’

Son: ***Aimawe!*** *Ema ebiasu tuche-da.*

no 1SG a_lot strong-ASF

‘No, yo tengo más fuerza que él.’ au066

‘No (he can’t kill us)! (Because) I’m stronger (than him).’

- (29) rectification of a false statement

Jaguar: *Jiawe mida yama e-dia.*

now 2SG 1SG.ERG FUT-eat

‘Ahora te voy a comer.’ bu028

‘Now I’m going to eat you.’

Fox: ***Mawe tiyu!*** *Be =tsu ema dia-ji!*

no uncle IMP.NEG =YET 1SG eat-IMP.NEG

‘No tío, no me comes todavía!’ bu029

‘No, Uncle! Don’t eat me yet!’

Constituent negation is realized by way of the enclitic *=mawe* or its variant *=mue*, which is attached to the constituent to be negated. It is attested as a derivation process with nouns (privative negation), as in (30), and adjectives (adjectival antonym negation), as in (31).

- (30) privative negation

12 Negation in Tacana (Amazonian Bolivia)

- a. *Pero pisa=mue =da ema.*
but gun=PRIV =PTC 1SG
'No tengo arma.' co046
'I don't have a gun (lit. I am without a gun / gun-less).'
- b. *Dapia lugar=su kristianu=kwana escuela=mawe.*
there place=LOC person=PL school=PRIV
'En este lugar, no tiene escuela la gente.' na073
'There, in that place, the people don't have schools.' (Lit. are without a school / school-less).

- (31) adjectival antonym negation
- | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| S | ADJ | S | ADJ |
| <i>Tueda sai-da=mawe, ema =mu</i> | | <i>sai-da=kita.</i> | |
| 3SG | nice-ASF=NEG 1SG | =CONTR | nice-ASF=INTENS |
- 'He is bad (lit. not nice) and I am nice.'

8 Negation of hortative and imperatives clauses

Finally, to close the synchronic description of negation strategies in Tacana, we here provide a brief description of negation in commands. The first type is hortative clauses (1st and 3rd person imperative), which in the affirmative polarity are headed by a finite verb marked by a prefix *pa-* instead of TAM inflectional affixes, as illustrated in (32a). When negated, hortative clauses require a preverbal independent particle *be*, which is simply added to the positive construction without further morphosyntactic modifications (same 3rd person indexation, same hortative prefix, same argument-marking and constituent order flexibility).

- (32) a. positive
- | | | | |
|------------------------|---|-------------------------------|---|
| O | V | A | V |
| <i>Tueda pa-dia-ta</i> | | <i>señora=ja, pa-id'i-ta.</i> | |
| that HORT-eat-3A | | wife=ERG HORT-drink-3A | |
- '¡Ese (caldo de gallina) que coma la señora! ¡Que tome!' pa044
'Let the woman eat this (chicken soup)! Let her drink it!'
- b. negative
- | | | | |
|-------------------------------|------------|----------------------|-----------|
| A | V | O | |
| <i>Tueda =mu be pa-dia-ta</i> | | <i>[jida aicha]!</i> | |
| 3SG | =CONTR NEG | HORT-eat-3A | that meat |
- '¡Que el no coma esa carne!' n2.0138 (elicited)
'Don't let him eat that meat!'

Antoine Guillaume

The second type of command clauses is 2nd person imperative clauses, which in affirmative polarity are head by a finite verb marked by the suffix *-ke*, as in (33a). When negated, the same preverbal independent particle *be* must be used. However, the head verb cannot carry *-ke* anymore, which is now replaced by a suffix *-ji*, as in (33b). With regards to the other morphosyntactic properties of the clause, they are the same as in the affirmative.

(33) a. positive

- Dia-ke =tsu empanada, kupari!* “ema a-ta-idha.
eat-IMP =YET empanada compadre 1SG do-3A-REM.PST
“¡Come todavía empanada, compadre!” me dijo (mi comadre).’ su057
“Eat some more ‘empanada,’ compadre!,” (my comadre) said to me.’

b. negative

- Mawe tiyu. Be =tsu ema dia-ji!*
NEG uncle IMP.NEG =YET 1SG eat-IMP.NEG
‘No tío, ¡No me comes todavía!’ bu029
‘No, uncle, don’t eat me yet!’

9 Summary of negation constructions

The following table summarizes all the negation constructions described above. In the schematized constructions, for practical reasons, the most commonly attested variants are given (*aimue* and *=mawe* in most cases).

10 Reconstructing the origin of negation markers and constructions

The goal of this section is to identify, on the basis of internal reconstruction, possible etymologies and evolutionary pathways for the rise of the different negative makers involved in the negation of declarative (interrogative) clausal constructions: the SN construction (§3–5) and the construction (with its two subtypes) used to negate clauses with a non-finite verbal predicate (§6), repeated in Table 12.3.

The negative markers in these constructions are all formally very similar and therefore likely to be historically related; such is not the case with the negative markers involved in negation of command clauses (*be*, *-ji*), the reconstruction

12 Negation in Tacana (Amazonian Bolivia)

Table 12.2: Summary of negation constructions in Tacana

| Type | Construction | Sym-metrical | Construc-tion type |
|--|---|--------------|--------------------|
| <u>Clausal</u> | | | |
| declarative finite verbal main clauses | [... <i>aimue</i> ... V-INFL(= <i>mawe</i>) ...] | yes | 1 |
| non-verbal clauses: | | | |
| equation, inclusion | [... <i>aimue</i> ... NP... (be-INFL)= <i>mawe</i> ...] | yes | |
| attribution | [... <i>aimue</i> ... ADJ... (be-INFL)= <i>mawe</i> ...] | yes | |
| existential/locative | [... <i>aimue</i> ... VPOST-INFL= <i>mawe</i> ...] | yes | |
| | [... <i>aimue</i> ... be-INFL= <i>mawe</i> ...] | yes | |
| <u>Clausal</u> | | | |
| non-verbal clauses: existential/locative | [... <i>aimue</i> ... (be-INFL)] | no | 2 |
| <u>Clausal</u> | | | |
| declarative non-finite verbal main clauses | [... <i>aimue</i> ... V ... (be/do-INFL) ...] | (yes) | 3 |
| | [... <i>mué</i> = ... V ... (be/do-INFL) ...] | (yes) | |
| <u>Non-clausal</u> | | | |
| stand-alone | [<i>aimawe</i>] | — | 4 |
| | [<i>mawe</i>] | — | |
| <u>Non-clausal</u> | | | |
| constituent negation: | | | |
| privative | [N= <i>mawe</i>] | yes | 5 |
| adjectival antonym | [ADJ= <i>mawe</i>] | yes | |
| <u>Clausal</u> | | | |
| hortative | [... <i>be</i> ... HORT-V ...] | yes | 6 |
| prohibitive | [... <i>be</i> ... V- <i>ji</i> ...] | no | |

Antoine Guillaume

Table 12.3: Summary of negation constructions for verbal main clauses in Tacana

| Type of negated constituent | Construction | Symmetrical |
|--|---|-------------|
| clauses with finite verbal predicate or with non-verbal predicates | ... <i>aimue</i> ... predicate(= <i>mawe</i>) ... | yes |
| clauses with non-finite verbal predicate | ... <i>aimue</i> ... V ... (be/do-INFL) <i>mué=</i> ... V ... (be/do-INFL) ... | yes yes |

of which will not be attempted in this paper.⁹ The markers all consist of either *mawe* ~ *mue* used on its own or in combination with a preposed element *ai*, forming *aimawe* ~ *aimue*. Note that *ai* can be used independently of *mawe* ~ *mue*, as an indefinite noun “person/thing, someone/something” (34), suggesting that *aimawe* ~ *aimue* may be an erswhile univerbation of this indefinite pronoun and *mawe* (as in English ‘nothing,’ for example).

- (34) *Enekita beu =pa ai=kwana ja-ba-ti-ana.*
 really PTC =REP thing=PL MID-see-MID-REC.PST
 ‘En verdad dice se alistó sus cosas (para el viaje).’ co080
 ‘Really, he prepared his things (for the trip).’

Depending on the construction, the negation markers *mawe* or *aimue* have different degrees of grammatical or phonological freedom (e.g., *mawe* can be a clitic); they can occupy different positions in the clause (e.g., preposed or postposed to the negated constituent); they can be used alone or in combination with each other (forming an embracing negation construction); and possibly, in the case of the embracing construction, one marker can be optional.

If one looks for possible internal cognates, it is notable that *mawe* and/or *aimue* are also used in many other negative constructions described earlier in this chapter, such as the second existential/locative negation construction (§5), stand-alone negation (§7) and constituent negation (§7).

On the basis of these preliminary observations, we will now proceed to reconstruct at least parts of the history of the two negative constructions. We start with the SN construction in §10.1 and then move on to the reconstruction of negation of clauses with a non-finite verb in §10.2.

⁹One might speculate that *be* is related to *mawe*, which manifests reduced variants such as the clitics *=mue* and *mué=* that come closer to the form of *be*. I will leave this issue for further investigation.

12 Negation in Tacana (Amazonian Bolivia)

10.1 Evolutionary pathway: SN construction

The embracing preposed marker *aimue* and postposed marker *=mawe* that are used in SN have quite distinct grammatical and phonological properties, which suggest that *=mawe* is historically older than *aimue*. Evidence for the likely older status of *=mawe* is to be found in its shorter form (*mawe* ~ *mue*), phonological dependence (clitic status) and rigid position. These properties are all diagnostics of an advanced grammaticalization stage and they can be contrasted with the distinct properties of *aimue*, with its longer form (*aimawe* ~ *aimue*), phonological independence and free position (before the predicate).

One can therefore hypothesize that originally SN was expressed by a single marker, the postposed marker *=mawe*, and that the preposed marker *aimue* was introduced later for reinforcement. If we search for a likely etymology for this newly introduced marker *aimue*, the negative stand-alone word *aimawe* ‘no!’ (27), (28) and (29) – (28) is repeated in (35) below – and the negative existential/locative adjective *aimue* ‘nonexistent’ (19) – (19a) is repeated in (36) below – immediately come to mind, and there is little doubt that the three negation forms (new SN marker, stand-alone negation word and negative existential/locative adjective) are all historically related.

(35) Stand-alone negative *aimawe*

- Mother: *Manuame-pe-ta-kwa tse ekwana.*
 kill-COMPL-3A-POT MAYBE 1PL
 ‘¡(Tu padre) nos puede matar a toditos!’ au064
 ‘(Your father) can kill us all!’
- Son: *Aimawe! Ema ebiasu tuche-da.*
 no 1SG a_lot strong-ASF
 ‘No, yo tengo más fuerza que él.’ au066
 ‘No (he can’t kill us)! (Because) I’m stronger (than him).’

(36) Negative existential/locative adjective in an attributive construction

- [*Biawa tiempo*] =mu =da *aimue* pu-iti-a ejude=kwana.
 old time =CONTR =PTC nonexistent be-TDM-PST village=PL
 ‘En tiempos antiguos no habían pueblos.’ tu001_ott (de Ottaviano 1980: 8)
 ‘In the old days, there were no villages.’ [lit. villages were nonexistent]

With regards to the evolution of their use, the hypothesis pursued here is that the negative existential/locative adjective is older, that it later extended its use as a stand-alone negation word, and that this use made it possible to develop

Antoine Guillaume

a new SN marker. In other words, the immediate etymology of the SN marker *aimue* is a stand-alone negation word, *aimue*, which itself can be traced back to a negative existential/locative predicative adjective *aimue*. According to this scenario, which is schematized in Table 12.4 with the verb ‘go’ as an illustration in English, the evolutionary trajectory followed by the Tacana stand-alone *aimue* would be similar to that of the Brazilian Portuguese stand-alone negator *não* illustrated in (1). A clause-external stand-alone negator, originally used to reinforce a clause-internal negator (stage 2), is reanalyzed as a second clause-internal negator, forming an embracing negation construction (stage 3). Over time, the original clause-internal negator becomes optional (stage 4) and ends up disappearing altogether (stage 5), with the result that it is replaced by the new reinforcing (external stand-alone) negator.

Table 12.4: Evolutionary pathway of Tacana stand-alone negation *aimue* into the marking of SN

| | | | |
|---------|--|--------------------------------------|------------------|
| stage 1 | predicate= <i>mawe</i> | ‘I will not go’ | hypothesized |
| stage 2 | (<i>aimue</i>), predicate= <i>mawe</i> | ‘(No,) I will not go’ | hypothesized |
| stage 3 | <i>aimue</i> (.) predicate= <i>mawe</i> | ‘No(.) I will not go’ | synchronic use |
| stage 4 | <i>aimue</i> predicate(= <i>mawe</i>) | ‘No I will (not) go’ | (synchronic use) |
| stage 5 | <i>aimue</i> predicate | ‘No I will go’ (= I will not go’) | hypothesized |

An alternative hypothesis would be that the immediate etymology for the new SN marker is not the stand-alone use of the negator *aimue* but its use as a negative existential/locative adjective. In the context of SN, this hypothesis is much less plausible, due to the lack of a conceivable source construction and evolutionary scenario. Had the direct etymology been the negative existential/locative adjective, the only source construction available in Tacana that I can think of is where *aimue* negates the existence of a nominal referent, as illustrated in (36) (‘there were no villages’ / ‘villages did not exist’).¹⁰ However, negating an event by way of this construction (e.g. ‘there is no going for me’ / ‘my going is not’) would require important structural changes in the verb form (for instance, the lack of finite morphology) and argument structure (for instance, a different case frame for the core arguments) which are absent in the negation of finite verb constructions. Moreover, the verb to be negated by way of a negative existential/locative

¹⁰ According to Veselinova (2016: 157), “the use of negative existentials with nominalized verb forms is cross-linguistically the most widespread pathway whereby they can be shown to expand into the domain of verbal negation.”

12 Negation in Tacana (Amazonian Bolivia)

adjective should display affirmative polarity; this is not the case, since the verb is marked by the enclitic negator *=mawe*.

As proposed above, it is of course very likely that the SN negator *aimue* and the negative existential/locative adjective *aimue* are historically related, but the link is probably an indirect one, involving an intermediary stand-alone negation stage; cross-linguistically, the move from negated existential predicate to stand-alone negation is a well-attested pathway (Croft 1991: 10, 13–14; Veselinova 2013: 127ff; 2016: 155–156), and when there is synchronic polysemy between the two, the evidence generally points to the negated existential predicate being the source, not the other way around (Croft 1991: 8).

Reconstructing the diachronic development of *=mawe* in the SN construction (stage 1) is a more complex task, for which it will be necessary to resort to comparative data from other Takanan languages. That is beyond the scope of the current paper, and so here I will restrict myself to the observation that the most likely internal cognate is the negative enclitic *=mawe* used alone in constituent negation (privative derivation and adjectival antonym negation; §7).

10.2 Evolutionary pathway: negation of clauses with a non-finite verb

We now move to the discussion of the possible diachrony of the negation construction of clauses with a non-finite verb. As a reminder, here negation is realized by way of a single negation marker which is preposed to the lexical verb and which can be one of two morphemes, *aimue* or *mué=*, giving the following two constructions: [... *aimue* ... V ... (be/do-INFL) ...] and [... *mué=* ... V ... (be/do-INFLECTIONS) ...].

Following the same line of reasoning as above (i.e., taking into account the respective grammatical and phonological properties of *aimue* and *mué=*), it is reasonable to believe that *mué=* is older than *aimue*. This assumption is grounded in the observation that *mué=* displays a shorter form and less phonological independence (being a clitic) than *aimue*; note that in terms of their syntactic distribution, both are free to occur anywhere before the lexical verb. The hypothesis is also corroborated by philological evidence found in a Christian catechism in Tacana from the mid-19th century, which only displays a negation construction that corresponds to that with *mué=*. In the material available, which goes back about 150 years, we see that all the instances of negation of verbal main clauses¹¹ are realized by way of a preverbal marker *mawe* (spelled *mave*) that precedes a

¹¹ Note that in the affirmative polarity, the catechism shows examples of clauses with both finite and non-finite verbs.

Antoine Guillaume

non-finite verb, as in the three examples in (37), and which looks basically similar to our synchronic construction [... *mué*= ... V ... (be/do-INFL) ...].

- (37) Old Tacana (mid-19th century)
- | | | | |
|---|-----|---|-----|
| S | NEG | V | AUX |
|---|-----|---|-----|
- a. *Quejutcua mara mi mave confesa pu?*
 how_many year 2SG NEG confess be
 ‘How many years have you not confessed?’ (*Lafone Quevedo* 1902: 297)
- | | | |
|---|-----|---|
| A | NEG | V |
|---|-----|---|
- b. *Jucuajasu ni mi mave ichegua.*
 why MAYBE 2SG NEG kill
 ‘¿Y por qué no lo mataste?’ (*Lafone Quevedo* 1902: 310)
 ‘Why didn’t you kill it?’
 NEG V
- | | | | |
|-----|------|-----|----------------------------------|
| NEG | know | why | 2SG.ERG 1SG IPFV-see-IPFV.SIT1/2 |
|-----|------|-----|----------------------------------|
- c. *Mave chanapa cuaja miada ema e-ba-nia.*
 ‘No sé porqué me miráis.’ (*Lafone Quevedo* 1902: 310)
 ‘I don’t know why you are looking at me.’

On the basis of these synchronic observations and the historical data, it is possible to suggest that the negation pattern with *mué*= corresponds to the original construction and that the negation pattern with *aimue* is a more recent development.

Turning to the reconstruction of the development paths, since both patterns only differ in the formal and prosodic properties of their negation marker, it can be suggested that they arose in a similar way but at different times in the past. In terms of likely etymologies for *aimue* and *mué*, the same candidates are available as those for the *aimue* and =*mawe* negators in SN: the negative stand-alone word *aimue* ‘no!’ (35) and negative existential/locative predicative adjective *aimue* (36), to which we can add the second negative stand-alone word *mawe* ‘no!’, illustrated in (38) (repeated from 27).

- (38) *Mawe! Aimue =da ema e-puti=mawe.*
 no NEG =PTC 1SG FUT-go=NEG
 ‘No, no voy a ir.’ su028
 (‘Do you want to go to Mass with us?’) ‘No! I won’t go!'

Although *mawe*, unlike *aimue*, is not attested as a negative existential/locative predicative adjective in present-day Tacana, it is plausible that it could have been used in such a way in the past, and that this function fell into disuse.

12 Negation in Tacana (Amazonian Bolivia)

Although a scenario similar to that proposed for the reconstruction of SN – a Jespersen Cycle reinforcement process by way of a stand-alone negator replacing a former negator in a clause with a non-finite verb – is not completely inconceivable, here there is no evidence available which would support it. That is, there is no possibility of having the two negative markers *aimue* and *mué=* co-occurring in the same construction.

An alternative scenario that seems more probable would be one which possibly involved as the source construction for both patterns (that with *aimue* and that with *mué=*) not a clause with a non-finite verb, but a negative existential/locative predicative adjective of the clause type illustrated in (36) ('there were no villages' / 'villages did not exist'). As commented in footnote 11, this evolutionary pathway is cross-linguistically very common. From this perspective, one could imagine that the transitive and intransitive SN constructions (e.g., in (24a) 'I didn't see my brother-in-law' and (24b) 'I didn't go out fast') come from the reanalysis of clauses with a nominalized verb as the S argument of a negative existential/locative predicate. These are translatable literally as 'there is no seeing of my brother-in-law by me' for (24a) and 'there is no fast going out for me' for (24b), respectively. An argument in favor of this hypothesis is that here, unlike in the SN construction with finite verbs, the verb does show some similarities with nominal referents in negative existential predicate constructions, in particular by being obligatorily non-finite and in an affirmative form. Moreover, the verb to be negated by way of a negative existential/locative adjective displays affirmative polarity.

Yet, there are several unresolved issues with this hypothesis; in particular, there are many divergent properties between the hypothetical negative existential predicate source construction and the target negative construction with a non-finite verb, which would remain to be explained. One such property is argument coding. In the negation construction with a non-finite verb, the argument coding is identical to that of basic declarative affirmative clauses (the same split ergative case-marking system). If the negation construction with a non-finite verb had originated in an existential predicate, one would expect a different coding pattern, one which should reflect how the arguments can be coded in nominal predicate construction. Notably, one would expect the S and the A of the SN construction to be marked like an experiencer argument in a nominal predicate construction, with dative(+purpose) case marking, as in (39a,b); note that (39a) is repeated from (19e).

Antoine Guillaume

- | | ADJ | DAT | S |
|------|-----------------|--|--------------------|
| (39) | a. <i>Aimue</i> | <i>mesa</i> | <i>aicha...</i> |
| | | nonexistent 3SG.DAT | meat |
| | | 'No tenía carne...' ye006 | |
| | | 'He didn't have meat.' [lit. the meat was nonexistent to him] | |
| | b. <i>Aimue</i> | <i>beju dhidha kema=puji.</i> | |
| | | nonexistent PTC | night 1SG.DAT=PURP |
| | | 'Ya no había noche para mi.' du023 | |
| | | 'The was no night for me (because I could see at night as well as during the day)' du023 | |

Another problematic property concerns the form and morphosyntactic characteristics of the auxiliaries that can be optionally used in both affirmative and negative clauses with a non-finite verb (to carry the inflectional affixes), namely *a* when it is transitive (e.g., 20a) and *pu* when the SN clause is intransitive (e.g., 20b). First, in negative existential predicates, the transitive auxiliary *a* – or better said, its etymological source *a* ‘affect, make, do (tr.), say (tr.)’ – cannot be used. Second, even though in negative existential predicates the intransitive auxiliary *pu* – or better said, its etymological source *pu* ‘be/exist, be located, do (itr.), say (itr.)’ – can be used, as illustrated in (40), it must be followed by the negator =*mawe* in addition to *aimue*, a construction which can be analyzed as the embracing SN of clauses with finite verb constructions [... *aimue* ... V-INFLECTIONS(=*mawe*) ...].

- (40) *Upia =mu =da aimue ejude ekene pu-iti-a=mawe.*
 here =CONTR =PTC nonexistent village first be-PFV-PST=NEG
 'Aquí no había nada/pueblo / no era pueblo todavía.' hi020
 'Here (at that time) there was no village at the beginning.'

Additional work is needed to investigate further whether this second scenario is supported by the data or if other hypotheses need to be sought.

11 Summary and conclusion

This paper presented for the first time a synchronic and diachronic study of negation markers and patterns in Tacana as applying to clauses (declarative/interrogative and commands) and constituents. The diachronic part focused on two major negation construction: SN and negation of clauses with non-finite verbs.

12 Negation in Tacana (Amazonian Bolivia)

Starting with SN, I argued that its embracing pattern likely arose out of a Jespersen Cycle process in which a stand-alone negator ‘no,’ originally used outside of a negative clause for pragmatic reinforcement, is in the process of replacing the original postverbal SN marker inside of the clause. Taking into account the actual polysemy between this stand-alone word and the negative existential/locative predicative adjective ‘nonexistent,’ I proposed to ultimately trace the origin of the new SN marker back to a negative existential predicate, thereby adding Tacana negation to the list of cases where the Jespersen and negative existential cycles intertwine.

The reconstructed grammaticalization path is also interesting from a diachronic typological perspective because it goes from the right of the verb to the left of the verb, unlike the more familiar direction from the left of the verb to the right of the verb. As such, the Tacana pattern corresponds to what [van der Auwera & Vossen \(2016\)](#) and [Vossen \(2016\)](#) call a Jespersen Cycle “in reverse”.

Continuing with the second construction, negation of clauses with non-finite verbs, it was proposed that they both directly arose, albeit at different times, out of a negative existential predicate construction where the original function of *aimue* and *mué=* was to negate the existence of a nominalized (non-finite) verb. However, if this hypothesis is correct, how the original intransitive negative existential predicate construction came to display all the synchronic properties of negated clauses with non-finite verbs, which are the same as in the SN construction (split-ergative case marking and alternation of transitivity-sensitive auxiliaries), remains largely unexplained and calls for further research.

Abbreviations

| | | | |
|-------|--|---------|-----------------------------|
| () | morpheme that does not appear on the surface (in morpheme line) | INFL | inflection |
| [] | multiple-word constituent | INTENS | intensifier |
| ASF | adjective suffix | MID | middle |
| ASSC | associative | NPF | noun prefix |
| CONTR | contrastive | POST | posture |
| DEPR | depreciative | POT | potential |
| DUBIT | dubitative | PRIV | privative |
| HORT | hortative | REC.PST | recent past |
| | | REM.PST | remote past |
| | | REP | reportative |
| | | TDM | temporal distance marker |

Antoine Guillaume

Acknowledgements

Part of the research reported in this paper has been presented at the following conferences: Amazonicas VI (Laetitia, Colombia, 24-28 May 2016), Syntax of the World's Languages VII (Mexico City, Mexico, 17-19 August 2016), Annual Meeting of the Societas Linguistica Europaea 50 (Zurich, Switzerland, 10-13 September 2017) and Syntax of the World's Languages VIII (Paris, 3-5 September 2018). I am grateful to the audiences of these meetings for useful feedback. The paper has also benefited from further valuable comments by Denis Creissels, Olga Krasnoukhova, Françoise Rose, Armin Schwegler, one anonymous reviewer, and Ljuba Veselinova and Arja Hamari as editors of the present volume. Finally, I am grateful to the ASLAN project (ANR-10-LABX-0081) of Université de Lyon for its financial support within the program “*Investissements d'Avenir*” (ANR-11-IDEX-0007) of the French government operated by the National Research Agency (ANR).

References

- Creissels, Denis. 2006. *Syntaxe générale: Une introduction typologique*. Paris: Hermès – Lavoisier.
- Croft, William. 1991. The evolution of negation. *Journal of Linguistics* 27(1). 1–27.
- de Ottaviano, Ida. 1980. *Textos tacana*. Riberalta: Instituto Lingüístico de Verano.
- Guillaume, Antoine. 2016. Split ergative marking in Tacana: Towards a historical reconstruction of a counter-universal pattern. Presented at the Laboratorio di Linguistica, Scuola Normale Superiore, Pisa, Italia.
- Guillaume, Antoine. Forthcoming. Takanan languages. In Patience Epps & Lev Michael (eds.), *Amazonian languages: An international handbook*, no pages. Berlin: de Gruyter Mouton.
- Lafone Quevedo, Samuel. 1902. *Arte y vocabulario de la lengua tacana*: Manuscrito del R. P. Fray Nicolás Armentia con introducción, notas y apéndices por Samuel A. Lafone Quevedo. Revista del Museo de La Plata 10. 63–172.
- Miestamo, Matti. 2005. *Standard negation: The negation of declarative verbal main clauses in a typological perspective*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Miestamo, Matti. 2007. Negation: An overview of typological research. *Language and Linguistics Compass* 1(5). 552–570.
- Ottaviano, John & Ida de Ottaviano. 1965. Tacana. In Esther Matteson (ed.), *Gramáticas estructurales de lenguas bolivianas*, 309–417. Riberalta: Instituto Lingüístico de Verano.

12 Negation in Tacana (Amazonian Bolivia)

- Ottaviano, John & Ida de Ottaviano. 1967. Tacana. In Esther Matteson (ed.), *Bolivian Indian grammars*, 139–207. Norman: Summer Institute of Linguistics of the University of Oklahoma.
- Ottaviano, John & Ida de Ottaviano. 1989. *Diccionario tacana-castellano, castellano-tacana*. Dallas: Summer Institute of Linguistics.
- Schwegler, Armin. 1988. Word-order changes in predicate negation strategies in Romance languages. *Diachronica* 5(1–2). 21–58.
- van der Auwera, Johan. 2009. The Jespersen cycles. In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change* (Linguistics Today 146), 35–71. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- van der Auwera, Johan & Frens Vossen. 2016. Jespersen cycles in the Mayan, quechuan and maipurean languages. In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change continued* (Linguistics Today 227), 189–218. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2013. Negative existentials: A cross-linguistic study. *Italian Journal of Linguistics* 25(1). 107–145.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2016. The negative existential cycle viewed through the lens of comparative data. In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change continued* (Linguistics Today 227), 139–187. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Vossen, Frens. 2016. *On the typology of the Jespersen cycles*. University of Antwerp. (Doctoral dissertation).

Chapter 13

Existential negation in O'dam

Michael Everdell^a & Gabriela García Salido^b

^aUniversity of Texas at Austin ^bCEA-FCPyS-Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México

This chapter discusses the properties of existential constructions as well as standard and existential negation in the Uto-Aztecan language O'dam. In terms of the negative existential cycle, O'dam is a Type A language where existential constructions are negated by means of standard negation strategies. We also compare existential negation in O'dam to that of several other Southern Uto-Aztecan languages, most of which appear to be Type B languages. We find that standard negation and existential negation strategies have overall played very little role in each other's development in O'dam and across Southern Uto-Aztecan.

Keywords: O'dam, Southern Uto-Aztecan, existential and locative predication, historical

1 Introduction

In this chapter we discuss existential negation in O'dam (Southeastern Tepehuán)¹ and compare the negation strategies used to those of other Southern Uto-Aztecan languages. O'dam uses several strategies to express existential meaning: the existential predicate *jai'ch*, as in (1), positionals and movement verbs such as *daa* 'sit' in (2), and copular constructions, as in (3). All existential predication strategies in O'dam are also compatible with definite subjects, where they express a locative meaning, rather than an existential one.

- (1) *Ya' jai'ch-am gu o'dam.*

DEM.PROX EX-3PL.SBJ DET O'dam

'There are O'dam.' (Text_072011_PSC_GG_elcuidadodelamujer1, 15:37)

¹We use O'dam here in accordance with the community's preferences.



Michael Everdell & Gabriela García Salido

- (2) *Añ na=ø-gu' gui'-ñi mu'-ñi ja'k daa gu*
 1SG.SBJ SUB=3SG.SBJ-ADV DEM.DIST-VIS DEM.DIST-VIS DIR sit.SG DET
di'i'n.
 mother.POSSD
 ‘As for me, because the mother is over there (Lit. the mother sits over there).’ (Text_102010_CFC_GGS_Cuandolacuranderaeraniña, 19:57)
- (3) *para dhi balh-cha'm pai' ja'p pai' ji'k na jir=ki~kcham*
 for DEM.PROX basket-on where DIR where some SUB COP=PL~house
 ‘for those in The Basket over there where there are houses’ (García Salido et al. 2021)

Existential negation is largely attested as clausal negation, although preverbal (as opposed to postverbal) constituent negation is also attested. O’dam is a Type A language² because all negation is expressed through one of two particles: *cham* and *cham tu*. O’dam contrasts with other Southern Uto-Aztecan languages, which are largely type B, except Pima Bajo and Guarijío, which are types A and A ~ B, respectively. The existential negation type, as well as the standard and existential negation markers of each language examined here are shown in Table 13.1. We find that there is little evidence that either negation type played a role in the other’s development. The etymological variety in the standard and existential negators suggests that both sets of markers emerge, evolve and are replaced along distinct pathways.

In §2 we briefly lay out some of the characteristics of O’dam, focusing on constituent order and argument expression. In §3 we describe the strategies that have been attested as expressing existential meaning. In §4 we discuss negation strategies in the language, beginning with standard negation (§4.1) and ending with existential negation (§4.2). We then take a broader look at the place of other Uto-Aztecan languages on the negative existential cycle in §5 and then discuss a possible pathway of change in standard and existential negation in O’dam in §6.

2 Basic characteristics of O’dam

O’dam is a Uto-Aztecan language and is a variety of Southern Tepehuan. As of the last census, there are approximately 36,543 speakers of Southern Tepehuan,

²Croft (1991) describes 3 language types, relating to various stages in the development of existential negation. In Type A, the standard negation strategy is used to negate verbal and existential clauses. In Type B, existentials are only negated by a special strategy. In Type C, the standard negation strategy differs from the existential negation strategy, but the existential negator is regularly used for verbal negation.

13 Existential negation in O'dam

Table 13.1: Southern Uto-Aztecán Existential Negation Cycle

| Language | Existential Negation Type | Standard Negation Marker | Existential Negation Marker |
|-------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| O'dam | A | <i>cham (tu')</i> | — |
| Northern Tepehuan | B | <i>mai/tomali</i> | <i>tiípu(ka)</i> |
| Pima Bajo | A | <i>im/kova</i> | — |
| Cora | B | <i>ka</i> | <i>ka + me'e</i> |
| Huichol | B | <i>ka-</i> | <i>mawe</i> or <i>ka + xuawe</i> |
| Guarajío | A ~ B | <i>ki=</i> | <i>ki'te</i> or <i>ki=mani</i> |

which consists of three varieties O'dam, Audam (Southwestern Tepehuan) and Central Tepehuan. The majority of Southern Tepehuan speakers speak O'dam and live primarily in the Mexican state of Durango with smaller communities of speakers in Nayarit and Zacatecas (INEGI 2015).

An O'dam clause obligatorily consists of a verb, all other clausal constituents are optional and it is quite rare for multiple DPs to appear in a sentence (Willett 1991; García Salido 2014). The language is V-initial with S and O arguments being freely ordered following the verb, this is shown in (4) and (5) where the subject and primary object appear in opposite orders.³

(4) Verb-Primary Object-Subject

- Mummu ja-kukpa-am [gu ja'tkam]_{PO} [gu sandaarux]_{SBJ..}
 DEM.DIST 3PL.PO-lock.up-3PL.SBJ DET persons DET soldiers
 'The soldiers lock up people there (in Santiago Teneraca).'
 (E1_32011_IA_GGS)

(5) Verb-Subject-Primary Object

- Ya' sap pu=x-maax-ka' na=m-pai' daghia' [gu
 DEM.PROX RPRT.UI SENS=COP-know-STAT SUB=3PL.SBJ-ADV grab DET

³S and O orders are equally free in matrix and subordinate clauses.

Michael Everdell & Gabriela García Salido

*chío'ñ]*_{SBJ} [gu ubii]_{PO..}

man DET woman

'Here one could tell where they grab her, the man to the woman.'

(Text_082011_CRG_GGS_El mito, 00:11)

DPs are not marked for case, instead grammatical roles are indicated through verbal argument affixes. Subjects are marked with a subject suffix, or preverbal free form as in (7), and a prefix on the verb that agrees with the primary object. By primary object, we mean that only one object is marked on the verb even if the clause contains more than one object.⁴ The object that is marked on the verb is generally the most prominent (i.e. human, animate), although the exact factors that determine primary objecthood are still unknown. Both verbs in (6) and (7) realize the same object marking, the 3PL marker *ja-*. The primary object marker in (7) refers to the plural recipient rather than the theme⁵ because the recipient is more prominent.

- (6) Ya' *ja-ai-ch-dha'-iñ..*
DEM.PROX 3PL.PO-arrive-CAUS-CONT-1SG.SBJ
'I brought them.' (Elicitation_032011_IA_GGS)

- (7) Añ tu-ja-maa gu ta~toxkolh gu koi'.
1SG.SBJ DUR-3PL.PO-give.PFV DET PL~pig DET food
'As for me, I gave food to the pigs.' (E1_032011_IA_GGS)

While O'dam currently exhibits verb-initial order, it maintains elements of the verb-final order of Proto Uto-Aztecán, these are shown in Table 13.2 (García Salido 2014; García Salido & Reyes Valdez 2015, also see Langacker 1977: 24–26 for a reconstruction of Proto Uto-Aztecán word order). In the next section we describe the attested strategies in O'dam for expressing existential meaning. First, we consider the non-verbal existential predicate *jai'ch*, then we consider other strategies based off of locative constructions and a copular construction.

⁴Note that the notion here of “primary object language” is somewhat different from the primary object alignment system. Dryer (1986) defines a primary object marking language as that which treats the recipient of a ditransitive sentence in the same way as the object/patient of the monotransitive sentence. However, O'dam primary object marking is somewhat less consistent.

⁵Mass nouns like *koi'* ‘food’ are morphologically and syntactically singular so 3PL *ja-* can only refer to the overtly plural recipient.

13 Existential negation in O'dam

Table 13.2: O'dam features with respect to order of constituents (García Salido 2014, García Salido & Reyes Valdez 2015)

| VO | O'dam | OV |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| prepositions | X | postpositions |
| initial question particle | X | final question particle |
| verb – adpositional phrase | X | adpositional phrase – verb |
| auxiliary verb – main verb | X | main verb – auxiliary verb |
| main clause – subordinate clause | X (temporal) | subordinate clause – main clause |
| noun – genitive | X | genitive - noun |
| initial adverbial subordinator | X | final adverbial subordinator |
| initial complementizer | X | final complementizer |
| noun – relative clause | X | relative clause - noun |

3 Existential constructions

Here we consider an *existential construction/existential* to be a construction that expresses a proposition about the existence of some entity (McNally 2011: 1829). In many languages these constructions are atypical in one or more ways: non-canonical subject order, lack of agreement between the subject and predicate, special morphology, specialized negation, etc. However, as we discuss in this section, existential constructions in O'dam do not appear to be encoded differently from non-existentials, therefore we cannot turn to such diagnostics. We also follow other authors in this volume, as well as Veselinova (2014; 2016) in assuming the definiteness restriction, where existential constructions are constrained to indefinite nominals, although see Ziv (1982); Reuland & ter Meulen (1987); Abbott (1997); Beaver et al. (2006); McNally (2016) for further discussion and criticisms.

O'dam uses several strategies to encode existential meaning. The primary strategy is the non-verbal existential predicate *jai'ch*, shown in (8-11). García Salido (2014: 93) analyses *jai'ch* as a non-verbal predicate because it takes morphology that otherwise only appears on non-verbal predicates, such as the stative marker *-ka'* in (11).

Michael Everdell & Gabriela García Salido

- (8) Ya' *jai'ch-am gu o'dam..*
DEM.PROX EX-3PL.SBJ DET O'dam
‘Here, there are O'dam.’ (Text_072011_PSC_GG_elcuidadodelamujer1,
15:37)
- (9) *Na=ø=gu' xib makam ba-jai'ch gu kostumbre..*
SUB=3SG.SBJ-ADV today different COMPL-EX DET custom
‘because now there is a different custom’
(Text_072011_PSC_GGS_elcuidadodelamujer1, 8:50)
- (10) *Jai'ch=aa gu jabook matai mi'-ñi bibiatam jup-kai'ch gu Juan*
EX=Q DET light lime DEM.MED-VIS spring ITER-say DET Juan
pui'-ñi dho té-kéé-ka' na sap jai'ch jup-kai'ch gu
SENS-1SG.SBJ DIREV DUR-hear-STAT SUB RPRT.UI EX ITER-say DET
Peegro..
Pedro
“Is there lime in the spring?” Juan asked “I have heard that there is” said
Pedro’ (Willett & Willett 2015: 76)
- (11) *Cham jai'ch-ka' na=m tu' jugia'..*
NEG EX-STAT SUB=3PL.SBJ something eat
‘There was nothing to eat.’ (Text_072011_PSC_GGS_elcuidadodelamujer1,
9:40)

The *jai'ch* predicate is also used for locative predication, as in (12-13). There is no clear syntactic difference between locative and existential *jai'ch*. Both take standard subject marking, as in (8) and (12), and standard V-initial word order. One possible difference is that in our data existential predictions are only attested with overt DPs. In contrast, *jai'ch* in locative contexts is attested without a DP referring to the subject. Posture seems to have a cultural significance, in our corpora women tend to be associated with sitting posture *daa*, men with standing *kiik* and we believe that *jai'ch* is possibly used here for things that are bad or taboo (i.e. they lack posture). In our experience, mestizo doctors (12), as opposed to Tepehuan *curanderos*, are rarely talked about and the second reference to *animales* (from Spanish ‘animals’) in (13) refers to animals under the influence of a demon. Thus both apparently postureless subjects here appear to be taboo or bad, although, we must admit that this is tentative and requires further investigation.

13 Existential negation in O'dam

- (12) *Mia'n jaich-am gui' na=m jaroi' jich-rebisar-ka'.*
 close EX-3PL.SBJ DEM.DIST SUB=3PL.SBJ who 1PL.PO-check-STAT
 'They [meztizo doctors] are close, the ones that check us.'
 (Text_072011_PSC_GGS_elcuidadodelamujer1, 04:27)
- (13) *Kuantas animales bhijidir ja'p kantar-im-am gio jumai bhiji ja'p cuántas animales DIR DIR sing-PROG-3PL.SBJ and other DIR DIR kiik gé ja'ok' kuj-im na=ø-ji'k jaich-am gu stand.sg great demon roar-PROG SUB=3SG.SBJ-some EX-3PL.SBJ DET animales bhai' ba-kujim-am.*
animales DIR COMPL-roar-PROG-3PL.SBJ
 'how many animals came singing...the other was standing over there, a great demon came roaring, all the animals came roaring
 (Text003_Hipolito_los2compadres, 03:13)

Positional verbs in O'dam are generally used for locative constructions (García Salido 2017) but in (14–15) we see them used for existential meaning. Similarly, the verb *oilhia* ‘move’⁶ can be used for existential meaning, as in (16).

- (14) *Mi' kiik ma'n gu tua bhai'=ñich ji dhaibu.*
 DEM.MED stand.SG one DET tree DIR=1SG.SBJ.PFV FOC sit
 'There was a tree (Lit. there stands a tree), and I climbed and sat there.'
 (Text_092010_HSA_GGS_Los2compadres, 4:51)
- (15) *Dai sap ja'm-ni gok am bha daraa gu u'~ub ti~tiya.*
 only RPRT PRT-PREC two 3PL.SBJ DIR sit.PL.SBJ DET PL~woman PL~young
 'but that there were only two there (sitting), two girls' (García Salido et al. 2021)
- (16) *Mi oipo-'am quince gu ja'tkam mi piesta.*
 DEM.MED move.PL-3PL.SBJ quince DET people DEM.MED party
 'Are there fifteen people at the party?' (Elicitation_082018_MA_ME)

Positional verbs and *oilhia* ‘move’ appear to be compatible with both definite and indefinite existential and non-existential locative meanings. The determiner *gu* is underspecified for definiteness and can be pragmatically linked to (in)definiteness

⁶This is a suppletive verb, *oilhia*' is the form for singular subjects, while *oipo* is the form for plural subjects.

Michael Everdell & Gabriela García Salido

based on context or the appearance of certain quantifiers. Notice in (10), reproduced below, that *gu jabook* is not referring to a definite referent, only the existence of some referent. Later in the same utterance *gu Juan* and *gu Peegro* both have definite and specific referents. For further discussion of O'dam determiners and definiteness see Everdell (2018: 25–28).

- (17) *Jai'ch=aa gu jabook matai mi'-ñi bibiatam jup-kai'ch gu Juan*
EX=Q DET light lime DEM.MED-VIS spring ITER-say DET Juan
pui'-ñi dho té-kéé-ka' na sap jai'ch jup-kai'ch gu
SENS-1SG.SBJ DIREV DUR-hear-STAT SUB RPRT.UI EX ITER-say DET
Peegro.
Pedro

“Is there lime in the spring?” Juan asked “I have heard that there is” said Pedro’ (Willett & Willett 2015: 76)

It is unsurprising that O'dam uses locative predicates for both locative (18–19) and existential meaning (14–16), even though it also has a separate existential predicate. The relationship between locatives and existentials has been well documented, including from a diachronic perspective (e.g. Breivik 1981; Gaeta 2013). The full set of positional verbs is shown in Table 13.3, because they are suppletive for number, we show their singular and plural forms.

- (18) *Añ na=ø-gu' gui'-ñi mu'-ñi ja'k daa gu*
1SG.SBJ SUB=3SG.SBJ-ADV DEM.DIST-VIS DEM.DIST-VIS DIR sit.SG DET
di'i'n.
mother.POSSD
‘As for me, because the mother is over there (Lit. the mother sits over there).’ (Text_102010_CFC_GGS_Cuandolacuranderaeraniña, 19:57)
- (19) *Jum-kuidar-ka' nai' na=m tu-oipo.*
MID-take.care-STAT DIR SUB=3PL.SBJ DUR-move.PL
‘(They) need to take are of themselves where they are around.’
(Text_072011_PSC_GGS_elcuidadodelamujer1, 2:09)

The final existential strategy we find in O'dam is a copular construction with a PP or noun. Copular constructions in O'dam are formed by a copula that appears as a preclitic on the predicate expression. The element derived by the copula is treated as part of the predicate and is not treated as a syntactic object (i.e. it does not receive a coreferenced object prefix). The copula construction is limited to intransitive valency and the aspectual suffixes *-ka* ‘stative’ and *-t* ‘imperfective’.

13 Existential negation in O'dam

Table 13.3: Positional verbs in O'dam (Everdell & García Salido 2019)

| SG | PL | Meaning |
|-------------|--------------|--------------------|
| <i>kiik</i> | <i>guguk</i> | stand animate |
| <i>kiik</i> | <i>tut</i> | stand inanimate |
| <i>boo'</i> | <i>bobuk</i> | lay down animate |
| <i>kat</i> | <i>bit</i> | lay down inanimate |
| <i>daa</i> | <i>daara</i> | sit |
| <i>sé'</i> | <i>sése'</i> | hang |

The aspectual restriction García Salido (2014: 88ff) considers to be diagnostic of their status as non-verbal predicates.

- (20) *Na=p jir=[xib-kam]-ka'.*
 SUB=2SG.SBJ COP=today-from-STAT
 ‘When you were new.’ (García Salido 2014: 89)

In existential copula constructions, the nominal appears as either a bare N, as in (21), or as derived with a postposition, as in (22). The most common copula used for existential predication is *jir*.⁷

- (21) *Dhu sap buimuk mo bhai=r-piasta-ka' ji bhai'-ñi*
 DIREV RPRT.UI tomorrow doubt DIR=COP-fiesta-STAT FOC DEM.MED-VIS
 dam-dir na-ø-pai'=r-iskuel.
 up-from SUB=3SG.SBJ-where=COP-school
 ‘Supposedly, tomorrow there is a party up here where there is a school.’
 (Text_092011_MMCGGS_Elborrachoylamuerte, 14:46)

- (22) *Para dhi balh-cha'm pai' ja'p pai' ji'k na=ø*
 for DEM.PROX basket-on where DIR where some SUB-3SG.SBJ
 jir=ki~kcham.
 COP=PL~house
 ‘For those in The Basket over there where there are houses’
 (García Salido et al. 2021)

⁷O'dam has a second copula *jix-*, which is related to temporary states, while *jir-* is used for permanent states (Martínez Córdova 2016).

Michael Everdell & Gabriela García Salido

While we generally find the copula construction being used for existential predication, we see in (23–24) that it is also compatible with locative predication. The sentences below are minimally changed from (21) and (22), respectively. We use possessor prefixes to force a locative reading, because attributive possession presupposes possession and existence (Mithun 2001).

- (23) *cham tu' bhai ja'k jir=jiñ-piasta jir=bhammu-ñi ja'k*
 NEG DIR DIR COP=1SG.POSS-party COP=DIR-VIS DIR
na-pai'=r-jum-iskuel
 SUB-where=COP-2SG.POSS-school

‘My party is not up there, it is where your school is.’
 (Elicitation_082019_WG_MSE)

- (24) *Para dhi balh-cha'm pai' ja'p pai' ji'k na=ø*
 for DEM.PROX basket-on where DIR where some SUB=3SG.SBJ
jir=jiñ-ki~kcham.
 COP=1SG.POSS-PL~house
- ‘For those in The Basket over there where my houses are.’
 (Elicitation_082019_WG_MSE)

Now that we have discussed the expression of existential predication in O’dam, we turn to negation. First we discuss standard negation strategies in §4.1, then we discuss the use of standard negation in existential predictions §4.2, and an existential negation strategy that does not have an attested positive syntactic counterpart.

4 Negation

4.1 Standard negation

Miestamo (2005) defines standard negation as the negation of simple indicative sentences using an overt verbal predicate; in the following subsections, we show that O’dam uses the same strategy for both standard negation and existential negation. Standard negation in O’dam is marked using the particle *cham tu'* and its shortened form *cham* (García Salido 2014: 109). The two negation strategies are distinguished by the position of the particle, but both can be used for clausal or constituent negation. For clausal negation, the negative particle precedes the verb, as in (25) and (26). For constituent negation, the negation particle follows the negated elements (e.g. DPs), as in (27). The negated element in these examples

13 Existential negation in O'dam

in underlined. It is rare but there are a few attested examples where *cham tu'* precedes a negated element that is not a verb, like in (28-29), although this is not attested for *cham*.

- (25) *Karabiñ-ki'n tii pu=p jiñ-ma'yasa na=ñich cham oi*
 carabine-with NRINT SENS=IT 1SG.PO-shoot SUB=1SG.SBJ NEG go.PFV
 'With a rifle he wanted to shoot me because I did not go.'
 (Text_062011_ESS_GGS_susamores, 04:51)
- (26) *Na=ø cham tu' tu=x-pasarui-dha*
 SUB=3SG.SBJ NEG DUR=COP-happen-APPL
 'So that nothing happens to us.' (Text028/
 Text_102010_MCC_GGS_Losmuchachosquebuscabancomida, 07:16)
- (27) *Ma'nim dhu gu siman ji na=ñ chu-bos-ka' gu nabat*
 one.time DIREV DET week FOC SUB=1SG.SBJ DUR-sweep-STAT DET mestizo
cham na=ø-jax xia'lhi-dha'.
 NEG SUB=3SG.SBJ-how dawn-CONT
 'Once a week, I sweep, but the mestiza does not, she sweeps whenever
 she wakes up.' (Text_072011_PSC_GGS_elcuidadodelamujer2, 08:10)
- (28) *Cham tu' tu' ja'tkam ja'pi xi'~xbulhi-k*
 NEG something people but PL~swirl-PNCT
 'They were not human, they were swirls.'
 (Text_092011_MMC_GGS_Lamujerquenopodiatenerhijos, 12:20)
- (29) *Dhu ji xib ji cham tu' kabuimuk.*
 DIREV FOC today FOC NEG tomorrow
 'Well today, not tomorrow.' (Text_092011_Varios_GGS_pláticaenlacocina,
 05:05)

In addition to clauses and noun phrases, *cham* and *cham tu'* are used to negate directionals and demonstratives (30) and pronouns (31-32).

- (30) *gu chiatnarak ach ya' cham ji*
 DET Teneraca 1PL.SBJ DEM.PROX NEG FOC
 'The people from Teneraca, as for us, not (the ones from) here.'
 (Text_082011_CRG_GGS_Conquistarmujer, 00:12)

Michael Everdell & Gabriela García Salido

- (31) *Ach cham na=ch jir=o'dam na=ch-gu' jix=momgon-ka'*
 1PL.SBJ NEG SUB=1PL.SBJ COP=O'dam SUB=1PL.SBJ-ADV COP=tired-STAT
 'We do not, the O'dam people, because we are always tired.'
 (Text_072011_PSC_GGS_elcuidadodelamujer2, 08:34)
- (32) *Añ ubii ya' ai-ch-dha jumai' cham tu' ap.*
 1SG.SBJ woman DEM.PROX arrive-CAUS-APPL another NEG 2SG.SBJ
 'I am going to bring another woman and not you.'
 (Text045_102010_CFC_GGS_Cuandolacuranderaeraniña, 21:18)

Finally, when negating a dependent clause, *cham* appears inside of the dependent clause but still precedes the verb, as in (33), while *cham tu'* always immediately precedes the subordinator (34).

- (33) *no'=ñ git jir=alhii-ka' cham bhammuk-da'-iñ git gio*
 COND=1SG.SBJ SUBJ COP=little-STAT NEG angry-CONT-1SG.SBJ SUBJ COORD
 [*na=ñ cham jiñ-lokiar-da'*]
 SUB=1SG.SBJ NEG 1SG.MID-crazy-CONT
 'If I were a child, I could not be able to get angry or get crazy.'
 (Text_092010_MSM_GGS_Lavidatepahuana)
- (34) *jix=kako'k-ka'-am cham tu' na=m tu'*
 COP=sick-STAT-3PL.SBJ NEG SUB=3PL.SBJ something
jix=kiki'-ka'-am.
 COP=healthy-STAT-3PL.SBJ
 'They are ill, they are not in good health.'
 (Text_072011_PSC_GGS_elcuidadodelamujer2, 13:42)

Beyond positional differences, it is not clear what the differences in usage are between *cham* and *cham tu'*. The former may be somewhat more emphatic because García Salido (2014: 136–140) finds that negative commands are only formed with *cham + ap* '2SG.SBJ', as in (35). However, we do not have clear evidence that emphaticness distinguishes the two negators otherwise.

- (35) a. *gio sap bhai'=p ka-xi-juu cha=p dhu=ñ*
 COORD RPRT.UI DIR=ITER PRF-IMP-eat NEG=2SG.SBJ EVID=1SG.SBJ
kua'da' jiñ-jaduñ ja'p sap kai'ch
 eat-CONT 1SG.POSS-brother DIR RPRT.UI say.PFV
 'And he ate again, do not eat me brother, he said.'
 (Text_072011_PSC_GGS_Gokhabomkox, 28:59)

13 Existential negation in O'dam

- b. *Cha' =p niok-da' tii gu-m-taat*
 NEG=2SG.SBJ speak-CONT NRINT DET-2SG.POSS-father
na=t-jax dhoda
 SUB=3SG.SBJ.PFV-how do.something.to.person
 'Shut up, you do not know what he did to your father.'
 (Text_092010_HSA_GGS_Elcuento, 04:28)

4.2 Existential negation

In terms of the negative existential cycle, O'dam is a Type A language, where standard negation strategies are used for existential constructions. Notice in (36-39) *jai'ch* is negated by an immediately preceding negation particle and that the negation strategy is the same regardless of whether the existential occurs in a matrix clause (36-37) or a subordinate clause (38-39). It seems that singular nouns are only used to negate the existence of a singular referent (e.g. the demon), while plural nouns are used to negate the existence of sets (e.g. women, plants). This appears to contrast with O'dam's treatment of mass nouns, which are morphosyntactically singular but may have individuated units.⁸

- (36) *Bajik dir cham tu' jaich-ka' dhu.*
 before DIR NEG EX-STAT DIREV
 'That did not exist before.' (Text007/
 Text_092010_MSM_GGS_Lavidapecuana, 11:03)
- (37) *Cham jai'ch-am-a' ba' gu u'~ub.*
 NEG EX-3PL.SBJ-IRR SEQ DET PL~WOMAN
 'Then there are no women (and there will be no women).'
 (Text_082011_MMC-MRS_GGS_Conversación, 00:52)
- (38) *Ji chu'ul pu jii na=ø-jax cham ka-jaich xib gu ji*
 FOC demon SENS go.PFV SUB=3SG.SBJ-how NEG PRF-EX today DET FOC
chu'ul.
 demon
 'The demon went and since then there hasn't been a demon.' (Text013/
 Text_092010_HSA_GGS_Elcuento, 07:15)

⁸For example, tortillas, potatoes and apples are all mass nouns in O'dam but Everdell & Denlinger (2019) find that they can trigger plural state marking on resultatives and statives.

Michael Everdell & Gabriela García Salido

- (39) *Ge' giotir pai' na=ø cham jai'ch gu u'~ux.*
 Big Plains where SUB=3SG.SBJ NEG EX DET PL~plant
 'Llano Grande where there are no plants.' (Text_082011_MMC_GGS_La estrelladelamañana3, 05:47)

Standard negation strategies are also used for existential constructions where the predicate element is other than *jai'ch*. In (40-41), the standard negation strategy is used for the copular existential construction in a subordinate and main clause, respectively.

- (40) *Mi=ñ jodero no=ñ jim na=Ø cham pai'*
 DEM.MED=1SG.SBJ fuck COND=1SG.SBJ go SUB=3SG.SBJ NEG place
jir=ki~kcham ja'p sap titda.
 COP=PL~house DIR RPRT.UI say
 'He's going to fuck me if I walk around where there are no people, he said.' (lit. if I walk around in the place where there are no houses)
 (Text028_102010_MCC_GGS_Losmuchachosquebuscabancomida, 05:43)
- (41) *Cham tu' pik mi' jap jir=bailes-ka' mi' ja'p pai'*
 NEG PRT DEM.MED DIR COP=dances-STAT DEM.MED DIR where
dhi' juktir
 DEM.PROX Santa_María_de_Ocotán
 'Now there are no dances in Santa María de Ocotán.'
 (Text007_092010_MSM_GGS_Lavidaepehuana, 19:10)

While constituent negation is well attested in non-existential contexts, in existential constructions we have no attested cases of postverbal constituent negation. Instead, apparently constituent negation must take place before the verb, as in (42) where the demonstrative *ya'* is negated. In (43) and (44) we see examples of negation of preverbal indefinite pronouns, where DPs cannot appear.

- (42) *Na=ø-gu' ya' cham pai' jaich gu tu' na=ñ*
 SUB=3G.SBJ-ADV DEM.PROX NEG place EX DET something SUB=1SG.SBJ
chu-tan-da-' na-ñ chu-kua-da-'.
 DUR-buy-CONT-IRR SUB=1SG.SBJ DUR-eat-CONT-IRR
 'Because this here is not what I'm going to buy to eat.'
 (Text005_092010_TSC_GGS_Guasak, 05:56)
- (43) *Cham jaroi' bha=jim.*
 NEG someone DIR=go
 'Nobody is coming.' (Elicitation_082018_MA_ME)

13 Existential negation in O'dam

- (44) *Cham tu' nii'ñ-iñ.*
 NEG something see-1SG.SBJ
 'I do not see anything.' (Elicitation_082018_MA_ME)

We only find examples of non-clausal negation of indefinite pronouns (no + somebody, no + thing, etc.) in existential constructions, we have no examples of negated preverbal subject pronouns. Thus, in O'dam clausal negation appears to rely on the definiteness of the verbal arguments. We show indefinite existential negation through the clausal negation strategy in (45-46). In both examples, the subordinate clauses expressing the negated referent use the indefinite pronouns *tu'* 'something' and *jaroj* 'someone', respectively.

- (45) *Cham jai'ch-ka' na=m tu' jugia'.*
 NEG EX-STAT SUB=3PL.SBJ something eat
 'There was nothing to eat.' (Text_072011_PSC_GGS_elcuidadodelamujer1, 9:40)
- (46) *Na=ø-gu' sap cham jai'ch-ka' na=ñ tu-tika-'.*
 SUB=3SG.SBJ-ADV RPRT.UI NEG EX-STAT SUB=1SG.SBJ DUR-cover-IRR
 'Because there was nothing to cover me with.'
 (Text_102010_PSC_GGS_Lavidademiesposo, 43:00)

It may be that existential constructions in O'dam entirely disallow postverbal constituent negation or that it is simply unattested. Our findings for O'dam (negative) indefinite pronouns align with typological work showing that negative/negated indefinite pronouns can often function as direct negation markers (Haspelmath 1997; Veselinova 2013; Van Alsenoy 2014). At this point, we do not find any difference in the use of negated *jai'ch* + INDEFINITE PRONOUN versus a negated indefinite pronoun, unlike in Swedish (Bordal 2017). However, our current corpus is relatively small so we do not discount statistical tendencies.

In addition to the use of standard negation on attested existential construction types, we also find several cases where a negative existential meaning arises out of a construction that is not attested in positive existential contexts. The verb *maax* 'see, notice' can express an existential meaning when negated. In (47), *maax* is being used to express that there are no footprints but speakers report that the footprints discussed in the sentence are not visible because they do not exist.⁹ However, in positive contexts like (48a) and some negative contexts like (48b), the verb expresses visibility rather than existence.

⁹Our consultants report that (48b) is quite odd if followed up with something like (i) that con-

Michael Everdell & Gabriela García Salido

- (47) *Na=m-gu'* *cham maax.*

SUB=3PL.SBJ-ADV NEG see

'Because there are no footprints.'

(Text_092011_MMC_GGS_elseñorqueperdiósusanimales1, 03:49)

- (48) a. *Ya ja'p bak buus gu jaroi' na ba' gamai'-ñi pix maax*
 DEM.PROX DIR INFR pass DET someone SUB SEQ DIR-VIS MIR see
biix a'nsap.
 along descent

'It seems that some people passed by here, you can see the tracks on the descent.' (Willett & Willett 2015: 120)

- b. *Moo ja'p cham maax jia na=ø-jax dhuu-ka-t*
 doubt DIR NEG see RET SUB=3SG.SBJ-how rain-EST-IPFV
tu-iipuñi-dha' sia na=r tu'.

DUR-grow-CONT EXPS SUB=COP something

'See how you cannot tell when the plants are sprouting.' (Willett & Willett 2015: 120)

In (49-50) we see two cases where the negated existential construction is expressed through zero-derived denominal verbs, *juuk* 'pine' and *busiñ* 'pass', respectively. This construction type is, thus far, unattested for positive existential meanings but is attested in negative predicative possession constructions, as in (51).

- (49) *Cham tu' pik mo ka-juku-*
 NEG PRT doubt PRF-pine-IRR

'Then there are probably almost no pines.'

(Text007_092010_MSM_GGS_Lavidaepehuana, 10:17)

- (50) *Cham tu' ka-busiñ*
 NEG PRF-pass

'There is no pass.' (Text_092011_Varios_GGS_Platica, 05:31)

tradicts the existential negation meaning of the original sentence.

- (i) *...pero mi=x jai'ch-am*
...pero DEM.MED=COP EX-3PL.SBJ
 'but they are there.'

13 Existential negation in O'dam

- (51) *Gu jax dhui na=ø-gu' cham tu' bu~pui-ka-t jia.*
 DET how DIREV SUB=3SG.SBJ-ADV NEG PL~eye-EST-IPFV RET
 'Well, as he did not have eyes, right?'
 (Text_092010_HSA_GGS_Los2compadres, 4:08)

In addition to overt negation, there appear to be attested cases where the negative sense is expressed, but there is no overt marker. This comes across with the adverb *ampix* 'only' and the verb *jugia* 'finish' (52-54). There does not appear to be a similar construction for positive contexts so that this construction appears to be restricted to negative meaning when used in existential contexts. However, this structure is attested outside of existential contexts, where *ampix* appears to add the meaning that 'everything' will be finished, as in (54).

- (52) *Ampix chu-ju' mi' sudai-chir apim chi-jix=bhio' ji ja'p sap kai'ch.*
 only DUR-finish DIR water-of 2PL.SBJ DUR-COP=hungry FOC DIR RPRT.UI say
 'There is nothing in the water, you all will be hungry, he say.'
 (Text033_102010_TMR_GGS_Los3hermanos1parte, 03:26)

- (53) *Nai' sap ba' pix ampix ba-tu-ju'.*
 DIR RPRT.UI SEQ MIR only COMPL-DUR-finish
 'So there's nothing there.' (Text_072011_PSC_GGS_Gokhabomkox, 08:50)

- (54) *Gio na=ø ba=r-taabak-ka' ampix ji chu-m-jugia'.*
 COORD SUB=3SG.SBJ COMPL=COP-rain-STAT only FOC DUR-MID-finish
 'And when it does not rain (Lit. when rain is done), everything ends.'
 (Text_072011_LRF_GGS_Lahistoriadelasmujeres1, 00:28)

Now that we have discussed existential negation in O'dam, we turn to standard and existential negation in several Southern Uto-Aztecan languages.

5 Existential Negation in Southern Uto-Aztecan

O'dam is on the Tepiman branch of Uto-Aztecan, which is a subgroup of the Southern Uto-Aztecan branch (a full tree is shown in the Appendix). Northern Tepehuan is a Tepiman language spoken in Chihuahua and Northern Durango. It appears to be a Type B language where there are distinct strategies for standard

Michael Everdell & Gabriela García Salido

and existential negation. Standard negation is indicated through the negative particle *mai* and the negative adverbial *tomali*, as shown in (55–56). As we discuss in §6, it is plausible that *mai* is cognate with the /m/ in O’dam *cham*.

- (55) *Mai áágai aáni góóvai áágai aáni igáa.*
 NEG want 1SG.SBJ DEM want 1SG.SBJ other
 ‘I do not want those, I want the others.’ (Bascom 2003: 26)

- (56) *Tomali imóóko go-ááli mai maáti ñioókai oobái-ki-di.*
 not one DET-children NEG know speak spanish-VBLZ-NMLZ
 ‘None of those children can speak Spanish.’ (Bascom 2003: 32)

Existential negation is indicated by the negative existential *tiípu(ka)*, shown in (57–58). The negative existential is apparently compatible with the negative particle *mai*, as shown in (59), although it is not clear if the construction in (59) is used for emphasis.

- (57) *Tiipúka maáxi óodami kiiyíri.*
 NEG.EX seem person house.inside
 ‘There seems to be nobody in the house.’ (Bascom & Molina 1998: 264)
- (58) *Alí iipídi oidígi vai tiípu kuáági ixtumá naadá-gi dai gír-uukáda-gi.*
 very cold weather CNJ NEG.EX wood thing make.fire-IRR CNJ 1PL.OBJ-warm-IRR
 ‘It’s very cold and there is no wood to put in the fire to warm us.’ (Bascom & Molina 1998: 264)
- (59) *Tíí aáni imó alí sáívuli imó uuxí-ána dai ka mai tiípu*
 find 1SG.SBJ one small hive one tree-in CNJ already NEG NEG.EX *dii~dídi*.
 PL~bee
 ‘I found a little hive in a tree and there were no more bees.’ (Bascom & Molina 1998: 15)

Bascom (1982) finds that positive existential predications in Northern Tepehuan are either expressed through juxtaposition (noun-noun, noun-pronoun, question word-noun, adjective-noun, or quantifier-noun), as in (60), or through the verb *oid’ága*, as in (61). Based on Bascom (1982)’s brief discussion, Northern Tepehuan may separate locative from existential predictions. Bascom (1982) does not list

13 Existential negation in O'dam

examples of locative predictions with the juxtaposition or the existential verb strategy. Instead, Bascom (1982) only give examples of locative predictions with positional verbs.

- (60) a. *Múi-d^yu kií~ki.*
many-some PL~house
'There are many houses.' (Bascom 1982: 281)
 - b. *Ši=tíki-du-ka-tadai*
Q=how.many-QUANT-STAT-PST.CONT
'How many were there?' (Bascom 1982: 282)
- (61) a. *Oid^yága múi-d^y kií~ki.*
there.are many-some PL~house
'There are many houses.' (Bascom 1982: 282)

The positive existential predicate *oid^yága* is related to O'dam *oilhia* 'move'. The Northern Tepehuan form is from Proto-Tepiman **oida* 'to follow', while the O'dam form is from the related form **oimirai* 'to walk about' (Hill 2014). Bascom (1982: 281) notes that the positive existential *oid^yága* can co-occur with the standard negation particle *mai*. However, he does not offer examples nor does he explain possible differences between the negative existential *tiipú(ka)* and *mai + oid^yága*.

Pima Bajo, a Tepiman language spoken in Sonora, appears to be a Type A language. Estrada Fernández (2014: 149) finds that Pima Bajo has two suppletive existential forms that are probably historically related: one for existential predicates of plural or mass entities (62) and another for singular existential predicates (63). In addition, Estrada Fernández (2014: 154) lists several other verbs used for existential meaning: *maasi* 'seem, be, exist', *tu'ig* 'stay', and *is* 'be'.

- (62) *I'i si'ik amig.*
LOC PL~deer exist.PL
'Here, there are deer.' (Estrada Fernández 2014: 149)
- (63) *Ai-m kii in-ki-ga.*
exist.SG-CONT house 1SG.NSBJ-house-AL
'My house is that.' (lit. 'There is a house, my house.') (Estrada Fernández 2014: 150)

Standard negation in Pima Bajo is expressed by means of the negative particle *im* (64-65) or by the emphatic negative particle *kova* (66), both in preverbal position (Estrada Fernández 2014).

Michael Everdell & Gabriela García Salido

- (64) *Im hii̯p.*
NEG cold
'There is no cold.' (Estrada Fernández 2014: 162)
- (65) *Tia im giis-im.*
hail NEG fall-CONT
'It is not hailing.' (Estrada Fernández 2014: 163)
- (66) *Kova-in giig-ia uus-kar ha'a.*
NEG.EMPH-IMP hit-PROB stick-INS pot
'Do not hit the pot with the stick!' (Estrada Fernández 2014: 132)

Standard negation is also used for existential predictions (Estrada Fernández 2014: 155). Notice in (67) that the standard negation marker *im* is used so that existential negation is accomplished through the same means as standard negation.

- (67) *As higi im maasi irav kuid-am.*
RPRT 3SG.SBJ NEG seem inside below-LOC
'He said there does not seem to be anything down in there.'
(Estrada Fernández 2014: 155)

Cora, a Corachol language spoken in Nayarit immediately to the south of O'dam, appears to be a Type B language. It uses the particle *ka* to express standard negation (68). This particle usually appears in first position in the clause and is followed by second position enclitics that encode subject (Vázquez Soto p.c.).

- (68) *i Juan, ka pu wa-mi'i*
DET John NEG S3SG COMPL-die.SGS
'As for John, he did not die.' (Vázquez Soto 2001: 201)

Cora differentiates between a positive (69) existential copula¹⁰ that suppletes for number and a negative existential copula that does not supplete (70). The standard negation particle *ka* is also apparently obligatory in negative existential constructions.

- (69) *hó'u-ni h-é'en tátsi'u?*
LOC-INTER 3SG.SBJ.ANIM-COP.EX.SG rabbit
'Where is the rabbit?' (Vázquez Soto 2013: 139)

¹⁰Vázquez Soto (2013) shows that Cora can use the existential copula for locative constructions of definite referents, especially in questions.

13 Existential negation in O'dam

- (70) *ká=pu mé'e pá'arih Chimaltita*
 NEG=3SBJ COP.EX.NEG child Chimaltita
 'There are no children in Chimaltita.' (Vázquez Soto 2013: 165)

A verb of posture can co-occur with the existential copula in Cora, as in (71), however, it is unclear whether this co-occurrence is possible with indefinite subjects Vázquez Soto (see 2013: 180ff).

- (71) *Núh náimi'i ma-tíh mána'a pwá'ame*
 EVID all 3PL.SBJ-SUB 3PL.SBJ.EMPH COP.EX.PL
wi-ráa-uu.
 ADH:hole-inside-be.standing.PL
 'They say that all of them are inside.' (Vázquez Soto 2013: 181)

(Vázquez Soto 2013: 181) argues that in the case of negative locative descriptions of the existential type the postural verb is ungrammatical, as in (72). Instead only the negative existential copula may be used, as in (73). Thus, it seems that all negative existential constructions in Cora require both the standard negator *ka* and the negative existential copula *mé'e*.

- (72) **Ká=pu wa-tá-ka tuíixu kuráh-ta'a*
 NEG=3SG.SBJ.ANIM COMPL.EXT-SUP-sit.SG pig barnyard-LOC
 Intended meaning: 'There is not a pig in the corral.' (Vázquez Soto 2013: 181)
- (73) *Ká=pu mé'e tuíixu kuráh-ta'a.*
 NEG=3SG.SBJ COP.EX.NEG pig barnyard-LOC
 'There is not a pig in the corral.' (Vázquez Soto 2013: 181)

Huichol, a Corachol language spoken in Nayarit just to the south of O'dam, appears to be a Type B language where a separate negative existential verb *mawe* is used for existential negation,¹¹ compare (74) and (75).

- (74) *Kwiniya waniu mu-xuawe.*
 disease INDIR AS2-EX
 '...there are diseases...' (Bierge 2017: 112)

¹¹The phonological and functional similarities between Northern Tepehuan *mai*, Cora *mé'e*, and Huichol *mawe* are such that they may be cognate, although we hesitate make a more definitive claim here because the exact vowel correspondences and the correspondence between Cora /'/ and Huichol /w/ are not otherwise attested (Stubbs 2011).

Michael Everdell & Gabriela García Salido

- (75) *kumu ne-maine hepai 'ukara-tsi pu-mawe-kai*
 how 1SG.SBJ-say how woman-PL AS1-NEG.EX-IPFV
 ‘...as I’m saying, there were not women...’ (Bierge 2017: 112)

Unlike in the closely related Cora, in Huichol the negative existential apparently does not co-occur with the standard negation prefix *ka-*, as in (76). However, the negative existential *mawe* can alternate with the standard negation prefix plus existential *xuawe*, as shown in (77). Bierge (2017: 115) notes that the *ka- + xuawe* construction is less frequently used than the negative existential *mawe* and it is probably borrowed from Spanish *no + existir*. We tentatively do not consider Huichol to be intermediate between Type A and B, because the Type A strategy seems to be so marginal.

- (76) *nee-ri kwatsie 'a-hetsie ne-p-e-tanua-ni 'a-papa*
 1SG=already AFF 2SG-in 1SG.SBJ-AS1-EXT-defend-FUT 2SG-father
 ‘...I’ll defend you from your dad’
ka-metsi-he-ku-waya-ni=ri
 NEG-2SG.NSBJ-EXT-SP-hit-FUT=already
 ‘so that he does not hit you anymore...’ (Bierge 2017: 54)
- (77) *ne-kie teiteri me-kwa-xuawe-kai*
 1SG-house people 3PL.SBJ-NEG-EX-IPFV
 ‘There were not people at home.’ (Bierge 2017: 115)

Finally, Guarajío, a Taracahitan language located in the West Sierra Madre Mountains in Chihuahua and the border of Sonora, also appears to be a type A ~ B language. For existential negation, speakers can choose to use a standard negation strategy with the positive existential predicate, Type A, or use a dedicated negative existential predicate without the standard negator, Type B. For standard negation Guarajío uses the clitic *ki=*, which apparently attaches to the negated element (78–79).

- (78) *Ki=tara-rú=ne munní.*
 NEG=buy-PFV.EVID=1SG.SBJ beans
 ‘I didn’t buy beans’ (Félix Armendáriz 2006: 192)
- (79) *Ki=amó tara-ké-ru=ne munní.*
 NEG=2SG.NSBJ buy-APPL-PFV.EVID=1SG.SBJ beans
 ‘I didn’t buy beans for you’ (Félix Armendáriz 2006: 193)

13 Existential negation in O'dam

The positive existential *maní* (80) contrasts with the negative existential verb *ki'te*, as in (81). However, the standard negation particle can also attach to the positive existential marker, as in (82). Félix Armendáriz (2006) makes no comment on the different uses of the dedicated negative existential versus the negated positive existential.

- (80) *Maní munní.*
EX beans
'There are beans.' (Félix Armendáriz 2006: 191)
- (81) *Ki'té munní.*
NEG.EX beans
'There are not beans.' (Félix Armendáriz 2006: 191)
- (82) *Ki=maní-re nerói.*
NEG=EX-PFV water
'There is no water.' (Félix Armendáriz 2006: 115)

In light of the other negation elements in Guarijío (*kái* 'negative answer', *katé* 'negative imperative'), it seems likely that the negative existential *ki'té* consists of a fossilized form of the negation particle *ki=* that fused with some element *té*, although we do not discount the possibility that *ki=* is a reduction of *ki'té*.

To summarize the discussions here, we present the standard and existential negation strategies in our sample of Southern Uto-Aztecan languages in Table 13.4. Now that we have discussed the existential negation types in a sample of Southern Uto-Aztecan languages, we take a historical view and posit a developmental path for existential and standard negation in O'dam.

6 A possible pathway of change

Southern Uto-Aztecan languages in general seem to be Type B languages, where existential constructions are negated by a special strategy. The exceptions are O'dam and Pima Bajo, which are both Type A, where standard negation is used in all cases, and Guarijío, which seems to be both Type A and B. In the standard and existential negation strategies in Table 13.4 we find a significant amount of replacement and change. This suggests that in Southern Uto-Aztecan languages, the development of standard and existential negation occurs along quite different paths. Especially in Tepiman languages (O'dam, Northern Tepehuan, Pima Bajo), both existential and standard negation appear to be highly susceptible to change, but their change cannot obviously be linked in any way.

Michael Everdell & Gabriela García Salido

Table 13.4: Negation strategies among Southern Uto-Aztecan languages

| Language (branch) | SN | NegEx | Source |
|--------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| O'dam (Tepiman) | <i>cham(tu')</i> | <i>cham(tu')</i> | |
| Northern (Tepiman) Tepehuan | <i>mai, tomali</i> | <i>tiípu(ka)</i> | (Bascom 2003) |
| Pima Bajo (Tepiman) | <i>im, kova</i> | <i>im, kova?</i> | (Estrada Fernández 2014) |
| Cora (Corachol) | <i>ka</i> | <i>ka + mé'e</i> | (Vázquez Soto 2013) |
| Huichol (Corachol) | <i>ka-</i> | <i>mawe, or</i> <i>ka + xuawe</i> | (Bierge 2017) |
| Guarajío (Taracahitan) | <i>ki=</i> | <i>ki'té or</i> <i>ki=maní</i> | (Félix Armendáriz 2006) |

Langacker (1977: 32–33) reconstructs **ka* as the Proto Uto-Aztecan basic negative morpheme. Across Southern Uto-Aztecan, Tepiman appears to be unique in lacking reflexes of **ka*.¹² All of the non-Tepiman languages discussed in this chapter maintain a reflex of the particle, summarized in Table 13.4. Aztecán languages, which form a subgroup with Corachol, appear to use cognates of Classical Nahuatl *a'mo* (Launey 1981) for standard negation and express existential negation through negated indefinite pronouns.¹³ Hill (2014) and Langacker (1977) say that *a'mo* is a reflex of the aforementioned Proto Uto-Aztecan **ka*. Pima Bajo is possibly the only Tepiman language that maintains **ka* in its negative emphatic marker *kova*, which is likely derived from a combination of the basic negator **ka* plus **pa*, which Langacker (1977: 32) reconstructs as an emphatic affirmative.

Looking to Northern Tepehuan, *mai*, if **tia=mai* was a negative Proto-Tepehuan construction, then *cham* would be the expected reflex if O'dam speakers froze the full construction and Northern Tepehuan speakers only maintained the ending

¹²This includes the Tepiman language Tohono O'odham, which uses the negation particle *pi*.

¹³See Hausteca Nahuatl (Beller & Beller 1979), Mecayapan Nahuatl (Wolgemuth 2002), Mixe-Nahuatl (Sisco 1979), North Puebla Nahuatl (Brockway 1979), Tetelcingo Nahuatl (Tuggy 1979), Tlaxcala Nahuatl (Flores Nájera 2019), and Pipil (Campbell 1985).

13 Existential negation in O'dam

mai. The initial consonant [ch] appears in O'dam due to palatalization when /t/ is immediately adjacent to /i/ and the Southwestern Tepehuan negation particle *jiam*, suggests that **i* in the Proto-Tepehuan form followed the initial **t*. O'dam would have then placed stress on the initial syllable and deleted the final diphthong (Willett 1982).

Langacker (1977: 33) reconstructs ****ta* as a Proto Uto-Aztecan emphatic particle that gained its negative meaning through its common use in negative expressions. This could be the source of the **tia* element in the possible Proto-Tepehuan construction, however it does not explain the high vowel. A possible source for the high vowel lies in Pima Bajo *im*, which suggest there could have been a Proto-Tepiman construction ***ta-imai*. It is then possible that Proto-Tepehuan or Southern Tepehuan metathesized the diphthong in the initial syllable, however, such ***ai* > *ia* metathesis is otherwise unattested in O'dam reflexes so this seems unlikely. Additionally, ***imai* does not have a clear source as we do not find negative or emphatic morphemes in other Uto-Aztecan languages with a similar phonological shape. The possible pathway of developments is shown in Table 13.5, however without a in-depth look at negative and emphatic particles (beyond the scope of this chapter), we can only speculate on the origins of O'dam *cham*.

Table 13.5: Possible development of O'dam *cham*

| *** <i>ta</i> > | ** <i>ta-imai</i> > | * <i>tia-mai</i> > | <i>cham</i> |
|-------------------|---------------------|--------------------|-------------|
| NEG.EMPH | NEG-?? | NEG-NEG? | NEG |
| Proto Uto-Aztecan | Proto-Tepiman | Proto-(Southern) | O'dam |
| | | Tepehuan | |

Hill (2014) finds that the Proto Uto-Aztecan negator **ka* was maintained in all subgroups as a negation marker, except Tepiman, which entirely lacks reflexes of the form. In contrast with the rest of Uto-Aztecan, it seems that Tepiman has undergone quite a bit of innovation specific to the standard negation particles. We can only speculate on the origins of the Tepiman negation particles. The possible proto-form **imai* is not attested in any other parts of the family and is only weakly constructible based on present evidence. Moreover, the Tohono O'odham negation particle *pi* is not obviously connected to any elements in any other Uto-Aztecan language.¹⁴

¹⁴While it is possible that it developed out of a compound of the Proto Uto-Aztecan emphatic negator ***pa* and our Proto-Tepiman **imai*, we seriously doubt this. First Proto Uto-Aztecan ***p* became **v* in Proto-Tepiman, so that we would expect *vi* rather than *pi*. Second, **pa=imai*

Michael Everdell & Gabriela García Salido

O’dam also uniquely innovated the negation particle *cham tu’*. This particle almost certainly developed from the combination of the basic negator *cham* plus the indefinite pronoun *tu’* ‘something’. While *tu’* seems to most often pronominalize nouns, it also seems to be able to have an irrealis non-specific function with dependent clauses, a property not unique to O’dam (Haspelmath 1997). In (83), *tu’* is the head of the bracketed subordinate clauses and essentially makes their meaning irrealis and non-specific. This structure mirrors that of standard externally headed relative clauses, shown in (84), where the head immediately precedes the subordinator (García Salido; submitted).

- (83) a. *Tu’ na pix ba-ñ-pasaru’*:
 something SUB MIR COMPL-1SG.PO-pass-IRR
 ‘Something is going to happen to me.’
 (Text_092010_MSM_GGS_Lavidatepahuana, 27:32)
- b. *Jiñ-alhii-chu-k dhi’ tu’ [na=ø pix*
 1SG.POSS-boy-CAUS-PNCT DEM.PROX something SUB=3SG.SBJ MIR
pasar-ka] ora mui’ chumiñ-ki’n na=ñ ba-dependero’.
 happen-STAT now a.lot money-with SUB=1SG.SBJ COMPL-depend
 ‘Something is going to happen to my son, now with a lot of money, I help him.’ (Text_102010_CFC_GGS_Lacostumbre, 02:11)

- (84) *Gu chi~chio’ñ [na=m ba-nab-dhi-po’]*.
 DET PL~man SUB=3PL.SBJ COMPL-hunt-APPL-MOV
 ‘The men who are going to hunt.’ (Text004/
 Text_092010_TSC_GGS_Elxiotahl, 00:31)

Through frequent collocation, *cham + tu’* would become a frozen NEG + ‘indefinite head’ construction. We must caution that the modern particle *cham tu’* differs in many ways from its plausible previous life as a negated external relative clause head construction. It can be used in realis and specific contexts (85) and currently we do not know of any semantic constraints that *cham tu’* places on the negated element that would follow from it being a relative clause head. As discussed in §4.1, *cham* can only precede negated verbs (clausal negation) and must follow all other negated constituents. In addition it must occur inside of negated dependent clauses. Conversely, *cham tu’* can precede negated verbs and constituents and occurs outside of dependent clauses. Thus, the position of the particle follows from its development from an external relative clause head.

would have had to lose its final CV segment and completely assimilate /a/ > /i/. While final vowel devoicing and deletion is almost a universal Tepiman process, deletion of final consonants, or full CV segments, is not attested in Tepiman, let alone Tohono O’odham.

13 Existential negation in O'dam

- (85) *Añ ubii ya' ai-ch-dha' jumai' cham tu' ap.*
 1SG.SBJ woman DIR arrive-CAUS-APPL another NEG 2SG.SBJ
 'As for me, I am going to bring another woman (for me), not you.'
 (Text_102010_CFC_GGS_Cuandolacuranderaeraniña, 21:17)

It seems that Tepiman languages as a whole, including O'dam, are particularly prone to elaborating and replacing negative particles within the Uto-Aztecán family. It is not clear whether the O'dam and Tepiman forms were taken from common sources (e.g. emphatic negative particles) or whether they were simply innovated separately. However, the key point is that the development of standard negation in O'dam, and Tepiman more widely, is unconnected to existential negation.

Turning to existential predication in Southern Uto-Aztecán, we find that there is quite a bit of evidence for the (re-)emergence of negative existentials. In Table 13.6 we show the dedicated positive and negative existential predicates in each language in our sample. To our knowledge none of the forms are cognate with each other, and they do not appear to be reflexes of attested Proto Uto-Aztecán cognates.

Table 13.6: Positive and negative existential predicates in our Southern Uto-Aztecán sample

| Language | PositiveEX | NegativeEX |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| O'dam | <i>jai'ch</i> | <i>cham (tu') + jai'ch</i> |
| Northern Tepehuan | <i>oidyága</i> | (mai +) <i>tiípu(ka)</i> |
| Pima Bajo | <i>ai</i> SG <i>amig</i> PL | <i>im/kova?</i> + <i>ai/amig</i> |
| Cora | <i>é'en</i> SG <i>pwá'ame</i> PL | (<i>ka</i> +) <i>mé'e</i> |
| Huichol | <i>xuawe</i> | <i>mawe</i> |
| Guarajío | <i>maní</i> | <i>ki'té</i> or <i>ki=maní</i> |

We see that the Corachol subgroup (Cora, Huichol) seems to have derived their positive and negative existentials from a common source, or possibly one from the other. However, it is unclear where this source would be or what the origin of

Michael Everdell & Gabriela García Salido

the /m/ initial segment is. The possible Proto-Tepiman **imai* seems an unlikely source because it is unattested in Corachol and truncation of /*imai*/ > /m/ would be otherwise unattested in Corachol.

The negative existential in Northern Tepehuan and Guarijío are completely unrelated to their positive counterpart. Most of the languages allow the negative marker to co-occur with either the positive or negative existential, and this is obligatory in O’dam and Pima Bajo. However, Guarijío is the only language that has plausible evidence for evolutionary interaction of standard and existential negation, because the /ki/ segment of *ki’té* could plausibly be from the standard negation clitic. All others do not show any obvious reflex of the standard negation particle in the positive or negative existential forms. Thus, while we do not know the source of the negative, or positive, existential predicates in Southern Uto-Aztecan, only Guarijío seems to have any evolutionary interaction between standard and existential negation.

7 Conclusion

This chapter describes the strategies that O’dam employs to express existential meaning and their negation. O’dam uses several types of constructions to express positive existential meaning, these include the non-verbal predicate *jai’ch*, locative positional constructions and a copular construction. We also describe standard negation, which is accomplished through the use of two particles *cham* and *cham tu’* that are used for both clausal and constituent negation. O’dam is a Type A language because it uses standard negation strategies to negate existential constructions. Although clausal negation seems to be preferred for existential negation and we find no attested cases of postverbal constituent negation. The apparent exception to O’dam’s Type A status is the use of *ampix* + ‘finish’, which does not appear with any overtly negative elements and seems limited to ‘there is nothing’. Finally, we discuss the place of other Southern Uto-Aztecan languages in the existential negation cycle, most of which appear to be Type B. O’dam and Pima Bajo appear to be unique as Type A languages. Standard negation particles and existential negators seem to be commonly replaced and emergent, especially in Tepiman. Thus, it seems that standard and existential negation in the history of O’dam, and likely Southern Uto-Aztecan, have not played roles in each others development and evolution.

13 Existential negation in O'dam

Michael Everdell & Gabriela García Salido

Abbreviations

| | | | |
|----------|-------------------------|---------|------------------------|
| ADV | adverbializer | INTER | interrogative |
| AFF | affirmative | IPFV | imperfective |
| AL | alienable | IRR | irrealis |
| ANIM | animate | ITER | iterative |
| APPL | applicative | LOC | locative |
| AS1 | primary assertion | MID | middle |
| AS2 | secondary assertion | MIR | mirative |
| DEM.PROX | demonstrative proximal | MOV | movement |
| DEM.DIST | demonstrative distal | NEG | negation |
| DEM.MED | demonstrative medial | NEG.EX | negative existential |
| DIREV | direct evidential | NMLZ | nominalizer |
| DET | determiner | NRINT | non-realized intention |
| DUR | durative | NSBJ | non-subject |
| CAUS | causative | PFV | perfective |
| CNJ | conjunction | PNCT | punctual |
| COMPL | completive | PO | primary object |
| COND | conditional | POSSD | possessed |
| CONT | continuative | PREC | precision |
| COORD | coordinator | PRF | perfect |
| COP | copula | PROB | probability |
| DIR | directional | PROG | progressive |
| DUR | durative | PRT | particle |
| EMPH | emphatic | Q | question marker |
| EVID | evidential | QUANT | quantifier |
| EX | affirmative existential | RPRT | reportative |
| EXPS | expository | RPRT.UI | reportative unknown |
| EXT | extension | RET | rhetorical |
| FOC | focus | SBJ | subject |
| FUT | future | SENS | sensorial |
| IMP | imperative | SEQ | sequential |
| INDIR | indirect evidential | SGS | singular subject |
| INFR | inferential | STAT | stative |
| INS | instrumental | SUB | subordinator |
| | | SUBJ | subjunctive |
| | | SUP | support |
| | | VBLZ | verbalizer |
| | | VIS | visual |

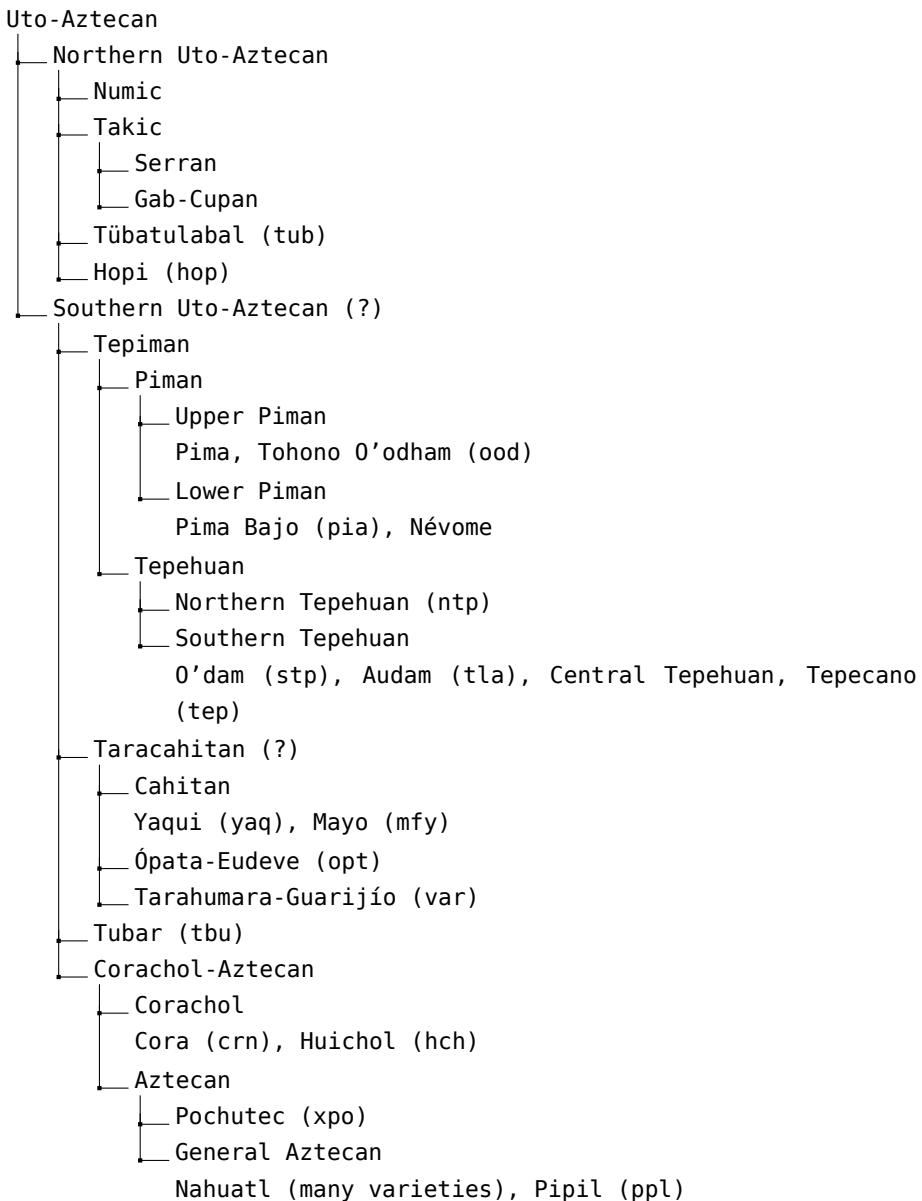
Acknowledgements

This work was supported by funding from the following sources 1) The Calota Smith Fellowship and Joel Sherzer Fellowship to the first author and 2)UNAM-PAPIIT-DGAPA IA401619 to the second author. We want to thank the editors of this volume (Ljuba Veselinova and Arja Hamari) for their great comments and suggestions to improve this paper. Also, thank you to the anonymous reviewers for their extremely useful comments. We would also like to thank Inocencia Arellano, Martha Arellano, Wendy Gurrola, Elizabeth Soto and Humberto Bautista for their help and insights on the language.

Michael Everdell & Gabriela García Salido

Appendix: Uto-Aztec family tree

Uto-Aztec family tree based on Haugen (forthcoming). Language names are in italics. Some subgroups are controversial, these are indicated with a (?).



13 Existential negation in O'dam

References

- Abbott, Barbara. 1997. Definiteness and existentials. *Language* 73(1). 103–108.
- Bascom, Burton. 1982. Northern Tepehuan. In Ronald W. Langacker (ed.), *Studies in Uto-Aztecan grammar*, vol. 3, 267–393. Dallas, Texas: Summer Institute of Linguistics.
- Bascom, Burton. 2003. Gramática del tepehuán del norte.
- Bascom, Burton & Gregorio Molina. 1998. *Diccionario tepehuán de baborigame*. Chihuahua: Instituto Lingüístico de Verano.
- Beaver, David, Itamar Francez & Dmitry Levinson. 2006. Bad subject: (non-) canonicity and NP distribution in existentials. In *Semantics and linguistic theory*, vol. 15, 15–43. Ithaca: CLC.
- Beller, Richard & Patricia Beller. 1979. Huasteca nahuatl. In Ronald W. Langacker (ed.), *Studies in Uto-Aztecan grammar*, vol. 2, 199–306. Dallas, Texas: Summer Institute of Linguistics.
- Bierge, Stefanie Ramos. 2017. *Clause types and transitivity in Wixárika (Huichol): A Uto-Aztecan language*. University of Colorado at Boulder. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Bordal, Heidi Valentine. 2017. *Negation of existential predication in Swedish: A corpus study*. Stockholms universitet. (MA thesis).
- Breivik, Leiv Egil. 1981. On the interpretation of existential there. *Language* 1. 1–25.
- Brockway, Earl. 1979. North Puebla Nahuatl. In Ronald W. Langacker (ed.), *Studies in Uto-Aztecan grammar*, vol. 2, 141–198. Arlington, Texas: Summer Institute of Linguistics.
- Campbell, Lyle. 1985. *The pipil language of El Salvador*. Berlin: Walter de Gruyter.
- Croft, William. 1991. The evolution of negation. *Journal of Linguistics* 27(1). 1–27.
- Dryer, Matthew S. 1986. Primary objects, secondary objects, and antidative. *Language* 4. 808–845.
- Estrada Fernández, Zarina. 2014. *Gramática de referencia del pima bajo Vol. I*. Hermosillo, Sonora: Universidad de Sonora.
- Everdell, Michael. 2018. *Flavors of -ga: A possession class suffix in O'dam*. University of Texas at Austin. (MA thesis).
- Everdell, Michael & Kristin Denlinger. 2019. *Cómo se cuentan los estados?* Paper presented at Seminario Permanente de Análisis de Textos. UNAM: Mexico City, Mexico. September 11.
- Félix Armendáriz, Rolando Gpe. 2006. *A grammar of River Warihío*. Rice University. (Doctoral dissertation).

Michael Everdell & Gabriela García Salido

- Flores Nájera, Lucero. 2019. *La gramática de la cláusula simple en el náhuatl de tlaxcala*. CIESAS. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Gaeta, Livio. 2013. A semasiological perspective. In *Argument structure in flux: The Naples/Capri papers*, 477–510. John Benjamins Publishing.
- García Salido, Gabriela. 2020. Headless relative clauses in Southeastern Tepehuan (O'dam). In Harold Torrence Ivano Caponigro & Roberto Zavala (eds.), *Headless relative clauses in languages of Mesoamerica*, 58–78. Submitted. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- García Salido, Gabriela, Inocencia Arellano & Michael Everdell. 2021. Cham ekamtam “place of unfulfillment”. *Texts in the Indigenous Languages of the Americas. International Journal of American Linguistics* 87. in review, no pages.
- Everdell, Michael & Gabriela García Salido. 2019. Suplécion en tepehuano del sureste (o'dam). *Lingüística Mexicana. Nueva Época* 1(2). 81–102.
- García Salido, Gabriela & Antonio Reyes Valdez. 2015. De maíz y de frijol: El paso de verbo final a verbo inicial en tepehuano del sureste (o'dam). *Tlalocan* 20. 85–133.
- García Salido, Gabriela. 2014. *Clause linkage in southeastern Tepehuan: A Uto-Aztec language of northern Mexico*. University of Texas at Austin. (Doctoral dissertation).
- García Salido, Gabriela. 2017. Las descripciones locativas en tepehuano del sur-este (O'dam). In Edgar Adrian Moreno Pineda & José Abel Valenzuela Romo (eds.), *Los nortes de México: Culturas, Geografías y Temporalidades*. México: Instituto Nacional de Antropología e Historia-Escuela de Antropología e Historia del Norte de México.
- Haspelmath, Martin. 1997. *Indefinite pronouns*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Haugen, Jason D. Forthcoming. Uto-Aztec. In Søren Wichmann (ed.), *The languages and linguistics of Middle and Central America: A comprehensive guide* (World of Linguistics), no pages. to appear. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Hill, Kenneth C. 2014. *Wick Miller's Uto-Aztec cognate sets (revised and expanded by kenneth c. Hill)*. Tshwanelex Data File.
- Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía. 2015. <http://www.inegi.org.mx/default.aspx.Mexico>.
- Langacker, Ronald W. 1977. *Studies in Uto-Aztec grammar. An overview of Uto-Aztec grammar*. Vol. 1. Dallas: Summer Institute of Linguistics.
- Launey, Michel. 1981. *Introduction à la langue et à la littérature aztèques : Grammaire*. Vol. 1. Paris: L'Harmattan.
- Martínez Córdova, Dina Paola. 2016. La codificación de los predicados no verbales en o'dam a través del uso de las cópulas *jix-* y *jir-*.

13 Existential negation in O'dam

- McNally, Louise. 2011. Existential sentences. In Claudia Maienborn, Klaus von Heusinger & Paul Portner (eds.), *Semantics: An international handbook of natural language meaning*, vol. 2, 1829–1848. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- McNally, Louise. 2016. Existential sentences crosslinguistically: Variations in form and meaning. *Annual Review of Linguistics* 2. 211–231.
- Miestamo, Matti. 2005. *Clausal negation: A typological study*. linguistics. Berlin: Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Mithun, Marianne. 2001. The difference a category makes in the expression of possession and inalienability. In Irène Baron, Michael Herslund & Finn Sørensen (eds.), *Dimensions of possession*, 285–310. Amsterdam: John Benjamins Publishing Company.
- Reuland, Eric & Alice G. B. ter Meulen (eds.). 1987. *The representation of (in)definiteness*. Cambridge: MIT.
- Sischo, William R. 1979. Michoacán Nahuatl. In Ronald W. Langacker (ed.), *Studies in Uto-Aztecan grammar*, vol. 2, 307–380. Arlington, Texas: Summer Institute of Linguistics.
- Stubbs, Brian D. 2011. *Uto-Aztecan: A comparative vocabulary*. Blanding, Utah: Rocky Mountain Books & Publications.
- Tuggy, David H. 1979. Tetelcingo Nahuatl. In Ronald W. Langacker (ed.), *Studies in Uto-Aztecan grammar*, vol. 2, 1–140. Arlington, Texas: Summer Institute of Linguistics.
- Van Alsenoy, Lauren. 2014. *A new typology of indefinite pronouns, with a focus on negative indefinites*. University of Antwerp. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Vázquez Soto, Verónica. 2001. Some constraints on Cora causative constructions. In Masayoshi Shibatani (ed.), *The grammar of causation and interpersonal manipulation*, 197–244. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Vázquez Soto, Verónica. 2013. 'ahí pero dónde, cómo': Predicados locativos y cónulas existenciales en cora meseño. *Amerindia* 37. 133–192.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2013. Negative existentials: A cross-linguistic study. *Italian Journal of Linguistics* 25(1). 107–145.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2014. The negative existential cycle revisited. *Linguistics* 52(6). 1327–1389.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2016. The negative existential cycle viewed through the lens of comparative data. In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change continued* (Linguistics Today 227), 139–187. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Willett, Elizabeth. 1982. Reduplication and accent in Southeastern Tepehuan. *International Journal of American Linguistics* 48(2). 168–184.

Michael Everdell & Gabriela García Salido

- Willett, Elizabeth R. & Thomas L. Willett. 2015. *Diccionario Tepehuano de Santa María Ocotán, Durango* (Vocabularios Indígenas 48). Mexico: Summer Institute of Linguistics.
- Willett, Thomas L. 1991. *A reference grammar of Southeastern Tepehuan*. Dallas: Summer Institute of Linguistics. University of Texas at Arlington.
- Wolgemuth, Carl. 2002. *Gramática Náhuatl (Mela'tájtōl) de los Municipios de Melacayapan y Tatahuicapan de Juárez, Veracruz*. 2nd edn. Mexico City: Summer Institute of Linguistics.
- Ziv, Yael. 1982. On so-called “existentials”: A typological problem. *Lingua* 56. 261–281.

Part IV

Theoretical approaches to cyclical processes

Chapter 14

The Negative Existential and Other Cycles: Jespersen, Givón, and the Copula Cycle

Elly van Gelderen^a

^aArizona State University

Veselinova (2013) provides two sources for the negative existential constructions, (a) the univerbation of a negative and a part of the existential construction, which needs not be verbal, and (b) the reanalysis of a lexical item with an appropriate, negative sense. I argue that this definition is both too narrow and too broad when examining the Negative Existential Cycle (NEC). Regarding (a), copulas and auxiliaries provide input to the NEC in addition to existentials, in e.g. Croft (1991), and regarding (b), verbs with a negative meaning are better seen as a separate development, as in Givón (1978). I will contend that copulas, auxiliaries, and existential verbs can all fuse with the negative and then disappear into the negative whereas negative verbs, such as *fail*, trade their semantic negative features into grammatical ones without fusion or loss. This paper will address three specific questions relevant to the NEC. The first is what are the source verbs in this cycle. A second question is whether or not the NEC is essentially a verbal cycle, in contrast to nominal nature of the Jespersen Cycle (JC; Jespersen 1917). The third question involves the possible doubling of the negative, which is relevant to showing the NEC is different from the Jespersen Cycle. The role of verbal agreement and inflection sets apart the verbal cycles (NEC and Givón's) from the nominal one (JC) and the two verbal cycles are different in their renewal. The differences will be shown in their reanalyses in the last section.

Keywords: auxiliary, copula, doubling, existential, negative



Elly van Gelderen

1 Introduction

The Negative Existential Cycle (NEC) was so named by Croft (1991) and was added to greatly by e.g. Veselinova (2013; 2016). The basic cycle is given in Figure 14.1 and, by now, well-known: Type A involves standard negation and existential negation expressed by the same morpheme; Type B is (usually) where the negative has attached itself to the existential verb and is no longer the same as the standard negative; and Type C is where the Negative Existential of Type B is used for all negation, often with a null existential. Veselinova has argued for intermediate stages as well, which we'll see below. What is typical for the NEC is that

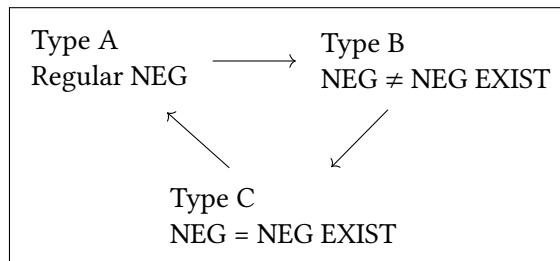


Figure 14.1: The NEC (Croft 1991)

the verb is renewed at the end of the cycle by a new existential or copula, in something that has been called the Copula Cycle (Katz 1996) where I take a copula in the broad sense as locative, equational, possessive, or existential. This copula can then again be the source to another NEC. Traditionally, two other negative cycles have been recognized, namely the Jespersen Cycle (JC) and the Givón Cycle. The Jespersen Cycle renews a negative with a minimizer or negative/indefinite quantifier and Givón's creates a new negative without co-occurring with another negative.

As the name NEC suggests, most scholars from Croft (1991) on have argued that the input verbs to the NEC are existential ones although Croft gives examples of other verbs. Veselinova, in various work, only includes existential verbs and negative verbs but not copulas and auxiliaries. She argues that existential constructions (negative ones included) are special. They have non-referential subjects, frequent non-canonical verb and subject marking, etc. Locatives, copulas, and possessives do not fall under her definition of existential (Veselinova 2013: 108–11), unless the particular verb is the same. Later in the paper, she defines NECs as originating from either (a) a univerbation of a negative and a part of the existential, which need not be verbal, or (b) the “reanalysis of a lexical item

14 The Negative Existential and Other Cycles

with an appropriate sense” (136). The (a) part is the traditional NEC while the (b) part makes it possible to extend the NEC to the JC where a negative indefinite can be reanalyzed as standard negation and to cases included in Givón’s Cycle. So, Veselinova’s formulation of the sources of negative existentials incorporates all negative cycles, NEC, JC, and Givón’s but does not find auxiliaries and copulas as sources in her data. Veselinova (p.c.) herself doesn’t see the JC as her focus but the quote in (b) makes it possible to do so.

In this paper, I will advocate for at least three negative cycles that interact with each other as well as with the Copula Cycle. In doing this, I address three questions surrounding this cycle: the sources of the verbs involved, the verbal nature of the cycle, and the issue of negative doubling. The methodology is not that of a typological article; my aim has been to take a broad look at the various negative cycles to discover what they have in common and how they differ.

The outline is as follows. In §2, I further discuss Veselinova’s (2013) definition and look at a number of cases where a copula and auxiliary are also the source of what looks like a NEC. In §3, Givón’s (1978) examples of inherently negative verbs are discussed. I think it is better for the latter to be seen as their own cycle, e.g. named Givón’s Cycle. §3 also considers the verbal nature of the NEC and §4 whether or not doubling is ever uncontroversially present with the NEC. §5 provides the structural characteristics of the three negative cycles and §6 is a conclusion.

2 Auxiliary and copula sources

In this section, I examine which categories are input to the NEC. For instance, can copula and auxiliary verbs also be included as source verbs, in addition to existential verbs? Existential constructions display separate syntactic properties, e.g. the agreement is shared between the expletive and post-verbal subject, i.e. plural in (1).

- (1) There aren’t any ghosts in the closet.

Croft (1991: 12), by mentioning Marathi *nahī* [NEG.be], for instance, keeps the door open for other verbs to be involved as well. In §2.1, I will use data from Urdu/Hindi where a similar negative is found as in Marathi to show that this indeed appears to involve a NEC. §2.2 and §2.3 show the same for English and Arabic. §2.4 provides data that are inconclusive about the origin of the negative existential.

Elly van Gelderen

2.1 Hindi/Urdu

Kellogg (1938) sees the development of the negative as going from the single *na* in Sanskrit (inherited from Indo-European) to a stage where *na* and *nehī* alternate to one where *nehī* is the main negative. In Kellogg's account, *-hī* is a remnant of an auxiliary verb; simple *na* remains with non-indicatives and a prohibitive *mat* occurs with imperatives in the modern language. I have put the changes involving *na* and *nehī* in a table with the stages from Croft's Cycle. The last stage is one where a "double" auxiliary is appearing. One piece of synchronic

Table 14.1: The stages of the NEC from Sanskrit to Hindi/Urdu

| Croft | stage | negative |
|-------|----------------------|--|
| A | Sanskrit | <i>na</i> |
| B | Early Hindi/Urdu | <i>na</i> <i>na hī</i> [NEG + 'be'] |
| C | Hindi/Urdu | <i>nehī</i> (marginal <i>na</i> and <i>mat</i>) |
| C~A | change in Hindi/Urdu | <i>nehī</i> <i>nehī + hona</i> 'be' |

evidence that *nehī* is formed from *na* and an earlier inflected form of the verb/auxiliary *hona* 'to be' is that copulas and auxiliaries, i.e. typical uses of *hona* 'to be', are not necessary with *nehī*, as (2) and (3) show and are uncommon.

- (2) Hindi/Urdu

mē student nehī (hū)

I student not am

'I am not a student.' (data checked with Sakshi Jain)

- (3) *mē yehā kam nehī karti (hū)*

I here work not do am

'I don't (generally) work here.' (data checked with Sakshi Jain)

Currently, the last stage of the cycle is reached and the copula and auxiliary are used again, as in (4).

- (4) Hindi/Urdu

koi bhi Pakistani bharat me nehī rah raha hai

Any even Pakistani India in NEG live PROGR is

'No Pakistani is living in India.' (Lampp 2006: 17, her transliteration)

This "doubling" of the auxiliary verb (in stage C~A) would be expected although, cross-linguistically, this stage is very rare.

14 The Negative Existential and Other Cycles

Auxiliary verbs typically add tense, mood, aspect, or voice and accompany a lexical verb. They may agree with the subject and this is one of the reasons auxiliaries are less likely to be reanalyzed as negatives. Because they are inflected in many languages, the forms will be many and that stops the reanalysis. So how was the reanalysis from stage A to B in Hindi/Urdu possible? Numerous scholars have argued there is a second source that may have helped the NEC along. Whitney (1889: 413), Turner (1966: 404), and Bashir (2006: 7), to name a few, have argued that *na* was strengthened with an emphatic *hī*, which is still around in the language. Since the paradigm of *hona* ‘to be’ shows many forms, *hū*, *ho*, *hē* [1SG, 2SG, 3SG], etc, it may be that the presence of *hī* helped solidify the form *nehī*.

Different cycles compete and that is visible in a minimizer that is sporadically used as negative, e.g. the one identified by Gul (2009), namely *thoRi* ‘little’, as in (5). When *thoRi* is negative, emphatic particles like *si*, *hi*, and *tu* cannot follow it, as in (5b), according to Gul, and that is a way to distinguish the negative from its adverbial origin, possibly shedding doubt on the emphatic origin of *-hī* discussed above. This renewal by a minimizer is typical of the Jespersen Cycle.

(5) Hindi/Urdu

- a. *Usne thoRi bat ki.*
he NEG talk did
'He didn't talk.' (Gul 2009)
- b. *wo BASHEER Thori Tha, wo Tou PAPA The.*
he Basheer NEG was he EMPH papa was
'He wasn't Basheer, he really was daddy.'
(mobiletextsms.blogspot.com/2011/08/wo-basheer-thori-tha.html)

The verb *hona* ‘to be’, according to Platts (1884), also means ‘to exist, subsist, be born’ and a variety of other meanings typical of existential verbs but in present-day Hindi/Urdu compounds like *mowjud hona* ‘be present’ or *rehna* ‘to live’ are used instead. Such renewal of verbs that participate in the NEC is expected.

In this section, I have shown that a copula and auxiliary can be the source but that verbal inflection might be hindering the reanalysis as negative. What probably made it possible to see *nehī* as a negative particle in Hindi/Urdu, also an inflected language, rather than as verb is the independent existence of *hī* in the language. In the next section, I show how an inflected negative auxiliary can indeed lose the inflection.

Elly van Gelderen

2.2 English and Uralic

Hindi/Urdu shows a case where auxiliary and copula forms of *hona* ‘to be’ combine with the negative in a typical NEC. As mentioned, this is often difficult in languages where verbs are inflected because one of the many forms of ‘to be’ will have to be chosen to fuse with the negative. In this section, I provide two instances where it did.

There are stages in the history of English and present-day varieties where the inflected forms *am not*, *are not*, *is not*, etc. are reduced to *ain’t* which is then used as multipurpose negative copula and auxiliary, as in (6), for all persons.

- (6) a. copula
I ain’t afeard o’ nyther on you [COHA fiction 1828]
- b. perfective auxiliary
and when you ain’t got any tanks [BNC spoken]
- c. progressive auxiliary
that we ain’t gonna relet these [BNC spoken]

This *ain’t* could in principle be reanalyzed as the negative but there is no evidence in British English that *ain’t* is spreading as a standard negative, e.g. used with an inflected, finite verb, as in (7). This sentence probably has a meaning of ‘I didn’t see/haven’t seen’.

- (7) I ain’t see any because I were with Jacqueline weren’t I? [BNC spoken]

Of the 1270 instances of *ain’t* followed by a verb in the British National Corpus, no verbs are finite but of the 4405 instances in COCA, there are fifty or so where *ain’t* could be a negative particle preceding the finite verb, namely those in (8).

- (8) a. When I came to this class, I ain’t know nothing. [COCA spoken]
- b. Nah, you ain’t want trying to hit the coach in the face. [COCA fiction]
- c. It ain’t have any beer? [COCA fiction]

So, English copulas and auxiliaries could participate in a NEC when their inflection is neutralized as with *ain’t*. For external reasons, *ain’t* is stigmatized. The example from Uralic shows another case of an inflected auxiliary losing the markings of tense and agreement.

The origin of the negative auxiliary in Uralic “may well be related to the verb ‘is’ (*i-*)” (Simoncsics 1998: 594) and more precisely to a negative copula (Honti 1997: 173). That would mean the NEC occurred in earlyier Uralic. We cannot be completely sure about this scenario but the present-day languages in the family

14 The Negative Existential and Other Cycles

show how the NEC proceeds: the negative auxiliary gradually loses inflection to end up a uninflected particle.

An example of an inflected negative auxiliary in the Uralic family appears in (9a). Other varieties of Saami have reduced inflection, as in (9b) and (9c), with the main verb picking up the tense.

- (9) a. Southern Saami

Idtj-im (*manne*) *daejrie-h*
NEG.PST-1SG (1SG) know-CONN
(I)

‘I didn’t know.’ (Bergsland 1994: 44)

- b. Skolt Saami

(mon) jiõm poor
(I) 1SG.NEG eat.PRS

‘I don’t eat.’ (Miestamo & Koponen 2015: 355–6)

- c. Skolt Saami

jiõm poor-*rām*
1SG.NEG eat-PST

‘I didn’t eat.’ (Miestamo & Koponen 2015: 355–6)

In Estonian and non-standard Finnish, the auxiliary has been reduced to a non-inflected particle *ei* for all negation, as in (10), and *ei* can be deleted if a negative adverb is present (see Honti 1997: 164).

- (10) Estonian

Maia ei laula
Maia NEG sing.CONN
(I)

‘Maia doesn’t sing.’ (Veselinova 2016: 151, data from Miina Norvik)

The variety among the languages of the Uralic family shows an auxiliary as source for a negative particle.

This section has shown that inflection on a copula or auxiliary need not hinder reanalysis because it can get lost. I’ll now turn to another example of a copula participating in the NEC.

2.3 Varieties of Arabic

So far, we looked at auxiliaries and copulas that are reanalyzed as negatives. Examples of verbs participating in the NEC that are only copulas occur as well. This should be frequent as long as the copula is not (very) inflected and that is true.

Elly van Gelderen

One well-known example is from Arabic (Eid 1983; Katz 1996; Edwards 2006; Al-saeedi 2015). The sentences in (11) are from Egyptian Arabic but are grammatical in Modern Standard Arabic as well. The new copula agrees in number and gender because it was originally a demonstrative with number and gender features.

(11) Egyptian Arabic

- a. *'ana huwwa l-mas'u:la*
I he the-responsible
'I am the responsible.' (Edwards 2006: 51)
- b. *il-mushkila hiyya T-Talaba*
the-problem.F.SG she the-students
'The problem is the students.' (Edwards 2006: 52)

The erstwhile pronoun can be negated in the present tense in the same way as a verb, as in (12). Once the number and gender are lost on the demonstrative, this form can turn into a negative particle.

(12) Egyptian Arabic

- faTma ma-hiyya:-sh il-mas'u:la*
Fatima NEG-be.3SG.F-NEG the-responsible
'Fatima is not the one responsible.' (Edwards 2006: 53)

Sentences such as (12) may therefore participate in a NEC which occurs in a number of varieties of Arabic. In (13), there is a negative copula *miš* that derives from a form like (12), in particular from *ma-hu-šay* [NEG-COP-NEG], a copula inside a negative brace. The copula itself originates from a (minimally inflected) demonstrative *hu*. This negative copula *miš*, no longer inflected, is now being generalized for emphasis, as in (14).

(13) Cairo Arabic

- Mohammed miš hina*
Mohammed NEG here
'M. isn't here.' Diem 2014: 2

(14) Cairo Arabic

- hiyya miš iggawwizzit?*
she NEG married
'Hasn't she married?' (Woidich 2006: 341)

Although existential verbs are the source of many auxiliaries and general copulas, as in Urdu/Hindi, the latter participate in the NEC by themselves. In lan-

14 The Negative Existential and Other Cycles

guages where the copula develops from a demonstrative, as in Arabic, the copula also participates in the NEC. I'll end with an example of a copula/auxiliary participating in the NEC, where the reconstruction is not completely clear.

2.4 Athabascan

Athabascan is a family of 42 languages (according to Ethnologue¹) that has a negative construction derived from a negative copula/auxiliary. For instance, Kari (1990) suggests that the negative 'ele' in Ahtna (15) is related to the verb *lae* 'to be', and one could argue that the suffix *-leh* is also related to that verb. Kwadacha (16), Dëne Sųliné (17), and Tlingit (18) have the same forms but no affix, and in Carrier (19), it is a prefix. It is thus possible that the negative marker arose from a negative existential.

- (15) Ahtna
'ele' ugheli ghi-leh
 NEG good 3.PFV.be.NEG
 'He is not good.' (Kari 1990: 272)
- (16) Kwadacha/Ft Ware Sekani
Edna ?ədu Mary əʔɬ'h
 Edna NEG Mary 3.see
 'Edna doesn't see Mary.' (Hargus 2002: 110)
- (17) Chipewyan/Dëne Sųliné
nezú-híle
 be.good-not
 'It is not good.' (Li 1967: 420)
- (18) Tlingit
λéł wusgíd
 NEG fall.IRR
 'He didn't fall.' (Krauss 1969: 72)
- (19) Carrier
lh-e'-z-us-'al
 NEG-OM-NEG-1SG-eat
 'I am not eating (an unspecified object).' (Poser 2009: 26)

Leer reconstructs an alternative scenario with a Proto-Athabascan *-he suffix, which is "originally an enclitic" (2000: 102), and a Proto-Atabaskan-Eyak-Tlingit

¹<https://www.ethnologue.com/subgroups/eyak-athabaskan>.

Elly van Gelderen

particle *(ʔ)i_{le}? ‘it is not’ (Leer 2000: 123). He writes that it “seems probable that the Tlingit negative particle *l* is by origin a contraction of the prohibitive interjectional particle (ʔ)i_h ‘don’t’ which is a phonologically perfect cognate with Pre-PA [Pre-Proto Athabascan] *(ʔ)i_{le}?” (Leer 2000: 123–4). Willem de Reuse (p.c.) also suggests a link of the sentence-final prohibitive particles to this root. In Western Apache, for instance, there is *hela*’ and in Navajo *lágó*, both meaning ‘don’t’.

One question is the following. Is *(ʔ)i_{le}? originally a third person negative of the verb ‘to be’ that was reanalyzed as a negative particle during Proto-Athabascan-Eyak-Tlingit or is it still an auxiliary? Rice (1989: 1108, n. 1) suggests that the negative *yile* in Slave, e.g. in Bearlake (20), “may historically be an auxiliary verb in the perfective aspect”.

- (20) Bearlake
bebí nedá yíle
 baby heavy NEG
 ‘The baby is light.’ (Rice 1989: 1101)

The account for the doubling in (15) depends on the analysis of the (‘e)_{le(h)}: negative existential, auxiliary, or particle. If it is an auxiliary or existential, the final *-leh* would be a renewed existential that became part of the negative; if a particle, doubling is fine. I think the data are not clear enough to decide between a prohibitive or negative copula/auxiliary earlier stage.

§2 has provided examples of auxiliaries and copulas that, like existentials, are sources for negatives.

3 Negative verbs and adverbs as source for the NEC?

Connected to the question about the source of the negative existential is the issue if semantically appropriate lexical items should be seen as part of the NEC. This would include negative verbs, such as *fail*, *lack*, and adjectives, like *empty*, as in Givón’s Cycle, and negative adverbs, as in Jespersen’s Cycle. Veselinova (2013: 136–7) sees these as part of the NEC. In this section, I first examine negative verbs and then non-verbal sources.

3.1 Negative verbs

Givón (1978: 89) writes “[n]egative markers in language most often arise, diachronically, from erstwhile negative main verbs, most commonly ‘refuse’, ‘deny’, ‘reject’, ‘avoid’, ‘fail’, or ‘lack’”. In earlier work (Givón 1973: 917), he provides

14 The Negative Existential and Other Cycles

example verbs: English *fail*, Kihung'an *-khona* 'refuse', and Bemba *-bula* 'lack, miss', but no actual trajectories. Veselinova (2013) quotes Kannada *illa* as derived from a Dravidian root 'to die'.

The Chinese negative *mei* is perhaps the most well-known example of a verb meaning 'to sink, die', as in (21), being reanalyzed as negative in (22) with an optional *you* renewal (Croft 1991: 11; Shi & Li 2004; Yang 2012), also Nina Yunsun Lin (p.c.).

(21) Old Chinese

Yao Shun ji mo ...

Yao Shun since died

'Since Yao and Shun died, ...' (Mengzi, Tengwengong B, Nina Yunsun Lin (p.c.))

(22) Modern Chinese

wo mei (you) shu

I not ex book

'I don't have a book.'

Lam Chit Yu (2017) shows that, in Hong Kong Cantonese, the negative *mei* and existential/possessive *you* merge phonetically as *mou*, and a new copula could develop.

The changes in the verb *mei* present a classification challenge in that the verb first reanalyzes as a negative possessive in (23) and aspectual auxiliary in (24) in Early Mandarin (12th to 14th centuries CE) and then as an (aspectually restricted) negative in Modern Chinese.

(23) Early Mandarin

yu de wang ren mei kunan, ...

wish PRT died person not-ex suffering

'If you wish that the deceased one has no suffering, ...' (Dunhuang
Bianwen, Nina Yunsun Lin (p.c.))

(24) Early Mandarin

zhe-yi-ri mei shang-guo zhong jiu

for.a.while NEG.ASP serve-PRT cup wine

'Wine has not been served for a while.' (*Jin ping mei*, Shi 2002: 200)

With the verb *mei* 'to die', the reanalysis of the negative verb in (21) is to a negative existential in (23) and then to a negative in (22) with the existential being

Elly van Gelderen

renewed by *you*. The first step is an instance of Givón's Cycle and the second of the NEC.

Clear cases where a negative verb would be reanalyzed as a negative might be the verb *fail* in English, as in (25). Here, 'failed to' can be replaced by 'didn't' without loss of meaning.

- (25) [we] became so engrossed in our game of tetherball that we failed to hear the teacher calling us to return to the classroom. [COCA magazine]

Because the English negative *-n't* is in the final stages of the Jespersen Cycle (i.e. it is often inaudible and speakers have to repeat it), we expect such a renewal because the alternative, renewal of the negative by a negative adverb, as in (26), is objected to so much by prescriptivists.

- (26) He don't care about nothing but his car, rims, money. [COCA spoken]

However, the use of (25) is not frequent and many of the *failed to* instances still have the meaning of 'not be successful'. Table 14.2 provides some data on *fail* from American English since 1990. This figure shows little change in 25 years and that the spoken register lags behind, a sign that this change is not really in progress.

Table 14.2: Failed to and a verb in COCA.

| Section | Freq | Size (M) | Per Mil | |
|-----------|--------|----------|---------|--|
| spoken | 1,881 | 109.4 | 17.20 | |
| fiction | 2,166 | 104.9 | 20.65 | |
| magazine | 3,553 | 110.1 | 32.27 | |
| newspaper | 4,999 | 106.0 | 47.18 | |
| academic | 4,866 | 103.4 | 47.05 | |
| 1990–1994 | 3,736 | 104.0 | 35.92 | |
| 1995–1999 | 3,203 | 103.4 | 30.96 | |
| 2000–2004 | 3,396 | 102.9 | 32.99 | |
| 2005–2009 | 3,228 | 102.0 | 31.63 | |
| 2010–2015 | 3,902 | 121.6 | 32.10 | |
| Total | 34,930 | | | |

As several people have mentioned to me, this verb is so negative (in American culture) that it probably won't catch on. Its use in the British National Corpus (e.g. in spoken) is even lower though not in the written registers. Other negative verbs, e.g. *lack*, don't show this either, however.

14 The Negative Existential and Other Cycles

In this subsection, negative verbs have been shown to be the source for the NEC.

3.2 Non-verbal nature

Some scholars have tried to unify the NEC and the JC e.g. van der Auwera et al. 2021 [this volume]. In addition, Veselinova's definition of the NEC includes reanalyzing non-verbal material from existential constructions. The relevant example in Veselinova (2013: 136) mentions is from Ket. In this section, I argue against including these into the NEC. I'll first discuss the adverb/noun sources followed by the existential pro-form.

The JC has traditionally been seen as a nominal cycle because its source is a negative noun, such as *nan wuht* 'no thing' in (27), or a minimizer, such as French *pas* 'step'. These nouns can be reanalyzed as adverbs in (28).

- (27) Old English

forþærme hie hiora nan wuht ongietan ne meahton
because they their no thing understand not could
'because they couldn't understand anything' (Alfred, *Pastoral Care* 4.12 Cotton, van Gelderen 2004: 81)

- (28) Old English

Næron 3e noht æmetti3e, ðeah ge wel ne dyden
not-were you not unoccupied though you well not did
'You were not unoccupied, though you did not do well.' (OED, Alfred, *Pastoral Care* 207.20 Cotton, van Gelderen 2004: 82)

The JC typically renews the negative element *ne* by a new noun *nawhiht* whereas the NEC replaces the verb that has become part of the negative.

The example that has been used to show that non-verbal material from existential constructions is reanalyzed is a solitary one from Ket. In Ket, *bən's'aŋ* 'there are no' derives from the negative *bənj* and *us'aŋ* 'there', according to Veselinova (2015: 136, but without a reference) and this would use non-verbal parts of the construction. The Ket dictionary (Kotorova & Nefedov 2015) confirms *bən* as negative (2015: 135), *bənsaŋ* 'there are no' (2015: 136), and *usəŋ/usam* as 'there are' (2015: 415). The existential particles *bənsaŋ* and *usəŋ/usam* do not agree with the subject or mark tense and are also used to mark locative or possessives, as shown in (29).

Elly van Gelderen

(29) Ket

śpdaŋ bógdəm bánsaŋ
father rifle not.exist

‘Father has no rifle.’ (Kotorova & Nefedov 2015: 65, but gloss adjusted)

Using the dictionary information, it is possible to regard *usay/usam* ‘there are’ in Ket as a copula (possibly originating from a demonstrative like Arabic) and then *bánsaŋ* is the combination of a negative and a copula, quite typical for the NEC.

Concluding, I have shown an interaction between Givon’s Cycle and the NEC in §3.1 and have shown in §3.2 that the instance where a non-verbal part of the existential seems to participate in the NEC is just a negative form of the copula. The use of non-verbal material in the NEC is very rare. For instance, in their compilation of typical grammaticalizations, Heine & Kuteva (2002: 199–206) mention a development where a locative develops into an existential (e.g. Sranan *de* ‘to be’ from the locative *there*) but this is part of the copula cycle (van Gelderen 2015). This locative, having become a copula, can of course be input to a NEC, just like demonstratives that have been reanalyzed as copulas.

4 Doubling

A last question concerns another difference between the JC and the NEC, namely that doubling is typical for JC but not for the NEC. This follows from the ways the cycles proceed: the NEC has a negative with an existential (or copula or auxiliary) serve as a sentential negative and there is therefore no doubling of the negative but rather of the copula. In contrast, the JC is about pragmatic strengthening by a second negative and therefore doubling is typical. In this section, I discuss two possible counterexamples to the claim that doubling the negative is not typical of the NEC.

Croft (1991: 10) mentions the case of Wintu where the negative existential ‘*elew*’ is reinforcing the regular negative *-mina* in (30).

(30) Wintu

‘elew-be:skən hara:-wer-mina
NEG.EX-you.IPFV go-FUT-NEG

‘You were not supposed to go.’ (Pitkin 1984: 198)

The morpheme *-mina* derives most likely from the verb root *min* ‘to not exist’ (Schlichter 1981: 361; Pitkin 1984: 121) and is also related to *minel* ‘be dead; die’

14 The Negative Existential and Other Cycles

(Schlichter 1981: 146). Schlichter (1981: 311) refers to ‘*elew*’ as a negative auxiliary preverb so this language renews its negative auxiliaries with negative verbs (Givón’s Cycle).

It is not clear from Croft, Schlichter, or Pitkin what the process was for adding ‘*elew*’ in (30). The negative auxiliary ‘*elew*’ is reconstructed from a demonstrative *‘E and stative *I or future *le and a suffix *w (Pitkin 1984: 164). The examples of a solitary ‘*elew*’ given by Pitkin (1984: 198) are optative or imperative prefixes, as in (31), or on its own, as in (32).

- (31) Wintu
 ‘*elew-war*
 NEG.EX-go
 ‘Don’t venture’ (Pitkin 1984: 198)
- (32) *sedet* ‘*elew kiyemti-m*
 coyote not old.man.speak
 ‘Coyote never speaks wisely.’ (Pitkin 1984: 269)

This means that ‘*elew*’ can be analyzed in Wintu as a copula in origin that became used with other negatives. There is no evidence that there was ever a stage with two negative existentials in this language but further work is needed.

Butters 2021 [this volume] mentions some NEC cases from Chadic that suggest doubling of the negative, based in part on Shay (2008) who, in her grammar of South Giziga, mentions an existential consisting of two negatives, namely (33). The verb (*á*)n only occurs in negative clauses and is therefore glossed as ‘be.NEG’.

- (33) South Giziga
kà n tá sà jí mèvèl
 2 be.NEG NEG FUT catch liver
 ‘You will not be angry.’ (Shay 2008, chapter 13)

Shay mentions that a “likely source for the negative existential predicate is a verb nV meaning ‘be’ supported by Lukas’ (1970: 151) report of a North Giziga –*nay* ‘to be’. I therefore think this is not a case of doubling but just of an existential being used with a negative, i.e. stage B.

5 Structural characteristics of the NEC, JC, and Givón’s Cycle

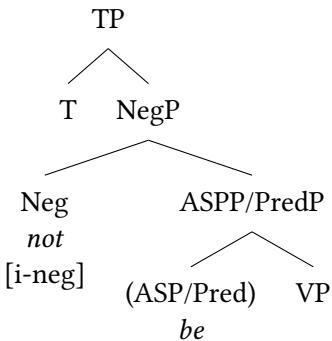
In this paper, I have argued that there are three negative cycles, NEC, JC, and Givón’s Cycle, with the NEC interacting with Givón’s and the Copula Cycles

Elly van Gelderen

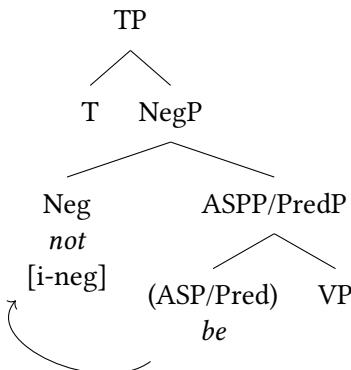
(which renew the existential lost in the NEC). In this section, I will provide formal descriptions of each of these cycles showing that they differ.

For ease of exposition, I provide English morphemes for the NEC. A possible NEC may go from having the same negative with a full verb and an existential in (34a) to (34b) where the negative and existential are fused because the existential moves to the Neg head on its way to T. Finally, in (34c), the reanalyzed negative serves both existential and standard negatives and an optional new copula may appear.

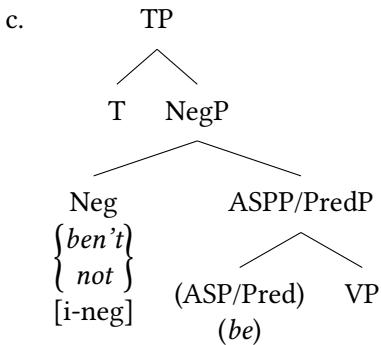
(34) a.



b.



14 The Negative Existential and Other Cycles



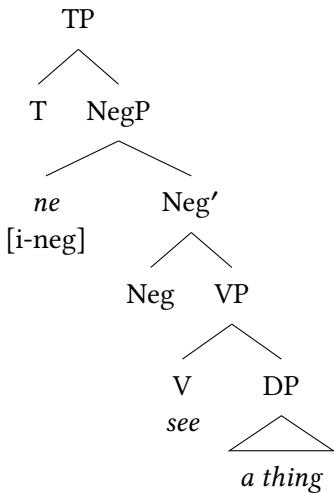
Because the NEC can have a copula as its source, the Pred(icate) P(hrase) is used in (34); the ASP(ect) P(hrase) is needed for stages of the NEC that are aspectually restricted, as in Chinese.

The trigger for this cycle is that copula verbs can be zero and the child reanalyzes the copula as part of the negative. For instance, Becker (2000) shows that young children omit the copula especially when the predicate expresses a temporary property (with an aspectual representation).

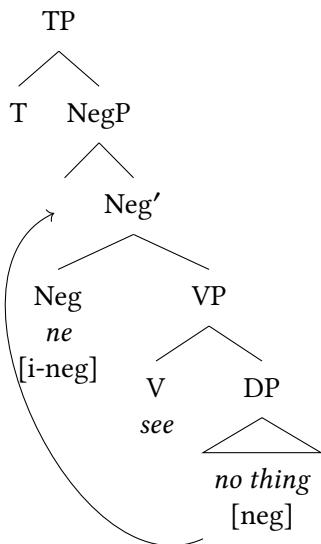
Turning to the JC, these changes don't single out a special kind of verb; this cycle typically takes a negative or indefinite noun to renew a negative head. Meillet (1912: 139) writes that what provokes the start of the (negative) cycle is the need to speak forcefully ("le besoin de parler avec force"). Kiparsky & Condoravdi (2006), in examining Jespersen's Cycle in Greek, find no evidence for phonetic weakening and similarly suggest pragmatic and semantic reasons. A simple negative cannot be emphatic; in order for a negative to be emphatic, it needs to be reinforced, e.g. by a minimizer. Adapting ideas from Dahl (2001), they argue that, when emphatic negatives are overused, their semantic impact weakens and they become the regular negative and a new emphatic will appear. I have provided these changes in (35). In (35a), there is one negative, represented by Old English *ne*; in (35b), there is a second negative which, because it is agreeing with the negative features in the NegP, moves to the Spec of NegP and then the original negative is reinterpreted as head.

Elly van Gelderen

(35) a.



b.

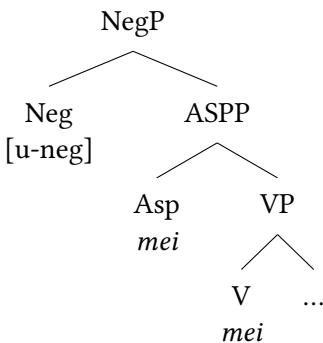


Finally, the negative features of the DP are reanalyzed as the grammatical negative features and housed in the specifier of the NegP and we are back to (35a).

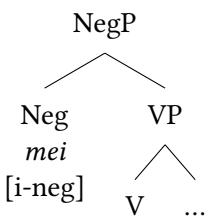
Givón's Cycle involves the reanalysis of a verb into an aspect marker into a negative. This could be represented as a change from (36a) to (36b), with Chinese as the example language.

14 The Negative Existential and Other Cycles

(36) a.



b.



The reason English *failed to* in (36b) shows no inclination to take over as [i-neg] is related to English verbs having other features, e.g. tense and agreement and not being reanalyzable as a simple negative. The same hold for the NEC because a negative and a verb are hard to reanalyze as verb if there are too many agreement and other features involved. The JC doesn't encounter these obstacles.

6 Conclusions

In this paper, I argue in favor of seeing the NEC as a verbal cycle that combines a 'be'-like verb with a negative and then renews the existential/copular verb. The JC is a non-verbal cycles, with renewals originating in nouns and adverbs. Both the NEC and Givon's Cycle rely on verbs for their renewal and work best when these verbs don't have too many other features; JC is not affected by these verbal features.

Acknowledgements

Some ideas in this paper are based on chapters 4 and 8 in van Gelderen (2011). I thank Mekhlid Alsaeedi, Cherry Lam, and Ljuba Veselinova for comments.

Elly van Gelderen

Abbreviations

| | | | |
|--------|-------------------------|------|----------------------------|
| ASP | aspect | NEC | Negative Existential Cycle |
| CONNEX | negative participle | NEG | negative |
| COP | copula | OM | object marker |
| EX | affirmative existential | PFV | perfective |
| EMPH | emphatic | PRED | predicate |
| FUT | future | PROG | progressive |
| JC | Jespersen Cycle | PRS | present |
| IPFV | imperfective | PST | past |
| IRR | irrealis | PRT | particle |

List of languages

| | | | |
|-----------------------|------|----------------|-----|
| Ahtna | aht | Hindi | hin |
| Arabic | arb | Ket | ket |
| Bearlake | scs | Kwadacha | sek |
| Cantonese | yyef | Marathi | mar |
| Carrier | crx | Skolt Saami | sms |
| Chinese | chi | South Giziga | giz |
| Chipewyan/Dëne Sųłiné | chp | Southern Saami | sma |
| Egyptian Arabic | arz | Tlingit | tli |
| English | eng | Urdu | urd |
| Estonian | est | Wintu | wnw |
| Finnish | fin | | |

Sources

- British National Corpus (BNC)
 Corpus of Contemporary American English (COCA)
 Corpus of Historical American English (COHA)

References

- Alsaeedi, Mekhlid. 2015. *The rise of new copulas in Arabic*. ASU. (MA thesis).

14 *The Negative Existential and Other Cycles*

- Bashir, Elena. 2006. Change in progress: Negation in Hindi and Urdu. In Rajendra Singh (ed.), *The yearbook of SA Languages and Linguistics 2006*, 3–29. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Becker, Misha. 2000. The acquisition of the copula in child English. In R. Billerey & B. Lillehaugen (eds.), *Proceedings of the 19th West Coast Conference on Formal Linguistics*. Somerville: MA: Cascadilla Press.
- Bergsland, Knut. 1994. *Sydsamisk grammatik*. Karasjok: Davvi Girji o.s.
- Butters, Marielle. 2021. The negative existential cycle in Chadic. In Ljuba Veselinova & Arja Hamari (eds.), *The Negative Existential Cycle*, 57–80. Berlin: Language Science Press. DOI: ??
- Croft, William. 1991. The evolution of negation. *Journal of Linguistics* 27(1). 1–27.
- Dahl, Östen. 2001. Inflationary effects in language and elsewhere. In Joan Bybee & Paul Hopper (eds.), *Frequency and the emergence of linguistic structure*, 471–480. Philadelphia: John Benjamins.
- Diem, Werner. 2014. *Negation in Arabic*. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz.
- Edwards, Malcolm. 2006. Pronouns, agreement and focus in Egyptian Arabic. *SOAS Working Papers in Linguistics* 14. 51–62.
- Eid, M. 1983. The copula function of pronouns. *Lingua* 59. 197–207.
- Givón, Talmy. 1973. The time-axis phenomenon. *Language* 49(4). 890–925.
- Givón, Talmy. 1978. Negation in language. In Peter Cole (ed.), *Syntax & semantics*, vol. 9, 69–112. New York: Academic Press.
- Gul, Ahmed. 2009. Grammaticalization of *thoRi*. Manuscript.
- Hargus, Sharon. 2002. Negation in Kwadacha (Ft. Ware Sekani). *Alaska Native Language Center Working Papers* 2. 106–120.
- Heine, Bernd & Tania Kuteva. 2002. *World lexicon of grammaticalization*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Honti, László. 1997. Die Negation im Uralischen I–III. *Linguistica Uralica* 2. 81–96, 161–176, 241–252.
- Jespersen, Otto. 1917. *Negation in English and other languages*. København: A. F. Høst.
- Kari, James. 1990. *Ahtna dictionary*. Fairbanks: Alaska Native Language Center.
- Katz, Aya. 1996. *Cyclical grammaticalization and the cognitive link between pronoun and copula*. Rice. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Kellogg, S. H. 1938. *A grammar of the Hindi language*. London: Kegan Paul.
- Kiparsky, Paul & Cleo Condoravdi. 2006. Tracking Jespersen's Cycle. In Mark Janse, Brian Joseph & A. Ralli (eds.), *Proceedings of the 2nd International Conference of Modern Greek Dialects and Linguistic Theory*, 172–197. Mytilene: Doukas.

Elly van Gelderen

- Kotorova, Elizaveta & Andrey Nefedov. 2015. *Comprehensive Ket dictionary*. Munich: Lincom.
- Krauss, Michael. 1969. *On the classification in the Athabaskan, Eyak, and Tlingit verb* (International Journal of American Linguistics memoir 24). Baltimore: Waverley Press.
- Lam Chit Yu, Cherry. 2017. Negation and aspects in grammaticalization. Manuscript.
- Lampp, Claire. 2006. *Negation in Modern Hindi-Urdu*. (MA thesis).
- Leer, Jeff. 2000. The negative/irrealis category in Athabaskan-Eyak-Tlingit. In Ted Fernald & Paul Platero (eds.), *The Athabaskan languages*, 101–138. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Li, Fang Kuei. 1967. *Chipewyan* (Viking Fund Publications in Anthropology 6). New York: Viking Fund.
- Lukas, Johannes. 1970. *Studien zur Sprache der Gisiga*. Gluckstadt: Augustin.
- Meillet, Antoine. 1912. L'évolution des formes grammaticales. *Scientia* 12. (Reprinted in 1926. *Linguistique historique et linguistique générale*. Paris: Champion, 130–148.), 384–400.
- Miestamo, Matti & Eino Koponen. 2015. Negation in Skolt Saami. In Matti Miestamo, Anne Tamm & Beáta Wagner-Nagy (eds.), *Negation in Uralic languages* (Typological Studies in Language 108), 353–375. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Pitkin, Harvey. 1984. *Wintu grammar*. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Platts, John. 1884. *A dictionary of Urdu, Classical Hindi, and English*. 1930 reprint. London: OUP.
- Poser, William. 2009. The Carrier language: A brief introduction. Manuscript.
- Rice, Keren. 1989. *A grammar of Slave*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Schlichter, Alice. 1981. *Wintu dictionary*. Berkeley: University of California.
- Shay, Erin. 2008. A grammar of Giziga. Manuscript.
- Shi, Yuzhi. 2002. *The establishment of Modern Chinese grammar: The formation of the resultative construction and its effects*. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Shi, Yuzhi & Charles N. Li. 2004. *A history of grammaticalization in Chinese*. Beijing: Peking University Press.
- Simoncsics, Péter. 1998. Kamassian. In Daniel Abondolo (ed.), *The Uralic languages*, 580–601. London: Routledge.
- Turner, R. L. 1966. *A comparative dictionary of the Indo-Aryan languages*. London: Oxford University Press.
- van der Auwera, Johan, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen. 2021. Intertwining the negative cycles. In Ljuba Veselinova & Arja Hamari (eds.), *The Negative Existential Cycle*, 555–594. Berlin: Language Science Press. DOI: ??.

14 The Negative Existential and Other Cycles

- van Gelderen, Elly. 2004. Economy, innovation, and prescriptivism: From spec to head and head to head. *The Journal of Comparative Germanic Linguistics* 7(1). 59–98.
- van Gelderen, Elly. 2011. *The linguistic cycle: Language change and the language faculty*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- van Gelderen, Elly. 2015. The copula cycle. *Lingue e Linguaggio* 14(2). 287–301.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2013. Negative existentials: A cross-linguistic study. *Italian Journal of Linguistics* 25(1). 107–145.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2015. Special negators in the Uralic languages: Synchrony, diachrony and interaction with standard negation. In Matti Miestamo, Anne Tamm & Beáta Wagner-Nagy (eds.), *Negation in Uralic languages* (Typological Studies in Language 108), 547–599. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2016. The negative existential cycle viewed through the lens of comparative data. In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change continued* (Linguistics Today 227), 139–187. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Whitney, William Dwight. 1889. *Sanskrit grammar*. 2nd edn. Boston: Harvard University Press.
- Woidich, Manfred. 2006. *Das Kairenisch-Arabische*. Wiesbaden: Harrasowitz.
- Yang, Hui-Ling. 2012. *The grammaticalization of Hakka, Mandarin and Southern Min*. ASU. (Doctoral dissertation).

Chapter 15

Intertwining the negative cycles

Johan van der Auwera^a, Olga Krasnoukhova^a & Frens Vossen^a

^aUniversity of Antwerp

In the synchronic and diachronic typology of negation three so-called “cycles” have been prominent: the Jespersen Cycle, the Negative Existential Cycle and the Quantifier Cycle. This paper refines these notions, sketches what is cyclical about them and shows how they relate to one another. For the Jespersen Cycle it is argued that it crucially involves a negator that is either contaminated by another item or fuses with it. The Negative Existential Cycles comes in three subtypes, two of which can be fit into a more general Jespersen Cycle frame. For the Quantifier Cycle it is argued that the term had better be given a new definition and we then show how it is similar to a Jespersen Cycle and feeds into it.

1 A tale of three Cycles

Both the synchronic and the diachronic typology of standard negation, i.e., the negation of a main clause affirmative verbal predicate, have been described and explained in terms of at least two “cycles”, i.e., hypotheses about the nature and the development of negative markers. The “cycle” hypothesis that has been most prominent is, without any doubt, the “Jespersen Cycle”. This hypothesis is associated with the Danish Anglicist and general linguist Otto Jespersen, who drew attention to a “curious fluctuation” (Jespersen 1917: 4) in the renewal of negative markers, with one negative marker first weakening, then being strengthened, “generally” by another word, not itself negative, but which in time becomes a negator too and suppresses the original negator. The process is schematized in (1).

- (1) The “Jespersen Cycle”
negation is expressed by one negator



Johan van der Auwera, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen

→

this one negator is strengthened by another word

→

the “other word” is interpreted as part of the by now bipartite negator

→

negation is expressed by one negator again, but it is the word that was previously added to the old negator

This path is indeed a cycle, for the new negator can then also undergo this process. The term “Jespersen Cycle” was introduced by Dahl (1979), in the variant “Jespersen’s Cycle”, with a possessive ‘s. Other terms are “negation cycle” (e.g. Schwegler 1983) or “negative cycle” (e.g. van Gelderen 2011; Mithun 2016). The phenomenon was extensively studied even before 1917: Meillet (1912) used it to illustrate grammaticalization in the very paper in which he introduced the term “grammaticalization”. The textbook illustration features French. Specifically, earlier French negated a finite verb with a preverbal *ne*, modern French has this *ne* in the company of a postverbal *pas*, the original and still surviving lexical meaning of which is ‘step’. With this original meaning the reference was to something small, which lent itself to a negative polarity use, which was emphatic. In the context of negation *pas* turned negative polarity into a negation force and lost the emphatic sense. Now colloquial French may negate with only *pas*. (2) is a four stage representation of what happened in French.

(2) The “Jespersen Cycle” in French

ne ‘not’

→

ne ... pas ‘not even a step’

→

ne ... pas ‘not’

→

pas ‘not’

The scheme in (2) is, of course, a language-specific illustration. In French, both negators are syntactic elements; the first one is preverbal, and the second one is postverbal (relative to the finite verb) and it results from an emphatic minimizing use of the word *pas*. These properties are not essential, i.e., the negators may be affixes, the order with respect to the verb may be different and the origin of the new negator need not be a word that means ‘step’ or even a minimizer (the English ancestor to ‘not’ and counterpart to *pas* was a pronoun meaning ‘nothing’). Furthermore, the representations in (1) and (2) are too simple, even

15 Intertwining the negative cycles

for French. Thus (1) and (2) sketch the process in terms of four stages. However, the ‘not at all’ stage could be made explicit and one can add two intermediate stages: a stage in which *pas* is not obligatory yet and another stage in which *ne* is no longer necessary.

The second cycle is the “Negative Existential Cycle”, so named by the first linguist to focus on it, viz. Croft (1991: 6), and later also called “Croft’s Cycle” (e.g. Kahrel 1996: 73). The idea is that a language may develop a special negator for existential clauses like (3).

- (3) *There are black swans.*

The special existential negator may extend its use to standard negation and ultimately replace the original standard negator. The Cycle is summarized in (4).

- (4) The “Negative Existential Cycle”

one negator is used for both standard and existential negation

→

one negator is used for standard negation and another one for existential negation

→

one negator is used for both standard and existential negation, but it is the one that was previously only used for existential negation and so it is a “new” one

There is no textbook illustration and we are not aware of a language in which the full cycle is attested (see also Veselinova 2014). The scheme in (5) takes us to Tuvaluan (Polynesian), based on Veselinova (2014: 1345–1346); the third stage is hypothetical.

- (5) The “Negative Existential Cycle” in Tuvaluan [tvL]

see is used both for standard and existential negation

→

see is used for standard negation and *seeai* (a fusion of *see* and an existence marker) for existential negation

→

seeai is also used for standard negation

Similar to (1), the representation in (4) is a simplification, not least because one can add intermediate stages. The stage between the first and second stage, for example, is the constellation in which existential negation is not the exclusive

Johan van der Auwera, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen

terrain of the special negative existential negator, because it allows constructions with the standard negator too.

In both cycles the last stage takes us back to the beginning.¹ We are dealing here with one notion of cyclicity. There is a second notion, a wider one, in which it is sufficient that when the language has reached a final stage, it can start a new cycle, but not necessarily with the negator of the last cycle. This is the perspective taken by van Gelderen (2011). It is also the perspective under which yet a third cycle comes up. This is the “Quantifier Cycle” (e.g. Willis et al. 2013: 36), first described as the “Jespersen argument Cycle” by Ladusaw (1993: 438) and subsumed under the Jespersen Cycle by Larrivée (2011). The phenomenon concerns the development of negative indefinites out of constructions with a negator and a non-negative word, via stages in which the latter becomes negatively polar and then negative.

(6) The “Quantifier Cycle”

- a clausal negator combines with a non-negative word
-
- the non-negative word which the clausal negator combines with becomes a negatively polar indefinite
-
- the negatively polar indefinite that the clausal negator combines with becomes a negative indefinite
-
- the negative indefinite occurs without the clausal negator

A textbook illustration takes us to French again. French *personne* ‘nobody’ ultimately derives from a word meaning ‘person’, which got restricted to negatively polar contexts. In negative contexts it first needs the support of the clausal negator and may change into a true negative indefinite – a pattern that has come to be known as “negative concord”.² In colloquial French *personne* is negative and can occur without *ne*. A four stage representation is given in (7).

(7) The “Quantifier Cycle” in French

- | | |
|-----------------|----------|
| <i>personne</i> | 'person' |
|-----------------|----------|

¹The new first stage is not exactly the same as the old one, though. For French the first single negator stage has *ne* but the next single negator stage starts with *pas*. From this point of view, the Gabelentz term “spiral” (1891: 251), used by Meillet (1912: 394), is a better term.

²The term became standard since Giannakidou (1998), although we have to go back to Jespersen once more for an *avant la lettre* occurrence, not this time to Jespersen (1917), but to Jespersen (1922: 352).

15 Intertwining the negative cycles

| | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| → | |
| | <i>ne ... personne</i> ‘not anybody’ |
| → | |
| | <i>ne ... personne</i> ‘not nobody’ |
| → | |
| | <i>personne</i> ‘nobody’ |

Like the earlier sketches of cycles, the sketch in (7) is language-specific and too simple. As to the language-specificness, note that the end stage has a pronoun that is semantically, but not morphologically, negative. This is not necessary. The English word *nobody* underwent a variant of the “Quantifier Cycle” too but *nobody* is morphologically negative.³ Like the Jespersen Cycle, the “Quantifier Cycle” has led to an abundance of research. Since the “Quantifier Cycle” does not itself create standard negators, we will not focus on it. Importantly, the process shown in (7) is not a cycle in the sense that the fourth stage takes us back to beginning. But negative indefinites do show a real cycle, although in the case of *personne*, we have to look at a wider trajectory, starting from Latin *nemo* ‘nobody’ (cp. Gianollo 2018a: 208).

(8) A “Quantifier Cycle” in Latin and French

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| Latin | <i>nemo</i> ‘nobody’ |
| | → |
| Latin to French | <i>nemo</i> disappears, perhaps replaced by <i>nesun</i> ‘not one’, in turn replaced by a construction with a negator and <i>personne</i> ‘not a person’ |
| | → |
| French | <i>personne</i> ‘nobody’ |

Here the first and the third stages have a negative pronoun. Curiously, the term “Quantifier Cycle” is not, as far as we know, used for this wider trajectory. Yet something like (8), we propose, shows a better use of this term.

In this paper we aim to improve our understanding of the three Cycles in so far as they tell us something about the development of standard negation. In §2 we focus on the Jespersen Cycle, and in §3 on the Negative Existential Cycle. In §4 we aim to come to a generalized model of a Jespersen Cycle. Subsections §4.1 and §4.2 discuss a few cases which illustrate the interaction between the two Cycles. §4.3 presents a Positive Existential Cycle, which is another illustration of

³The notion of morphological negativity is tricky, cp. Haspelmath (1997: 130–133) on “dunno” indefinites, i.e. indefinites that have a negative component but are not semantically negative in the way *nobody* is.

Johan van der Auwera, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen

the interaction of the Cycles, and §4.4 brings all arguments together in a model of a generalized Jespersen Cycle. §6 treats the relation between this Cycle and the “Quantifier Cycle”, both the classical version in (6) and (7) and its alternative shown in (8).

2 Refining the notion of the Jespersen Cycle

In this section we show that analyses of the Jespersen Cycle encounter a terminological dilemma due to two definitions, and we suggest a solution. For most linguists, including ourselves, the most crucial stage in the simplified model of the Jespersen Cycle has been the third one. In other words, it is the switch from single to double negation that is crucial. There are two important implications.

First, a final stage with a return to a single negator is not crucial. Instead of this return to a single negator the language may get “stuck” in the doubling phase and never realize the potential of further development. It may also enter a fourth stage with three negators. This is illustrated in (9).

- (9) Mid 20th c. Brabantian Belgian Dutch [no code] (Indo-European; Pauwels 1958: 454)
- Pas op da ge nie en valt nie!*
 fit on that you NEG NEG fall NEG
 ‘Take care that you don’t fall!’

Cross-linguistically the tripling of negation is rare. In Vossen (2016: 344) tripling only shows up in 19 out of 1715 languages investigated, as against 383 languages with doubling and 418 languages with a postverbal negator that could be the result of a classic left to right Jespersen Cycle. However, we don’t know how many of these postverbal negator languages really went through a Jespersen Cycle, nor do we know that these cycles took the classical left to right direction. In any case, in this paper we don’t pursue tripling (see Devos & van der Auwera 2013) nor the even rarer quadrupling (only 3 languages in Vossen 2016: 343) or the very special quintupling (no languages in Vossen 2016, and only one in van der Auwera & Vossen 2017: 42).

Second, it is not sufficient for an element to join the first negator to fit into the second stage. This second element has to become a negator too. In Latin the negator *non* is a fusion of the negator *ne* with *oenum* ‘one’ and the latter does not itself become a negator – this only happens to the univerbation. Thus Jespersen (1917: 14–15) assumes that *ne* was replaced by *non* without a doubling stage. Obviously, there is an intermediate stage with two elements but the second one does not itself become negative (10).

15 Intertwining the negative cycles

- (10) A Cycle in Latin [lat]

ne → *ne oenum* → *non*

Jespersen (1917: 14–15) sets this trajectory apart from the “curious fluctuation” named after him later.

Sometimes it seems as if the essential thing were only to increase the phonetic bulk of the adverb by the addition of no particular meaning, as when in Latin *non* was preferred to *ne*, *non* being according to the explanation generally accepted compounded of *ne* and *oenum* (= *unum*) ‘one’ (neutr.).

Of course, it is not because Jespersen (1917: 14–15) didn’t see (10) as a manifestation of a Jespersen Cycle, that we, a century later, are forced to do this too. There are many other things that Jespersen didn’t see and that we now recognize as a type of Jespersen Cycle. Unknown to Jespersen (1917) is doubling with a second element originating from a focus particle ‘also, even’, as with Amharic –*mm*; it is now given a Jespersen Cycle treatment by Sjörs (2015: 305–306, 349–350); Sjörs (2018: 341–343, 388–389) (cp. also Moyse-Faurie & Ozanne-Rivierre 1999: 69 on the Loyalty Islands languages Drehu and Nengone).

- (11) Amharic [amh] (Afro-Asiatic; Fridman p.c.)

zare kurs al-bälla-mm
today breakfast NEG-eat.PST.3M.SG-NEG
'He didn't eat breakfast today.'

Jespersen was also not aware of the fact that negator status could accrue to a subordinator – as argued for the Arizona Tewa former subordinator *dí* by Kroskrity (1984) and explicitly integrated into the Jespersen Cycle by van der Auwera (2010: 83).

- (12) Arizona Tewa [tew] (Kiowa-Tanoan; Kroskrity 1984: 95)

- a. *he'i sen na-men-dí 'o-yohk'ó*
that man 3.STA-go-SUB 1.STA-be.asleep
'When that man went, I was asleep.'
- b. *sen kʷiyó we-mán-mun-dí*
man woman NEG-3>3.ACT-see-NEG
'The man did not see the woman.'

Negator status can also befall on the barenness of the lexical verb that goes with a Finnish negative, the so-called “connegative” form, which in dialectal Finnish (Miestamo 2005: 238) – and dialectal Estonian (Tamm 2015: 425–426) – can carry

Johan van der Auwera, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen

negation all by itself (the fourth stage of a Jespersen Cycle).⁴ This is obviously quite different from the classical French type.⁵

Jespersen did not include in his fluctuation hypothesis the repetition of a clausal negator either, though he was aware of it (Jespersen 1917: 72–73). One of his examples is Swedish (13), where the doubling is emphatic.

- (13) Swedish [swe] (Indo-European; Jespersen 1917: 72)

Inte märkte han mig inte.

NEG noticed he me NEG

‘He didn’t notice me.’

Jespersen (1917: 72) called this “resumptive negation”. However, in the 35 years since Dahl (1979) it has become accepted practice to consider the copying of an identical negator to be a part of a Jespersen Cycle too – and we follow that practice. Somewhat related to this resumptive use – and even called that by Sjörs (2015: 359; 2018: 399) for South Arabian languages – is the integration of a “pro-sentence”, i.e., a construction that corresponds to *No!*⁶ This type was not included in Jespersen’s own account either, but it is now. Example (14) from the Bantu language Lifunga shows both a sentence-external pro-sentential and a clause-internal use of a negator.

- (14) Lifunga [bmj] (Atlantic-Congo; Djamba 1996: 143, Devos &

van der Auwera 2013: 233)

te na-i-mo-wen-e te

no 1SG-NEG-1-see-PRS NEG

‘No, I will not see him.’

⁴The Uralicist’s term “connegative” may be taken to say that this form of the verb is “not negative in itself” (Miestamo 2005: 82; Wagner-Nagy 2011: 56). It is indeed not morphologically negative, but neither is the French word *pas*, but like French *pas* it has become strongly associated with negation. The association is not complete though, neither in French nor in Finnish: there is still a French word *pas* meaning ‘step’ and the connegative form is often the same as the second singular imperative. Uralicists have not, to our knowledge, considered a connegative construction to illustrate Jespersenian doubling. The fact that in Finnish and Estonian dialects the connegative can mark negation by itself makes clear that a description in terms of a Jespersen Cycle is appropriate.

⁵Note that “the French type” is not only found in French. We find it in Italian dialects and a special case – with a so-called “partitive” element or an element meaning ‘first’ – is found in Vanuatu (Vossen & van der Auwera 2014: 72–74).

⁶Pro-sentences do not only serve as holistic denials. As Veselinova (2013: 111) shows, *not* in *Are you coming or not* is also a pro-sentence, i.e., a “sentence[s] with the same propositional content as the utterance of the preceding context” (Bernini & Ramat 1996: 89). However, for our purposes – and for those of Veselinova, as well as the authors in Hovdhaugen & Mosel (eds.) (1999), for who pro-sentences are important (see §4.2), only the denial uses matter. Schwiegler (1988: 30) calls the pro-sentence use an “absolute negator” use.

15 Intertwining the negative cycles

Given that the term “Jespersen Cycle” now covers quite a few phenomena that Jespersen (1917) did not associate with a French type cycle that would later carry his name, we should return to Latin. Should one take the non-doubling *ne oenum* trajectory to be part of a Jespersen Cycle too? Schwegler (1983; 1988) would, even though his term was not “Jespersen Cycle” but “negation cycle” (cp. also Gianollo 2018a: 180). It is interesting to bring in Greek. The fate of Classical Greek is similar to that of Latin. The modern Greek standard negator is *den* and it derives from *ouden*, composed of the Classical Greek standard negator *ou* followed by a particle *de* ‘even’ and the numeral *hen* ‘one’. The change from *ouden* to *den* is apparently a phonetic one (Willmott 2013: 303) – just like the development of Latin *non* to French *ne*. It is the change from *ou* to *ouden* that is relevant, for it is taken to have happened without doubling.

- (15) A Cycle in Classical Greek [grc]

| | |
|------------------|----------------|
| <i>ou</i> | ‘not’ |
| → | |
| <i>ou de hen</i> | ‘not even one’ |
| → | |
| <i>ou de hen</i> | ‘not’ |
| → | |
| <i>ouden</i> | ‘not’ |

Just like for Latin, the question is whether one should call this a Jespersen Cycle. Willmott (2013) stresses the differences between the Greek and French scenarios and decides against a Jespersen Cycle analysis, though she is aware of the similarities. More or less simultaneously, Chatzopoulou (2012), later also Chatzopoulou (2015; 2019), discusses the same data: her analysis is similar, but she prefers to redefine the concept of the Jespersen Cycle, and she explicitly does this so as to include both the Greek and the French scenario.

Since doubling is not the defining characteristic for a Jespersen Cycle for Chatzopoulou (2012); Chatzopoulou (2015; 2019) nor, *mutatis mutandis*, for Schwegler (1983; 1988), it is important to see what they do consider to be crucial. For them, the defining features are emphasis, whether through doubling or fusion, and the later bleaching. This is a perfectly good definition,⁷ but then they don’t include

⁷We gloss over the problem of describing the nature of emphasis. In the last decade it has been proposed that emphasis has to be replaced or explained by notions of discourse presupposition or activation. Such accounts have been particularly prominent for resumptive negation, as in Brazilian Portuguese (Schwenter 2006) or Palenquero (Schwegler 1991), but they have also been offered for the textbook case of French (Mosegaard Hansen 2009; Larrivée 2010). We offer three

Johan van der Auwera, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen

scenarios such as the doubling that appears through the reinterpretation of subordination, as in Arizona Tewa, or non-finiteness (the connegative of dialectal Finnish and Estonian). So we are left with a terminological dilemma. A form-based definition of a Jespersen Cycle requires there to be doubling, whether it goes with emphasis or not. A meaning-based account requires emphasis, whether it goes with doubling or not. The embryo of the dilemma is the fact that Jespersen's textbook example of French fits both definitions. Arizona Tewa and Finnish as well as Latin and Greek only fit one definition. The dilemma can be solved in more than one way. One solution is simply to stick to one of two definitions. A second one is to drop the term "Jespersen Cycle" altogether. After all, we now know more about the "curious fluctuation" than in 1917 and Jespersen delivered neither the first nor the best early description. Meillet (1912), for one, beat him, and he was not the first either. In a somewhat obscure paper on Coptic, Gardiner (1904) makes a parallel between *pas* and Coptic *iwn'* 'certainly'. Earlier still, in the book that launches the term "sémantique" Bréal (1897: 22) assures us that "everybody knows what happened to the words *pas*, and *point*" [our translation]. But then, the term "Jespersen Cycle" has been around for close to 40 years, everyone more or less knows what it is all about. However, there is an easy way to embrace both the meaning- and the form-based account: a more general definition that allows both accounts. What we then require of a Jespersen Cycle is that it deals with the genesis of a standard negator from a constellation that involves a standard negator and another element ' α ', where α is either another negator (e.g. in Swedish) or a non-negative element (e.g. a minimizer like in French or a subordinator like in Arizona Tewa). This constellation can further develop in two directions: (i) the negator and α fuse, the new element becomes a negator and it may replace the original negator, or (ii) if there is no fusion, then α , which is either negative from the start or has become negative by contamination⁸ from the

considerations. First, in case notions of discourse presupposition or activation are to replace emphasis, this is fully compatible with our insistence that the term "Jespersen Cycle" covers a variety of phenomena, a variety more compatible with a plural "Jespersen Cycles" than with a singular (van der Auwera 2009). Second, it is no less possible that in some cases presupposition and activation will not so much replace emphasis but, to borrow Schwenter's term, "fine-tune" it. Third, accounts downplaying emphasis are found more with resumptive negation, and this fact is interesting. Resumptive negation is a matter of repeating a marker and this could simply serve to make the meaning clearer, which is not the same as making a negation emphatic. This analysis was offered for resumptive negation in Brabantic Belgian Dutch by van der Auwera (2009: 52), with reference to Pauwels (1974: 76).

⁸The "contamination" metaphor goes back to at least Bréal (1897: 221–226). It is better than the more sober "reinterpretation" because reinterpretation can happen through a range of language external or internal factors, while "contamination" nicely captures that the original meaning disappears under the influence of another element in the clause, viz. the negator.

original negator, could replace this original negator. These developments may be prompted by emphasis or not. This is what we propose – and we will come back to it in §4, after we have discussed the Negative Existential Cycle and we have seen whether the new definition could encompass this too.

3 Refining the notion of the Negative Existential Cycle

After its introduction in Croft (1991) and a period where not much happened to it, the Negative Existential Cycle came within the purview of Veselinova (2010; 2013; 2014; 2015; 2016). Veselinova made at least three very important contributions. The first one is an endeavor to check the hypothesis on a wide range of language families. The second one is her finding that the Negative Existential Cycle is rarely completed. The third contribution is her claim that the mere fact that a language uses an existential strategy for both existential and standard negation does not itself constitute evidence for the Negative Existential Cycle yet. Thus in Bulgarian an invariable *njama* ‘not.have’ is used for both existential negation and future tense standard negation.

- (16) Bulgarian [bul] (Indo-European; Veselinova 2014: 1333; 2010: 204)
- a. *Njama* *div-i* *kotk-i*
not.have.3SG.PRS wild-PL cat-PL
‘There aren’t any wild cats.’
 - b. *Njama* *da xod-ja* *na kino.*
not.have.3SG.PRS to go-1SG.PRS to movies
‘I will not go to the movies.’

But the use of *njama* in standard negation is not due to an extension of the use of the existential negator. In Old Church Slavonic the positive future also availed itself of ‘have’ (as one option, https://lrc.la.utexas.edu/eieol/ocsol/50#grammar_-1014). What we see therefore is a decrease in the use of ‘have’ for the future and a domain expansion of ‘have’ in the realm of expressions of existence (Veselinova 2010: 203–204, but compare Veselinova 2014: 1336–1337; 2016: 157). So on top of the observation that a strategy is used for both existential and standard negation, we ideally have diachronic information on whether the construction originated in existential or in standard negation. This information can be direct (language-internal) or indirect (from comparing related languages) or even just etymological: a negative existential that is a fusion of standard negator and an existential marker and that is used for both existential and standard negation is bound to have started in the existential domain.

Johan van der Auwera, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen

In what follows, we focus on a problem with the third stage of the Negative Existential Cycle. This is the stage in which the existential negator, originally restricted to existential negation, has come to be used for standard negation. Let us illustrate it with Tongan (cp. Croft 1991: 12; Veselinova 2014: 1342).

- (17) Tongan [ton] (Austronesian; Veselinova 2014: 1342; Broschart 1999: 101, 104)
- a. *'oku 'ikai ha me'a*
PRS ??? NSP thing
'There is not anything.'
 - b. *na'e 'ikai ke kata 'a Pita*
PST ??? SUB laugh ABS Pita
'Pita didn't laugh.' ('[It] was not that Pita laugh[ed].')

We have purposely not yet glossed the occurrence of *'ikai* in both examples. Croft's gloss for the (17a) type of example is 'NEG.EX', which makes sense, for the sentence could not be more negative existential. Broschart (1999: 101), Veselinova's source linguist, provides 'It is not that there is anything' as the literal translation. For the example of the (17b) type Croft's gloss for the negator is 'NEG(EX)'. 'NEG(EX)' is to indicate that we are dealing with a "polysemy between negative existential meaning and verbal negation" (Croft 1991: 12). Since (17b) illustrates verbal negation one might argue that *'ikai* permits the 'NEG' gloss, i.e., the gloss for the standard negator, and 'NEG' is in fact the gloss that Veselinova (2014: 1342), following Broschart (1999: 104), offers for (17b). But her literal translation of this sentence '[It] was not that Pita laugh[ed]' (in line again with Broschart 1999: 104) is a little confusing then, for it rather asks for a 'NEG.EX' gloss. To solve this problem we suggest that the third stage of the cycle should be conceived of as the "existentialization" of standard negation. Table 15.1 represents the three analyses, in a three stage format. We use underlining to show that the negators of the third stage have the same form as the NEG.EX of the second stage. In our view, the third stage has standard negation using an existential negator. What has to happen now – for the cycle to continue – is that the existentialized standard negation gets "de-existentialized". This is what we arguably see in Spoken Kannada. In this language both types of negation use *illa*, but while this is a free form for existential negation, it is a suffix for standard negation.

- (18) Spoken Kannada [kan] (Dravidian; Veselinova 2016: 144; Sridhar 1990: 111, 112)

15 Intertwining the negative cycles

Table 15.1: Comparison of three analyses (Croft 1991, Veselinova 2014, this paper)

| | Croft 1991 | | Veselinova 2014 | | this paper | |
|--------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| construction | standard | existential | standard | existential | standard | existential |
| marker | NEG | NEG | NEG | NEG | NEG | NEG |
| | → | → | → | → | → | → |
| | NEG | <u>NEG.EX</u> | NEG | <u>NEG.EX</u> | NEG | <u>NEG.EX</u> |
| | → | → | → | → | → | → |
| | <u>NEG(EX)</u> | <u>NEG.EX</u> | <u>NEG</u> | <u>NEG</u> | <u>NEG.EX</u> | <u>NEG.EX</u> |

- a. *khaja:neyalli haNa illa*
treasury.LOC money NEG.EX
‘There is no money in the treasury.’
- b. *anil ka:le:jige ho:gu-vud-illa*
Anil college.DAT go-NPST.GER-NEG
‘Anil doesn’t/won’t go to college.’

Note that we have glossed the free form with ‘NEG.EX’ and the suffix with ‘NEG’, in agreement with Veselinova and Sridhar and they do not provide (18b) with a literal gloss of the type ‘it is not that Anil goes / will go to college’. At the risk of overinterpretation of the glosses, we assume that there is nothing existential about (18b) and that it really just means ‘Anil doesn’t/won’t go to college’. Suffixal *-illa* has thus been de-existentialized. The free form, however, is still existential. This de-existentialization in the domain of standard negation is worthy of a stage of its own. Thus, with application to Kannada, a fourth stage of (19) has suffixal *-illa* as a standard negator and the free form *illa* as an existential negator. In a hypothetical fifth stage existential negation could avail itself of *-illa*, the standard negator, together with some marker of existence.

Johan van der Auwera, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen

| (19) | standard | existential |
|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| NEG | NEG | |
| → | → | |
| NEG | <u>NEG.EX</u> | |
| → | → | |
| <u>NEG.EX</u> | <u>NEG.EX</u> | |
| → | → | |
| <u>NEG</u> | <u>NEG.EX</u> | |
| → | → | |
| <u>NEG</u> | <u>NEG</u> | |

The claim that there are additional stages is a little tricky. Both Croft and Veselinova have in fact included transitional stages in their stage model. These are stages which have both NEG and NEG.EX for either standard or existential negation, but they may not be equivalent: the choice could depend on tense or the one option could carry emphasis. These kinds of intermediate stages have to be accepted in the basically five stage model of (19) as well. Also, it does not follow that every standard negation structure with a lexical verb and something like an auxiliary is a negative existential structure. Finnish is a good example. Example (12) has a negative auxiliary and the so-called “connegative”, but this structure illustrates standard negation. So the negative auxiliary is not a negative existential, though it might originate in one (see Veselinova 2015: 577 for references), and though it is also used for existential negation, it then combines with a ‘be’ verb in the connegative form.

- (20) Finnish [fin] (Uralic; *Vilkuna 2015*: 476)
Täällä ei ole yhtään kahvi-a.
 here NEG.3SG EX.CNG at.all coffee-PAR
 ‘There is no coffee here.’

4 Towards a generalized Jespersen Cycle

In this section we look at the interaction of the Negative Existential and Jespersen Cycles. First, we discuss to what extent a Negative Existential Cycle can involve Jespersenian doubling and resumption (§4.1). Then we look at a specific claim about East Futuna (§4.2) and we pair the Negative Existential Cycle with a Positive Existential Cycle (§4.3). In (§4.4) we offer a generalized Jespersen Cycle, even more general than what we ended up with at the end of §2.

4.1 Negative Existential Cycles with doubling

The proposal for a Negative Existential Cycle came much later than that for a Jespersen Cycle. It is appropriate therefore to check whether any manifestation of the former is in fact a manifestation of the latter, under either the form-based, the meaning-based or the general definition. We will first discuss the original proposal by Croft (1991) and then the detailed studies by Veselinova (2010; 2013; 2014; 2015; 2016).

In Croft (1991) there is no explicit mentioning of the Jespersen Cycle, but the implicit one is very strong and it concerns the French type. A Negative Existential Cycle, so Croft claims, is that a special existential negator may be used in combination with a standard negator. According to him this is one of the two ways in which an existential negator can enter the domain of standard negation. The other way is replacing the standard negator partially or completely (Croft 1991: 9–11).⁹ To judge from the later work by Veselinova, who only discusses the replacement strategy, the latter would seem to be the more important type of Negative Existential Cycle, but the focus here is on the doubling type.

The reason why, according to Croft (1991: 13–14), an existential negator may combine with a standard negator, is that this combination makes the utterance emphatic. He illustrates this with two examples. One is from the Australian language Mara (Heath 1981: 289).

- (21) Mara [mec] (Mangarrayi-Maran; Croft 1991: 14; Heath 1981: 289)

- a. *ganugu wunayi*
NEG see.him
'He did not see him.'
- b. *ganugu wunayi mal'uy*
NEG see.him NEG.EX/EMPH
'He did not see him at all'

Croft then goes on to say that the emphasis may bleach and that this process "is the same [...] that has occurred in the evolution of the French negative *pas*" (Croft 1991: 14), with reference to the pre-Jespersen account of Meillet (1912) as well to Schwegler (1983; 1988). This counts as an acknowledgment that this kind of Negative Existential Cycle is a subtype of a Jespersen Cycle. More specifically, with (21b) we are in the doubling stage of a Jespersen Cycle. Interestingly, the Mara form for the Negative Existential also serves as a negative pro-sentence, a usage

⁹Partial and complete replacements are counted separately by Croft (1991), so in that way he does not have two but three pathways of intrusion.

Johan van der Auwera, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen

which, as Veselinova (2013: 127) has shown, is cross-linguistically rather frequent. So it is not clear whether the form that doubles is indeed the existential negator as such or the negative pro-sentence. In the latter case Mara joins languages like Lifunga, illustrated in (14), and it is again an illustration of a Jespersen Cycle.

The second example of Jespersenian doubling comes from the Wintuan language Wintu.

- (22) Wintu [wit] (Wintuan; Croft 1991: 10; Pitkin 1984: 197)

?elew-be:skən hara:-wer-mina

NEG.EX-you.IPFV go-FUT-NEG

‘You were not supposed to go.’

For our purposes, there are two interesting things about the Wintu case.¹⁰ First, the presence of the preverbal negator is said to “reinforce” (Croft 1991: 10) the original negator, but “reinforce” probably doesn’t mean “make emphatic”. The translation in Croft and in the source figures non-emphatic negation. This makes sense in a form-based Jespersen scenario, but no less in a meaning-based one, for Wintu may illustrate what Mara does not show: the bleaching of the emphasis. Second, the source grammarian Pitkin (1984: 197) makes clear that the negative existential also serves as a negative pro-sentence. So, once more, there is a suspicion that it is latter use that is crucial in this process of Jespersenian doubling.

As mentioned already, Veselinova (2010; 2013; 2014; 2015; 2016) does not discuss the Mara – Wintu scenario, and this strongly suggests that it is relatively rare. Croft does not give any other languages either. We do, however, find other candidates for a Jespersenian doubling analysis with a negative existential in the Munda languages Juang (Anderson 2007: 150–151) and Korku (Nagaraja 1999: 64–67; Zide 2008: 279–281), the isolate Urarina and also in the Takanan language Tacana. For example, in Tacana standard negation with a finite lexical verb almost always uses two negators.¹¹

- (23) Tacana [tna] (Takanan; Guillaume 2017; 2016)

- a. *Aimue e-juseute-ta=mawe/mue beni=ja*
NEG FUT-fell-A3=NEG wind=ERG

‘The wind will not fell (the trees).’

¹⁰ Croft (1991: 10) points out that Pitkin (1984) has no example of a negative existential use, which is a bit problematic. Also, the second negator is itself also a negative existential in origin. Croft (1991: 10) argues that it is older than the first one: *?elew* is a separate word, one that is a finite verb furthermore, and the second is morphological. This makes sense.

¹¹ Guillaume 2021 [this volume] signals only one case in his corpus with the postverbal negator omitted.

15 Intertwining the negative cycles

- b. *Kwati=mu aimue tsu'u.*
 firewood=CNTR NEG.EX still
 ‘There is no firewood yet.’

The postverbal negator (*mawe/mue*) is the oldest one: it is shorter, bound and phonologically dependent, it has variant forms and occupies a rigid position in the construction (Guillaume 2016, Guillaume 2021 [this volume]). And it is also formally similar to negators in the other Takanan languages. The preverbal negator is an innovation in Tacana only (i.e., it is not found in the other Takanan languages). It is identical to the existential negator and, in our view (van der Auwera & Krasnoukhova 2018) the etymology gives us ‘be.without’, which suggests that the negative existential use predates the standard negator use. Its presence in standard negation, Guillaume (2016) suggests, was due to emphasis. Interestingly, this form, like in Mara and Wintu, also serves as a pro-sentence (Guillaume 2016; 2017). And even more interesting is the fact that the lexical verb may be non-finite, in which case there is an optional finite auxiliary, and in this construction the newer negator is the sole exponent of negation.

- (24) Tacana [tna] (Takanan; Guillaume 2017)
Biame aimue=da dia (a-ta-ina).
 but NEG=TOP eat AUX.TR-A3-PST.HAB
 ‘But (the jaguar) would not eat it.’

We thus have a reasonably standard Jespersen Cycle with arguably emphasis-driven doubling and even with the new negator forbidding the company of the old negator, in one type of construction. And, importantly, the new negator has the form of the existential negator, which is also the negative pro-sentence.

In the isolate Urarina, standard (non-emphatic) negation is encoded by a single postverbal negator, which has different allomorphs depending on person, conjugation class and other factors (Olawsky 2006: 484). However, Urarina has two constructions which are regarded as “emphatic” standard negation. One of these constructions involves the negative existential *nijej* (*ni-ji* ‘be-NEG’) before the lexical verb that is already marked by a negator (25a). And thus we have doubling. The negative existential use is shown in (25b).¹² A negative reply in Urarina has a

¹² Olawsky (2006) uses two different transcriptions of the negative existential in order to distinguish the meanings; specifically, he notes that the distinction between *nijej* encoding emphasis ‘not at all’ and the negated copula *ni-ji* encoding negative existence in the transcriptions is “not based on phonological differences, but in order to distinguish the two meanings” (Olawsky 2006: 555, footnote 65). Since there is no difference in phonology, we reproduce the examples using one form *nijej*.

Johan van der Auwera, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen

different form: *aji*, composed of an auxiliary *aJa* and a negative suffix *-i* (Olawsky 2006: 400).

- (25) Urarina [ura] (isolate; Olawsky 2006: 554, 556)
- a. *nii hāu nijej beraj-naa najn-ene rai komasaj*
that because NEG.EX care.for-INF be.able-NEG.3E POSS wife
'Therefore, his wife could not look after him at all.'
 - b. *nukue seti-aka=ne nijei ate taba-j*
creek fish-1DU=CND NEG.EX fish be.big- NMLZ
'When we fished in the creek, there were no big fish.'

Veselinova, following leads by Croft (1991: 21) and Schwegler (1988: 38–39), also discusses the role of the negative pro-sentence, but not in a scenario of first doubling up a standard negator and later potentially being the sole exponent of negation, but in a scenario of more directly replacing the standard negator. One of the languages brought in to support this is Sino-Russian Pidgin (Veselinova 2014: 1337; 2016: 155–156).¹³ In this language the standard negator is *netu*, which is related to Russian *net*. Russian *net* is used both as negative existential and as negative pro-sentence, with the latter use being more prominent than the negative existential use, according to Veselinova (2014: 1337). The idea is that the greater prominence of the pro-sentential use of *net* could explain why it is the related form *netu*, rather than *ne*, that functions as the standard negator in Sino-Russian.

- (26) Sino-Russian Pidgin [no ISO; glottolog code: kjac1234] (Pidgin;
Veselinova 2014: 1337; Stern 2002: 19)
- naša ego ponimaj netu*
1PL 3SG understand NEG
'We don't understand him.'

There are two problems with this hypothesis. First, Russian has *netu*, too, in stylistically lower speech, but it is only used as an existential one, not as a pro-sentential one. It is easier to assume that Sino-Russian Pidgin borrowed *netu*. Second, even if we grant that the Russian input for the Sino-Russian Pidgin standard negator *netu* is indeed the pro-sentential *net*, it is not clear that it entered Sino-Russian Pidgin standard negation in its pro-sentential role instead of just being a prominent exponent of negation in general. It is interesting to compare

¹³The other one is the Austronesian language Kapingamarangi, but we only know the synchrony. For Sino-Russian Pidgin we do have some relevant diachrony, viz. that of Russian.

15 Intertwining the negative cycles

Sino-Russian Pidgin with English Creoles. In the overwhelming majority of the English Creoles the typical and sometimes the only standard negator is *no* rather than a form related to *do* combined with *not* (van der Auwera 2017: 140–141). (27) is an example from Ghanaian Pidgin English, nicely contrasting with Ghanaian English in (28).

- (27) Ghanaian Pidgin English [gpe] (Indo-European; van der Auwera 2017: 140; Huber 2012b: 398)
de pikin no dè spik
 the child NEG PROG speak
 ‘The child is not speaking.’
- (28) Ghanaian English (van der Auwera 2017: 140; Huber 2012a: 385)
 These demonic things I *don’t* believe it.

The Ghanaian Pidgin English speakers use *no*, which has the same form as pro-sentential *No!* But what is so attractive about pro-sentential *no* to have it as a standard negator? Is it its pro-sentential semantics or is it just its saliency and – no doubt – frequency as an exponent of negation? We propose the second answer.

4.2 Interaction of the two Cycles in East Futuna?

The negation in Polynesian East Futuna has given rise to a claim on the interaction of the Negative Existential and Jespersen Cycles. The original claim is explicit in Mosel (1999: 18), it is implicit in Moyse-Faurie (1999: 122), and the basic idea is endorsed by Veselinova (2014: 1359–1364). In what follows we start from Veselinova (2014).

In East Futuna an existential negator *le’ai* is made up of a standard negator *le* and an existential element (*i*)*ai*. There is also a reduced form *le’e*. *le’ai* and another reduced form, *e’ai*, function as pro-sentences and *le’e* has intruded the domain of standard negation,¹⁴ which qualifies the trajectory as an instance of the Negative Existential Cycle.

- (29) East Futuna [fud] (Austronesian; Veselinova 2014: 1362, 1361; Moyse-Faurie 1999: 117; 1997: 98)
- a. *e’ae le’e se lāisi*
 no TAM NEG.EX INDF rice
 ‘No, there is no rice.’

¹⁴Veselinova (2014: 1364) describes the intrusion only for forms with *-se*, but the analysis also contains example (29b), which is a standard negation use without *-se*.

Johan van der Auwera, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen

- b. *e le'e 'au a Setefano ki le fai o le ga'oi*
 TAM NEG.EX come ABS Stefano OBL DET make POSS DET work
 ‘Stefano is still not coming to do the work.’

What is special about East Futuna is that there are also the more complex forms *le'aise* and *le'ese*, which function in the existential domain and also intrude into the verbal domain.

- (30) East Futuna [fud] (Austronesian; Moyse-Faurie 1999: 126, 122; Veselinova 2014: 1361)
- a. *ko le mako ko le tapaki e le'aise ko se mako tefua ma*
 PR DEF dance PR DEF tapaki NSP NEG.EX PR IND dance alone for
Futuna
Futuna
 ‘The tapaki dance is not a special dance for Futuna.’
 - b. *na le'aise kau ano o mako i nānafi*
 PST NEG.EX 1SG go COMP dance OBL yesterday
 ‘No, I didn’t go dancing yesterday.’¹⁵

The element *se*, which is added to the simple negators, is an indefinite singular article (Moyse-Faurie 1999: 122).¹⁶ But then there is also reduction, for standard and existential negation allow the complex forms *le'aise* and *le'ese* to reduce to *se*.

- (31) East Futuna [fud] (Austronesian; Veselinova 2014: 1360–1362; Moyse-Faurie 1999: 119, 122)
- a. ... *e se na'a ai se tosi* ...
 GENR NEG.EX be.there ANAPH INDF book
 ‘... there are no books ...’
 - b. *e se tio a tātou ki ke fatu*
 GENR NEG.EX see ABS 1PL.INCL OBL DEF stone
 ‘We do not see the stone.’

¹⁵The English translation has a pro-sentential *No*, but the East Futuna original does not. The *No* must be meant to show that a negation with *le'aise* is stronger (Moyse-Faurie 1999: 122) than one with *le'ese*.

¹⁶It is not clear whether the article is indefinite or non-specific. Mosel (1999: 18) and Veselinova (2014: 1363) call it “non-specific”. Moyse-Faurie (1997: 45) calls it “non-specific” too, but later in the grammar it is called “indefinite” (Moyse-Faurie 1997: 88).

15 Intertwining the negative cycles

For Moyse-Faurie and Mosel, the fact that an erstwhile indefinite article now functions as a negator shows that we are dealing with a Jespersen Cycle. For Veselinova (p.c.) there is a Jespersen cycle because the *le'aise* and *le'ese* are taken to carry emphasis, which then got lost together with phonetic substance. But these claims are not obvious. Much depends on what is meant with the notion of Jespersen Cycle and this has to be made explicit. As argued in §2, most linguists take a form-based approach of the Jespersen Cycle and require doubling but in East Futuna there is no doubling. The East Futuna facts are thus similar to the Greek ones. In Greek a complex form *ouden* lost the negative morpheme and the emphasis, and it is the remains of a focus particle and a numeral that now function as a negator. In East Futuna the complex forms *le'aise* and *lé'se* lost the negative morpheme and the emphasis, and it is the remains of an indefinite article that now function as a negator. For East Futuna *se* to count as the result of a Jespersen Cycle one can thus use the semantically-based account, the one that allows both doubling and fusion but requires an emphatic stage, or the more general account, one that requires neither doubling nor emphasis.

Of these two accounts, the general one seems better. The argument for the extended notion has so far been, for both Schwegler and Chatzopoulou, that the second part of the fusion had an emphatic use. This is very clear in Greek as well as in Latin. It is less clear in East Futuna. The *-se* part is an indefinite or non-specific article. The latter is obligatory for noun phrases in the scope of negation and it is therefore “a frequent collocate of the existential negator” (Veselinova 2014: 1348). In the fusion, *se* then “reinforced” the original negator – “reinforce” is the term in Moyse-Faurie (1999: 122) – but it is not clear that it is meant in a semantic sense. According to Mosel (1999: 18), followed by Veselinova (2014: 1363), the reinforcement would indeed be semantic: the reinforcement is to yield emphasis. But note that it is an indefinite article that fuses, and not, for example, the numeral and pronoun *tasi* ‘one’ (Moyse-Faurie 1997: 27, 35; 1999: 121). A similar fusion is reported for Cèmuhî and Paicî (Moyse-Faurie & Ozanne-Rivierre 1999: 63) as well as for Hawai'an (Veselinova 2014: 1348), each time with an indefinite article. For Hawai'ian the fusion does not appeal to emphasis: “consequently, *a'ole* [the standard negator] must have become fused with *he* [the indefinite article] as a result of frequent collocation” (Veselinova 2014: 1348). In short, for the East Futuna development of the *se* negator to count as a Jespersen it can't be the one embraced by Schwegler and Chatzopoulou. The story of the *se* negator does, however, fit the general definition argued for in §2: the development of a negator is a Jespersen Cycle, if it results from the interaction of two elements, at least one of which is a negator.

Johan van der Auwera, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen

4.3 A Positive Existential Cycle?

Before we clarify the general concept of a Jespersen Cycle more, it is useful to point out that there is more to the interaction of existence and negation than what has been sketched in the above. First of all, in the Negative Existential Cycle proper, the one without doubling, we have so far seen a negator fusing with something else, typically a positive existential. A fusion of a negator and a positive existential is not, however, the only strategy to make negative existentials, and it does not seem to be the most frequent one. In a worldwide overview Veselinova (2013: 137) points out that languages may recruit negative existentials directly from the lexicon, more particularly from words with a negative content, such as ‘absent’ or ‘lack’.¹⁷ For the 42 languages for which she reports the origin, 25 have this origin vs. 17 that involve fusion. We come back to direct recruitment in §4.4.

Second, we have seen fusion in Latin and Greek Jespersen Cycles. These Cycles are a little different from the French one, in that the element that combines with negation does not itself turn into a standard negator. It is the fusion that turns into a standard negator. This begs the question of whether there could be a cycle in which the positive existential and the negator do not fuse, but in which the latter changes the meaning of the former. What we are after is a constellation in which a negator turns an existential marker into a negator, a new one, with the possibility of ousting the old one. This is precisely what van der Auwera & Vossen (2017) have argued for in their study of negative doubling in the Kiranti languages.

In most of the Kiranti languages there is a preverbal negator with a solid Tibeto-Burman ancestry, viz. *ma*. In the eastern Kiranti languages there is often a postverbal negator with the form *ni* or a similar form. It usually co-occurs with the preverbal *ma* and it has no clear negative etymology.

- (32) Dumi [dus] (Tibeto-Burman; van Driem 1993: 288)
- | | | |
|------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>i-mu-?a</i> | <i>tida:m-tida:m-mil ryekbo</i> | <i>mə-til-ni-nə</i> |
| their-mother-ERG | child-child-PL | three NEG.PST-raise-3PL-NEG |
- ‘Their mother did not raise the three little ones.’

¹⁷The development of standard negator out of a privative construction (‘without’), argued for Arawak by Michael (2014: 285–288), could be seen as a subtype. There could furthermore be a third origin, no doubt rare, viz. a word of which the meaning was originally positive but which got contaminated by a negator that later disappeared – the typical Jespersen scenario. At least in Kulina (Arawan; [cul]) the negative pro-sentence, which derives from a negative existential, only utilizes a word that originally meant ‘show’ (Dienst 2014: 236; p.c) and which turned negative under the influence of a negator (Krasnoukhova & van der Auwera 2019).

15 Intertwining the negative cycles

Forms like *ni*, however, do show up in Tibeto-Burman outside of Eastern Kiranti as various sorts of ‘be’ verbs (Lowes 2006), as in Meithei (Chelliah 1997: 249–250, 297), with an ascriptive use in (33a) and an existential one in (33b).

- (33) Meithei [mni] (Tibeto-Burman; Chelliah 1997: 297)

- a. *phurit-tu ə-ŋəw-pə-ni*
shirt-DIST ATT-white-NMLZ-COP
‘That shirt is the white one.’
- b. *əy-na phi ə-du ləŋ-thok-labə-ni*
I-CNTR cloth ATT-DIST throw-out-having-COP
‘(It is that) I have thrown out that cloth.’

In van der Auwera & Vossen (2017) it is argued that the *ni* was gradually reinterpreted as a negator. The semantics motivating the reinterpretation is that the negative proposition was followed by an emphatic *so it is* phrase. This lost the emphasis and got contaminated with negative meaning, first doubling up the earlier negator with a potential of doing the negative work on its own. Given that it is a positive ‘be’ verb that will become a negator, one could call it as “Positive Existential Cycle”.¹⁸ And given that it involves a progression from single to double and back to single negation, it is no less of a Jespersen Cycle.

The case for a Positive Existential Jespersen cycle does not only rest on the analysis of Kiranti *ni*. Within Kiranti itself there is more evidence, the clearest case being a negative past verbal suffix *yuk/yukt* (Doornenbal 2009: 163), which co-occurs with a negative prefix and which derives from a copula (Doornenbal 2009: 276) and still is one (Doornenbal 2009: 119). Outside of Kiranti candidates for a Positive Existential Jespersen Cycle are the Oceanic language Lewo spoken in Vanuatu (Early 1994a: 425–426; 1994b: 79–80) and the languages of the Awju group (Wester 2014: 127–140) as well as Kaugel (Head 1976: 152–153), spoken in New Guinea.

4.4 A generalized Jespersen Cycle

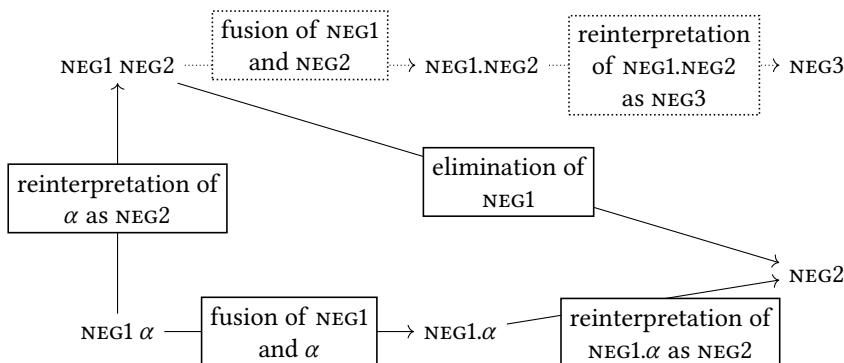
We are now ready to return to the most general conception of Jespersen Cycle. The idea is that a standard negator may find itself co-occurring with something ‘ α ’ and then either fuse with it or contaminate it with negativity. If α is itself

¹⁸The term is a bit misleading. The Positive Existential cycle is still negative in the sense that it produces a new negator. The term identifies the source as a positive existential, just like the term “Negative Existential Cycle” identifies the source as a negative existential.

Johan van der Auwera, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen

a negator, the same or another one, we get doubling. In case α is not a negator, there are two alternatives with respect to trajectories leading to a standard negator. Either the standard negator turns α into another negator (i.e., the standard negator contaminates α with negativity) and we get doubling, or there is fusion. The first trajectory, the doubling-after-reinterpretation, is the more restricted form-based Jespersen Cycle. There may be emphasis and bleaching (as in French) or not (Arizona Tewa). In principle there is nothing preventing the new standard negators to fuse and the result may then be a third negator. We do not know, however, of any such cases and we use dotted lines in the representation in (34).¹⁹ The second trajectory, the one involving fusion of the negator and α , has two outcomes, depending on the nature of α . If α is an existential verb, we get a (subtype of the) Negative Existential Cycle. If α is a minimizer – the Latin and Greek case – we get the more restricted meaning-based Jespersen Cycle. The scenarios are represented in (34).

(34)

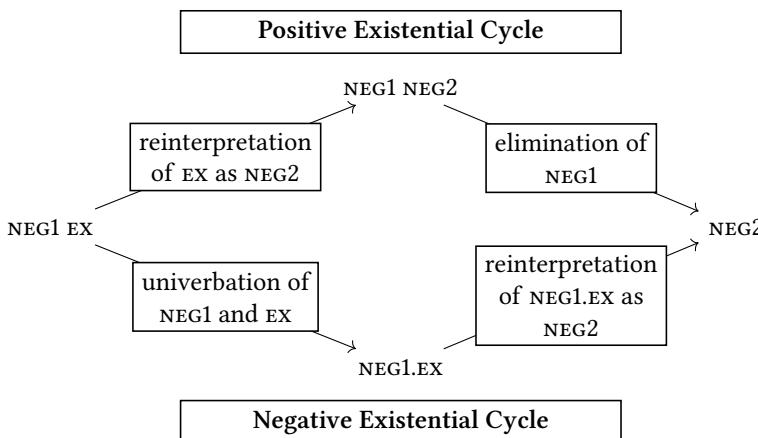


Note that the figure in (34) includes the end stages with one new negator, but we do not require a language to have reached it for us to claim that the language is involved in a Jespersen Cycle: the language may get stuck in an intermediate stage or the end stage may show tripling. In that sense (34) does not say enough. In another sense, it may say too much, for not every type of α has been attested with both a reinterpretation and a fusion scenario. When α is an existential marker, we do have both scenarios, i.e., a Positive Existential Cycle for reinterpretation and a Negative Existential Cycle for fusion. The two scenarios are schematized in (35).

¹⁹Fusion of standard negators is attested (Vossen 2016: 18 on the Austronesian languages Lewo and Nese; Devos et al. 2010 on the Bantu language Kanincin), but only in cases of tripling and quadrupling.

15 Intertwining the negative cycles

(35)

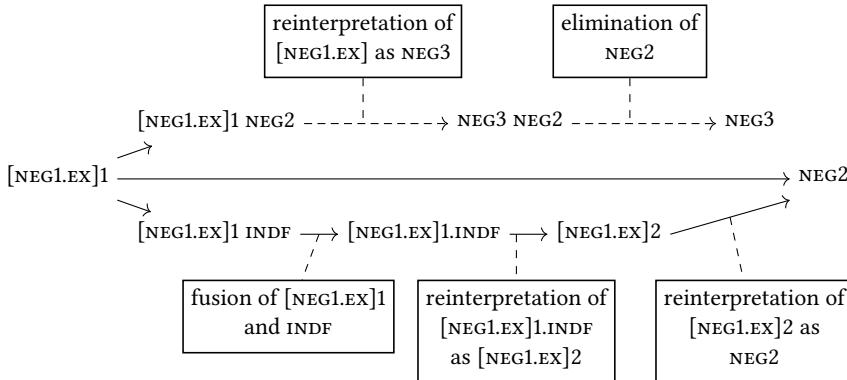


For most α 's, however, only the reinterpretation scenario has been attested. Thus in Arizona Tewa the subordinator *dí* turned into a negator through the influence of the negator *we*, but we haven't seen a language in which an original negator like *we* is adjacent to a subordinator like *dí* and delivers a new negator *wedí*. So in this sense (34) says too much. But in another sense, (34) – or (35) for that matter – does not say enough. For one thing, neither (34) nor (35) show that a language may have negator doubling followed by tripling (and even quadrupling and quintupling); these complications were barred from the paper already in §1. For another thing, we do not expand the simple 3 stage model of a classic French style Jespersen Cycle into a model with more stages, nor do we include the five stages of the Negative Existential Cycle, represented in (19) in the above. However, we need to come back to the Mara, Wintu, Tacana and East Futuna cases. They are also not provided for in (34) or (35) yet. Like in these simpler scenarios, Mara, Wintu, Urarina, Tacana and East Futuna show doubling and fusion. For Mara, Wintu, Urarina and Tacana the negative existential combines with a standard negator, it may become a standard negator too with a further potential to oust the old standard negator. For East Futuna, the negative existential combines with something else, viz. an indefinite article. They fuse and combine to form a new negative existential and later a new standard negator. In (36) the middle lines show the simple Negative Existential Cycle, the ones on the top represent Mara, Wintu, Urarina and Tacana and the ones below represent East Futuna.

Finally, these schemas do not exhaust the paths that languages dispose of to make negators. First, a negator may not only arise through the influence of a negator that is already in place, whether through contamination or fusion. It

Johan van der Auwera, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen

(36)



may be borrowed or calqued from other languages – and to the extent that what is borrowed or calqued is negative doubling, distinguishing this from a Jespersen scenario can be difficult (cp. [van der Auwera & Vossen 2015](#)). Second, we have also assumed that the negator that will fuse or contaminate and thus yield a new negator is a standard negator. In the cases discussed in the literature this seems to be the case, but what could prevent a standard negator from arising from, say, a contamination of a minimizer through a non-standard negator like a derivational negator. Third, a negator may also be recruited directly from the lexicon (cp. [van der Auwera 2010](#): 74). The source will be a word with negative content and the outcome could in principle be a standard negator, although we cannot give a good example (cp. [van der Auwera 2010](#): 75, 90–91): the literature (e.g. [van Gelderen 2011](#): 292–339) only shows cases which yield special negators, such as prohibitives or negators of relative, focus or cleft constructions ([Givón 1973](#): 917) or, to wit, existential negators. As mentioned already, in [Veselinova's \(2013: 137\)](#) cross-linguistic survey of the origin of existential negators, the majority of languages for which the origin is known derive from a negative word and not from a fusion of the standard negator and some existential marker. For these negative existentials the dynamics described by Croft and Veselinova, and in §3 of this paper, are just as valid as for the negative existentials that derive from fusion. And, importantly, these Negative Existential Cycles are not part of Jespersen Cycles, for the simple reason that they do not involve two things, at least one of which is a standard negator. The Negative Existential Cycle may thus serve inside the generalized Jespersen Cycle in the sense that we get from one standard negator to another one with fusion, but it need not.

5 The “Quantifier Cycle”, similarities and links

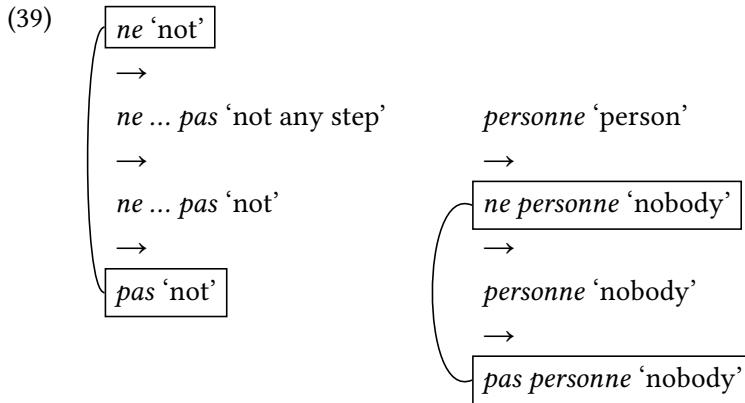
We now turn to the “Quantifier Cycle”, not for a full analysis but for describing the similarities and the links with the cycles that yield standard negators. As the introduction of the “Quantifier Cycle” as a “Jespersen Argument Cycle” by [Ladusaw \(1993: 438\)](#) already suggests, the “Quantifier Cycle” and the classical Jespersen Cycle are very similar. What Ladusaw had in mind was the similarity between French *pas* and *personne*, shown in (37) in a four stage format (cp. [Gianollo 2018a: 263, 2018b](#)).

| | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| (37) <i>ne</i> ‘not’ | <i>personne</i> ‘person’ |
| → | → |
| <i>ne ... pas</i> ‘not any step’ | <i>ne ... personne</i> ‘not any person’ |
| → | → |
| <i>ne ... pas</i> ‘not’ | <i>ne personne</i> ‘nobody’ |
| → | → |
| <i>pas</i> ‘not’ | <i>personne</i> ‘nobody’ |

A first similarity is that both French *pas* and *personne* were once polarity neutral nouns – and these uses prevail until today – and they both turned into negative polarity expressions on their way to becoming negative expressions (a process finished for *pas*). Second, these reinterpretations are mirrored by fusions. Different from French *pas*, Latin *non* involved fusion. Likewise, different from French *personne*, English *nobody* involved fusion. Third, the third stage is in both cases a kind of doubling, i.e., classical Jespersenian doubling for standard negation and so-called “negative concord” for the negative indefinites. Fourth, in both cases the doubling can get undone. Fifth, the undoubling stage need not be a final stage. *pas* can be the beginning of a new Jespersen Cycle and we are back at stage 1. For the pronouns there is cyclicity too, but in the version of the Cycle shown in (37) we go back to the preceding stage: a standard negator is added and we return to negative concord. Interestingly, in the well-known cases of Canadian French and Brabantic Belgian Dutch (e.g. [van der Auwera & Van Alsenoy 2016: 499](#)) the standard negator that is added now is not the one that fell in disuse. (38) is an example from Canadian French, brought into the literature since at least [Muller \(1991: 262–263\)](#).

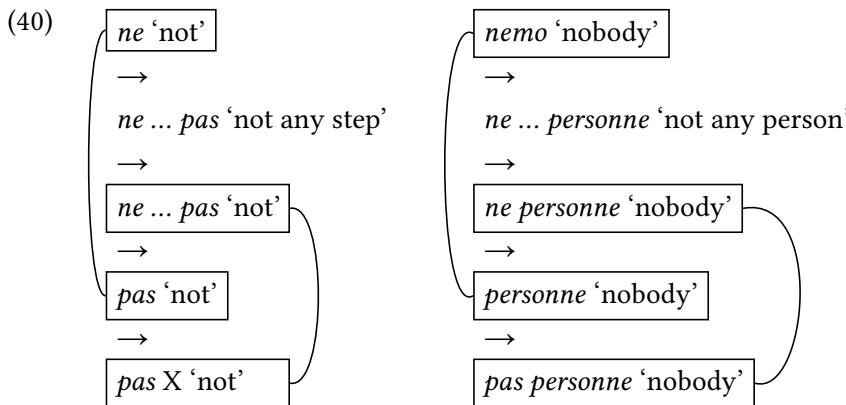
- (38) Canadian French [no ISO code] (Indo-European; [Muller 1991: 262](#))
- | | | |
|---------------------------------|----------|-------------------------------------|
| ... <i>y</i> | <i>a</i> | <i>pas personne en ville</i> |
| there has NEG nobody in town | | |
| '[...] there is nobody in town' | | |

Johan van der Auwera, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen



(39) shows the cyclicity based on the modelling of (38)

But this representation can be improved. As already argued in §1 if we add Latin *nemo* ‘nobody’, there is more cyclicity and if we do not mention the lexical component *personne* ‘person’, just like the Jespersen Cycle does not have a separate stage for *pas* ‘step’, the similarity becomes more transparent. We add *X* as the as yet unfulfilled “doubler” of *pas*. Of course, the motivation to redouble



for *personne* is not the complex Jespersen Cycle trajectory. A plausible explanation, we find, is the one offered by Haspelmath (1997: 203), echoing Heidolph (1970: 99): standard negation is clause-level negation and when it is marked on a participant there is a tendency to remedy this construction and to add a standard negator. So this is a significant difference between the two cycles. There

15 Intertwining the negative cycles

are more differences. First of all, the doubling illustrated by Canadian French is not the only additional stage in the “Quantifier Cycle”. In another scenario, the negative indefinite may trade its negativity for negative polarity. This is taken to have happened to e.g. French *nul* ‘no (one)’ (see Catalani 2001: 113–114; Buridant 2000: 135–137; van der Auwera & Van Alsenoy 2011: 327; Gianollo 2018a: 211–213) and *jamais* (Mosegaard Hansen 2012), as well as in Jamaican Creole. (41) is an Old French non-negative example, culled from a fable by Marie de France by Buridant (2000: 167). (42) shows two Jamaican Creole examples, taken from *Di Jamiekian Nyuu Testament* (2012) and discussed in van der Auwera & De Lisser (2019).

- (41) Old French [fro] (Indo-European; Brucker 1998: 118)
 - Si nuls l'en veut doner lüer ...*
If anyone him wants give reward
'If anyone wants to bribe him ...'
- (42) Jamaican Creole [jam] (Indo-European)
 - a. [...] **nobadi** we kil **nobadi**, dem a-go go a kuot ous [...]
nobody REL kill anybody 3PL PROG-PROSP go to court house
'... anybody who kills anybody is going to go to court [...]' (Matthew 5: 21)
 - b. *Bot muo dan notn els, Gad gud an kain tu wi.*
but more than anything else God good and kind to 1PL
'But more than anything else, God is good and kind to us.' (James 4: 6)

In yet another scenario, the negative indefinite loses a marker of negativity. This has been argued by van der Auwera et al. (2006) for a small area within Brabantic Belgian Dutch in which the negative indefinite *niemand* ‘nobody’ of the negative concord pattern in (43a) has lost its initial nasal, thus resulting in *iemand*, the positive indefinite (‘someone’).

- (43) Brabantic Belgian Dutch [no code] (Indo-European)
 - a. *Ik heb niemand nie gezien.*
I have nobody NEG seen
'I have seen nobody.'
 - b. *Ik heb iemand nie gezien.*
I have somebody NEG seen
'I have seen nobody.'

Johan van der Auwera, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen

All in all, the differences between the standard Jespersen Cycle and the Quantifier Cycle are substantial²⁰ and, we propose, this is mirrored by the fact that not many languages seem to have undergone both the Quantifier and Jespersen Cycles. Or, put differently, Jespersenian doubling probably seldom co-occurs with negative concord (Van Alsenoy & van der Auwera 2014; Van Alsenoy 2014: 182–195).²¹ But in languages like French and English the two cycles do co-occur. In both English and French we see that a new standard negator is recruited from the set of negative indefinites and the resulting pattern is a doubling pattern, not unlike the negative concord of the negative indefinites. In Latin and Greek the new standard negator also derives from a negative indefinite, but this time it does not come from a doubling pattern but from one in which the negative indefinite is not accompanied by a standard negator.²² We also see that when doubling disappears in standard negation, negative concord disappears as well, and one may assume that the loss of the old standard negator in one construction influences its loss in the other pattern.²³

6 Conclusion

In this paper we aimed to increase the understanding of each of the three Negative Cycles individually and of the links between them. We focused on the interaction between the Jespersen and the Negative Existential Cycles. We argued for a wide definition of the Jespersen Cycle, which solves the currently existing terminological dilemma. The new definition allows elements not only to be contaminated by negators, and thus become negators themselves, but also to fuse with negators and thus also make new negators. Fusion can also yield negative existentials, and to that extent the Negative Existential Cycle is part of a Jespersen Cycle, as are the instances where Negative Existential Cycles allow

²⁰No wonder also that Larrivée (2011), whose notion of Jespersen Cycle is narrower than ours but which subsumes the “Quantifier Cycle”, concludes that what is going on is too diverse to continue using the term “Jespersen Cycle”.

²¹In Van Alsenoy’s sample of 179 languages only 6 languages have both Jespersenian doubling and negative concord (Van Alsenoy 2014: 187).

²²Different from Latin, in Greek the indefinite that became a standard negator had negative concord, but it was the non-strict type and it is from the preverbal concord-free use of the negative indefinite that the standard negator must have developed (Chatzopoulou 2012: 294–295).

²³There is no claim here that the two processes are in sync or it is invariably the same process that leads. Thus Ingham (2011: 152) argues that in Anglo-Norman the old negator disappears in indefinites before it does in standard negation, but Jäger (2013: 176) holds the opposite view for Middle High German.

15 Intertwining the negative cycles

negator doubling. We integrated a Positive Existential Cycle, i.e., a scenario in which an existential marker does not fuse with a negator but is contaminated by it. Finally, we described the similarities and differences between Jespersen and Quantifier Cycles and the way “Quantifier Cycle” output can be inserted into a Jespersen Cycle. We also proposed a more enlightening modelling of what goes in the “Quantifier Cycle”.

Acknowledgements

Thanks are due to Franck Floricic (Paris), Josif Fridman (Moscow), Armin Schwegler (Irvine), Anne Vanderheyden (Antwerp), Ljuba Veselinova (Stockholm) and an anonymous reviewer. The latter advised caution with respect to the Wintu and Sino-Russian Pidgin examples and also prompted us to use the term “Quantifier Cycle” in a new sense. Further gratitude is due the Research Foundation Flanders for its financial support.

Johan van der Auwera, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen

Abbreviations

| | | | |
|-------|---|------|---------------------------|
| 1 | 1 st person | GER | gerund |
| 3 | 3 rd person | HAB | habitual |
| 3>3 | 3 rd person agent + 3 rd person patient | IPFV | imperfective |
| A | agent | INCL | inclusive |
| ABS | absolutive | INDF | indefinite |
| ACT | active | INF | infinitive |
| ANAPH | anaphoric | LOC | locative |
| ATT | attributive | M | masculine |
| AUX | auxiliary | NEG | negation |
| CND | conditional | NMLZ | nominalizer |
| CNG | connegative | NPST | non-past |
| CNTR | contrastive | NSP | non-specific tense-aspect |
| COMP | complementizer | OBL | oblique |
| COP | copula | PAR | partitive |
| EX | existential | PL | plural |
| DAT | dative | POSS | possessive |
| DEF | definite | PR | presentative |
| DET | determiner | PROG | progressive |
| DIST | distal | PRS | present |
| DU | dual | PST | past |
| E | E-type inflection class | SG | singular |
| EMPH | emphatic | STA | stative |
| ERG | ergative | SUB | subordinator |
| FUT | future | TA | tense-aspect |
| GENR | general tense-aspect-mood | TAM | tense-aspect-mood |
| | | TOP | topic |
| | | TR | transitive |
| | | v | verb |

15 Intertwining the negative cycles

List of languages

| | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| Amharic [amh] | Juang [jun] |
| Arizona Tewa [tew] ²⁴ | Kannada [kan] |
| Awju [ahh] ²⁵ | Kanincin [rnd] |
| Bulgarian [bul] | Kapingamarangi [kpg] |
| Cèmuhî | Kaugel [ubu] |
| Drehu[dhv] | Korku [kfq] |
| Dutch, Brabantic Belgian ²⁶ | Kulina [cul] |
| Dumi [dus] | Latin [lat] |
| East Futuna [fud] | Lewo [lww] |
| English [eng] | Lifunga [bmgi] ³⁰ |
| English, Ghanaian ²⁷ | Mara [mec] |
| English, dialectal ²⁸ | Meithei [mni] |
| Finnish [fin] | Nese ³¹ |
| Finnish, dialectal [no ISO code] | Nengone [nen] |
| French [fra] | Sino-Russian Pidgin ³² |
| French, Anglo-Norman [xno] | Swedish [swe] |
| French, Canadian ²⁹ | Tacana [tna] |
| French, Old [fro] | Tongan [ton] |
| German, Middle High German [gpe] | Tuvaluan [tvl] |
| Greek, Classical [grc] | Urarina [ura] |
| Greek, Modern [ell] | Wintu [wit] |
| Hawai'an [haw] | |

²⁴ Arizona Tewa seems not to have its own ISO 693-3 code. The ISO code given here is the one for “Rio Grande Tewa”, which is one of at least varieties of Arizona Tewa. However, we do have geo coordinates for Arizona Tewa: Latitude: 35,84; Longitude: -110,38 (source: Glottolog).

²⁵ Awju is a group of 4 languages, we mention the group in the text, not an individual language, here we give an ISO code of just one of four languages.

²⁶[no ISO code, glottolog code: brab1243].

²⁷no ISO code

²⁸no ISO code

²⁹no ISO code

³⁰Ethnologue gives Lifunga as one of the dialects of Bamwe [bmgi]. There seems to be no separate iso-code for Lifunga, so we give the iso-code for Bamwe here.

³¹no ISO code; glottolog code: nese1235.

³²no ISO code; glottolog code: kjac1234.

Johan van der Auwera, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen

References

- Anderson, Gregory. 2007. *The Munda verb: Typological perspectives*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Bernini, Giuliano & Paolo Ramat. 1996. *Negative sentences in the languages of Europe*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Bréal, Michel. 1897. *Essai de sémantique (Science de significations)*. Paris: Hachette.
- Broschart, Jürgen. 1999. Negation in Tongan. In Even Hovdhaugen & Ulrike Mosel (eds.), *Negation in Oceanic languages: Typological studies*, 96–114. München: Lincom Europa.
- Brucker, Charles (ed.). 1998. *Marie de France. Les Fables: Édition critique accompagnée d'une introduction, d'une traduction, de notes et d'un glossaire par Charles Brucker*. Paris: Peeters.
- Buridant, Claude. 2000. *Grammaire nouvelle de l'ancien français*. Paris: Sedes.
- Catalani, Luigi. 2001. *Die Negation in Mittelfranzösischen*. Frankfurt am Main: Peter Lang.
- Chatzopoulou, Aikaterini. 2012. *Negation and nonveridicality in the history of Greek*. University of Chicago. (doctoral dissertation).
- Chatzopoulou, Katerina. 2015. The Greek Jespersen's Cycle: Renewal, stability and structural microelevation. In Chiario Gianollo, Agnes Jäger & Doris Penka (eds.), *Language change at the syntax-semantics interface*, 323–354. Berlin: De Gruyter Mouton.
- Chatzopoulou, Katerina. 2019. *Negation and nonveridicality in the history of Greek*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Chelliah, Shobhana L. 1997. *A grammar of Meithei*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Croft, William. 1991. The evolution of negation. *Journal of Linguistics* 27(1). 1–27.
- Dahl, Östen. 1979. Typology of sentence negation. *Linguistics* 17. 79–106.
- Devos, Maud, Michael Kasombo Tshibanda & Johan van der Auwera. 2010. Jespersen cycles in Kanincin: Double, triple and maybe even quadruple negation. *Africana Linguistica* 16. 155–181.
- Devos, Maud & Johan van der Auwera. 2013. Jespersen cycles in Bantu: Double and triple negation. *Journal of African Languages and Linguistics* 34(2). 205–274.
- Di Jamiekan Nyuu Testament*. 2012. Kingston: The Bible Society of the West Indies.
- Dienst, Stefan. 2014. *A grammar of Kulina* (Mouton Grammar Library 66). Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Djamba, Ndjeka Robert. 1996. *Éléments de description du lifunga, langue bantu de la zone c*. Université Libre de Bruxelles. (mémoire de licence).

15 Intertwining the negative cycles

- Doornenbal, Marius. 2009. *A grammar of Bantawa, grammar, paradigm tables, glossary and texts of a Rai language of Eastern Nepal*. Utrecht: Landelijke Onderzoeksschool Taalkunde.
- Early, Robert. 1994a. *A grammar of Lewo, Vanuatu*. Canberra: The Australian National University. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Early, Robert. 1994b. Lewo. In Peter Kahrel & René van der Berg (eds.), *Typological studies in negation*, 65–92. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Gardiner, Alan. 1904. The word. *Zeitschrift für Ägyptische Sprache und Altertumskunde* 41. 130–135.
- Giannakidou, Anastasia. 1998. *Polarity sensitivity as (non)veridical dependency*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Gianollo, Chiara. 2018a. *Indefinites between Latin and Romance*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Gianollo, Chiara. 2018b. Un ciclo de Jespersen nel syntagma nominale? Indefiniti e mutamento ciclico. *CLUB Working Papers in Linguistics* 2. 61–75.
- Givón, Talmy. 1973. The time-axis phenomenon. *Language* 49(4). 890–925.
- Guillaume, Antoine. 2016. Negation in Tacana (Amazonian Bolivia): Descriptive, typological and historical perspectives. *Syntax of the World's Languages VII Conference*, Mexico City.
- Guillaume, Antoine. 2017. Towards a reconstruction of negation pattern in simplex and complex (coverb) constructions in Tacana (Amazonian Bolivia). Annual Conference of the Societas Linguisitic Europaea, Zürich.
- Guillaume, Antoine. 2021. Negation in Tacana (Amazonian Bolivia): synchronic description and diachronic reconstruction. In Ljuba Veselinova & Arja Hamari (eds.), *The Negative Existential Cycle*, 459–491. Berlin: Language Science Press. DOI: ??.
- Haspelmath, Martin. 1997. *Indefinite pronouns*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Head, June. 1976. *A grammar of Umbu-Ungu*. S.n.: manuscript. <http://www01.sil.org/pacific/png/pubs/928474542774/Umbu%20Ungu%20Final.pdf> (2017-02).
- Heath, Jeffrey. 1981. *Basic materials in Mara: Grammar, texts and dictionary* (Pacific Linguistics B - Monographs). Canberra: Australian National University.
- Heidolph, Karl Erich. 1970. Zur Bedeutung negativer Sätze. In Manfred Bierwisch & Karl Erich Heidolph (eds.), *Progress in linguistics: A collection of papers*, 86–101. The Hague: Mouton.
- Hovdhaugen, Even & Ulrike Mosel (eds.). 1999. *Negation in Oceanic languages: Typological studies*. München: Lincom Europa.
- Huber, Magnus. 2012a. Ghanaian English. In Bernd Kortmann & Kerstin Lunkenheimer (eds.), *The Mouton world atlas of varieties of English*, 382–393. Berlin: De Gruyter Mouton.

Johan van der Auwera, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen

- Huber, Magnus. 2012b. Ghanaian Pidgin English. In Bernd Kortmann & Kerstin Lunkenheimer (eds.), *The Mouton world atlas of varieties of English*, 349–409. Berlin: De Gruyter Mouton.
- Ingham, Richard. 2011. Ne-drop and indefinites in Anglo-Norman and Middle English. In Pierre Larrivée & Richard P. Ingham (eds.), *The evolution of negation: Beyond the Jespersen Cycle*, 145–163. Berlin: De Gruyter Mouton.
- Jäger, Agnes. 2013. Negation in the history of (High) German. In David Willis, Christopher Lucas & Anne Breitbart (eds.), *The history of negation in the languages of Europe and the Mediterranean*. Vol. I: Case studies, 151–189. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Jespersen, Otto. 1917. *Negation in English and other languages*. København: A. F. Høst.
- Jespersen, Otto. 1922. *Language: Its nature, development and origin*. London: George Allen & Unwin.
- Kahrel, Peter. 1996. *Aspects of negation*. University of Amsterdam. (doctoral dissertation).
- Krasnoukhova, Olga & Johan van der Auwera. 2019. Negation in Kulina: A double polarity swap. *Journal of Historical Linguistics* 9. 208–238.
- Kroskrity, Paul V. 1984. Negation and subordination in Arizona Tewa: Discourse pragmatics influencing syntax. *International Journal of American Linguistics* 50. 94–104.
- Ladusaw, William A. 1993. Negation, indefinites and the Jespersen Cycle. In Joshua S. Guenter, Barbara A. Kaiser & Cheryl C. Zoll (eds.), *Proceedings of the Nineteenth Annual Meeting of the Berkeley Linguistic Society*, 437–446. Berkeley: Berkeley Linguistic Society.
- Larrivée, Pierre. 2010. The pragmatic motifs of the Jespersen cycle: Default, activation and the history of negation in French. *Lingua* 120. 2240–2258.
- Larrivée, Pierre. 2011. Is there a Jespersen cycle? In Pierre Larrivée & Richard P. Ingham (eds.), *The evolution of negation: Beyond the Jespersen Cycle*, 1–22. Berlin: De Gruyter Mouton.
- Lowes, Gwendolyn. 2006. Some comparative notes on Tibeto-Burman copulas. Paper presented at the 39th International Conferences on Sino-Tibetan Languages and Linguistics. https://depts.washington.edu/icstll39/abstracts/icstll39_lowes_hdt.pdf (2017-02).
- Meillet, Antoine. 1912. L'évolution des formes grammaticales. *Scientia* 12. (Reprinted in 1926. *Linguistique historique et linguistique générale*. Paris: Champion, 130–148.), 384–400.

15 Intertwining the negative cycles

- Michael, Lev. 2014. A typological and comparative perspective on negation in Arawak languages. In Lev Michael & Tamia Granadillo (eds.), *Negation in Arawak languages*, 241–300. Leiden: Brill.
- Miestamo, Matti. 2005. *Standard negation: The negation of declarative verbal main clauses in a typological perspective*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Mithun, Marianne. 2016. What cycles when and why? In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change continued* (Linguistics Today 227), 19–46. Amsterdam: Ben-jamins.
- Mosegaard Hansen, Maj-Britt. 2009. The grammaticalization of negative reinforcers in Old and Middle French: A discourse-functional approach. In Maj-Britt Mosegaard Hansen & Jacqueline Visconti (eds.), *Current trends in diachronic semantics and pragmatics*, 227–251. Bingley: Emerald.
- Mosegaard Hansen, Maj-Britt. 2012. On the evolution of temporal n-words in medieval French. *Language Sciences* 34. 76–91.
- Mosel, Ulrike. 1999. Towards a typology of negation in Oceanic languages. In Even Hovdhaugen & Ulrike Mosel (eds.), *Negation in Oceanic languages: Typological studies*, 1–19. München: Lincom Europa.
- Moyse-Faurie, Claire. 1997. *Grammaire du futunien*. Nouméa: Centre de Documentation Pédagogique Nouvelle-Calédonie.
- Moyse-Faurie, Claire. 1999. Negation in East Futunan (Futuna, Wallis and Futuna Islands). In Even Hovdhaugen & Ulrike Mosel (eds.), *Negation in Oceanic languages: Typological studies*, 115–131. München: Lincom Europa.
- Moyse-Faurie, Claire & Françoise Ozanne-Rivierre. 1999. Negation in New Caledonia and Loyalty Islands languages. In Even Hovdhaugen & Ulrike Mosel (eds.), *Negation in Oceanic languages: Typological studies*, 57–79. München: Lincom Europa.
- Muller, Claude. 1991. *La négation en français: Syntaxe, sémantique et éléments de comparaison avec les autres langues romanes*. Genève: Droz.
- Nagaraja, K. S. 1999. *Korku language: Grammar, texts and vocabulary*. Tokyo: Institute for the Study of Languages, Cultures of Asia & Africa.
- Olawsky, Knut. 2006. *A grammar of Urarina* (Mouton Grammar Library 37). Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Pauwels, Jan L. 1958. *Het dialect van Aarschot*. Brussel: Belgisch interuniversitair centrum voor Neerlandistiek.
- Pauwels, Jan L. 1974. Expletief *nie* en andere herhalingswoorden als zinsafsluiters. In F. F. Oldental (ed.), *Taallkunde 'n lewe: Studies opgedra aan Prof. W. Kempen by geleenheid van sy 65st verjaardag*, 73–76. Kaapstad: Tafelberg.
- Pitkin, Harvey. 1984. *Wintu grammar*. Berkeley: University of California Press.

Johan van der Auwera, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen

- Schwegler, Armin. 1983. Predicate negation and word-order change: A problem of multiple causation. *Lingua* 61. 297–334.
- Schwegler, Armin. 1988. Word-order changes in predicate negation strategies in Romance languages. *Diachronica* 5(1–2). 21–58.
- Schwegler, Armin. 1991. Negation in Palenquero: Synchrony. *Journal of Pidgin and Creole Languages* 6. 165–214.
- Schwenter, Scott A. 2006. Fine-tuning Jespersen's Cycle. In Betty J. Birner & Gregory Ward (eds.), *Drawing the boundaries of meaning: Neo-Gricean studies in pragmatics and semantics of meaning in honor of Laurence R. Horn*, 327–344. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Sjörs, Ambjörn. 2018. *Historical aspects of standard negation in Semitic* (Studies in Semitic Languages and Linguistics 91). Leiden: Brill.
- Sjörs, Ambjörn. 2015. *The history of standard negation in Semitic*. Uppsala University. (doctoral dissertation).
- Sridhar, S. N. 1990. *Kannada*. London: Routledge.
- Stern, Dieter. 2002. Russische Pidgins. *Die Welt der Slaven* 47. 1–30.
- Tamm, Anne. 2015. Negation in Estonian. In Matti Miestamo, Anne Tamm & Beáta Wagner-Nagy (eds.), *Negation in Uralic languages* (Typological Studies in Language 108), 399–431. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Van Alsenoy, Lauren. 2014. *A new typology of indefinite pronouns, with a focus on negative indefinites*. University of Antwerp. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Van Alsenoy, Lauren & Johan van der Auwera. 2014. On the relation between double clausal negation and negative concord. In Maj-Britt Mosegaard Hansen & Jacqueline Visconti (eds.), *The diachrony of negation*, 13–46. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- van der Auwera, Johan. 2009. The Jespersen cycles. In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change* (Linguistics Today 146), 35–71. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- van der Auwera, Johan. 2010. On the diachrony of negation. In Laurence R. Horn (ed.), *The expression of negation*, 73–109. Berlin: De Gruyter Mouton.
- van der Auwera, Johan. 2017. Englishes, English Creoles and their negative indefinites. In Debra Ziegeler & Bao Zhiming (eds.), *Negation and contact: With special focus on Singapore English*, 115–149. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- van der Auwera, Johan, Ludovic De Cuyper & Annemie Neuckermans. 2006. Negative indefinites: A typological and diachronic perspective on a Brabantic construction. In Terttu Nevalainen, Juhani Klemola & Mikko Laitinen (eds.), *Types of variation: Diachronic, dialectal and typological interfaces*, 305–319. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- van der Auwera, Johan & Tamirand Nnena De Lisser. 2019. Negative concord in Jamaican Creole. Manuscript.

15 Intertwining the negative cycles

- van der Auwera, Johan & Olga Krasnoukhova. 2018. Postverbal negative *ma* in the Andean foothills. *Amazonicas-VII Conference* (Baños/Ecuador).
- van der Auwera, Johan & Lauren Van Alsenoy. 2011. Indefinite pronouns, synchrony and diachrony: Comments on Willis. In Pierre Larrivée & Richard P. Ingham (eds.), *The evolution of negation: Beyond the Jespersen Cycle*, 325–345. Berlin: De Gruyter Mouton.
- van der Auwera, Johan & Lauren Van Alsenoy. 2016. On the typology of negative concord. *Studies in Language* 40. 473–512.
- van der Auwera, Johan & Frens Vossen. 2015. Negatives between Chamic and Bahnaric. *Journal of the Southeast Asian Linguistics Society* 8. 24–38.
- van der Auwera, Johan & Frens Vossen. 2017. Kiranti double negation: A copula conjecture. *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area* 40. 40–58.
- van Driem, George. 1993. *A grammar of Dumi*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- van Gelderen, Elly. 2011. *The linguistic cycle: Language change and the language faculty*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2010. Standard and special negators in the Slavonic languages: Synchrony and diachrony. In Björn Hansen & Jasmina Grković-Major (eds.), *Diachronic syntax of the Slavonic languages*, 197–210. Vienna: Sagner.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2013. Negative existentials: A cross-linguistic study. *Italian Journal of Linguistics* 25(1). 107–145.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2014. The negative existential cycle revisited. *Linguistics* 52(6). 1327–1389.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2015. Special negators in the Uralic languages: Synchrony, diachrony and interaction with standard negation. In Matti Miestamo, Anne Tamm & Beáta Wagner-Nagy (eds.), *Negation in Uralic languages* (Typological Studies in Language 108), 547–599. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Veselinova, Ljuba. 2016. The negative existential cycle viewed through the lens of comparative data. In Elly van Gelderen (ed.), *Cyclical change continued* (Linguistics Today 227), 139–187. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- Vilkuna, Maria. 2015. Negation in Finnish. In Matti Miestamo, Anne Tamm & Beáta Wagner-Nagy (eds.), *Negation in Uralic languages* (Typological Studies in Language 108), 457–485. Amsterdam: Benjamins.
- von der Gabelentz, Georg. 1891. *Die Sprachenwissenschaft: Ihre Aufgaben, Methoden und bisherigen Ergebnisse*. Leipzig: Weigel.
- Vossen, Frens. 2016. *On the typology of the Jespersen cycles*. University of Antwerp. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Vossen, Frens & Johan van der Auwera. 2014. The Jespersen cycles seen from Austronesian. In Maj-Britt Mosegaard Hansen & Jacqueline Visconti (eds.), *The diachrony of negation*, 47–82. Amsterdam: Benjamins.

Johan van der Auwera, Olga Krasnoukhova & Frens Vossen

- Wagner-Nagy, Beáta. 2011. *On the typology of negation in Ob-Ugric and Samoyedic languages*. Helsinki: Société Finno-Ougrienne.
- Wester, Ruth. 2014. *A linguistic history of Awju-Dumut: Morphological study and reconstruction of a Papuan language family*. Free University of Amsterdam. (Doctoral dissertation).
- Willis, David, Christopher Lucas & Anne Breitbart. 2013. Comparing diachronies of negation. In David Willis, Christopher Lucas & Anne Breitbart (eds.), *The history of negation in the languages of Europe and the Mediterranean*. Vol. I: *Case studies*, 1–50. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Willmott, Jo. 2013. Negation in the history of Greek. In David Willis, Christopher Lucas & Anne Breitbart (eds.), *The history of negation in the languages of Europe and the Mediterranean*. Vol. I: *Case studies*, 299–340. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Zide, Norman H. 2008. Korku. In Gregory D. S. Anderson (ed.), *The Munda languages*, 256–298. London: Routledge.

Sources

- Linguistics Research Center (The University of Texas at Austin). N.d. *Online materials on Old Church Slavonic*. https://lrc.la.utexas.edu/eieol/ocsol/50#grammar_1014 (2019-04-12).

Name index

- Aasmäe, Niina, 266
Abbott, Barbara, 497
Adam, J. J., 21, 22, 29, 37, 41
Adam, Jean-Jérôme, 22, 23
Adwan, MAMDouh, 83, 84
Ahern, Christopher, 420
Ahmed, Jaklin Mansoor Mohammed, 95
Al-Azraqi, Munira Ali, 86
al-Buhārī, Abū ‘Abd Allāh Muḥammad b. Ismā‘il ibn Ibrāhīm b. al-Mughīra b. Bardizba al-Ju‘fī, 86, 87
al-Farāhīdī, al-Ḥalīl ibn Aḥmad, 83
Al-Jallad, Ahmad, 83
Al-Rawi, Rosina-Fawzia, 102
Al-Saqqaqaf, Abdullah Hassan Sheikh, 99
Al-Sayyed, Amany, 93
Alexandre, Pierre, 41
Allen, James P., 144
Allison, Sean D., 69
Alsaedi, Mekhlid, 538
Alzahrani, Salih Jamaan, 99
Amboulou, Célestin, 42
Ambouroue, Odette, 41
Andersen, Francis A., 121
Anderson, Gregory, 570
Angenot-Bastin, Yvonne, 20
Asangama, Natisa, 42
Ashton, E. O., 44
Asmah Hj., Omar, 368
Atkinson, Quentin, 419, 430, 437
Aunio, Lotta, 21, 38, 43
Austin, Peter K., 429
Avrorin, Valentin A., 382, 385, 391, 392, 406
Bar-Asher, Moshe, 114
Baranova, Vlada V., 357, 360, 362
Bartens, Raija, 265, 266, 269, 282, 289
Barwise, Jon, 425
Bascom, Burton, 510, 511, 516
Bashir, Elena, 185, 194, 195, 230, 535
Bastin, Yvonne, 6, 12, 19, 20
Bauer, W., 425
Bawden, C. R., 364
Beaulieu, Jeremy, 210
Beaver, David, 497
Becker, Misha, 547
Beckett, H. W., 25, 45
Behnstedt, Peter, 88, 95
Beljdy, Raisa A., 391
Beller, Patricia, 516
Beller, Richard, 516
Bembeev, Evgeny V., 366
Benjamin, Carmen, 201, 243, 244
Bentley, Delia, 9
Bentley, Mayrene E., 46
Bentley, W. Holman, 44
Benzing, Johannes, 385
Bergsland, Knut, 537
Bernabela, Roy S., 91

Name index

- Bernander, Rasmus, 6–8, 10, 11, 18, 21, 37, 45, 407
 Bernini, Giuliano, 562
 Bickel, Balthasar, 181
 Bierge, Stefanie Ramos, 513, 514, 516
 Binturki, Turki Abdullah S., 100
 Biton, Alexandre, 22, 23
 Bjarnason, Solveig, 204, 252
 Black, J. M., 428
 Blau, Joshua, 83
 Bodrogligli, András J. E., 355
 Bordal, Heidi Valentine, 203, 204, 249, 250, 507
 Borschev, V, 123
 Botne, Robert, 45
 Bouckaert, Remco, 210, 213
 Bouckaert, Remco R., 419, 422
 Bowern, Claire, 419, 426, 430, 432
 Bowern, Claire L, 419, 430, 437
 Brammall, Daniel, 437
 Braun, David, 447
 Bréal, Michel, 564
 Breen, J G, 437
 Breivik, Leiv Egil, 500
 Brewis, Kielo A., 369
 Brewis, Richard, 369
 Brinton, Laurel J., 118
 Brockett, A. A., 88, 91, 92
 Brockway, Earl, 516
 Broschart, Jürgen, 566
 Brosig, Benjamin, 362–364
 Broughall Woods, R. E., 45
 Brucker, Charles, 583
 Brustad, Kristen E., 94, 95
 Buchholz, Oda, 197, 235
 Budd, Peter, 174
 Bulgakova, Tatiana D., 391
 Buridant, Claude, 583
 Butt, John, 201, 243, 244
 Butters, Marielle, 545
 Bybee, Joan, 373, 445
 Camaj, Martin, 197, 235, 236
 Campbell, Lyle, 516
 Carlier, Anne, 447
 Catalani, Luigi, 583
 Chan, Marjorie K-M., 311
 Chan, Phyllis D., 369
 Chappell, Hilary, 314
 Chatzopoulou, Aikaterini, 563, 584
 Chatzopoulou, Katerina, 563, 575
 Chelliah, Shobhana L., 577
 Chinese Ancient Texts Database, 305, 319
 Choueiri, Lina, 85
 Christmas, J. Elisabeth, 179, 185, 191, 192, 234
 Christmas, Raymond B., 179, 185, 191, 192, 234
 Chung, Sandra, 425
 Clark, Eve V., 174
 Clark, Robin, 420
 Collins, B., 45
 Comrie, Bernard, 268
 Condoravdi, Cleo, 196, 238, 547
 Cooper, Robin, 425
 Cordell, Oliver T., 43
 Corriente, Federico, 86, 87
 Coupez, André, 42, 45
 Cowell, Mark, 96, 97
 Creissels, Denis, 8, 9, 12, 123, 174, 183, 184, 460
 Croft, William, 5, 12–15, 27, 33, 57, 61, 63, 65, 67, 68, 72, 75, 82, 85–88, 91, 93, 96, 102, 105, 113, 114, 118, 140, 159, 160, 163, 165, 173–175, 179, 180, 184, 185, 193, 194, 214–216, 266, 289, 290,

Name index

- 292, 298, 304–306, 310, 317,
325, 327, 329, 333, 399, 402,
407, 419–421, 425, 432, 443,
446, 449, 460, 485, 494, 531–
533, 541, 544, 557, 565–567,
569, 570, 572
- Cyffer, Norbert, 174
- Daeleman, Jan, 45
- Dahl, Östen, 59, 60, 445, 547, 556, 562
- Dammann, Erns, 20, 45
- Davey, Richard J., 88, 91
- De Lisser, Tamirand Nnena, 583
- de Mulder, Walter, 447
- de Ottaviano, Ida, 459, 460, 468, 470,
471, 483
- de Weert, Danny, 425
- Dediú, Dan, 181
- Denlinger, Kristin, 505
- Deo, Ashwini, 420, 445, 446
- Depuydt, Leo, 154
- Devos, Maud, 5, 7, 8, 16, 18, 21, 35, 46,
560, 562, 578
- Diem, Werner, 538
- Dienst, Stefan, 576
- Dixon, Robert M. W., 419, 422, 423,
432, 433
- Djamba, Ndjeka Robert, 562
- Dmitriev, Nikolay, 348, 349, 355
- Doerfer, Gerhard, 383
- Doke, Clement M., 45
- Donaldson, Tamsin, 423
- Doornenbal, Marius, 577
- Doss, Madiha, 93–95
- Drinka, Bridget, 214
- Driver, S. R., 121
- Dryer, Matthew S., 496
- Dryer, Matthew S., 59, 214, 345
- Dum-Tragut, Jasmine, 195, 196, 236,
237
- Dunham, Margaret, 43
- Dunn, Michael, 181
- Eades, Diana, 433
- Early, Robert, 577
- Eaton, Helen, 26, 44, 45
- Ebner, Ezekiel, 28
- Edelsten, Peter, 43
- Edwards, Malcolm, 538
- Eid, M., 538
- Eid, Mushira, 85, 88
- Einarsson, Stefán, 204, 252
- Ellington, J. E., 32, 42
- Englebretson, Robert, 42
- Ernst, Thomas, 301
- Eska, Joseph, 119
- Essono, Jean-Jacques, 41
- Estrada Fernández, Zarina, 511, 512,
516
- Eulenberg, John, 62
- Evans, Nicholas, 150
- Everdell, Michael, 500, 501, 505
- Félix Armendáriz, Rolando Gpe., 514–
516
- Fiedler, Wilfrid, 197, 235
- Flores Nájera, Lucero, 516
- Forbes, A. Dean, 121
- Foster, C. S., 19, 45
- Frajzyngier, Zygmunt, 61, 63–66, 73
- Francez, Itamar, 425
- Freeze, Ray, 9, 420
- Gadalla, Hassan A. H., 371, 372
- Gadelii, Karl E., 46
- Gaeta, Livio, 18, 500
- García Salido, Gabriela, 494–497, 499,
501, 502, 504, 518

Name index

- Gardiner, Alan, 564
 Gensler, Orin D., 83
 Gerasimova, Anna N., 383
 Giannakidou, Anastasia, 558
 Gianollo, Chiara, 559, 563, 581, 583
 Gibson, Hannah, 12, 43
 Gibson, Hannah Cameron, 43
 Giger, Martha, 73
 Gihami, Gerard, 83
 Givón, Talmy, 18, 531, 533, 540, 580
 Glanville, Peter, 93
 Goddard, Cliff, 443
 Goldwasser, Orly, 141
 Gönczöl-Davies, Ramona, 199, 201, 242
 Goudswaard, Nelleke, 370
 Gravina, Richard, 64
 Gray, George Buchanan, 121
 Gray, Hazel, 15, 44
 Greenberg, Joseph H, 447
 Greenough, J. B., 201, 246
 Grégoire, Claire, 4, 42, 46
 Grinevald, Colette, 141
 Grollemund, Rebecca, 3
 Gromova, Nelly, 46
 Grossman, Eitan, 137, 155
 Grout, Lewis, 46
 Guarisma Pupineau, Gladys, 41
 Guérois, Rozenn, 10
 Guillaume, Antoine, 462, 570, 571
 Gul, Ahmed, 535
 Güldemann, Tom, 5–7, 9, 18, 26, 37
 Gusev, Valentin J., 383
 Guthrie, Malcolm, 4
 Güldemann, Tom, 5
 Hadelin, Roland, 45
 Hagemeijer, T., 7
 Hagendorens, J., 29
 Haig, Geoffrey L. J., 181
 Hale, Kenneth, 443
 Hamari, Arja, 266, 267, 269, 274, 278–
 282, 289, 290, 423, 447
 Hammarström, Harald, 58, 210
 Hargus, Sharon, 539
 Harrell, Richard S., 92
 Harries, Lyndon, 11
 Hashimoto, J. Mantaro, 316, 317
 Haspelmath, Martin, 65, 507, 518, 559,
 582
 Haugen, Jason D., 524
 Head, June, 577
 Heath, Jeffrey, 433, 434, 569
 Heidolph, Karl Erich, 582
 Heine, Bernd, 19, 24, 28, 445, 544
 Henderson, John, 420, 440–442
 Hendle, P. J., 36, 43
 Hengeveld, Kees, 145, 348, 350, 352,
 353
 Henriksen, Carol, 203
 Hercus, Luise Anna, 427–429
 Hetherwick, Alexander, 23
 Higgins, Ian, 201, 241, 242
 Hill, Kenneth C., 511, 516, 517
 Holes, Clive, 86, 88, 91, 92, 98, 104,
 106
 Hollander, Linda, 6, 23, 24
 Holmstedt, Robert D., 127
 Holton, David, 196, 237, 238
 Hözl, Andreas, 383, 385
 Honti, László, 268, 536, 537
 Horn, Laurence, 442
 Horn, Laurence R, 356, 371, 421
 Horn, Laurence R., 359, 421, 442, 447
 Horton, Alonzo E., 44
 Hoskison, James T., 67
 Hualde, José Ignacio, 176, 201, 245
 Huang, Cheng-Teh James, 301
 Huber, Magnus, 573

Name index

- Hurvitz, Avi, 122
 Håland, Eva Marie, 94, 95
- Ibn Hanbal, Ahmad b Muhammad, 87
 INEGI, 495
- Ingham, Bruce, 95, 99, 100
 Ingham, Richard, 584
- Ittmann, Johannes, 19, 41
- Jackendoff, Ray, 442
- Jacobs, John, 42
- Jäger, Agnes, 203, 584
- Janhunen, Juha, 267, 358, 366
- Jarad, Nabil Ismail, 97
- Jespersen, Otto, 59, 404, 531, 555, 558,
 560–563
- Johnson, Frederick, 20
- Johnston, Eric, 64, 73
- Johnstone, Thomas Muir, 88, 92
- Joön, P., 116
- Kahrel, Peter, 174, 557
- Kalédaïtè, Violeta, 199, 240
- Kalinina, Elena J., 383
- Kamba Muzenga, J. G., 5
- Kanafani, Ghassan, 86
- Kari, James, 539
- Karlgren, Bernhard, 310
- Katupha, José, 46
- Katz, Aya, 532, 538
- Kawasha, Boniface Kaumba, 45
- Kaytetye people, 441
- Keresztes, László, 265, 269, 288
- Kellogg, S. H., 534
- Ketrez, F. Nihan, 355
- Khalifa, Salam, 100
- Kiefer, Ferenc, 447
- Kimenyi, Alexandre, 44
- King’ei, 16
- King, Gareth, 209, 254
- Kiparsky, Paul, 196, 238, 547
- Kiso, Andrea, 23, 46
- Klemm, Antál, 269, 289
- Koch, Harold, 443
- Koch, Peter, 18, 19, 28
- Kokshaeva, Nina O., 347, 365
- Koponen, Eino, 537
- Kotorova, Elizaveta, 543, 544
- Kraal, Peter, 46
- Krasnoukhova, Olga, 571, 576
- Krauss, Michael, 539
- Kroeger, Paul, 368–371
- Kroeze, Jan H., 114, 117
- Kröger, Heidrun, 46
- Kroskrity, Paul V., 561
- Krueger, John R., 347, 365
- Krumm, Bernhard, 27, 46
- Kulemeka, Andrew T. C., 46
- Kuteva, Tania, 24, 28, 445, 544
- Labaere, R., 29
- Ladusaw, William A., 425
- Ladusaw, William A., 558, 581
- Lafone Quevedo, Samuel, 460, 486
- Lakoff, George, 18
- Lam Chit Yu, Cherry, 541
- Lamb, William, 206, 207, 209, 258
- Lampp, Claire, 534
- Lang, Margaret, 201, 241
- Langacker, Ronald W., 496, 516, 517
- Larrivée, Pierre, 558, 563, 584
- Lass, Roger, 118
- Launey, Michel, 516
- Law, Paul, 305, 318, 330–333
- Leach, Michael B., 46
- Lecoq, P., 176, 177, 185, 187, 188, 190,
 223, 224
- Leer, Jeff, 539, 540

Name index

- Lejeune, Ludo, 421
Leonetti, Manuel, 123
Levinson, Stephen, 181
Li, Charles, 298, 301
Li, Charles N., 85, 541
Li, Fang Kuei, 539
Li, Mei, 301
Lienhard, Ruth, 73
Lijongwa, Chiku, 43
Lin, Jo-Wang, 301
Lindstedt, Jouko, 373
Lipiński, Edward, 83, 96
Loprieno, Antonio, 137, 141, 144, 148–151
Lowe, Beulah M, 439
Lowes, Gwendolyn, 577
Lucas, Christopher, 93
Machiwana, Kingston, 46
Maganga, Clement, 43
Mahmoudveysi, Parwin, 185, 225, 226
Maho, Jouni, 4
Maho, Jouni Filip, 4, 40
Malchukov, Andrej, 143
Maltseva, Olga V., 410
Mamet, M., 42
Marchal-Nasse, Colette, 41
Marlo, Michael R., 11
Marten, Lutz, 9, 12, 43
Martínez Córdova, Dina Paola, 501
Matar, Abd al-Azīz, 100
Mathiassen, Terje, 198, 239, 240
Matthews, S., 72
Mbuya, Benoît, 45
McCone, Kim, 205, 209, 256, 257
Mchombo, Sam, 23
McKelson, Kevin, 432
McLellan, Marilyn, 435
McNally, Louise, 425, 497
Meeussen, Achiel Emiel, 25, 28, 42
Meillet, Antoine, 547, 556, 558, 564, 569
Meltzer, Edmund S, 146
Mertens, Joseph, 33, 42
Michael, Lev, 576
Mickala-Manfoumbi, R., 21
Miestamo, Matti, 60, 72, 269, 299, 301, 344, 382, 400, 421, 429, 461, 466, 477, 502, 537, 561, 562
Miller, Cynthia L., 131
Miller-Naudé, Cynthia L., 114, 117, 125–128, 130
Milsark, Gary L., 123
Mishchenko, Daria F., 349–351
Mithun, Marianne, 502, 556
Mitterhofer, Bernadette, 26
Molina, Gregorio, 510
Morrison, Michelle, 26, 44
Mosegaard Hansen, Maj-Britt, 563, 583
Mosel, Ulrike, 573–575
Mouandza, J.-D., 31, 42
Moyse-Faurie, Claire, 561, 573–575
Muli, M. G., 42
Muller, Claude, 581
Müller, Matthias, 137
Muraoka, T., 116
Nagaraja, K. S., 570
Nash, Jay, 7, 18, 30, 45
Naudé, Jacobus A., 114–117, 119, 120, 125–128, 130
Ndalu, 16
Nefedov, Andrey, 543, 544
Neukom, Lukas, 185, 192, 193, 230, 231
Newman, Paul, 58, 59, 62, 72
Ngalamulume, Bululu, 8
Ngonyani, Deo, 16, 44, 45
Nicolle, Steve, 12, 43

Name index

- Norman, Jerry, 310, 322, 331
 Nourzaei, Maryam, 185, 229, 230
 Novotná, Jana, 43
 Nsayi, B., 32, 44
 Nugteren, Hans, 363
 Nurse, Derek, 6, 7, 18, 25, 33, 35, 42, 43, 401
- O'Grady, Geoffrey N., 432
 O'Grady, Geoffrey N., 419
 Oates, Lynette F., 424
 Odden, David, 27, 46
 Offord, Malcolm, 201, 241
 Ohta, Tatsuo, 310
 Olawsky, Knut, 571, 572
 Omar, Margaret K., 99
 Oréal, Elsa, 142, 143
 Osing, Jürgen, 148
 Oskolskaya, Sofia A., 383, 389, 402
 Ottaviano, John, 459, 460, 468
 Owens, Jonathan, 97
 Ozanne-Rivierre, Françoise, 561, 575
- Paas, Steven, 23
 Paasonen, Heikki, 269, 280, 281
 Pall, Valdek, 269
 Pan, Wuyun, 322
 Pan, Yunzhong, 310
 Partee, B. H., 123
 Patnaik, Manideepa, 185, 192, 193, 230, 231
 Paul, Daniel, 185, 194, 228, 229
 Pauwels, Jan L., 560, 564
 Payne, John R., 344
 Payne, Thomas E., 182
 Pekkanen, Inka, 369
 Peltola, Reino, 267
 Pérez Fernández, Miquel, 122
 Perez, Isabelle, 201, 241
- Perry, John, 447
 Perry, John R., 185, 224, 225
 Persohn, Bastian, 45
 Persson, Maria, 97
 Petrova, Taisia I., 384, 395, 405
 Petzell, Malin, 18, 21, 38, 43
 Peyraube, Alain, 310, 314
 Peyronel, Stella, 201, 241, 242
 Philippson, Gérard, 42
 Phillips, Josh, 422, 423, 429
 Piron, Pascale, 41
 Pitkin, Harvey, 544, 545, 570
 Platts, John, 535
 Polis, Stéphane, 155, 157
 Poppe, Nicholas, 354–356
 Poser, William, 539
 Press, Ian, 207–209, 253
 Price, Thomas, 23
 Prochazka Jr, Theodore, 99
 Puigdollers, A. R. Revuelta, 238
 Pulleyblank, Edwin G., 323
- Rákos, Attila, 347
 Ramat, Paolo, 562
 Ranger, A. Sidney B., 46
 Rastorgueva, V. S., 185, 188, 226, 227
 Ravila, Paavo, 280, 281
 Reinhardt, Carl, 88, 92, 104, 106
 Rendsburg, Gary A., 115
 Retsö, Jan, 96, 97
 Reuland, Eric, 497
 Reyes Valdez, Antonio, 496, 497
 Rezetko, Robert, 114
 Rice, Keren, 540
 Richter, Tonio Sebastian, 137
 Ringe, Don, 119
 Roby, Henry John, 201, 246
 Rooth, Mats, 442
 Rurangwa, I. M., 31

Name index

- Samson, Ridder, 4
 Sanderson, Meredith, 27, 46
 Say, Sergey S., 355
 Ščemerova, V. S., 290
 Schadeberg, Thilo C., 4, 43
 Schebeck, Bernhard, 430, 432, 434, 437
 Schicho, Walter, 35, 43
 Schlichter, Alice, 544, 545
 Schmid, Maureen, 72
 Schmitt, Rudiger, 222
 Schuessler, Axel, 320, 322, 331
 Schuh, Russel G., 69
 Schürmann, C W, 428
 Schürmann, C. W., 429
 Schwegler, Armin, 27, 407, 460, 556,
 562, 563, 569, 572, 575
 Schwenter, Scott A., 563
 Seegmiller, Steve, 355
 Sem, Lidia I., 384, 402–404
 Service, Robert G., 347, 365
 Sharp, Janet, 424, 432
 Shay, Erin, 65, 545
 Shi, Yuzhi, 541
 Shokri, G., 185, 187, 227
 Siewierska, Anna, 181
 Simeone-Senelle, Marie-Claude, 96
 Simoncsics, Péter, 536
 Simpson, Jane, 427, 428
 Singer, Hans-Rudolf, 91
 Sischo, William R., 516
 Sjoberg, Andrée F., 354
 Sjörs, Ambjörn, 116, 561, 562
 Skinner, Margaret G., 60
 Skjærvø, Prods Oktor, 222, 223
 Skjærvø, Prods Oktor, 189, 222
 Smith, Tony, 64
 Sneddon, James N., 368
 Snyman, F. P. J., 115
 Sovijärvi, Antti, 267
 Spiss, Cassian, 45
 Sridhar, S. N., 566
 Stassen, Leon, 350, 353
 Stauder, András, 157, 162
 Stenson, Nancy, 206, 209, 254–256
 Stern, Dieter, 572
 Stevens, Jon, 447
 Stevick, Earl W., 6, 23, 24, 46
 Stirnimann, Hans, 44
 Stoynova, Natalia M., 389, 402
 Ström, Eva-Marie, 20, 46
 Struck, Bernhard, 45
 Stubbs, Brian D., 513
 Sturgeon, Donald, 305
 Sudaryono, 368
 Sumbatova, Nina R., 383
 Sunik, Orest P., 384–386, 393–395, 405,
 406
 Suseeva, Danara A., 347
 Szinnyei, Jószef, 289
 Tai, James H-Y, 311
 Tamm, Anne, 423, 439, 447, 561
 Teichelmann, C. G., 429
 ter Meulen, Alice G. B., 497
 Thackston, W. M., 177, 185, 191, 228
 Thompson, Sandra, 298, 301
 Thompson, Sandra A., 85
 Tiersma, Pieter Meijes, 202, 204, 248
 Tjia, Johnny, 369
 Traugott, Elizabeth C., 118
 Traugott, Elizabeth Closs, 445
 Trosterud, Trond, 288
 Tsai, Wei-Tien Dylan, 309
 Tsumagari, Toshiro, 384, 385
 Tsunoda, Tasaku, 426, 427
 Tuggy, David H., 516
 TUKI (University of Dar-es-Salaam,
 Institute of Kiswahili Research),

Name index

- 20
- Turano, Giuseppina, 197, 235
- Turner, R. L., 535
- Uljas, Sami, 149, 151, 152, 157
- Urmanchieva, Anna Yu, 46
- Vail, Hazen Leroy, 46
- Van Alsenoy, Lauren, 507, 581, 583, 584
- van Avermaet, Ernest, 45
- van de Velde, Mark, 41
- van den Berg, René, 174
- Van der Auwera, Johan, 5
- van der Auwera, Johan, 5, 7, 8, 21, 33, 35, 72, 138, 203, 214, 404, 421, 460, 461, 489, 543, 560–562, 564, 571, 573, 576, 577, 580, 581, 583, 584
- van der Merwe, Christo, 114, 117
- van der Wal, Jenneke, 9, 11, 46
- van Driem, George, 576
- van Gelderen, Elly, 113, 126, 128, 129, 174, 429, 543, 544, 549, 556, 558, 580
- Van Olmen, Daniël, 5, 18
- Van Olmen, Daniël, 5
- Vansina, Jan, 42
- Vázquez Soto, Verónica, 512, 513, 516
- Velten, Carl, 43
- Verbeke, Saartje, 181
- Vergote, Jozef, 148
- Vernus, Pascal, 151, 156
- Veselinova, Ljuba, 5, 12–14, 18, 19, 24, 25, 27, 33, 34, 36, 58, 60, 68, 69, 75, 88, 103–106, 118, 121, 123, 138, 143, 149, 152, 153, 164–166, 174, 175, 177–184, 192, 194, 199, 200, 202, 208, 210, 213–216, 238, 250, 268, 269, 273, 279, 291, 298, 306, 318, 332, 333, 344, 345, 352, 358, 360, 364, 373, 381, 388, 390, 399, 402, 407, 409, 419–421, 423, 425, 429, 432, 434, 442, 460, 484, 485, 497, 507, 531–533, 537, 540, 541, 543, 557, 562, 565–570, 572–576, 580
- Viljoen, Melanie H., 70
- Vilkuna, Maria, 568
- Vitale, Anthony J., 34, 43
- Vollers, Karl, 104
- Vossen, Frens, 461, 489, 560, 562, 576–578, 580
- Wa-Ngatho, Wambūi Mūringo, 42
- Wagner, Esther-Miriam, 105
- Wagner-Nagy, Beáta, 562
- Wan, Kuo-Ting, 335
- Wang, Li, 310
- Wang, William Shi-yuan, 299, 301
- Wansing, Heinrich, 421, 442, 447
- Watkins, Mark Hanna, 23
- Watson, Janet, 91, 92, 96
- Weir, E. M.Helen, 344
- Werning, Daniel A, 157
- Wester, Ruth, 577
- Wheeler, Maw W., 176, 201, 245
- Whiteley, Wilfred Howell, 27, 42, 44, 46
- Whitney, William Dwight, 535
- Wilhelmsen, Vera, 43
- Wilkins, David P., 440–442
- Wilkinson, Melanie P, 425, 430–432, 434, 438–440
- Willett, Elizabeth, 517
- Willett, Elizabeth R., 498, 500, 508
- Willett, Thomas L., 495, 498, 500, 508

Name index

- Willis, David, 174, 207, 254, 558
Willmott, Jo, 563
Wilmsen, David, 83, 87–89, 91–96, 98,
 100, 103, 105, 371, 372
Winand, Jean, 152
Windfuhr, Gernot, 224, 225
Woidich, Manfred, 92, 93, 96, 97, 538
Wolff, R., 26, 44
Wolgemuth, Carl, 516
Wood, Jim, 204, 252
Wu, Hugjiltu, 363
Wurm, Stephen Adolphe, 419

Xu, Shi-Yi, 322

Yallop, Colin, 441
Yang, Hui-Ling, 541
Young, Ian, 114
Young, T. Cullen, 24
Yu, Wonsoo, 364, 366
Yue, 330
Yuldashev, Akhnef A., 346

Zanuttini, Raffaella, 301
Zeller, Jochen, 11
Zhang, Min, 316–318, 326, 329–331,
 333
Zhang, Paiyu, 384, 388
Zhang, Yanchang, 384
Zhou, Jiarong, 335
Zide, Norman H., 570
Ziv, Yael, 497
Zöller-Engelhardt, Monika, 154

The Negative Existential Cycle

Set blurb on back with \BackBody{my blurb}

